Textbook of Head and Neck Anatomy

Fourth Edition
Alas, poor Yorick! I knew him well Horatio, a fellow of infinite jest, of most excellent fancy. He hath borne me on his back a thousand times.

_Shakespeare, Hamlet_
Dedicated to
my wife Nancy
and my children, Drew, Beth, and Kurt.
JLH

Dedicated to
my wife Roseann,
my daughter Jen,
and my mother Mary.
LPG
The *Textbook of Head and Neck Anatomy* was first published in 1982. This textbook was written with the thought in mind that students come to this subject with varying backgrounds; therefore, the regional approach to the study of anatomy was selected over the tedious systems approach. Since that first edition, the textbook has been through two subsequent editions. During these two latter editions we received suggestions from faculty and students that served to improve the quality of the text and its illustrations, tables, and Clinical Considerations. In preparing each new edition, our primary goal remained to present a text designed and written for the student, incorporating all of the requisites of optimal learning. These included succinct, concise writing; well-developed tables that digested information for student understanding; profuse, well-designed illustrations that accommodated learning; identification of new terms; a Glossary and Suggested Readings; and a cross-referenced Index.

We were gratified to learn that the editorial group responsible for the development of the 4th edition of our *Textbook of Head and Neck Anatomy* at Lippincott Williams & Wilkins agreed to the major change to using full color and enlarging the format. Now the tables are larger and more accessible to the reader. Perhaps more important, the illustrations also are larger and in full color, which greatly facilitates anatomical appreciation, understanding, and learning. We have incorporated a number of figures from other Lippincott Williams & Wilkins publications, and we’ve colorized most of the original art created for the text over the years by our original illustrator, Jerry Gadd. We have also added many new tools for the student to facilitate learning and to broaden one’s understanding of the clinical importance of learning anatomy.

**Organization**

After careful consideration, we adopted an organization of the text that accommodated our teaching styles and the student’s learning methods. Thus we have maintained the organization of the previous version for this edition. The first three chapters introduce the basics of anatomy to the student, namely its long history and the specialized terminology that the student must master. Over the years we have found that many students come to anatomy with varied backgrounds, therefore we present a chapter on the body systems, specifically as they apply to head and neck anatomy. This is followed by a chapter designed to introduce the student to anatomical concepts in the oral cavity, palate, and pharynx presented from the standpoint of an oral examination. The next chapter, describing the Embryology of the Head and Neck, is followed by a chapter detailing the osteology of the skull. The succeeding ten chapters are devoted to regional anatomy, ending with the discussion of the Brain and Spinal Cord. Although all of the cranial nerves were presented in the respective chapters, a particular chapter is devoted to the cranial nerves, their associations with the autonomic nervous system, and with their distributions in the head and neck. This is followed with a chapter on the anatomical basis for local anesthesia. There are summarizing chapters on lymphatics, the vascular supply of the head and neck, and the fascia of the head and neck.

Many of our former students have suggested that the posterior neck is not of much value to those preparing for a career in the dental profession. We, therefore, reduced much of the written material in this segment but, for those interested, we have retained the tables and some of the illustrations.

**Key Features**

Many important relevant Clinical Considerations are incorporated within each chapter. These were placed at the end of each chapter in previous editions, whereas in this edition we have placed them at the appropriate position within the text where the subject
is discussed. A list of all 139 Clinical Considerations by chapter, title, and page number is presented in the front of the text in order to provide the reader easy access to them for reference and study.

In an effort to assist the student to identify the material contained in major headings, we have incorporated the Summary Bite. The Summary Bite is a synopsis of the main points in the text under the heading. Students may find these summary bites useful in preparing for exams.

Tables have been added to each new edition of the text, including the present edition, because they organize and summarize large amounts of information that assist students in mastering information in a minimum amount of time. A list of all 29 of the tables by chapter, table number, and page number is presented in the front of the text to assist the student in finding the table of interest.

Chapter Outlines on the opening page of each chapter highlight the major subjects discussed. This is followed by a section of Key Terms that provides brief definitions and/or short descriptions that the student is expected to master.

We use a specific color scheme to indicate the three, and occasionally four, levels of headings within the text, though frequently the fourth level was replaced by bullets. The student should remember that bullets are not above or below the paragraph order, but are merely used to indicate some importance to that particular entry or paragraph.

We have retained the Glossary in this edition to aid the student in grasping the language of anatomy as it relates to the head and neck, as well as an extensive cross-referenced Index. Students seeking additional information concerning the subjects covered in this text will find a current Suggested Readings section in the back of the book helpful. Included are references to textbooks and atlases of Gross Anatomy, Developmental Anatomy, and Neuroanatomy.

Ancillaries
Two new educational tools are being introduced in this 4th edition. We have developed a bank of approximately 200 USMLE Type I examination questions with answers (approximately 10 per chapter) that tests comprehension of the material presented in each chapter.

Available to instructors with this new edition are PowerPoint presentations that provide an overview of each chapter and offers the faculty teaching and/or review resources for use with the textbook. Also available is an image bank of all figures and tables within the text.

A complete, searchable version of the full text is available on thePoint as well at http://thePoint.lww.com/Hiatt4e. thePoint provides dedicated flexible learning solutions and resources for students and faculty using our Textbook of Head and Neck Anatomy.
Reviewers

Pamela L. Alberto, DMD
Director of Predoctoral Surgery
Clinical Associate Professor
Department of Oral & Maxillofacial Surgery
New Jersey Dental School—U.M.D.N.J.
Newark, New Jersey

William Bird, RDH, MA
Director
Allied Dental Education Department
Santa Rosa Jr. College
Santa Rosa, California

Alan W. Budenz, MS, DDS, MBA
Professor, Director of Oral Diagnosis and
Patient Intake
Department of Anatomical Sciences
Department of Dental Practice
University of the Pacific
San Francisco, California

Susan J. Crim, PhD, MSEd, RDH
Associate Professor and Department Chair
Dental Hygiene
University of Tennessee
Memphis, Tennessee

Karen Kulikowski, DMD
Professor
Department of Allied Dental Education
The University of Medicine and Dentistry of
New Jersey
Scotch Plains, New Jersey
We wish to express our sincere thanks to our colleagues and students for their constructive criticisms as well as their suggestions aimed at improving our Textbook of Head and Neck Anatomy. Their comments have been valuable to us and we incorporated many of them into this fourth edition.

We wish to thank Lippincott Williams & Wilkins for affording us the opportunity of borrowing many of the excellent anatomical images from their publications to illustrate the didactic material of our text.

We would especially like to thank Dr. Robert Jaynes, Department of Radiology at Ohio State University College of Dentistry, for his exquisite panoramic radiograph; Dr. Stuart Josell, Chairman of Orthodontics, University of Maryland Dental School, for the clinical photographs of a cleft lip and cleft palate; and Dr. Christine Ferrell, Department of Orthodontics, University of Maryland Dental School, for lending us the cephalometric radiograph. We would like to thank one of our students, Kari Moss for permitting us to photograph her eyes. We would especially like to thank Dr. Radi Masri, Research Assistant Professor in the Department of Endodontics, Prosthodontics, and Operative Dentistry for Photographing the clinical subjects of the oral cavity in Chapter 4.

Finally we would like to thank our friends at Lippincott Williams & Wilkins for assisting us through every step of the way in the production of the current edition of this book. We extend our gratitude to Jessica Schulteis, temporary Managing Editor; Terry Mallon, Design Coordinator; and Rachelle Detweiler, Ancillary Editor. Special thanks go to Andrea Klingler, our Managing Editor, and Jen Clements, Art Director. These two individuals were always there when we needed them.

Although we have made every effort to ensure care and accuracy, we realize that some errors and omissions may have escaped our attention. Therefore, criticisms, suggestions, and comments that would help to improve this textbook will be appreciated. Comments may be addressed to jhi34@yahoo.com and lpg21136@yahoo.com.

James L. Hiatt, PhD
Leslie P. Gartner, PhD
## List of Tables

| Table 5-1 | Pharyngeal Arch Derivatives and Their Innervation | 55 |
| Table 5-2 | Derivatives of the Pharynx and the Pharyngeal Pouches | 61 |
| Table 5-3 | Derivatives of Facial Components | 65 |
| Table 6-1 | Bones of the Skull | 67 |
| Table 6-2 | Foraminal of the Skull and Their Contents | 75 |
| Table 7-1 | Muscles of the Back of the Neck | 112 |
| Table 7-2 | Boundaries and Contents of the Suboccipital Triangle | 115 |
| Table 7-3 | Boundaries of the Cervical Triangles | 118 |
| Table 7-4 | Muscles Associated with the Posterior Triangle | 120 |
| Table 7-5 | Branches of the Cervical Plexus | 122 |
| Table 7-6 | The Infrahyoid Muscles | 128 |
| Table 7-7 | Deep Prevertebral Muscles of the Neck | 134 |
| Table 8-1 | Muscles of the Face and Scalp | 140 |
| Table 8-2 | Branches of the Facial Nerve in the Superficial Face | 147 |
| Table 9-1 | Venous Sinuses of the Dura | 158 |
| Table 10-1 | Bones of the Orbit | 163 |
| Table 10-2 | Communications of the Orbit | 164 |
| Table 10-3 | Muscles of the Eye | 172 |
| Table 10-4 | Bony Ossicles and Their Associations | 176 |
| Table 12-1 | Boundaries, Communications, and Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa | 191 |
| Table 12-2 | Muscles of Mastication | 192 |
| Table 12-3 | Maxillary Artery | 201 |
| Table 13-1 | Muscles Acting on the Temporomandibular Joint | 215 |
| Table 14-1 | Openings of the Paranasal Sinuses | 224 |
| Table 14-2 | Vascular and Sensory Nerve Supply of the Paranasal Sinuses | 227 |
| Table 15-1 | Suprahyoid Muscles and Extrinsic Muscles of the Tongue | 231 |
| Table 16-1 | Muscles of the Palate and Pharynx | 247 |
| Table 16-2 | Intrinsic Muscles of the Larynx | 259 |
| Table 18-1 | Cranial Nerves | 280 |
| Table 18-2 | Parasympathetic Ganglia of the Head | 284 |
| Table 18-3 | Trigeminal Nerve—Sensory Components | 289 |
| Table 18-4 | Trigeminal Nerve—Motor Components | 292 |
| Table 18-5 | Cranial Nerves—Clinical Testing | 293 |
| Table 19-1 | Anesthesia of the Teeth and Supporting Tissues in the Maxillary Arch | 313 |
| Table 19-2 | Anesthesia of the Teeth and Supporting Tissues in the Mandibular Arch | 313 |
| Table 20-1 | Lymph Nodes of the Head and Neck | 331 |
# List of Clinical Considerations

## Chapter 4
- Lips 33
- Vestibule 35
- Tongue 39
- Palate 40
- Oropharynx 49

## Chapter 5
- Abnormal Development of the Head and Neck 53
- First Arch Defects 56
- Preauricular Pits 57
- Cysts and Fistulas 59
- Pouch Defects 59
- Thyroid 59
- Tongue 60
- Facial Malformations 63
- Treacher Collins Syndrome 63
- Cleft Lip 65
- Cleft Palate 65

## Chapter 7
- Congenital Malformations 106
- Fascial Layers 111
- Torticollis 116
- Paralysis of the Trapezius Muscle 116
- Referred Pain 116
- The Subclavian Artery 125
- Fractured Clavicle 126
- Carotid Sinus Syndrome 128
- External Jugular Vein 131
- Thyroid Gland Involvement 132
- Hyperthyroidism 132
- Cretinism 132
- Thyroidectomy 132
- Parathyroid Removal 132
- Horner Syndrome 136
- Neurocirculatory Compression 136

## Chapter 8
- Scalp 142
- Facial Artery Compression 149
- Thrombophlebitis of the Facial Vein 150
- Danger Area of the Face 151
- Lacerations and Facial Incisions 151
- Bell Palsy 151
- Trigeminal Neuralgia 151

## Chapter 9
- Cranial Base Fractures 153

## Chapter 10
- Conjunctivitis 165
- Cornea 166
- Myopia and Hyperopia 168
- Glaucoma 169
- Detached Retina 169
- Cataract 170
- Otitis Media 174
- Otosclerosis 174
- Ménière Disease 177
- Nerve Deafness 177

## Chapter 11
- Saliography of the Parotid Duct 182
- Mumps 182
- Parotid Gland 183
- Parotid Gland Innervation 184
- Parotid Tumors 186
- Stylohyoid Ligament 187

## Chapter 12
- Masticator Space Infection 194
- Temporomandibular Disorder (TMD) 199
# Contents

List of Tables  xii  
List of Clinical Considerations  xiii  

1. Introduction  1

2. Anatomic Concepts  3
   - Divisions of Anatomy  4
   - Descriptive Anatomic Terms  4
   - Anatomic Variation  6

3. Body Systems  7
   - Cellular Organization  8
   - Integumentary System  8
   - Muscular System  11
   - Skeletal System  14
   - Circulatory System  19
   - Nervous System  22

4. The Oral Cavity, Palate, and Pharynx  31
   - Lips  32
   - Vestibule  32
   - Oral Cavity Proper  34
   - Tongue  36
   - Palate  38
   - Teeth  41
   - Pharynx  47

5. Embryology of the Head and Neck  50
   - The Head and Neck  51
   - Head and Neck Development  51
   - Pharyngeal Arch, Groove, and Pouch Development  53
   - Floor of the Pharynx  59
   - Face, Nose, and Palate Development  61

6. Osteology  66
   - Skull and Cervical Vertebrae  67
   - Skull  67
   - Mandible  79
   - Hyoid Bone  80
   - Cervical Vertebrae  80

7. Neck  104
   - Clinical Consideration  106
   - Surface Anatomy  106
   - Superficial Structures of the Neck  107
   - Deep Fascia  109
Contents

8 Superficial Face 137
   Surface Anatomy 138
   Scalp 138
   Face 143

9 Cranial Fossa 152
   Dura Mater 153
   Diploic and Emissary Veins 159
   Cranial Nerves 159

10 Eye and Ear 161
   Orbit 162
   Ear 174

11 Parotid Bed 179
   Superficial Anatomy and Boundaries 180
   Parotid Gland 181
   Carotid Arteries 184
   Facial Nerve 185
   Structures Deep to the Parotid Bed 186

12 Deep Face 188
   Regional Innervation and Vascular Supply 189
   Descriptions and Boundaries 189
   Muscles and Fascia 191
   Vascular Supply 200
   Innervation 204
   Mastication 206

13 Temporomandibular Joint 208
   Joint Anatomy 209
   Types of movement 213

14 Pterygopalatine Fossa, Nasal Cavity, and Paranasal Sinuses 216
   Pterygopalatine Fossa 217
   External Nose 220
   Internal Nose 221
   Nasal Cavity 221
   Paranasal Sinuses 224
   Vascular and Nerve Supply of the Nasal Cavity and Paranasal Sinuses 226

15 Submandibular Region and Floor of Mouth 229
   Contents and Boundaries 230
   Muscles and Fascia 230
   Salivary Glands 237

16 Palate, Pharynx, and Larynx 243
   Pharyngeal Plexus 244
   Palate 244
   Pharynx 249
   Esophagus 254
   Larynx 255
   Trachea 261
   Deglutition 262

17 Brain and Spinal Cord 263
   Meninges 264
Brain 265
Spinal Cord 276

18 Cranial Nerves 278

Cranial Nerves 279
Cranial Nerve Modalities 279
I Olfactory Nerve 281
II Optic Nerve 281
III Oculomotor Nerve 282
IV Trochlear Nerve 285
V Trigeminal Nerve 285
VI Abducens Nerve 298
VII Facial Nerve 299
VIII Vestibulocochlear Nerve 302
IX Glossopharyngeal Nerve 303
X Vagus Nerve 305
XI Accessory Nerve 308
XII Hypoglossal Nerve 309

19 Anatomic Basis for Local Anesthesia 311

Anesthesia 312
Plexus Anesthesia 312
Trunk Anesthesia 316

20 Lymphatics of the Head and Neck 327

Lymph Nodes of the Head and Neck 328
Lymphatic Drainage of the Head and Neck 331

21 Vascular Supply of the Head and Neck 334

Common Carotid Artery 335
Subclavian Artery 348
Veins of the Head and Neck 350

22 Fasciae of the Head and Neck 355

Cervical Fascia 356
Cervical Fascial Spaces 360
Fasciae of the Face and Deep Face 361

GLOSSARY 365
FIGURE CREDITS 374
SUGGESTED READINGS 377
INDEX 378
Introduction

Anatomy has always fascinated humans, not only because of our interest in the delivery of children but also because of the importance of understanding anatomy in healing wounds and caring for the sick. Mankind's interest in anatomy is ancient because it has been learned from archeological evidence that even brain surgery was performed with considerable success as early as 7000 BC in Europe, 3000 BC in Africa, and 2000 BC in the pre-Incan civilizations.

Although anatomic representations and the study of anatomy have been noted in almost every culture, occidental medicine traces its origin to philosophers in the golden age of Greece and the Arabic physicians, who studied, instructed, and wrote about anatomy and attempted to relate it to function and disease. They also named observed structures, and their students expanded this knowledge by discovering and naming yet other structures. Students of anatomy during the Middle Ages—even as late as the 18th century—used Greek and Latin, the lingua franca of learned men. Hence, most of the structures named during those centuries of discoveries were named in those languages, a practice continued into modern times.

The earliest written treatise on anatomic studies was set down by the Greek physician Alcmaeon approximately 2500 years ago. He discovered and dissected the optic nerves, tracing them back to the optic chiasma, and deduced their role in binocular vision. He also discovered and described the auditory tube, suggested that the brain is responsible for intelligence, and studied the ramifications of blood vessels.

Writing at about the same time, the Greek philosopher Pythagoras also suggested that the brain was the center of intelligence. He believed that the physical and emotional well-being of an individual was related to the ratio of the four humors: phlegm, yellow bile, black bile, and blood. These four humors were related to the four elements: water, fire, earth, and air, respectively, whose properties were moist, dry, cold, and hot. A healthy individual would possess a proper combination of these fluids, whereas a disproportionate ratio would be responsible for a diseased state of the body and/or mind. This belief in humors became a basic tenet of Hippocratic medicine. Unfortunately, Aristotle's writings lent credence to this line of thinking; thus, it persisted well into the Middle Ages. Aristotle, however, did make major contributions to the study of anatomy by correctly describing many organs and structures of the human body. He may also have been the first anatomist to illustrate his descriptions with drawings.

Shortly after the decline of Athens, the Greek scholars of Alexandria, especially Herophilus, pioneered in the teaching of anatomy by the use of human dissections. For his work in this field, Herophilus is considered the founder of anatomy, and his dissertations (all lost) encompassed many areas of the subject. The next four centuries saw a decline in anatomic studies until the advent of Galen, possibly the greatest physician of his age. His writings on anatomic structures were so precise and well researched that they constituted the solid bases of medicine for longer than a millennium. He believed that
structure and function were closely interrelated, and his painstaking studies of the spinal cord illuminated his theories, which survived into the early 19th century. Soon after Galen, the Roman Empire collapsed and Europe entered its Dark Ages. During this period, it was the Persian physicians, chiefly Avicenna writing around 1000 AD, who were responsible for keeping the scientific perspectives of medicine and anatomy alive.

A major landmark of anatomic history occurred in 1224, when Frederick II proclaimed that to be permitted to perform surgery one must have studied anatomy by dissecting a human body. Although this edict established anatomy as a discipline unto itself, no major advance occurred for another 350 years. The next important achievement came with Leonardo da Vinci, whose brilliant anatomic illustrations added new emphasis to the functional appreciation of structure. He, more than anyone before him, was able to display the results of his dissections and simplify the complexities of the human body. Hence, the study of human anatomy returned to Europe, flourishing during the Renaissance. This enlightened period of humanistically oriented culture permitted questioning of secular dogma.

The teachings of the ancients were at last openly opposed by the Belgian physician Andreas Vesalius, who applied strict scientific discipline to his anatomic observations. He single-handedly revised the discipline of anatomy and wrote a treatise that was the forerunner of modern anatomy textbooks. Within a generation or so of Vesalius, another great anatomist, William Harvey, wrote about the blood vessels and the heart. His work, the cornerstone of the study of the circulatory system, revolutionized medicine, physiology, and anatomy.

The invention of the microscope around this time opened new vistas in anatomy, permitting the marvelous discoveries of Wirsung, Malpighi, Purkinje, Golgi, Cajal, and Ehrlich. Discussion of theseanatomists is outside the scope of this brief historical survey, but interested readers are encouraged to refer to books dealing with the history of medicine or anatomy.

Modern anatomy textbooks approach the subject from a systemic, regional, or surgical point of view. A systemic anatomy textbook, as the name implies, treats the body as if it were organized into neat, self-contained systems, such as the skeletal, muscular, nervous, and circulatory systems, each of which is detailed in the text. Such an approach is valuable, especially in a reference textbook, because it describes each structure in a continuous fashion.

Textbooks that treat the subject in a regional manner divide the body into specific areas, such as upper extremity, lower extremity, thorax, and head and neck, and discuss the contents of each region (i.e., osteology, myology, nervous, and vascular elements). Descriptions do not exceed the boundaries of the region, regardless of the fact that many structures (e.g., vessels, nerves, and muscles) are not wholly contained within that specified area. Textbooks of surgical anatomy are based on such a regional approach, with emphasis on surgical techniques, approaches, and normal anatomic variations.

The head and neck comprise a highly specialized region of the body. The structures contained within this region are closely interrelated because they are compacted into a small, complicated area. Other regions of the body, where interrelationships are less complex, lend themselves to a systemic approach. The head and neck region does not. Consequently, the present textbook is written from a regional point of view because the authors continue to believe this approach is more likely to promote better student understanding.

The regional method synthesizes morphologic features for the reader by correlating relationships as the reader progresses through the various anatomic divisions of the head and neck. Furthermore, this approach aids not only those who have constant access to a laboratory situation but also those who do not. And, finally, this approach eliminates the need to synthesize the final product from its component parts, thus assisting the student in mastering the intricacies of this fascinating region of the body.
Chapter Outline

Anatomic Concepts

Divisions of Anatomy
- Gross Anatomy

Descriptive Anatomic Terms
- Anterior and Posterior
- Cranial or Superior and Caudal or Inferior

Anatomic Variation

Key Terms
- Mesial and Distal
- Superficial and Deep

Anterior and Posterior are the anatomic terms for “front” and “back.” Sometimes the terms ventral and dorsal are used to depict anterior and posterior, but these terms are usually applied to quadrupeds.

Anatomic Position is that position of the body (facing forward with palms forward) from which the position of all structures are described.

Cranial or Superior and Caudal or Inferior are terms applied to “headward” and “tailward.”

Horizontal or Transverse Plane is a plane at right angles to the sagittal plane.

Medial and Lateral are terms used to describe positions relative to the midline of the body. For example, a structure located closer to the midline than another structure is described as being medial to it or, if farther away, lateral to it.

Median Plane or Midsagittal Plane is a plane through the midline of the body from anterior to posterior. Any plane that passes parallel to this plane is called a sagittal plane.

Mesial and Distal are terms that relate to tooth locations that are described from the median plane. Thus, canine teeth are mesial to premolar teeth, whereas molar teeth are distal to premolar teeth.

Proximal and Distal are positions relative to the body. For example, the elbow is proximal to the wrist, whereas the fingers are distal to the wrist.

Superficial and Deep are self-explanatory (e.g., skin is superficial to muscle, whereas the heart is deep to the lungs). Alternate terms for superficial and deep are external and internal.
Regional anatomy details a region of the body, such as the head and neck, studying all systems in that area as a complete, integrated unit.

The regional approach used in this text provides the student with a more comprehensive presentation of an anatomic region, thus enhancing an understanding of interrelationships between the various systems of the body.

**DESCRIPTIVE ANATOMIC TERMS**

Summary Bite. Human anatomic terms are spatially related to the anatomic position defined as erect with the palms facing forward.

Human anatomic structures are described spatially relative to the anatomic position, defined for the human as an erect position with the palms of the hands facing forward (Fig. 2-1). Structures on the “front” side of the body are described as **anterior**, whereas those on the “back” of the body are termed **posterior**. Occasionally, other terms may be used for anterior and posterior, such as **ventral** in place of anterior and **dorsal** in place of posterior (Fig. 2-2). The terms ventral and dorsal are perhaps more appropriate when related to quadrupeds, although embryologists and neuroanatomists prefer these terms.

Similarly, alternate terms may be used in referring to directions aimed at the head or tail. **Cranial** or **superior** means “toward the head,” whereas **caudal** or **inferior** refers to “tailward,” although neuroanatomists prefer the term **rostral** for cranial or superior. The terms **superficial** and **deep** are used to describe positions relative to the surface of the body from any aspect. The ribs are superficial to the lungs but deep to the skin. Alternate terms for superficial and deep are **external** and **internal**, respectively.

**Proximal** and **distal** are terms generally applied to positions close to or away from the body, respectively. For example, the wrist is proximal to the finger but distal to the elbow. The teeth are described as being either **mesial** or **distal** to each other in the dental arch from the median plane of the face. For example, the canine tooth is mesial to the first premolar and distal to the lateral incisor. **Medial** and **lateral** are terms applied in relationship to the midline of the body. A structure, A, located closer to the midline than another structure, B, is therefore medial to structure B.

An anatomy student must also learn to visualize several imaginary planes passing through the body serving to divide it in one way or another. The **median plane** passes vertically through the body from
A plane through the body at right angles to the midsagittal plane is the horizontal or transverse plane, providing a cross section with superior and inferior parts. Another plane passes at right angles to the midsagittal plane, again in a vertical direction, and is the frontal or coronal plane, dividing the body into anterior and posterior sections (Fig. 2-3).

Although the previously described terms are applied to the entire body, they are also appropriately used in describing the structures in head and neck anatomy.
Anatomic variation is often the rule rather than the exception and the student must learn to recognize and interpret its significance. A student of anatomy must learn early that anatomic variation is frequently the rule rather than the exception. Structures observed in the cadaver often do not conform to the descriptions found in anatomy textbooks. The major structures might not vary so much but, as the finer details are studied, variations clearly emerge. For example, a student would not expect great variation in the number of bones present in a cadaver, and the variation is not great. However, the individual processes on the bones and their relationships are not at all constant from one individual to another. Similarly, muscles might display slightly different origins, insertions, and tendons. Nerves might not arise from the segment as described. Variations in blood supply are common; thus, a particular region might be supplied from an entirely different source than that described.

It is important that the student learn to recognize anatomic variations as they exist, whether or not they are described. Furthermore, the student must learn to interpret logically the significance of these variations and perhaps to extrapolate their effects on the living individual. Mastering this diagnostic technique helps enable the professional to make rational decisions regarding anatomic variations observed in clinical practice.
Deep Face

Anatomy and Boundaries of the Deep Face

Temporal Fossa

Infratemporal Fossa

Contents

Communications

Muscles and Fascia

Muscles of Mastication

Clinical Considerations

Temporalis

Masseter

Medial Pterygoid Muscle

Lateral Pterygoid Muscle

Clinical Considerations

Vascular Supply

Maxillary Artery and Branches

Mandibular Portion

Pterygoid Portion

Pterygopalatine Portion

Pterygoid Venous Plexus

Clinical Considerations

Maxillary Vein

Deep Face

that portion of the side of the head deep to the mandible and zygomatic arch containing the origins and insertions of three of the four muscles of mastication.

Temporal fossa

is that portion of the side of the head above the ear and zygomatic arch called the temple. It is outlined and covered by the temporalis muscle.

Infratemporal fossa

is the region inferior and deep to the zygomatic arch and the mandible. It is filled with the origins and insertions of the muscles of mastication except the masseter. It contains branches of the mandibular nerve, the maxillary artery and its branches, and the pterygoid plexus of veins.

Muscles of mastication

a set of four bilateral muscles whose function is to move the mandible about the temporomandibular joint as it functions in phonation and chewing and swallowing. All originate in either the temporal or infratemporal fossae except the masseter muscle and they all insert upon the mandible or about the temporomandibular joint.

Elevators of the jaw

are the muscles of mastication, including the masseter, temporalis, and medial pterygoid muscles that function primarily in closing the jaw.

Depressor of the jaw

is the lateral pterygoid muscle, a muscle of mastication that functions in initiating opening of the jaw.

Mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve

is the portion of the trigeminal nerve (V) that supplies motor innervation to the muscles of mastication and sensory innervation to the temporomandibular joint and side of the head. Additionally, branches of the mandibular division that arise in the infratemporal fossa are bound for other regions.
Chapter 3  Body Systems

Human beings, just as all other animals, are composed of a complex aggregate of specialized cells. These cells—the building blocks of all living things—have become specialized to perform certain functions, a "division of labor."

INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Summary Bite. The integumentary system is composed of the skin and its derivatives, including the hair, nails, and glands. The integument, or skin, includes its derivatives—the hair, nails, and glands. It functions to protect the underlying structures against intrusion from the outside and from loss from within. Furthermore, it serves as a sensory receptor, a body temperature regulator, and an organ of secretion and excretion.

Skin

Summary Bite. The skin covers the body except where it becomes continuous with the mucous membranes at the orifices of the body. It possesses many specializations in different regions of the body.

The skin forms a pliable covering over the body and becomes continuous with mucous membranes at the orifices of the body, as at the anus, urethra, vagina, nares, and the oral cavity. The skin is thickest over the back, the palm of the hand, and the sole of the foot, where it is about 6 mm thick. The thinnest skin, which overlies the tympanic membrane and the eyelid, is about 0.5 mm thick. In most areas of the body the skin is loosely attached to the underlying structures, thus permitting it to be easily displaced. It is, however, firmly attached to the periosteum of the
tibia, to cartilage of the ear, and over joints of the fingers and the palm of the hand.

Skin color is primarily controlled by three factors: blood, carotene, and melanin. Variation in color is related to degree of vascularity, oxygen content of blood, skin thickness, and profuseness of pigmentation. Under certain conditions, physiologic changes may produce a transient increase in pigmentation, as evidenced in the tanning process from exposure to sunlight. The external genital areas, the axilla, and the areola of the mammary gland display constantly deeper pigmentation.

Skin possesses fine furrows or creases extending in various directions across its surface. These furrows tend to divide the surface into polygonal areas. Some of these areas are large, whereas others (e.g., on the back of the hand) are small. Epidermal ridges and sulci (furrows) on the fingers, palms, and soles are organized in a specialized fashion of whorls and curves peculiar to each individual. This particular uniqueness provides the basis for fingerprint identification. Epidermal ridges provide friction against slippage in walking and in grasping. Ducts of sweat glands open on the summits of the ridges, whereas in areas covered with hair, the shafts emerge at points of intersection of the furrows. Typically, the secretions of the sebaceous glands empty in the furrows also.

Structure

Summary Bite. Skin is composed of the epidermis, which is made up of the avascular epidermis, a stratified squamous keratinized epithelium, as well as the underlying connective tissue, known as the dermis, which houses blood vessels, nerve endings, connective tissue, sebaceous and sweat glands, hair follicles, and smooth muscles.

Skin is composed of two layers: the epidermis, or surface layer, and the underlying dermis. The epidermis is without blood vessels but is penetrated by sensory nerve endings. In general, the epidermis is only about 1 mm thick and is composed of several layers of stratified squamous epithelial cells. Histologists have subdivided these layers into five distinct groups based on morphologic features and function. The deepest layer, the stratum basale (formerly known as the stratum germinativum), overlies the dermis and is primarily responsible for producing all of the epidermal cells above it, which are being shed constantly. As these cells mature, they produce keratohyalin, which is eventually transformed into keratin in the superficial layers. The most superficial layer, the stratum corneum, is composed of dead cells and keratin and forms a horny layer whose thickness is related to the trauma it experiences.

The dermis underlying the epidermis possesses the blood supply, lymphatic channels, and nerve endings. It also contains sebaceous and sweat glands, hair follicles, and the smooth muscles of the skin. The interface of the epidermis and dermis is thrown into interdigitations of epidermal ridges and dermal ridges (dermal papillae), which serve to secure the two layers (Fig. 3-1).

The dermis is composed of two basic layers—a superficial papillary layer and the deeper reticular layer—containing collagenous and elastic fibers, which account for its strength and elasticity. The deepest layer of the dermis sits on a subcutaneous connective tissue layer. The interface of these two layers is somewhat interdigitated so that when the layers are separated from each other the dermal side appears to exhibit a dimpled appearance similar to an orange peel. These dimples are sites of entry for nerves and blood vessels into the skin from the subcutaneous connective tissue.

The subcutaneous connective tissue (hypodermis) is a loose, fibrous connective tissue containing fat and some elastic fibers. It may be termed loose areolar tissue or superficial fascia. Some areas of the body possess large deposits of fat in this layer and are designated panniculus adiposus. Certain other areas, notably the eyelids, penis, and scrotum, as well as the nipple and areola of the mammary gland, are devoid of subcutaneous fat. Embedded in this layer are the roots of the hair follicles, blood vessels, secretory portions of the sweat glands, and nerves with special sensory endings for pressure. Overlying some joints, the hypodermis contains bursae, which are fluid-filled sacs that provide lubrication for movement of the skin as the joint is flexed. Many mammals, such as the horse, possess voluntary muscles in the hypodermis that permit flinching of the skin. Muscles of this nature, originating in the hypodermis and inserting in the dermis, are present in the scalp, face, and neck. Here they are grouped in humans as the muscles of facial expression. Involuntary (smooth) muscles are also represented in this layer, muscles such as the darts muscle of the scrotum and the muscles of the nipple and areola of the mammary gland.

Hair

Summary Bite. Hair is found in nearly all places on the body except the palms, the soles, and a few other places. If hair is straight, its cross-sectional shape is round; if hair is curly, its cross section is flattened.

Hair is found on nearly all parts of the body with the exception of the palms, the soles, the dorsum
Figure 3-1. Skin structure. Observe the interface between the highly cellular epidermis and the underlying dermis where hair follicles, smooth muscles, and sebaceous and sweat glands originate, but reside mostly in the deeper layer of the dermis and the hypodermis, alongside vascular and nerve elements.

of the terminal digits, the nipples, the umbilicus, and the skin portion of the genitalia. Hair is also absent in areas of skin that are transitional to mucous membrane, such as the lips and nares. The cross section of hair may be round, causing it to be straight, or it may be flattened, producing curly hair. The eyelashes, hair of the pubic region, and hair in the beard are very thick, whereas in other areas of the body it may be so thin that it may go unnoticed. Hair on the scalp may remain for up to four years, whereas the eyelashes may survive only for a few months.

Hair is a product of the epidermis, whose deeper cells invade the dermis and form a hair follicle from which the nonliving hair develops. The dermis
responds by forming a papilla to nourish the regenerative cells of the follicle. Thereafter, the hair grows surfaceward, finally exiting the skin. The free part of the hair is called the **shaft** and that within the follicle is the **root**. Color is imparted to the hair by melanin and red pigment in the hair cells.

Each hair has in association with it one or more sebaceous glands, whose ducts open into the neck of the hair follicle. Involuntary muscle fibers (**arrector pili**) arise in the dermis and attach to the hair follicle, serving to erect the hair, squeezing out the secretions of the sebaceous glands and producing "goose bumps" on the flesh (Fig. 3-1).

**Nails**

**Summary Bite.** Nails are composed of highly keratinized epithelial cells that form nail plates at the distal ends of the terminal digits.

The nails, which grow approximately 1 mm per week, are modifications of epidermal cell layers on the terminal digits. It should be noted that toe nails grow at a slower rate. The vascular nail bed, formed by the lower germinal layer of the epidermis and the dermis, on which lies the translucent nail plate, imparts a pinkish hue to the nail. The visible part of the nail is the body and the hidden portion behind the nail wall is the root. The nail is formed in the proximal part near the whitened lunula, which may be covered by eponychium (cuticle). The epidermis is thickened under the distal portion of the nail, forming the hyponychium.

**Glands**

**Summary Bite.** Glands of the skin include sweat glands, sebaceous glands, and the mammary glands (modified sweat glands).

Glands of the skin include the sebaceous glands, the sweat glands, and the mammary glands (the last will not be discussed in this text because they are remote to the head and neck). The sebaceous glands have been described in their association with hair follicles, but there are nonfunctional sebaceous glands, known as Fordyce granules, located in regions of the body devoid of hair, namely, the lips, the corners of the mouth, and sometimes within the oral cavity. In addition, these glands may be found in most areas of the genitalia as well as the areola and nipple. The secretory cells are constantly destroyed and become part of the oily secretion **sebum**, which protects the skin and hair from undue drying.

Sweat glands are widely distributed, being absent only from the lips, parts of the ear, the skin of the nipple, and some skin areas of the genitalia. Sweat glands are most dense over the palms and soles. The clear, noncellular fluid produced by the sweat glands regulates body temperature as it evaporates from the surface of the skin, cooling it (Fig. 3-1).

**MUSCULAR SYSTEM**

**Summary Bite.** The muscular system is composed of specialized cells that have the capacity to contract, which permits movement. There are three types of muscles: skeletal, cardiac, and smooth.

Cells specialized to function in contraction on stimulation comprise the muscles of the body. Skeletal muscles are usually attached from bone to bone, across a joint. On contraction, muscles change the angle of the joint, producing motion. In this way, muscles acting in concert, effect movement. Such motion may be under conscious control (**voluntary**) or not under conscious control (**involuntary**). Muscles that affect smiling, walking, writing, and so on are voluntary muscles, whereas those used in altering the diameter of blood vessels or controlling the bowel are in the involuntary category.

The body has three types of muscles: skeletal, cardiac, and smooth. The first two are striated and the last is not. Skeletal muscle is under voluntary control, whereas cardiac and smooth muscles are involuntary.

**Structure**

**Summary Bite.** The contractile elements are the myofibrils composed of actin and myosin, whose organization makes the skeletal and cardiac muscle cells appear striated, whereas smooth muscle cells do not exhibit striations.

Microscopically, the muscle cell is referred to as a **muscle fiber**. The cytoplasm of skeletal and cardiac muscle cells contains many contractile elements called **myofibrils**, which are composed of actin and myosin. The fibril arrangement in these muscles is such that the muscle fiber appears to be cross-banded in alternate light and dark striations. This appearance is responsible for the name **striated muscle**. Skeletal muscle fibers are long, cylindrical, multinucleated cells whose nuclei are located peripherally (Fig. 3-2).
Smooth and cardiac muscle cells, in contrast, each possess only one centrally located nucleus. Microscopic evaluation reveals no striations within the cytoplasm of smooth muscle cells.

**Smooth Muscle**

Summary Bite. Smooth muscle is involuntary, nonstriated, and contains a central nucleus. It is the contractile element in blood vessels and forms the walls of the viscera.

Smooth muscle is a nonstriated, fusiform muscle containing a centrally placed nucleus. This involuntary muscle is the contractile element in vessel walls and forms the walls of the viscera, where it forms longitudinal and circular layers reinforcing the hollow viscera. Contraction of these layers in the gastrointestinal (GI) tract are responsible for peristalsis. Each hair of the skin possesses a smooth muscle attached at its base. Contraction of these muscles causes “gooseflesh.” Because smooth muscle is involuntary, it is innervated by the autonomic nervous system.

**Cardiac Muscle**

Summary Bite. Cardiac muscle is found in the heart. It is striated and branched and joins to form intercalated discs. Each cell possesses a centrally placed nucleus.

Cardiac muscle is found mostly in the muscular pump, the heart. Cardiac muscle fibers are striated in a fashion similar to skeletal muscle cells, but each cell possesses only one centrally located nucleus. Features unique to cardiac muscle are its branching and its intercalated discs, located at the junction of any two fibers. This muscle type is unique in that it possesses an ability to modify its contractile actions by altering the wave of impulses received from the nervous system.

**Skeletal Muscle**

Summary Bite. Skeletal muscle is the most abundant muscle. Skeletal muscle is voluntary and highly striated. The cells are very large and multinucleated. Skeletal muscle is responsible for body movements.

Skeletal muscle is by far the most abundant muscle in the body. In fact, it comprises about 40% of the total body weight. Skeletal muscle size varies from the large muscles of the leg to the very small stapedius muscle (only about 2 mm long), which is attached to the tiny stapes bone of the middle ear cavity.

Each skeletal muscle fiber is encased in a thin connective tissue covering, the endomysium. A muscle fascicle, composed of a group of muscle fibers, is bundled into a separate connective tissue sheath, the perimysium. The entire muscle, composed of many fasciculi, is wrapped in yet another connective tissue sheath, termed the epimysium or deep fascia.
Attachment

Summary Bite. The connective tissue coverings of muscle fibers attach to bone via tendons. A flattened attachment such as is present on the skull is termed aponeurosis. Bursae form around the attachment of some tendons, providing lubrication, reduction of frictional forces, and protection.

At the attachment to bone, the endomysium, along with the epimysium and perimysium, merge to form the tendon, a dense, regular, collagenous connective tissue, silvery white in color. Tendons are extremely strong and at the their attachment site on bone the periosteum is absent. In certain regions of the body, such as in the muscles of the scalp, attachment is by an aponeurosis, a broad, flat, sheetlike structure, instead of a tendon.

Some attachments are provided with bursae, which lubricate the tendon as it passes over bone. Often a synovial sheath encloses a tendon, forming a tubular sac that is capable of secreting a synovial fluid, which functions to reduce friction. Friction is also reduced by the epimysium, the deep fascia of the body. Because the deep fascia encloses muscles and bone in a continuous manner, it also serves to contain the spread of infection.

Tendinous attachments to bone are usually described as the origin and insertion of the muscle. Generally, the muscle is described as arising from the origin, possessing a fleshy belly (the contractive portion), and inserting at the insertion site. The origin is usually the more proximal and/or fixed area, with the insertion being the more distal or movable area. Movement is usually described relative to the muscle insertion position moving toward the origin while the body is in the anatomic position. It must be stressed that these are not inviolate rules but, rather, are arbitrarily used by anatomists as aids in describing function. These rules are especially difficult to apply in the head and neck; thus, learning muscle functions in this region of the body is painstaking.

Although the previous description of bone-to-bone origin and insertion is the usual occurrence, the muscles of facial expression do not follow this rule. Generally, these muscles arise from bone or fascia and insert into the skin of the face. On contraction, they produce movements of the skin that we recognize as facial expressions.

Form

Summary Bite. Muscle size, form, and fiber arrangement is indicative of its power and direction of the movement it produces across a joint.

Examining a muscle’s size, form, and fiber arrangement in relation to its insertion into the tendon will indicate the relative strength of the muscle as well as the direction of its force. Muscle fibers that approach the tendon in an oblique fashion afford more power. Muscles whose anatomy takes this form are pennate. Fibers entering a tendon at two oblique angles, as do the veins of a feather, are said to be bipennate. Multiples of this architectural arrangement produce multipennate muscles, which exhibit the greatest strength.

Action

Summary Bite. Terms employed to describe muscle action are not easily applied to all movements. However, most are intuitive, such as flexion and extension across a joint and adductors and abductors moving things toward or away from the midline. Actions about the head and neck are protrusion, retraction, elevation, rotation, and depression.

Muscle action is described according to the movement effected in the part in motion from the anatomic position (this basic reference position was shown in Fig. 2-1). Although individual actions are often difficult to separate given the complexities of a variable motion—as, for example, in mandibular movement—they are expressed in a few anatomic terms. Flexion is described as motion that reduces the angle of a joint, whereas extension increases the joint angle. Making a fist uses the flexor muscles; opening a closed fist uses the extensor muscles. Adduction and abduction describe motion toward and away from the body centerline, respectively. Terms describing movements of the head and neck—protrusion, retraction, elevation, rotation, and depression—are self-explanatory.

Several other terms are used to describe various other motions created by the action of a muscle; however, because these are of no concern to the study of the head and neck, their discussion will be omitted here. Often, names assigned to muscles reflect the architecture of the muscle, its form or shape, its attachments and action, or, in some cases, a combination of these features. However, seldom does a muscle function independently. Indeed, movements are so complex that muscles must function in a cooperative and integrated manner to accomplish a total desired movement. To recognize this complexity, anatomists have created additional terms that indicate how a muscle functions in producing a total movement. Muscles may be prime movers or synergists, which assist a prime mover. Certain other muscles, such as the strap muscles attached to the hyoid bone, serve as
fixators, so that other actions may be initiated by yet other muscles. Antagonists function in such a manner that the action they develop is in opposition to the desired function of yet other muscles (agonists). In addition to aiding in the production of smooth movement, antagonists protect the musculoskeletal system from damaging itself, as might occur through a violent movement.

Nerve Control

Summary Bite. Voluntary muscle contraction is controlled by nerves that interact with the muscle fiber at the motor end plate stimulating the muscle fiber to contract. Other nerve fibers enter the muscle to relay sensory and proprioceptive information back to the central nervous system.

Voluntary muscles must receive nerve stimulation to contract. The number of nerve fibers in a muscle depends on the muscle’s size and the degree of control required of the muscle. The extrinsic muscles of the eye, for instance, are well endowed with nerve fibers, whereas the muscles of the back possess fewer nerve endings. As the nerve fiber approaches the muscle, it branches to innervate many muscle fibers. The motor end plate is that part of the muscle fiber’s cell membrane where the nerve fiber forms a synapse with the muscle cell and the impulse is transmitted (Fig. 3-2). In addition to this nerve fiber, which serves a motor function, other fibers enter the muscle, which will conduct sensations of pain and proprioception from the muscle and surrounding connective tissue back to the central nervous system (CNS). These nerves provide sensory data to the CNS so the motor function may be reprogrammed either voluntarily or involuntarily, as might be necessary for the individual to take protective measures.

When a muscle fiber is stimulated, it contracts maximally according to the “law of all or none.” It holds, then, that fine movements are accomplished by stimulating fewer nerve fibers, resulting in activation of only a portion of the total muscle fibers at a given time.

Energy requirements necessary for the work performed by the muscles demand a rich vascular supply. It is a general rule throughout the entire body that nerves and blood vessels travel together as neurovascular bundles, are named alike, and enter the muscle together. Larger muscles, requiring additional vascularization, may have additional arteries entering their surfaces without associated nerves. In such cases, the artery usually arises from a nearby vascular trunk. Whereas nerve supply to a muscle is specific, vascular supply might not be; therefore, vascular supply is provided by region.

SKELETAL SYSTEM

Summary Bite. Bone and cartilage are specialized connective tissues that make up the skeletal system. As a system they perform many functions, including protection, attachment for muscles, leverage, mineral storage, and blood formation.

The elements of the skeletal system—bone, cartilage, and the joints—are composed of intercellular materials and cells specialized in performing certain functions for the body. Functions unique to this system include support, protection, providing attachment for muscles, leverage, mineral storage, and blood formation.

Support is derived from the mineral salts that are deposited in the matrix and fibers secreted by the cells of the system. Through this process, the skeletal system provides form and a framework on which all of the remaining systems of the body are supported and held together.

Protection is afforded to the soft tissues of the body, including the viscera, lungs, and brain, by encasing them in partially enclosed structures, such as the rib cage and pelvis, or in an enclosed chamber, the skull.

The skeletal system also provides sites of attachment for skeletal muscles along the bones and across the joints. The various parts of the skeletal system can then be used as levers for the production of motion as a result of muscle contraction. In addition to their function in providing leverage, bones become calcified by mineral deposits during development and growth and, therefore, serve as reservoirs for mineral storage. The predominant minerals stored are calcium, magnesium, and phosphate.

A final major function of the skeletal system is blood cell formation. The interiors of most bones, including the epiphyses of long bones, flat, irregular, and short bones, house bone marrow, whose specialized cells have the capacity of differentiating and maturing into circulating blood cells. Although the liver and spleen are active in blood cell production prenatally, they cease this function prior to birth; thus, after birth, bone marrow becomes the principal site of blood cell production.

Skeleton

Summary Bite. The bony skeleton is composed of 206 bones divided into an axial and an appendicular skeleton.
The skeletal system, composed of 206 bones, is divided into the axial skeleton and the appendicular skeleton according to the following distribution:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bone</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Axial Skeleton</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skull</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyoid</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebral Column</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ribs and Sternum</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendicular Skeleton</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limbs</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limbs</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This number is not constant because slight variations can exist among individuals. Many bones do not fuse together until after infancy; therefore, infants possess more bones than adults. Occasionally, some skull bones, which develop as bilateral halves, do not fuse in the midline, thus remaining doubled. The frontal bone is one example of this phenomenon, in some cases remaining divided into two separate bones at the metopic suture instead of fusing at the midline. Accessory bones may also develop in bones possessing multiple ossification centers that fail to unite. This condition gives rise to Wormian bones, often observed in the larger flat bones of the skull. Sesamoid bones develop within tendons either for additional leverage, as in the patella (kneecap), or as a means of reducing friction at the joint. Several of these bones may be present, but again the number varies among individuals.

The axial skeleton comprises the bones making up the longitudinal axis and protects the spinal cord, brain, and vital organs. It also supports the head and neck, along with the trunk and its appendages. A major part of this portion of the skeleton is the skull, composed of many bones more or less tightly sutured together forming the cranial vault to protect the brain, as well as bones forming the face. The mandible and bony ossicles of the ear are bones that are separate from the skull proper, but they are still considered part of the skull. Although the hyoid bone does not articulate with the skull, it is occasionally listed as part of the skull because of its functional association. The vertebral column is the major foundation of the skeleton and protects the spinal cord. Attached to the vertebral column are the ribs, which enclose and protect the lungs and heart and attach anteriorly to the medial, anteriorly placed sternum. The five fused sacral vertebrae and four coccyx form part of the pelvis, serving to protect the pelvic viscera. These last nine constitute the remaining components of the axial skeleton.

The appendicular skeleton, composed of some 126 bones, makes up the remaining skeletal system. The bones of the superior extremity include those of the hand, arm, and pectoral girdle. The pectoral girdle attaches the bones of the superior extremity to the axial skeleton. The inferior extremity includes the bones forming the foot and leg and the pelvic girdle. Here the pelvic girdle attaches the extremity to the axial skeleton.

**Bone Classification**

**Summary Bite.** Bones are classified according to their shape: long, short, flat, irregular, and sesamoid bones.

Bones may be classified on the basis of their general shape. These shapes include long bones, as found in the arms and legs, short bones, as in the wrist and ankle, flat bones, like those forming the skull, and irregular bones, such as the vertebrae. Sesamoid bones are also described as a separate category. Bone is a composite of cells and organic matrix secreted by bone cells with deposited inorganic salts crystalized within the matrix. This complex organization produces a lightweight structure with a great tensile strength and the ability to withstand compression. The tubular design of long bones, consisting of a thin layer of compact bone external to spongy bone with its trabeculae, increases the structural strength of the bone. The articular ends of bones usually covered by the articular cartilage are designated as condyles or heads. The shaft of the bone may possess several characteristic landmarks indicating much information. Terms used to describe these features include smooth areas, indicating a periosteum cover only; elevations, in the form of lines, crests, ridges, processes, tubercles, tuberosities, and spines, indicating points of attachments; depressions, such as pits, foveae, and fossae, indicating intervals between elevations or sites where a structure may be housed; grooves and sulci, indicating linear depressions housing particular structures; foramina and notches, indicating openings or holes; and canals or meatuses, indicating passageways or tunnels.

**Joints**

**Summary Bite.** Joints are formed when two or more bones come together. They may be classified as fibrous, cartilaginous, or synovial, depending on the make-up of the union components.
Two or more bones coming together form a joint. Sometimes the union is such that movement is prevented, whereas in other instances movement is the function of the joint. Joints can be classified as fibrous, cartilaginous, or synovial, depending on the structural articulations of the opposing bones (Fig. 3-3).

**Fibrous joints** include two types: syndesmoses and sutures. The syndesmosis joint permits only slight movement between the two bones, which are separated by a layer of fibrous connective tissue. The interosseous membrane between the radius and the ulna is an example. Sutures are joints like those between the flat bones of the skull. Here the individual bones interdigitate tightly along serrated edges, rendering them almost immovable. The fibrous tissue between these bones is continuous with the periosteum.

Some believe that gentle manipulative techniques on the cranial sutures may be used to treat a myriad of health problems. However, it is now suggested that this concept is no longer accepted. Cartilaginous joints are represented by synchondroses and symphyses. Opposing bony surfaces of this group are united by cartilage. A synchondrosis is a temporary joint that will eventually be ossified into a bony component. The epiphyseal plate on the ends of the growing long bones is an example of this type of joint. A symphysis is a cartilage joint between two bones. It is located in the midline and is interposed between the fusion of the bones, as in the mandibular symphysis and the pubic symphysis.

**Synovial joints**, the most abundant type in the body, afford the greatest degree of joint movement. The articular surfaces of the bones are covered by hyaline cartilage. The entire joint is in turn covered by ligaments forming an articular capsule, which is lined by synovial membrane. Occasionally, the joint is separated by an articular disk (meniscus). This meniscus is continuous with the capsule peripherally, but its articular surfaces are not covered with synovial membrane. A variety of synovial joints exist in the body, each permitting only a particular type of movement. These movements are categorized using six different terms. Because most of these terms are not associated with the joints of the head and neck, they will be defined as discussion of individual joints requires.

Articulations of the synovial joint are usually of a gliding or sliding character. The joint contains synovial fluid, which acts as a lubricant and also supplies nutrients to the avascular articular cartilage. Synovial joints are richly supplied with sensory nerve endings, principally of the proprioceptive variety, as well as with pain and stretch receptors. Articular capsules and ligaments are highly vascularized, forming capillary networks over the synovial membranes (Fig. 3-4).

### Bone Development

**Summary Bite.** Bone formation may occur in either of two ways: intramembranous bone formation or endochondral bone formation.

During embryogenesis and postnatal growth, bone may develop in one of two ways. It may be formed directly in mesenchyme, in which case the mode is intramembranous. Most of the flat bones of the skull are formed in this manner. The other method of bone formation involves bone being elaborated on and replacing a cartilage template. This is endochondral bone formation and represents the manner in which long bones and most other bones of the body are formed.

**Intramembranous Bone Formation**

**Summary Bite.** Intramembranous bone formation begins in a highly vascularized region where mesenchymal cells develop into bone-forming cells.

**Intramembranous bone formation** begins as the area destined to become bone becomes highly vascularized and the mesenchymal cells develop into osteoblasts. These bone-forming cells then begin secreting collagen and a matrix composed of mucopolysaccharides, constituting the osteoid. These osteoblasts possess large cell processes that communicate with other osteoblasts and nearby blood vessels. At this stage, the osteoid is a rubbery, tough, somewhat elastic material as yet uncalcified.

Mineral ions of calcium and phosphate, circulating in the blood, begin to diffuse into osteoid tissue and are deposited on the surfaces of collagen fibers as fine crystals. This imparts a hardness and rigidity to the osteoid in the process of becoming bone. Osteoblasts (cells that were responsible for secreting the matrix) become trapped in lacunae and are now renamed osteocytes.

**Endochondral Bone Formation**

**Summary Bite.** Endochondrial bone formation takes place as bone cells invade and replace a cartilaginous template.

**Endochondral bone formation** begins after a cartilage template has been formed in an area destined to become bone. The hyaline cartilage miniaturized model, which continues to grow while at the same time being replaced by bone, originally develops in mesenchyme in a fashion similar to that of intramembranous bone. Condensation of mesenchymal cells is followed by differentiation into chondroblasts, which secrete a
Figure 3-3. Joint types. (A) Synovial joint. (B) Fibrous joint. (C) Cartilaginous joints.
viscous polysaccharide matrix interspersed with collagen fibers. The chondroblasts eventually become entrapped in a lacuna within the matrix and are then renamed chondrocytes. Because the matrix might not become calcified soon after formation, if at all, chondrocytes might continue to divide within the lacuna, indicative of interstitial growth. Later, the entrapped cells become quiescent, ceasing to produce matrix. Once these cells stop secretion, the only method of enlarging the cartilage model is by appositional growth at the periphery by cells differentiated from the perichondrium. Because of the nature of the cartilage matrix, it does not become infiltrated by blood vessels. Nutrients reach the cells by diffusion only; therefore, chondrocyte metabolism is low compared with that of osteocytes in bone. This low metabolic rate accounts for the slow repair of cartilage.

During endochondral bone formation, the perichondrium of the cartilage model becomes vascularized at mid-diaphysis (shaft), causing the chondrogenic cells to become osteoprogenitor cells, which proliferate to form osteoblasts—cells that elaborate bone in this region. Eventually a periosteal bud, composed of mesenchymal cells, osteoprogenitor cells, hemopoietic cells, and blood vessels, invade the model and the cartilage begins to calcify. Simultaneously, osteoprogenitor cells differentiate into osteoblasts and start elaborating bony tissue on the calcified cartilage. Then chondroclasts (phagocytic cells) begin to destroy the calcified cartilage–calcified bone complex and new bone is elaborated in the remaining space, thus developing a primary ossification center. This process spreads outward from the center and, in the case of a long bone, for example, it may take many years to complete.

The bony structure continues to elongate at its epiphyses (ends) by cartilaginous growth. The center of the diaphysis of the long bone is composed of cancellous bone, which is finally remodeled to withstand stresses on it. Later, much of it is replaced with red bone marrow composed of specialized stem cells that give rise to blood cells. The wall of the shaft is composed of very hard and strong compact bone to which muscles are attached via tendons (Fig. 3-5).

The architecture of the bone is in a constant state of change in response to the mechanical stresses placed on it. The mandible and maxillae, for example, are constantly being restructured to meet the changing stresses imposed by growth as well as by tooth eruption, movement, wear, and loss. This constant simultaneous growth and remodeling process is achieved by resorbing bone from certain areas and depositing new bone in other areas. The cells associated with the process of resorption are the osteoclasts, whereas the osteoblasts responsible for depositing new bone are derived from the osteoprogenitor cells of the periosteum covering the bone or the endosteum lining the medullary cavity. This is the process that permits the orthodontist to move teeth because tension stimulates...
new bone formation, whereas pressure activates resorption (Wolff’s Law).

**Cartilage**

**Summary Bite.** Hyaline cartilage is at the growing ends of bone and the template for endochondral bone formation; fibrocartilage is in the intervertebral discs; and elastic cartilage is in the ear, auditory tube, epiglottis, and larynx.

Any discussion of bone requires the mention of the articulating cartilages that serve as connective tissue at the joints. Cartilage is a supporting tissue that possesses a firm but somewhat pliable anatomy, permitting it to withstand compression and great stresses at the joints.

Cartilage also serves as the template for endochondral bone formation and functions in long bone growth, as previously discussed. Although cartilage is formed in a fashion similar to bone, it is poorly vascularized and innervated. Three types are recognized: **hyaline, fibrous, and elastic.** Hyaline cartilage is the type found in the cartilage template of long bones and at their growing ends. Hyaline cartilage is located also at the joints as articulating cartilage and may be found also in the tracheal rings and larynx. Fibrocartilage is present in the intervertebral discs, in the pubic symphysis, and in the mandibular symphysis. Elastic cartilage occurs in the external ear, the auditory tube, the epiglottis, and some components of the larynx.

**CIRCULATORY SYSTEM**

**Summary Bite.** The circulatory system is composed of two parts: the cardiovascular system and the lymphatic vascular system.

The circulatory system is composed of two parts working in unison to maintain the internal environment. The heart, arteries, veins, capillaries, and blood comprise the cardiovascular system, whereas the lymph nodes, spleen, tonsils, thymus, lymph, and lymphatic vessels make up the lymphatic system.

**Cardiovascular System**

**Summary Bite.** The cardiovascular system is composed of the heart, arteries, veins, capillaries, and blood.

The cardiovascular system functions to provide transportation of oxygen, water, nutritive materials, and hormones to the tissues of the body in exchange for carbon dioxide and wastes that will be further transported to excretory organs for elimination from the body.

Blood, the fluid tissue of the cardiovascular system, is composed of cells and plasma. The cells are **erythrocytes (red blood cells)** and **leukocytes (white blood cells).** Erythrocytes, which are manufactured in red bone marrow, transport oxygen and carbon dioxide gases to and from the body tissues, respectively. Leukocytes, also manufactured in the bone marrow, are diverse in origin and function. Agranular leukocytes, which include **lymphocytes and monocytes,** originate in red bone marrow and lymphatic tissues. They function in the defense of the body and are especially well represented in the immune system. Granular leukocytes include **eosinophils, neutrophils,** and **basophils.** These cells are generally assigned the functions of protecting the body from outside invasion and combating infection. **Blood platelets,** formed elements also found in the blood, assist in coagulating the blood. The **plasma** (liquid portion of the blood) is composed of water, proteins, enzymes, and salts as well as the products of digestion and excretion. This fluid leaks out of the capillary walls, becoming the extracellular fluid (tissue fluid) bathing the cells with its contents and picking up wastes before its return to the circulatory system via either venous or lymph capillaries.

The heart, arteries, veins, and capillaries comprise the closed system for the transportation function of the cardiovascular system. The heart is a double pump in that it serves two circuits for blood flow that are completely separated from each other in a normal healthy adult heart. The **pulmonary circuit,** located in the right side of the heart, receives venous (deoxygenated) blood in the right atrium from the body via the **superior and inferior venae cavae** and from the walls of the heart via the **coronary sinus.** During muscular contraction, the pooled blood is pumped from the right atrium through the **right atrioventricular (tricuspid) valve** into the **right ventricle.** Blood in the ventricle is then pumped out the **pulmonary trunk,** which divides into **right and left pulmonary arteries** transporting the blood to the lungs for oxygenation and some excretion (Fig. 3-6).

Oxygenated blood returns from the lungs in the **pulmonary veins** to enter the left side of the heart in the **left atrium.** The blood is now in the **systemic circuit,** where it is pumped through the **left atrioventricular (bicuspid) valve** into the enlarged, very muscular **left ventricle.** From here, the blood will be pumped out of the **aorta** to be distributed by arteries throughout the entire body (Fig. 3-6).
The arteries branch like a tree, becoming smaller and smaller, with each branching leading away from the heart. The blood flows away from the heart from large arteries to small arteries to arterioles and metarterioles and finally to capillaries with a bore large enough only to permit red blood cells to traverse one or two at a time (Fig. 3-7). In the capillary bed, gases and nutrients are exchanged for wastes, whereas hormones and enzymes are delivered for body maintenance. Muscles in the walls of the vessels control the blood flow to the periphery, thus aiding in the control and management of body temperature and oxygen requirements.

The cardiovascular system is under control of the nervous system. The rate and force of the heartbeat is modulated by the autonomic nervous system through the specialized cells within the heart musculature. These specialized cells have the innate capacity to perpetuate the rate of heartbeat, but the rate has to be modified by nerve impulses arising from the autonomic nervous system. The blood vessels, particularly the arteries, are also under control of the autonomic nervous system. Nerve impulses to the muscular walls of the arteries elicit either dilation or contraction of the vessel lumen, thereby increasing or decreasing the rate of flow.

Specialized sensory mechanisms to monitor blood pressure and oxygen and carbon dioxide tension within the bloodstream are located in the carotid arteries within the neck. The carotid sinus, located at the beginning of the internal carotid artery, responds to changes in blood pressure. The
carotid body, located at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery, is a chemoreceptor sensitive to changes in oxygen and carbon dioxide tension as well as hydrogen ion concentration within the blood. When stimulated, both of these specialized receptors, served by cranial nerves, evoke an autonomic response aimed at returning the system to homeostasis (Fig. 3-8).

**Lymphatic System**

**Summary Bite.** The lymphatic system is composed of the lymph nodes, spleen, tonsils, thymus, lymph, and lymph vessels.

The lymphatic system begins as an extensive system of capillary beds collecting the lymph (extracellular fluid) from the tissues (Fig. 3-7). The capillaries empty into larger lymphatic vessels, and eventually the lymphatic vessels empty their contents into the bloodstream in the large veins at the base of the neck. Between the capillary beds and the point of entry into the bloodstream, the lymph passes through one or usually several lymph nodes, which act as filters. Here, lymphocytes reside in lymphoid nodules and in the paracortex and are propagated for circulation in the bloodstream to sites for combating foreign intrusion.

Lymph capillaries within the small intestine, called lacteals, receive fatty products of digestion which are eventually transported to the bloodstream via the thoracic duct.

In addition to the lymph nodes, the lymphatic system also includes the spleen, thymus, and tonsils, which are responsible for other lymphatic functions such as the filtering of blood and the maintenance of immunocompetence.
Chapter 3  Body Systems

NERVOUS SYSTEM

Summary Bite. The nervous system is divided into the peripheral nervous system (PNS) and the central nervous system (CNS). The PNS is composed of 12 pairs of cranial nerves and 31 pairs of spinal nerves. The CNS is composed of the brain and spinal cord.

The nervous system is a complex organization of tissue, ramifying throughout the body, functioning to collect information from within and from outside the environment of the body. The nervous system sorts this information, then reacts to perceived challenges imposed on it. Included within the functions of this system is the process of cognitive faculties occurring in the highest centers of the brain.

The nervous system is divided morphologically, for descriptive purposes, into two divisions: the peripheral nervous system (PNS) and the central nervous system (CNS). The PNS comprises 12 pairs of cranial nerves emanating from the brain and 31 pairs of spinal nerves originating from the spinal cord. The CNS is composed of the brain and the spinal cord (Fig. 3-9).

Structure

Summary Bite. The nervous system is made up of neurons (impulse-conducting cells) and neuroglial cells that support the neurons.

The tissue of this system is made up of specialized cells, neurons, which conduct impulses, and neuroglial cells, which serve in a supporting capacity.

A neuron, the basic structural unit of the system, possesses the ability to perceive stimuli (irritability) and to transmit physiochemical impulses along its processes (conduction) to effector organs and/or other neurons. The neuron is composed of a cell body (soma, perikaryon) and its processes. The cell body contains the nucleus and cytoplasm containing Nissl bodies (rough endoplasmic reticulum), which may be made visible by light microscopy through the use of special stains. Neuron cell bodies are located either in a ganglion, if outside the CNS, or in nuclei, if within the CNS. Radiating from the cell body are
freely branching processes called **dendrites**, which transmit impulses toward the cell body, and a singular **axon**, which transmits impulses away from the perikaryon. The axon emanates from the cell body at a bulge called the **axon hillock**. The arrangement of processes around the cell body might vary from that described here and are thus supplied with descriptive terms (Fig. 3-10).

Axons may or may not possess a fatty **myelin sheath** covering composed of the wrapping of Schwann cell plasmalemma (in the PNS) or oligodendroglia cell membrane (in the CNS). These
myelin sheaths are of variable thickness and completely surround the **axis cylinder**, except at regular intervals along the axon. These intervals, called the **nodes of Ranvier**, impart a linked-sausage appearance to the axon. Myelinated or unmyelinated axons are covered by a **neurilemma sheath** composed of Schwann cells (in the PNS) or oligodendroglia (in the CNS). The speed of conduction of an impulse along a nerve fiber is related to the absence or presence and the thickness of the myelin sheath (Fig. 3-10).

**Figure 3-10.** Motor neuron. Observe the axon synapsing with the muscle at the motor end plate.

**Functional Components**

- **Summary Bite.** Neurons are either of a sensory (afferent) function, an intercalated (connecting) function, or a motor (efferent) function.

See Chapter 18 for a more thorough discussion. Neurons are categorized functionally as sensory, intercalated (connecting), or motor. Sensory (afferent) and motor (efferent) functions are each further
subcategorized to facilitate description of a neuron’s specific function. **General somatic afferent** refers to sensory function (modality) perceived from the body and transmitted to the spinal cord or brain. Sensations such as pain, temperature, and touch to the skin are perceived by neurons in this category. Also in this category is sensation from muscles, tendons, and joints, referred to as “proprioception.”

**General visceral afferent** is the sensory modality received from within the viscera (glands, organs, and membranes). **General somatic efferent**, a motor component, serves to provide innervation to all of the skeletal muscles of somatic origin, whereas **general visceral efferent** stimulation provides motor innervation to smooth muscles, cardiac muscles, and glands.

Sensory and motor functions within the head are carried by the cranial nerves. Certain muscle groups and the sense organs for hearing, smell, taste, and sight make this group “special.” The senses of sight and hearing are transmitted by **special somatic afferent** sensory neurons, whereas taste and smell are transmitted by **special visceral afferent** sensory fibers. Similarly, the motor component to the “special” muscles (branchiomeric origin) is the **special visceral efferent**. Because no “special” category exists for glandular secretomotor function in the head, the **general visceral afferent** component remains for the glands, smooth muscles, and mucous membranes of this region. Note that certain of the cranial nerves carry **general visceral afferent** sensory components from the viscera of the head as well.

**Peripheral Nervous System**

**Summary Bite.** The PNS represents those nerve fibers that receive stimuli from the interior or exterior of the body (i.e., sight and hearing) and transmit it to the CNS for processing. The PNS also delivers motor function from the CNS to the periphery.

Sensory neurons originating peripherally (e.g., in skin) may possess nerve endings specialized for receiving various stimuli, such as cold, hot, touch, and pressure. Nerve endings transmitting pain, on the other hand, are free and without specializations. Dendrites of the spinal nerves are connected to their cell bodies located in the **dorsal root ganglion**, which is just outside the spinal cord. The axons pass from the ganglion via the **dorsal root** into the **dorsal horn** (sensory) of the spinal cord. Here they may terminate, enter the white matter of the cord to ascend or descend before synapsing on connecting neurons in the spinal cord, or ascend to conscious levels in the brain (Fig. 3-11).

Cell bodies of spinal motor neurons are located in the **ventral horn** (motor) of the spinal cord. Their axons traverse the **ventral root** on leaving the spinal cord. Just beyond the dorsal root ganglion area, the sensory and motor roots unite, forming a spinal nerve that thus carries both sensory and motor components (Fig. 3-11). Motor fibers destined for muscle will continue on to synapse at the **motor end plate**, a specialized ending between the nerve and the muscle (Fig. 3-10).

Sensory nerve endings located, for example, in the patellar ligament of the knee do not have their

![Figure 3-11. Typical thoracic spinal cord segment and spinal nerve.](image)
terminals in the dorsal horn but, instead, terminate directly on motor neurons in the ventral horn of the spinal cord, thus effecting a reflex arc that bypasses connecting neurons. Rapid opening of the mouth as a result of painful stimuli from biting down on a piece of bone while chewing is an example of a reflex arc in the fifth cranial nerve.

Central Nervous System

Summary Bite. The central nervous system is composed of the brain and spinal cord.

The central nervous system is represented by the brain, which is housed with the skull, and the spinal cord, which is housed within the vertebral canal surrounded by the divisions of the vertebrae. The brain and spinal cord are responsible for analysis, integration, and response for the body via sensory input and motor output.

Coverings

Summary Bite. The CNS possesses three separate meninges that encase it: dura mater, arachnoid, and the pia mater.

The CNS is composed of the brain and the spinal cord (see Chapter 17). Each is delicately covered by several layers of meninges and is protected by bone—either the skull around the brain or the bony vertebral column that surrounds the spinal cord.

The meninges covering the brain and spinal cord are continuous and completely enclose the CNS. Three separate layers make up the meninges: a tough outer layer, the dura mater; an inner delicate layer closely applied to the brain and the spinal cord and their vessels, the pia mater; and an intermediate layer, the arachnoid, which is closely applied to the dura. Only a potential space exists between the dura and arachnoid, known as the subdural space. The subarachnoid space, located between the arachnoid and pia layers, contains the cerebrospinal fluid that functions in bathing and further protecting the CNS.

Autonomic System

Summary Bite. The autonomic nervous system, by definition, is a motor system controlling the viscera, cardiac and smooth muscle, and glands. It is subdivided into the enteric, sympathetic, and parasympathetic systems.

The autonomic (involuntary, visceral) nervous system exerts control over the viscera of the body, serving cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and/or glands. By definition, the autonomic nervous system is purely motor in function. Its manner of functioning is different from that previously described in that innervation is accomplished via a two-neuron chain between the CNS and the effector organ (smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands). The cell body of the first neuron in the chain is located in the CNS (brain or spinal cord), whereas the cell body of the second neuron is located in one of the autonomic ganglia, all of which lie outside the CNS (Figs. 3-11 and 3-12).

The autonomic system is subdivided into the enteric, sympathetic, and parasympathetic systems. The enteric nervous system is located in the wall of the digestive system and functions in the autonomic control of the digestive system. It is influenced by the other two components of the autonomic system. The enteric nervous system is not associated with the head and neck and, therefore, will not be discussed in this textbook.

Sympathetic Nervous System

Summary Bite. The sympathetic nervous system is that system which puts the body ready for action (“fight or flight”).

The sympathetic system generally prepares the body for action—as in the “fight or flight” response—by increasing heart rate, respiration, blood pressure, and blood flow to the skeletal muscles; dilating the pupils; and generally “shutting down” visceral activity. Neurons of the sympathetic system originate in the intermediolateral cell column of the spinal cord in the thoracic and upper lumbar segments (T1 to L2–L3). Thus, they are often referred to as the thoracolumbar outflow of visceral efferent fibers (Fig. 3-13A).

Parasympathetic Nervous System

Summary Bite. The parasympathetic nervous system serves to “calm” the body, returning it to a homeostatic state.

Parasympathetic innervation, conversely, functions to calm the body by decreasing heart rate, respiration, and blood pressure; constricting the pupils; and increasing visceral activity. Both systems innervate many organs of the body where their antagonistic actions serve to balance functioning to maintain homeostasis.

Neurons of the parasympathetic system originate either in the brain in certain nuclei of cranial
nerves III, VII, IX, and X (cranial outflow) or in the sacral spinal cord from the intermediolateral cell column of spinal nerves S2–S4 (sacral outflow). Together, this system is known as the craniosacral outflow (Fig. 3-13B).

The cell body of the first neuron within the two-neuron chain of the autonomic system is located within the visceral efferent column of the CNS. The axon of this neuron will synapse on the cell body of the second neuron in the chain, located in one of the autonomic ganglia; thus, this axon is preganglionic. The axon of the second neuron is postganglionic and extends to the effector organ. The sympathetic system is served by the autonomic ganglia located along most of the spinal segments. These ganglia are known as the sympathetic chain ganglia (paravertebral ganglia) and are connected to each other by the sympathetic trunk and the several collateral ganglia (preaortic ganglia) along the major abdominal blood vessels (Figs. 3-11 and 3-13A). Ganglia of the parasympathetic system are located close to the structures innervated and are called terminal ganglia, four of which are in the head, whereas others, the enteric ganglia, are located within the wall of the alimentary canal (Fig. 3-13B).

Preganglionic sympathetic fibers reach the chain ganglia via the white rami communicantes, a connection between the spinal nerve and the ganglion transmitting the myelinated fibers. The postganglionic fiber may enter the spinal nerve via the gray rami communicantes directly or after ascending or descending in the sympathetic trunk. Preganglionic fibers synapse only one time; therefore, those destined to synapse in the collateral ganglia do not synapse in the chain ganglia (Figs. 3-11 and 3-13A).

Preganglionic parasympathetic neurons of the cranial outflow originate in cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X only and may be distributed to the terminal ganglion via the cranial nerve of origin or by the named preganglionic fiber. Postganglionic fibers are distributed by other nerves serving the organ (Fig. 3-13B).

Acetylcholine is the neurotransmitter of both preganglionic sympathetic and parasympathetic neurons and postganglionic parasympathetic neurons. However, noradrenaline is the primary neurotransmitter of postganglionic sympathetic neurons.
Figure 3-13. Schematic representation of the autonomic nervous system. (A) The sympathetic nervous system. (continued)
Chapter 3  
Body Systems

Lacrimal gland  
Nasal, palatine, and pharyngeal glands  
Eye (iris, ciliary muscles)

Sacral parasympathetic outflow (via pelvic splanchnic nerves)

Parasympathetic fibers  
- Presynaptic  
- Postsynaptic

Cranial parasympathetic outflow (via four cranial nerves)

Figure 3-13. (continued) (B) The parasympathetic nervous system.
except those serving sweat glands. In this case, the neurotransmitter is acetylcholine.

The suprarenal (adrenal) medulla functions as a modified sympathetic ganglion. It receives preganglionic sympathetic fibers which synapse on chromaffin cells of the medulla, stimulating them to produce catecholamines, which give rise to epinephrine and norepinephrine, which are released into the bloodstream. The epinephrine produced here prepares the body for “fight or flight” during stress or fear. The norepinephrine produced here is short-lived.
The Oral Cavity, Palate, and Pharynx

Chapter Outline

Lips
- Clinical Considerations

Vestibule
- Clinical Considerations

Oral Cavity Proper

Tongue
- Clinical Considerations

Palate
- Clinical Considerations

Teeth
- Odontogenesis

Pharynx
- Clinical Considerations

Key Terms

Lips are the highly vascular fleshy structures that guard the entrance to the oral cavity. The dry, red vermilion zone gives way to a wet epithelium lining the vestibule.

Oral Cavity Proper is that part of the oral cavity lying within the space created by the dental arches and their surrounding gingiva of each jaw. It is bounded superiorly by the palate and inferiorly by the muscular tongue.

Palate forms the roof of the oral cavity proper and consists of an anterior-placed bony palate and the posterior soft palate.

Pharynx is a mucous-lined tube attached to the base of the cranium coursing inferiorly to become continuous with the esophagus. It serves as an airway to the larynx and as a passageway for food and drink to the esophagus.

Teeth are arranged on both the maxillary and mandibular arches and articulate with the teeth on the opposing arch during occlusion. While they are in occlusion the oral cavity proper and the vestibule are separated. The deciduous dentition possesses 20 teeth, which is later replaced by the permanent dentition possessing a complement of 32 teeth.

Tongue forms the floor of the oral cavity proper and consists of the body, the freely moving portion, and the base which is attached to the hyoid bone.

Vestibule is that portion inside the oral cavity lying between the dental arches and the cheeks laterally and the lips anteriorly.
This chapter provides an overview of the anatomy of the oral cavity as it would be observed in an oral examination. In addition, some pertinent clinical aspects of the variations in normal anatomy of the oral cavity are addressed where appropriate. Subsequent chapters detail regional dissections pertinent to a thorough understanding of the anatomic structures of the head and neck.

The oral cavity (mouth) is the entry portal of the digestive system. It is bounded anteriorly by the lips and posteriorly by the oropharyngeal isthmus (isthmus faucium), a more or less circular aperture that guards the entrance to the pharynx. The oral cavity is lined with mucous membrane composed of stratified squamous epithelium and an underlying dense, irregular, collagenous connective tissue that houses minor salivary glands. For purposes of description, the oral cavity is subdivided into two major regions: the outer vestibule and the inner oral cavity proper.

LIPS

Summary Bite. The highly vascular fleshy lips guard the entrance to the mouth. The red vermilion zone gives way to mucous membrane leading into the oral cavity.

The lips are two fleshy, mobile structures guarding the entrance to the mouth. They are covered externally with skin that overlies muscle, glands, and connective tissue. Internally they are lined with a mucous membrane. The red portion of the lips, whose coloration is caused by a rich vascular bed visible through the thin epithelium, is termed the vermilion zone. Because it is not a wet membrane, it must be kept moistened with the tongue to prevent drying. The skin and vermilion zone join at the vermilion border.

The superior lip is bounded laterally by the nasolabial groove extending from the ala (wing) of the nose to a short distance lateral to the corner of the mouth. A slight shallow, vertical depression in the midline from the nose to the vermilion border is the philtrum (Cupid’s bow), and just inferior to this depression is the labial tubercle, a fleshy bump of varying size in the vermilion zone (Fig. 4-1). The inferior lip is separated from the chin by the labiomental groove.

The two lips are connected laterally by the labial commissures, which are thin folds of tissue that are easily viewed when the mouth is slightly opened. Occasionally a slight depression is noted in the center of the labial commissure, known as the commissural lip pit. The oral fissure (rima of the mouth) is the zone between the superior and inferior lips, which may be opened or, when the two lips are in contact with each other, closed.

The lips develop from several sources, including the median nasal (intermaxillary segment), maxillary, and mandibular processes. Many of the structures just described are fusion remnants of these embryologic origins and often become more pronounced with advancing age. A more detailed description of the development and congenital deformities of the lips is presented in Chapter 5.

VESTIBULE

Summary Bite. The vestibule is the space between the lips and the cheeks external to the teeth in occlusion.

The vestibule is the cleft or space between the lips and cheeks externally and the teeth and gingiva of the dental arches internally when the teeth are in occlusion. The vestibule communicates with the exterior through the oral fissure of the lips and with the oral cavity proper via the interdental spaces and the interval posterior to the last molar teeth in each dental arch (Fig. 4-2).

Laterally, the vestibule is referred to as the buccal vestibule, whereas anteriorly, in the region of the lips, it is termed the labial vestibule. The mucobuccal and/or mucolabial folds (fornix) represent the location point at which the regionally named vestibular mucosa turns to become the alveolar mucosa. Located
in the superior labial vestibule is the incisive fossa represented by a shallow depression superior to the incisor teeth.

The bulge extending into the labial vestibule from the alveolar ridge over the root of the superior canine tooth is the canine eminence, whereas the shallow depression just lateral to it is the canine fossa (Fig. 4-3).

Protruding into the roof of the buccal vestibule in the vicinity of the first molar is the zygomatic process of the maxilla. This structure may easily be palpated. The nearly vertical anterior border of the masseter muscle may also be palpated in the posterior buccal vestibule because it extends from the angle of the mandible to the zygomatic arch.

The region of the maxilla posterior to the zygomatic process and superior to the last molar is the maxillary tuberosity. This is an important area anatomically because it serves as an injection site for anesthesia of the posterior superior alveolar nerve.

The parotid gland empties its salivary secretions into the buccal vestibule at a small orifice opposite the second maxillary molar. This opening, which appears elevated in the mucosa, is the parotid papilla (Stenson duct). Several other small minor salivary glands that are regionally named—for example, the

Cleft lip, often associated with cleft alveolar and primary palate, is the result of a developmental defect and occurs in approximately 1 in 1,000 births. The terminology and severity of this and associated defects in the palate are discussed in detail in Chapter 5.

Congenital commissural lip pits may be observed infrequently at the angle of the mouth in the commissure. These are remnants of development and are not clinically significant (Fig. 4-1). The mouth from corner to corner normally spans between the first premolar teeth.

As the mouth is opened the oral fissure becomes an oval to circular aperture.

Abnormally large superior labial frenula may invade the interdental space between the maxillary central incisors, thus causing a large diastema. This may be relieved by severing the frenula (frenectomy). If after a reasonable time the diastema persists, orthodontic treatment may be necessary.

Figure 4-2. Buccal vestibule illustrating buccal mucosa and Fordyce granules. (1) Palate; (2) Tongue; (3) Molar; (4) Buccal vestibule; (5) Fordyce granules.

Figure 4-3. Superior labial vestibule indicating regionally named gingiva covering anatomic regions of maxillae. (1) Superior labial frenulum; (2) Mucogingival junction; (3) Marginal gingiva; (4) Attached gingiva; (5) Alveolar mucosa; (6) Canine fossa.
buccal glands and labial glands—also open into the vestibule via microscopic openings (Figs. 4-2 and 4-4).

In most individuals, small yellow spots may be observed in the buccal mucosa lateral to the corner of the lips. These are Fordyce granules, composed of defunct sebaceous glands that became trapped in the mucosa during development (Fig. 4-2).

Extra reflections of labial mucosa appear as folds of tissue in the midline attaching the superior and inferior lips to the gingiva. These are the labial frenula (sing. frenulum), where the superior labial frenulum is the most prominent (Fig. 4-3). Often, additional frenula may be observed in the labial and buccal vestibules.

Occasionally, the superior labial frenulum is so broadly attached that it interferes with normal eruption of the central incisors, thereby producing a diastema. Correction of this condition usually requires surgical removal of the frenulum between the central incisors to permit the teeth to return to the normal position.

The gingiva (gum) is covered by the gingival mucosa, which folds back on itself to form a free edge, known as the gingival margin, which surrounds the inferior margin of the clinical crowns of the teeth. The vestibular gingiva in this region becomes continuous with the gingiva of the oral cavity proper.

The interdental papilla lies between the teeth in the interdental spaces, and the retromolar papilla is that specialized area of the gingiva distal to the last molars in both dental arches. The coronal-most aspect of the interdental papilla of the molar region usually possesses a concavity known as the col.

Gingival mucosa is pale pink and stippled in good oral health. The alveolar mucosa overlies the alveolar processes of both the maxillary and mandibular arches. Its red hue is caused by the visibility of its vascularity through the nonkeratinized epithelium of its mucosa. Where the alveolar mucosa blends into the remaining vestibular mucosa is not easily distinguished. However, a rather sharp, scalloped line, the mucogingival junction, separates the gingival mucosa from the alveolar mucosa (Figs. 4-3 and 4-5).

Summary Bite. The oral cavity proper is that part of the oral cavity lying internal to the dental arches of each jaw and their surrounding gingiva. It is bounded superiorly by the palate and inferiorly by the muscular tongue.

The oral cavity proper lies internal to the dental arches and their contained dentition and gingiva. It is bounded superiorly by the palate and inferiorly by the muscular tongue and reflections of the mucous membrane extending from the mandibular gingiva in the sublingual sulcus (groove) to the base of the tongue. Anterolaterally, it is bounded by the lingual surfaces of the teeth, lingual gingiva, and lingual alveolar mucosa.

The posterior boundary of the oral cavity proper is formed by the vertical portion of the soft palate superiorly and by the anterior pillar of the fauces (the palatoglossal arch). This arch, which includes the palatoglossus muscle and overlying oral mucosa, extends from the soft palate to the sides of the base of the tongue (Fig. 4-6).
A fold of mucosa in the posterior-most boundary of the vestibule connecting the maxillary and mandibular alveolar regions covers the **pterygomandibular raphe**. The raphe is a tendinous inscription between the buccinator and superior constrictor muscles that is attached to the pterygoid hamulus and the area of the **retromolar triangle** of the mandible (Fig. C4-1).

The superior labial frenulum frequently possesses a tag of tissue located on its anterior surface approximately midway between its attachments at the lip and gingiva. This tissue lends an irregular surface to the frenulum. This small mass is nonpathologic and may be regarded as a hyperplastic anomaly. The region of the buccal mucosa adjacent to the mandibular retromolar papilla contains an aggregation of accessory buccal glands that results in a prominence in the mucosa. This, along with the retromolar papilla, is often referred to incorrectly as the **retromolar pad**.

Occasionally, a white line, the **linea alba**, may be observed on the buccal mucosa representing that area of

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Vestibule**

A fold of mucosa in the posterior-most boundary of the vestibule connecting the maxillary and mandibular alveolar regions covers the **pterygomandibular raphe**. The raphe is a tendinous inscription between the buccinator and superior constrictor muscles that is attached to the pterygoid hamulus and the area of the **retromolar triangle** of the mandible (Fig. C4-1).

The superior labial frenulum frequently possesses a tag of tissue located on its anterior surface approximately midway between its attachments at the lip and gingiva. This tissue lends an irregular surface to the frenulum. This small mass is nonpathologic and may be regarded as a hyperplastic anomaly. The region of the buccal mucosa adjacent to the mandibular retromolar papilla contains an aggregation of accessory buccal glands that results in a prominence in the mucosa. This, along with the retromolar papilla, is often referred to incorrectly as the **retromolar pad**.

Occasionally, a white line, the **linea alba**, may be observed on the buccal mucosa representing that area of

Communication of the oral cavity proper with the vestibule has been discussed previously; now its communication with the pharynx will be described.

The oral cavity communicates with the oral pharynx via the **oropharyngeal isthmus**, the **fauces**. This aperture is bounded by the soft palate superiorly, by the mucosa in close proximity to the occlusal surfaces when the jaws are in the closed position (Fig. C4-2).

The space of the vestibule is somewhat reduced when the mouth is opened by the forward movement of the coronoid process of the mandible as its condyle moves forward and downward. This may interfere with dental radiographic procedures in the maxillary molar area and in preparing study models and making maxillary dentures.

The masseter muscle also impinges on the vestibular space as the mouth is closed and teeth are clenched. The anterior edge of this muscle may be palpated in the clenched position by inserting a finger in the buccal vestibule. The presence of this muscle must be taken into account when fitting a mandibular prosthesis.
Chapter 4  The Oral Cavity, Palate, and Pharynx

The tongue, lying in the floor of the oral cavity proper, is divided into a body and the base.

The tongue, a muscular organ, is divided for descriptive purposes into the body, which lies relatively free in the oral cavity, and the base, which is fixed to the hyoid bone. The base spans the oral cavity and pharynx. The dorsum of the body possesses the **median sulcus**, a shallow groove superficially dividing the tongue longitudinally in the midline into right and left halves.

The surface mucosa exhibits specialized zones demarcating the remnants of the embryologic origin of the tongue. The **sulcus terminalis** may be observed as a posteriorly directed, V-shaped shallow groove separating the anterior two thirds (or body) from the posterior one third (base) of the tongue. The terminal sulcus is the developmental dividing line.
That is, anything anterior to it is in the oral cavity, whereas anything posterior to it is in the pharynx. The posterior one third and base will be described here because they may be observed when the tongue is protruded, as in an oral examination (Fig. 4-8).

Lying alongside but anterior to the terminal sulcus is a row of 8 to 10 mushroom-shaped circumvallate papillae (vallate papillae). These structures possess taste buds and receive the ducts of the serous glands of von Ebner, one of the few named groups of minor accessory salivary glands. The remaining mucosal surface of the dorsum of the anterior two thirds of the tongue possesses specialized projections, known as lingual papillae. The most numerous are the filiform papillae and, interspersed among them are the mushroom-shaped fungiform papillae; the former present a rough surface and they present no taste buds, whereas the latter display a few taste buds on their dorsal surface (Fig. 4-8).

On the posterolateral aspect of the anterior two thirds of the tongue are vertical furrows known as the foliate papillae; their taste buds degenerate after the first couple of years of life (Fig. 4-9). Located in the midline, just posterior to the apex of the sulcus, is the foramen cecum, a shallow, pitlike depression that is a remnant of the developmental thyroglossal duct (see Chapter 5). The rest of the dorsal surface of the posterior one third of the tongue exhibits irregular bulges in its mucosa representing the lingual tonsils.

The mucosa of the ventral surface of the tongue is smooth and without surface papillae. The medially placed lingual frenulum attaches the anterior two thirds of the tongue to the floor of the mouth (Fig. 4-10).

On either side of the frenulum, extending almost to the tip of the tongue, surface bulges may be observed representing the underlying glands of Blandin-Nuhn, another group of the named, minor accessory salivary glands. These glands are mixed, producing both serous and mucus saliva, which empty into the oral cavity via several minute pores.
The bilateral deep lingual veins may be observed through the nearly transparent mucosa on either side of the frenulum coursing just deep to the mucosa along the tongue’s inferior surface from the tip to the deep regions in the floor of the mouth, where the vein disappears from view.

Lateral to the vein is a fringed fold of mucous membrane, the plica fimbriata (Fig. 4-9), which often exhibits tissue tags from its free edge. Ducts of the glands of Blandin-Nuhn open into the oral cavity through the fringes of the plica fimbriata. Just above the floor of the mouth on either side of the lingual frenulum is an elevation of the mucous membrane (plica sublingualis) overlying the bulging sublingual glands (Fig. 4-10).

On closer examination one may observe several small openings along the surface of the plica sublingualis representing the small sublingual ducts (ducts of Rivinus). In addition, a large sublingual duct (duct of Bartholin) from the sublingual gland joins the submandibular duct (Wharton duct) just before its entry into the oral cavity for the delivery of saliva from the submandibular gland. The Wharton duct empties at the sublingual caruncula, an enlarged papilla adjacent to the lingual frenulum.

Incisive glands, a small group of minor accessory salivary glands, may also be found on the floor of the oral cavity on either side of the lingual frenulum just posterior to the mandibular incisors.

A more thorough discussion of the development, structure, vascularization, innervation, and function of the tongue is presented in Chapter 15.

**PALATE**

**Summary Bite.** The palate forms the roof of the oral cavity and is composed of the anterior hard palate and the posterior soft palate.

The palate, representing the roof of the oral cavity, is divided into the hard palate, comprising the anterior two thirds, and the soft palate, comprising the remaining posterior one third (Fig. 4-12). Mucoperiosteum covers part of the bony skeleton of the hard palate, whereas mucous membrane covers the muscular soft palate. Anterolaterally, the palatal mucosa blends into the alveolar and gingival mucosae surrounding the lingual surface of the maxillary teeth.

Posteriorly, the palate blends into the anterior and posterior pillars of the fauces laterally. The free posterior border of the soft palate terminates in the inferiorly directed uvula, located in the midline. The palatine velum is that area of the soft palate represented by the superiorly placed posterior free margin and the laterally placed pillars of the fauces (Fig. 4-13).
Chapter 4  The Oral Cavity, Palate, and Pharynx

Clinical Considerations

Tongue

Normally, the tongue varies considerably in size and surface presentation, and this variation is often the result of developmental abnormalities. Some of the more common inconsequential anomalies are microglossia (small tongue), macroglossia (large tongue), fissured tongue (excessive fissures in dorsum) (Fig. C4-3A), median rhomboid glossitis (an area devoid of lingual papilla), and crenated tongue (indentations along the margins pressing on the teeth in occlusion) (Fig. C4-3B).

Other anomalies exist, particularly in the lingual papilla, which manifest themselves in many ways, each of which has been supplied with a descriptive term. Space does not permit their descriptions here. Textbooks in oral diagnosis should contain this information.

If the lingual frenulum is attached to the tip of the tongue too far anteriorly, a condition known as ankyloglossia (tongue-tied) exists. This condition limits speech because of the immobility of the tongue. Ankyloglossia may be surgically corrected by clipping the frenulum (frenectomy) to shorten its extent.

The thyroglossal duct normally atrophies during fetal life. Incomplete atrophy leads to formation of a midline cyst or accessory thyroid in the vicinity of the foramen cecum. Depending on the size of this lingual thyroid, other structures in the vicinity may be obliterated and/or hidden from view.

Floor of Mouth

The floor of the oral cavity proper frequently possesses bony swellings along the lingual surface of the mandible known as mandibular tori (Fig. 4-11). Additional bony exostoses may be present on the buccal surface of the mandible in the vicinity of the alveolar processes. The tori present radiographic opacity, whereas the buccal exostoses seldom demonstrate radiographic change. Neither of the two conditions presents problems, except in denture construction when they must be removed surgically. Difficulty may be encountered in placing films for dental radiographs and in preparing study models.

A retrocuspid papilla, a small papule, may often be observed on the lingual gingiva adjacent to the mandibular cuspids. Such a papilla is not clinically significant.

Figure C4-3. Tongue forms. (A) Fissured tongue. Note the deep furrows on the surface. This represents a congenital anomaly rather than a pathologic condition. (B) Large tongue. Observe the slight scalloped region along the lateral border apparently indicating the lingual aspect of the occlusal arch.
Chapter 4  The Oral Cavity, Palate, and Pharynx

The mucoperiosteum displays some specializations in its surface, especially anteriorly. A median palatine raphe, the developmental fusion of the palatine shelves, may be observed on the hard palate.

Located in the midline of the palate, immediately behind the central incisors, lies a small, oval-shaped surface prominence termed the incisive papilla (Fig. 4-12). This structure covers the oral opening of the incisive canal through which the nasopalatine nerves and nasopalatine arteries are transmitted to the anterior palate. It is an important landmark for anesthesia of the anterior palate. Posterior to this region is a series of transverse folds that appear to radiate from the incisive papilla. These folds are the palatine rugae, which are vestigial in humans but may serve accessory masticating and special sensory functions in some lower animals.

Lateral to this area of the palate and beneath the covering mucosa is the fatty region. Moving posteriorly, the fatty region is replaced by a glandular region, housing the mucous, minor palatine glands extending into the soft palate. Near the midline and just posterior to the hard palate is the palatine fovea, a small depression or pit that receives the ducts of some of the palatine glands of the hard and soft palates (Fig. 4-12).

Clinical Considerations

Palate

The developmental defect of greatest concern to the dental profession is the cleft palate. Isolated incidence is in the vicinity of 1 in 2,500 births in the United States. Development, congenital anomalies, and terminology related to palate formation and clefting is discussed in detail in Chapter 5.

The normal shape of the palate is classically described as vaultlike, but this varies in individuals from narrow to wide, flat or high, and so on. Frequently, one may observe a midline bulge in the palate resulting from excess bone growth. This is termed palatine torus and presents no problem except during denture construction, at which time it must be removed surgically (Fig. C4-4).

Whenever anesthetic injections are to be administered in the palate they should be given, if possible, in an area away from the mucoperiosteum. If an injection must be given in the area covered by mucoperiosteum (hard palate), care must be exercised and the injection must be given slowly to prevent tearing of the collagenous bundles away from the bone.
The palate is formed by the fusion of the intermaxillary segment with the two lateral palatine processes of the maxillae. This fusion is initiated early in development and serves to separate the common oronasal cavity into separate nasal and oral cavities, thus limiting their communication only through the pharynx. A more thorough account of development and congenital anomalies associated with the palate is presented in Chapter 5.

**TEETH**

| Summary Bite | Teeth are arranged on the maxillary and mandibular arches. They articulate with their counterpart on the opposing arch and during occlusion, and when they do that they separate the oral cavity proper from the vestibule. |

The teeth are arranged in a row on both the maxillary and the mandibular dental arches. They form a boundary between the vestibule and the oral cavity proper. As discussed previously, the gingiva of the vestibule and the oral cavity proper become continuous in the interdental spaces.

The permanent teeth are named similarly on each side and in the two arches. There are two incisors, one canine (cuspid), two premolars (bicuspids), and three molars, thus, eight teeth are in each quadrant for a total complement of 32 teeth. This is the normal complement of teeth found in a mature adult. The third molar, wisdom tooth, is often slow to erupt and may not present itself in the oral cavity. Occasionally it is congenitally absent, thereby reducing the total complement of teeth (Figs. 4-14 and 4-15).

Deciduous teeth, as the name implies, are those that are eventually shed or replaced. Thus they represent the complement of teeth present in childhood. Each quadrant contains the following deciduous teeth: two incisors, one canine, and two molars. The molars occupy the same position as will the permanent premolars; thus, there are five deciduous teeth in each quadrant for a total of 20 teeth (Fig. 4-16).

The two dentitions, deciduous and permanent, may be expressed in a dental formula as in the following diagrams:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Deciduous</th>
<th>M C I I C M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maxilla</td>
<td>2 1 2 2 1 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>2 1 2 2 1 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permanent</th>
<th>M P C I I C P M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maxilla</td>
<td>3 2 1 2 1 2 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>3 2 1 2 1 2 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The teeth develop from substances elaborated by certain layers of the primitive oral ectoderm and certain specialized cells of the ectomesenchyme. As the teeth develop, the alveolar processes of the maxilla and mandible form the bony socket surrounding it. The tooth is anchored in its alveolus by a calcified tissue, the cementum, and a soft tissue, the periodontal ligament. The clinical crown of the tooth is that part exposed in the oral cavity, whereas the root lies in the bony alveolus, out of view. Enamel overlies dentin in the crown, where it terminates just below the gingival line at the neck. The dentin in the root is overlaid by the cementum, which anchors the tooth to the bone via the periodontal ligaments. The central core of the tooth is composed of the soft-tissue pulp containing blood vessels, nerves, and lymphatics that reach the area through the apical foramen at the tip of the root (Figs. 4-17 and 4-18).

The tooth has an occlusal surface that contacts the same surface of its counterpart on the opposing dental arch on closure of the mouth. Buccal surface and lingual surface refer to the vestibular surface and the oral cavity proper surface, respectively. The incisal edge is the cutting edge of the anterior teeth. The premolars and molars possess cusps (raised knobs on the occlusal surface). Also, because embryologically the teeth form from the midline laterally, the surface that most closely approximates the midline is considered to be the mesial aspect; that which is in the opposite direction is the distal aspect (Fig. 4-14).

**Odontogenesis**

Odontogenesis, the development of teeth, begins in the middle of the sixth week of gestation (Fig. 4-18). Although a continuous process, it is arbitrarily subdivided into various stages. These are the bud, cap, and bell stages, followed by apposition, root formation, and eruption.

The basal layer of the ectodermally derived presumptive oral epithelium of the stomadeum undergoes proliferation, both on the maxillary and mandibular arches, along the region of the future dental arches, forming a horseshoe-shaped band of ectodermal tissue, the dental lamina, surrounded by neural crest-derived ectomesenchyme.

The epithelially derived cells are separated from the underlying and surrounding connective tissue
Figure 4-14. Dental arches. Terminology and relationships in dental anatomy.
elements by a thin acellular layer, the **basement membrane**.

**Bud Stage**
Along with the formation of the dental lamina, 10 round epithelial structures, each referred to as a **bud**, develop at the distal aspect of the dental lamina of each arch. These correspond to the 10 deciduous teeth of each dental arch, and they signify the **bud stage** of tooth development.

Each bud is separated from the ectomesenchyme by a basement membrane. Ectomesenchymal cells congregate deep to the bud, forming a cluster of cells, which is the initiation of the condensation of the ectomesenchyme. The remaining ectomesenchymal cells are arranged in a more or less haphazardly uniform fashion.

**Cap Stage**
Cells of the inferior aspect of each tooth bud proliferate, forming a larger, more expanded structure, the **cap**. The cap is said to be composed of an epithelially derived **enamel organ**, which is separated by the basement membrane, from a condensation of ectomesenchymal cells, known as the **dental papilla**.

**Enamel Organ**
The cells in the core of the enamel organ are known as the **stellate reticulum**. It is completely enveloped by the two regions of a single layer of epithelial cells, the squamous to low–cuboidal-shaped **outer enamel epithelium (OEE)** and the cuboidal to low–columnar-shaped **inner enamel epithelium (IEE)**. They contact each other at the rim-shaped **cervical loop**, which represents the presumptive cervix of the future tooth. Some cells of the stellate reticulum form a group of flattened cells, known as the **enamel knot** (Ahren knot).

The **dental papilla**, the future pulp of the tooth, fills the concavity of the enamel organ. It is composed of a vascularized embryonic connective tissue whose mesenchymal cells are derived from neural crest.

The **dental follicle (dental sac)** is a membranous structure that surrounds the tooth germ. It will give rise to the periodontal ligament, cementum, and alveolus.

The **succedaneous lamina**, a cordlike epithelial band, arises from each enamel organ and will give rise to the enamel organ of that permanent tooth which will replace the deciduous tooth presently being formed. This permanent tooth germ will also go through the same stages of odontogenesis, but at a later date than its deciduous counterpart.

**Bell Stage**
Mitotic activity of the enamel organ enlarges this structure and forms a new cell layer, the **stratum intermedium**. The enlarged structure resembles a bell, hence the **bell stage** of tooth development. The cell layers of the inner enamel epithelium elongate and become tall, columnar cells. Because of this histologic change, the bell stage is said to be the stage of **histodifferentiation**.

Additionally, the entire bell-shaped enamel organ changes its morphology to form the template for the future tooth; therefore, the bell stage is also said to be the stage of **morphodifferentiation**.

**Enamel Knot**
The process of morphodifferentiation is responsible for the establishment of the template of the presumptive tooth, that is, the enamel organ will assume the
Figure 4-16. Development of the human dentition to maturity. Deciduous or primary teeth are darker in the illustration. (continued)
Figure 4-16. (Continued)
shape of an incisiform, caniniform, or molariform tooth. It has been recently discovered that this event is controlled by the enamel knot (Ahren knot).

It appears that the ectomesenchymal cells of the dental papilla induce the cells of the enamel knot to begin to express signaling molecules, thus transforming the enamel knot into one of the principal signaling centers of tooth morphogenesis.

**Origin of the Permanent Molars**

The posterior regions of the upper and lower dental laminae elongate and each newly elongated region forms three buds, the three permanent molars of each quadrant, for which no deciduous counterparts exist. Therefore, these 12 permanent molars are referred to as accessional teeth.

**Apposition**

The tall, columnar cells of the dental papilla, the pre-odontoblasts, begin to elaborate a collagen-rich substance known as dentin matrix, and these cells are now referred to as odontoblasts.

In response to the formation of mantle dentin, the preameloblasts become ameloblasts and secrete the first layer of enamel matrix. Since this very first layer of enamel matrix differs from most of the enamel matrix of the tooth, it is referred to as aprismatic enamel matrix. Thus, the dentinoenamel junction has just been established in a very small region of the developing tooth germ.
Odontoblasts retreat on a daily basis, and they apparently move approximately 4 to 8 μm per day. During this motion they elaborate dentin matrix. As aprismatic enamel matrix is being formed, the ameloblasts retreat (as did the odontoblasts) but in the opposite direction.

As they move away from the odontoblasts, each forms a short, blunt Tomes process and manufactures enamel matrix around this process. As the enamel matrix is secreted, the ameloblast withdraws its Tomes process, leaving a space in the enamel matrix, known as rod space, which quickly becomes filled with enamel matrix, and a small block of enamel matrix is known as a rod segment. Every day, each ameloblast manufactures a single rod segment; these rod segments are placed on top of one another, forming an enamel rod (enamel prism). Because of these rod segments, the enamel formed is known as prismatic enamel.

Root Formation
Root formation begins when dentinogenesis and amelogenesis approach the cervical loop. Possibly influenced by the presence of enamel and dentin near the cervical loop, this structure begins to undergo mitosis and grows in an apical direction as an epithelial cylinder that surrounds the dental papilla. This epithelial cylinder, the Hertwig epithelial root sheath, is composed of two layers of cells, an outer and an inner layer, derived from the outer enamel epithelium and the inner enamel epithelium, respectively.

Because of the absence of a stellate reticulum and stratum intermedium, the inner layer of the Hertwig epithelial root sheath will not form enamel. However, these cells will provide signaling molecules that will cause the peripheral layer of cells of the dental papilla to differentiate into odontoblasts and elaborate dentin matrix. These cells will also form, on the surface of mantle dentin, an enamel-like hyaline layer of Hopewell-Smith, a substance that facilitates the adherence of cementum to the radicular dentin.

Radicular Dentinogenesis
Radicular dentin formation is similar to coronal dentin formation in that there is a layer of mantle dentin matrix formed first. The bulk of radicular dentin, known as circumcemental dentin, is manufactured similarly to its coronal counterpart.

Cell Rests of Malassez
Subsequent to the formation of the hyaline layer of Hopewell-Smith, the Hertwig epithelial root sheath (which was composed of two continuous layers of epithelial cells) begins to undergo partial degeneration. It becomes a network of epithelial cords surrounding the root of the tooth, and is called the rest cells of Malassez.

Cementoblasts
Ectomesenchymal cells, derived from the dental follicle, pass through the discontinuities among the network of epithelial cords and, proceeding between the newly formed dentin and the now incomplete inner layer of the Hertwig epithelial root sheath, differentiate into cementoblasts. The cementoblasts manufacture cementum matrix, which mineralizes to become cementum.

Detailed information regarding developmental processes, as well as information on the complex anatomy and function of the individual teeth, is available in texts of oral histology, embryology, and dental anatomy.

PHARYNX

Summary Bite. The muscular pharynx is a mucosal lined tube attached to the base of the cranium, coursing inferiorly to become continuous with the esophagus. It serves as an airway to the larynx and as a passageway for food and drink to the esophagus.

The pharynx is a muscular tube lined with mucous membrane. It extends in an inferior direction from the base of the cranium to the level of the sixth cervical vertebra, where it becomes continuous with the esophagus. The pharynx possesses several attachments along its length; therefore, its mobility is somewhat restricted.

The pharynx lies behind the nasal cavity, oral cavity, and larynx. Although its posterior wall presents a continuous surface, superiorly its anterior wall is interrupted by the choanae of the nasal cavity and the isthmus of the oral cavity. Thus, the pharynx serves to conduct air to the larynx from the nasal and oral cavities as well as food to the esophagus from the mouth.

The muscular wall of the pharynx is composed of three overlapping muscles, originating from several anatomic structures in their vicinity and all inserting into a longitudinal line, the posterior median raphe, in the dorsal wall of the pharynx.

The three muscles are the superior pharyngeal, middle pharyngeal, and inferior pharyngeal constrictors, each named for its relative location. Each muscle possesses fibers that ascend and descend from their origin to be inserted into the raphe. This fanned-out arrangement provides for a strong but
Figure 4-19. Muscles of the pharynx. (A) Posterior view illustrating the posterior median raphe. (B) Lateral view demonstrating fiber directions.

Figure 4-20. Regional divisions of the pharynx.
flexible multilayered wall whose muscle fibers course in a direction oblique to each other (Fig. 4-19).

The pharynx, for purposes of description, is divided into three anatomic regions: the nasopharynx, oropharynx, and laryngeal pharynx (Fig. 4-20). The most superior portion, the nasopharynx, begins at the attachment to the sphenoid and occipital bones and ends at the soft palate. This is the widest part of the pharynx and is in communication with the nasal cavity via the choanae and with the middle ear cavity via the auditory tube (Eustachian tube). A fold of mucous membrane, in the area of the auditory tube, covers the salpingopharyngeus muscle, which blends into the pharyngeal wall. In the pharyngeal recess, behind the lip of the auditory tube, is the pharyngeal tonsil (Fig. 4-20).

During swallowing, the nasopharynx is sealed off from the oral cavity by the elevation of the soft palate superiorly and posteriorly against the posterior and lateral walls of the pharynx. This may be observed during an oral examination by having the patient open the mouth, protrude the tongue, and say “ah.” This causes the palate to be elevated and permits observation of the oropharynx extending from the palate to the larynx.

The lateral wall of the pharynx is formed by the palatopharyngeal fold covering the palatopharyngeus muscle. This fold, arising from the soft palate, is also called the posterior pillar of the fauces, whereas the fold anterior to this, the palatoglossal fold, is also called the anterior pillar of the fauces. This fold is not a part of the lateral wall of the pharynx; rather, it is the fold that covers the palatoglossal muscle, one of the extrinsic muscles of the tongue (Fig. 4-21). Note that the sinus between the two folds houses the palatine tonsil.

Anteriorly, the base of the dorsum of the tongue lies in the pharynx. Inferiorly, the epiglottis projects into the oral pharynx behind the tongue, separated by two small pouches (valleculae) located on either side of the epiglottis (Fig. 4-7).

A more thorough discussion of the pharynx is found in regional descriptions that follow in Chapter 16.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Oropharynx**

Small clumps of lymphoid tissue surround the entry into the deep portions of the digestive tract at the oropharynx. This lymphatic ring of Waldeyer is well developed in the child and regresses with advancing age.

It is possible to view the posterior nasal choanae, the auditory tubes, and the larynx during an oral examination by illuminating the oropharynx and using a dental mirror.

On examination of the oropharynx, a ridge of tissue on the posterior pharyngeal wall may be observed on a plane with the soft palate. This ridge, known as the Passavant bar, represents the contact zone between the pharynx and the palate when it is elevated for sealing off the nasopharynx from the oropharynx.
Cleft Lip results when the maxillary process and the intermaxillary segment fail to fuse with one another. This may be observed as a notching of the lip to a unilateral cleft lip that may reveal the unfused maxillary process and the intermaxillary segment. More severe malformations may result in a bilateral cleft lip with neither of the maxillary processes fused with the intermaxillary segment.

Cleft Palate results from failure of the lateral palatine shelves to fuse in the midline (or with the intermaxillary segment), thus failing to separate the oronasal cavity into a nasal cavity superior to the palate and an oral cavity inferior to the palate.

Foramen Cecum is the small pit at the apex of the V-shaped terminal sulcus separating the anterior two thirds of the tongue (body) from the posterior one third (base) of the tongue. The primordium of the thyroid gland, derived from the pharyngeal wall at the foramen cecum, migrates into the neck to be positioned ventral and inferior to the thyroid cartilage.

Muscles of Facial Expression are specialized muscles about the face that arise from the hypodermis or bone and insert into the dermis of the face, neck, or scalp. Coordinated contractions of these muscles, especially about the mouth, nose, and eyes, convey emotions in humans. This group of muscles arises from the second pharyngeal arch and is innervated by the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII), the nerve of second arch.

Muscles of Mastication are the four bilateral pairs of muscles developed from the
mandibular arch that are attached to the mandible and whose contractions supply the forces for mastication. These muscles are innervated by the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V).

**Pharyngeal Arches** are the five bars of condensed mesenchymal tissue interposed between the successive pairs of the pharyngeal pouches and grooves (clefts). Each pharyngeal arch gives rise to bone, cartilage, vascular, muscle, and nerve components.

**Pharyngeal Grooves** form concurrently around the stomodeal neck area on the lateral surface of the embryo where they approximate, but do not contact, the corresponding pharyngeal pouches.

**Pharyngeal Pouches** are the five pairs of endodermally lined out-pouchings of the pharyngeal gut that develop just posterior to the ruptured buccopharyngeal membrane and invade the laterally positioned mesenchyme.

**Primary Palate (Premaxilla)** develops from the intermaxillary segment (formed by the fused median nasal swellings) as it grows down from the nose to form the nasal septum, columella, philtrum of the upper lip, labial turbucle, and into the mouth where anterior teeth supporting structures and gingiva develop. The primary palate is that triangular portion of the hard palate that is located behind the four incisor teeth and is bounded by imaginary lines drawn from the space between the lateral incisors and canine teeth of either side and extending to the incisive foramen.

**Stomatognathic System** includes the muscles of mastication and the structures within the mouth for ingesting and masticating food. This system also forms sounds produced by the larynx into speech for communication.

**Stomodeum** is the primitive mouth cavity in the human embryo. This shallow space is lined with ectoderm and is separated from the cephalic end of the pharyngeal gut by the buccopharyngeal membrane.

**The Rathke Pouch** develops in the oral ectoderm of the roof of the primitive oral cavity just anterior to the buccopharyngeal membrane. This evaginating pouch comes in contact with a pouch developing from the floor of the diencephalon. These two structures give rise to the pituitary gland.

---

**THE HEAD AND NECK**

The head and neck comprise the most complicated portion of the human anatomy. The complex bony skull houses the brain, which is the control and coordination center for all body functions. Connected to the brain are the special sense organs of taste, hearing, smell, and sight. These organs perceive stimuli from the environment and transmit these sensations to the brain via the cranial nerves. Located in the head is the **stomatognathic system**, including the muscles of mastication and the structures within the mouth for ingesting and masticating food. This system also forms sounds produced by the larynx into speech for communication. In addition, the face possesses a special system of muscles, the muscles of facial expression, whose coordinated contractions about the mouth, nose, and eyes convey our emotions. And finally, the nose serves as the point of entry to the respiratory system and olfaction and incidentally as an entranceway for disease.

Indeed, no other region of the body is so complex or performs so many complicated functions as the head and neck. Because of its intricate nature, the compactness of the region, the ramifications of anomalies and congenital defects, and the disease manifestations arising in the head and neck, perhaps no other region of the body is served by so many specialized areas of medicine and surgery.

---

**HEAD AND NECK DEVELOPMENT**

**Summary Bite.** Understanding developmental processes in the head and neck is necessary for comprehending nerve–muscle relationships in normal patients as well as in those with congenital defects to arrive at the proper diagnosis and treatment.

An understanding of the developmental processes that form the head and neck ultimately helps students assimilate and remember the vast amount of information necessary to master the study of head and neck anatomy. For example, understanding nerve–muscle relationships in development and subsequent muscle migrations away from their embryonic origin is of particular importance in the head and neck as it relates to adult morphology and as an explanation of congenital defects. Understanding these elements of development helps one arrive at sound reasoning for diagnosis and management of congenital defects about the head and neck as well as for treatment modalities of many disease manifestations.

**Descriptive Language for Head and Neck Development**

**Summary Bite.** Terms that are applied in describing human development sometimes have been incorrectly carried over from descriptions of development in lower animals.
Language used in describing the developmental anatomy of the head and neck may be particularly confusing to students who have not yet studied embryology. Early development within vertebrate animals is similar; indeed, to the untrained eye it would be difficult to distinguish an early human embryo from many of those of lower animals. For this reason, much of the terminology used in embryology is generally applied to all vertebrates, creating some confusion to the untrained individual in the specific study of human development.

The term *branchia*, for example, literally means “gill”; consequently, it is the term used to describe the embryologic development of gills in fish. This term is sometimes used in describing the embryologic formation of the head and neck in human beings. Obviously, humans do not possess gills; however, the term is not used without reason. Many of the head and neck structures in humans are homologues of gill structures in the primitive vertebrates. The equivalent term used in descriptions of human head and neck development is *pharyngeal*. This term, although not completely accurate, will be used in this text. The terms *groove* and *cleft* may also be used interchangeably, but this should not create misunderstanding.

**Genetic and Molecular Aspects of Development**

Summary Bite. Related genes on all chromosomes control patterning, thus either facilitating or inhibiting normal development.

A group of related genes located in the chromosomes of all cells are responsible for *patterning*, a term used to define the spatial relationship of specific predetermined periods of development. These genes are turned on or off as a result of intracellular and extracellular phenomena that cause them to be either activated or suppressed, thus facilitating or impeding the normal sequence of development.

**Homeobox Genes**

Summary Bite. Homeobox genes code for transcriptional factors that turn on a cascade of genes responsible for regulating segmentation and axis formation. These genes control the “window of opportunity” for normal development.

A specific group of highly conserved genes, known as *homeobox genes*, code for the synthesis of transcriptional factors—proteins that bind to and regulate the expression of other genes. Thus, these homeobox genes as well as certain growth factors are essential for the temporal sequencing of developmental events. For example, certain genes can be switched on only after being activated by the synthesized products (i.e., proteins) coded from other genes. By the same token, these same genes might not be activated if certain other genes have been activated before them. This implies that there is a “window of opportunity” in development when certain events must take place, indicating that most events in embryologic development are sequential and that each event must take place neither before nor after the period of opportunity written in the DNA code. Hence, these homeobox genes are responsible for establishing a temporospatial pattern of developmental events as occurs in segmentation and axis formation. When this does not progress properly, development does not proceed normally, resulting in anomalies, congenital defects, and, if severe enough, death to the developing embryo.

**Signaling Cells and Target Cells**

Summary Bite. Signaling cells produce growth factors, signaling molecules, or ligands bound for other cells which have receptors for these molecules on their surface; these cells are known as target cells. Such cell-to-cell interaction triggers a sequence of developmental events.

During development, cells must interact with each other, either indirectly by receptor-mediated binding of the product of a particular cell or directly by cellular contact between the cells. Accordingly, there are *signaling cells* and *target cells* in all developmental processes. The products of these signaling cells are referred to as *growth factors*, *signaling molecules*, or *ligands*, which reach target cells via body fluids.

Target cells possess receptor molecules on their plasmalemma that will bind only signaling molecules produced by the signaling cell, which fit together like a lock and key. When the cellular interaction is physical cell-to-cell contact, the cells must be able to recognize each other by the binding of their corresponding ligand–receptor molecules. Once this has been accomplished, the signaling cell interacts with the target cell, triggering a series of sequential events influencing a single gene or a group of genes. This may result in releasing new signaling molecules; altering the activities of the target cell; causing the target cell to differentiate into another cell type; causing proliferation of the target cell; or causing the target cell to undergo apoptosis and die.

The process whereby the signaling cell causes the target cell to differentiate into another cell type is called *induction*. Each event in development possesses
a specific induction period (window of opportunity) that precludes the actual development. The most severe congenital defects occur from interference during induction rather than during actual growth and development. For example, a particular teratogen may cause cleft palate in a developing fetus when introduced during the actual formation of the palate, yet may have no effect at all when introduced at a later date when the palatal shelves have approximated but have not as yet fused with each other.

PHARYNGEAL ARCH, GROOVE, AND POUCH DEVELOPMENT

Summary Bite. During early development at the cephalic end of the embryo, a series of pharyngeal arches with grooves between them may be observed on the external surface. These surround the development of outpocketing of the pharyngeal gut just caudal to the buccopharyngeal membrane.

In the human embryo, the stomodeum or primitive mouth cavity, a shallow depression lined with ectoderm, is separated from the cephalic end of the pharyngeal gut by the buccopharyngeal membrane, which ruptures during the fourth week of gestation (Fig. 5-1).

Just anterior to the buccopharyngeal membrane, a midline diverticulum known as the Rathke pouch develops in the oral ectoderm of the roof of the primitive oral cavity. This evaginating pouch comes in contact with a pouch developing from the floor of the diencephalon. Further development of these two opposed structures gives rise to the pituitary gland.

During the fourth and fifth weeks of gestation, as the buccopharyngeal membrane is degenerating, communication is established between the future oral cavity and the pharynx. Concomitant with this event, outpouchings of the pharyngeal gut develop just posterior to the ruptured buccopharyngeal membrane, forming five pairs of pharyngeal pouches that invade the mesenchyme laterally. Although it was once thought that the neural crest cells of the pharyngeal arches were responsible for patterning skeletal components of the arches, it is now clear that the endodermal lining of the pharyngeal pouches regulates this patterning.

Concurrent with the formation of the pouches in the pharyngeal wall, four pairs of grooves develop around the stomodeal neck area on the lateral surface of the embryo. These pharyngeal grooves (branchial grooves) invade the underlying mesenchyme approximating, but not contacting, their corresponding pharyngeal pouches. Invasion by the pouches and the grooves produces a condensation of mesenchymal...
tissue interposed between successive pairs of pouches and grooves (clefts). These five bars of condensed mesenchymal tissue are the **pharyngeal (branchial) arches** (see Figs. 5-2, 5-3, and 5-4).

The mesenchymal cells forming much of the ventral regions of the developing pharyngeal arches are derived from neural crest cells originating from the vicinity of the midbrain region and the rhombomeres. During early pharyngeal arch formation, these cells express homeobox gene (**Hox** gene) products indicative of the region of their origin.

Continued development and growth of the arches results in their fusion in the anterior midline. Each arch will develop its own bone, cartilage, vascular, muscular, and nerve components. The arches form sequentially from rostral to caudal, with the first arch being most highly developed and the last arch being poorly developed. The first and second arches are named “mandibular” and “hyoid” arches, respectively, whereas the remaining three are unnamed. The discussion of pharyngeal arch derivatives that follows is summarized in Table 5-1.
Chapter 5  Embryology of the Head and Neck

Figure 5-4. Early development of the pharyngeal grooves and pouches. (A) Early development. (B) Later development. Observe the second arch overgrowing the second, third, and fourth grooves leaving a cervical cyst in drawing B. Note the diverticula of pouches three and four as each develops dorsal and ventral prolongations.

Table 5-1 Pharyngeal Arch Derivatives and Their Innervation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arch</th>
<th>Skeletal</th>
<th>Ligaments</th>
<th>Muscle</th>
<th>Nerve</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Mandibular</td>
<td>Meckel’s cartilage</td>
<td>Sphenomandibular ligament</td>
<td>Muscles of mastication (temporalis, masseter, medial and lateral pterygoids)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maxillae</td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>Anterior ligament of malleus</td>
<td>Tensor veli palatini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>Malleus</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tensor tympani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Digastric (anterior belly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mylohyoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Hyoid</td>
<td>Reichert’s cartilage</td>
<td>Stylohyoid</td>
<td>Muscles of facial expression (platysma, buccinator, frontalis, occipitalis, auricularis, orbicularis, oculi, oris)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyoid (part)</td>
<td>Lesser cornu</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stapedius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lesser cornu</td>
<td>Body, upper part</td>
<td></td>
<td>Digastric (posterior belly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Body, upper part</td>
<td>Styloid process</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stylohyoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>Hyoid (part)</td>
<td>Greater cornu</td>
<td>Stylopharyngeus</td>
<td>Cricothyroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Greater cornu</td>
<td>Body, lower part</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pharyngeal constrictors&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>External branch of superior laryngeal nerve&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>Thyroid cartilage</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stylopharyngeus</td>
<td>Intrinsic laryngeal muscles—except cricothyroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V1</td>
<td>Laryngeal cartilages (cricoid, arytenoid, corniculate, cuneiform)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cranial nerve X (vagus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>The origin of some of the muscles of the pharynx is as yet unclear. The pharyngeal constrictors may in fact receive innervation from more than one source.

<sup>b</sup>Although this named branch of the vagus nerve is traditionally described as the motor innervation to the identified laryngeal muscles, it is important to remember that the motor fibers of the vagus nerve, at least in this region, are actually motor fibers contributed to the vagus nerve from the cranial portion of the accessory nerve (cranial nerve XI).

<sup>c</sup>Several of the pharyngeal and associated muscles of the soft palate are innervated by branches of the pharyngeal plexus—a complex of the nerves located on the posterior aspects of the pharynx consisting of contributions from cranial nerves IX and X (IX is sensory, whereas X is motor, although these motor fibers are contributed from XI). Fibers from the superior cervical ganglion also contribute to the pharyngeal plexus, serving vasomotor functions.
Derivatives of the Pharyngeal Arches

### Summary Bite
Five pharyngeal arches develop in the human. The first two are named, whereas the remainder are known by Roman numerals only. They are the mandibular arch (I), hyoid arch (II), arch III, arch IV, and arch VI. Arch V is missing in humans. Each arch has skeletal, cartilage, and ligament components, and specific associated muscles, and its derivatives are innervated by a specific cranial nerve.

### Mandibular Arch (I)
The first pharyngeal arch, the **mandibular arch**, is located between the stomodeum and the first pharyngeal groove. This arch divides early in its development into two unequal portions, the dorsally positioned **maxillary process** lying close to the eye and the ventrally placed **mandibular process** (Figs. 5-1, 5-2, 5-3, and 5-4). **Meckel cartilage**, the cartilage of this arch, develops in this arch, forming a primitive support. Later, Meckel cartilage regresses and forms two of the bony ossicles, the incus and malleus of the middle ear dorsally, whereas ventrally the cartilage becomes incorporated into the mandibular symphysis. However, it should be noted that most of the mandible develops by intramembranous bone formation rather than by endochondral formation on Meckel cartilage. Skeletal derivatives of this arch, arising from the maxillary process, also include the premaxilla, maxilla, zygoma, and part of the temporal.

The perichondrium of Meckel cartilage will become the sphenomandibular ligament and the anterior ligament of the malleus.

The muscles of mastication (masseter, temporalis, medial, and lateral pterygoids) and some muscles accessory to mastication, including the mylohyoid muscle and the anterior belly of the digastric muscle as well as the tensor tympani and tensor veli palatini muscles, develop within this arch. The cranial nerve providing innervation to the structures originating from this arch is the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V).

### Hyoid Arch (II)
The second pharyngeal arch, the **hyoid arch**, develops immediately behind the mandibular arch and is separated from it by the first pharyngeal groove. This arch assists in forming the anterior neck (Figs. 5-1, 5-3, 5-4, and 5-5). The cartilage of the arch, **Reichert cartilage**, gives rise to the styloid process of the temporal bone, the stylohyoid ligament, the lesser cornu, and part of the body of the hyoid bone and the third bony ossicle of the middle ear, the stapes.

The muscle mass developed within this arch migrates over the superficial face and neck, forming the muscles of facial expression. Other muscles derived from the second pharyngeal arch include the stapedius, attached to the stapes; the stylohyoid, attached to the styloid process; and the posterior belly of the digastric, attached to the hyoid bone anteriorly. Innervation to the structures derived from this arch is supplied by the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII).

**HoxA-2**, one of the homeobox genes, is the signaling gene of structures developed in the second pharyngeal arch. It is interesting to note that if HoxA-2 gene products are not present, first pharyngeal arch derivatives develop in the hyoid arch. Apparently, first pharyngeal arch derivatives are the default derivatives and HoxA-2 products modify the developmental process.

### Third Pharyngeal Arch (III)
The unnamed third pharyngeal arch develops posterior to the hyoid arch just behind the second pharyngeal groove (Figs. 5-1, 5-3, 5-4, and 5-5). The greater cornu, the remainder of the hyoid bone, and one muscle, the stylopharyngeus, originate from this arch. This mandibular arch development depends on **endothelin-1**, an epidermally derived signaling molecule that facilitates an interaction between the ectomesenchymal cells and the epithelial cells of the arch. The presence of this signaling molecule is necessary for development of structures formed from the mandibular arch.

### Clinical Considerations

#### First Arch Defects
Defects of the first arch are the most common and of greatest significance because many structures develop from it. Because of the many possible defects, the term **first arch syndrome** is generally applied to anomalies from this arch. This term is applied to first arch malformations because they are often observed as multiple defects.
muscle is innervated by the nerve of this arch, the glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve IX).

**Fourth and Sixth Pharyngeal Arches (IV and VI)**
The fourth pharyngeal arch develops posterior to the third pharyngeal arch and is separated from it by the third pharyngeal groove (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). Technically, from the standpoint of comparative embryology, a fifth pharyngeal arch does not develop in humans, but a rudimentary sixth pharyngeal arch does. Unnamed cartilages of the fourth and sixth pharyngeal arches fuse to form the thyroid and cricoid cartilages as well as the arytenoid, cuneiform, and corniculate cartilages of the larynx. Muscles developing in the fourth pharyngeal arch include the three pharyngeal constrictor (superior, middle, and inferior) muscles and the cricothyroid muscle.

Controversy exists concerning the arch of origin of some of the pharyngeal muscles. The developmental origin of the muscles of the pharynx and soft palate has been difficult to elucidate because overlap of innervation occurs via a complex of cranial nerves and sympathetic fibers. This complex, termed the pharyngeal plexus, serves many of the muscles and mucous membranes of the fourth and sixth pharyngeal arch derivatives. This plexus, located on the posterior pharyngeal wall, consists of pharyngeal branches provided by the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves, as well as branches from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion. Glossopharyngeal contributions to the pharyngeal plexus are sensory, whereas the vagal branches are motor. However, these vagal motor branches are believed to consist mainly of fibers from the cranial portion of the accessory nerve (cranial nerve XI), contributed to the vagus before it exits the skull. The sympathetic fibers of the pharyngeal plexus are vasomotor. Although many of the structures developed in the fourth pharyngeal arch are innervated by fibers from the pharyngeal plexus, the principal named nerve of this arch is the external branch of the superior laryngeal branch of the vagus nerve (cranial nerve X). This nerve provides exclusive innervation to

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Preauricular Pits**

Preauricular pits may be observed in the external ear. They are usually inconsequential and result from incomplete covering of the sulci between the nodes of the first and second arch as they develop into the pinna of the ear.
the cricothyroid muscle and contributes to the innervation of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle (see Chapter 16).

Muscles developing in the sixth pharyngeal arch include all of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx. Except for the cricothyroid, all of these muscles are innervated by the recurrent laryngeal branch of the vagus (cranial nerve X), the nerve of the sixth pharyngeal arch. The recurrent laryngeal branch of the vagus nerve also contributes to the innervation of the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle along with input from the pharyngeal plexus and the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve. It should be remembered, however, that the motor fibers distributed by the vagus nerve at this point are probably derived from the accessory nerve (cranial nerve XI).

The pharyngeal musculature as well as the muscles of the soft palate, with the exceptions of the tensor veli palatini, which is innervated by the trigeminal nerve, and the stylopharyngeus, which is innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve, present an embryologic enigma in that the entire muscle mass is innervated by the pharyngeal plexus and/or by named branches of the vagus nerve (cranial nerve X). Although the pharyngeal muscles and soft palate muscles (except those listed previously) are innervated by the nerve of the fourth pharyngeal arch, their precise origin in humans is as yet unclear. A detailed discussion of the contributions of each cranial nerve to the pharyngeal plexus appears in Chapter 18.

First Pharyngeal Groove
The first pharyngeal groove, separating the mandibular and hyoid arches, continues to invade the mesenchyme opposite the evaginating first pharyngeal pouch (Figs. 5-1, 5-2, 5-3, 5-4, and 5-5). The groove gives rise to the external auditory meatus and the external auditory meatus lining of the tympanic membrane (eardrum). Mesenchymal proliferations from the dorsal aspects of the first and second pharyngeal arches provide the tissues that later fuse and develop into the auricle (external ear).

Mesenchymal tissues at the anterior tips of the second pharyngeal arch develop a sudden growth spurt when forming the anterior neck, causing overgrowth of the neck region and obliterating the remaining pharyngeal grooves (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). Because these covered pharyngeal grooves are lined with ectoderm, they may remain as cervical sinuses and might later develop into cervical cysts. The impetus for this growth spurt is provided by the signaling molecules bone morphogenic protein BMP-7, sonic hedgehog, and fibroblast growth factor-8 produced by the overlying ectodermal cells. These signaling molecules target the mesenchymal cells of the hyoid arch, inducing proliferation and growth of these tissues.

Derivatives of the Pharyngeal Pouches

Summary Bite. Pharyngeal pouches are outpocketed portions of the pharyngeal foregut just behind the ruptured buccopharyngeal membrane. These five pharyngeal pouches, lined by endoderm, give rise to several organs.

First Pharyngeal Pouch
The first pharyngeal pouch, an endodermal-lined, outpocketed portion of the pharyngeal wall located between the first and second arch mesoderm, evaginates into an elongated tubotympanic recess giving rise to the tympanic cavity and the mastoid antrum, which remains connected to the pharynx as the auditory tube (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). The endodermal lining participates in the formation of the eardrum. Thus, the closing plate between the first pharyngeal groove and the first pharyngeal pouch is the tympanic membrane, covered on its external surface by ectoderm derived from the groove and on its internal surface by endoderm derived from the pouch. Interposed between these two coverings are a few strands of mesenchymal tissue.

Second Pharyngeal Pouch
The second pharyngeal pouch remains as the tonsillar fossa between the pillars of the fauces (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). Later, the crypts of the fossa are invaded by lymphoid tissue, which becomes organized into the palatine tonsils.

Third Pharyngeal Pouch
The third pharyngeal pouch forms two diverticula, a dorsal one whose endoderm differentiates into the definitive inferior parathyroid tissue and a ventral one that develops into thymus primordium which then fuses with its counterpart of the opposite side, forming the thymus gland (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). These primordia become detached from the wall and begin to migrate caudally. The thymus comes to lie in the superior thoracic cavity, whereas the parathyroid primordia migrating with it will occupy the inferior pole of the posterior surface of the thyroid gland—hence its name, inferior parathyroid.

Fourth Pharyngeal Pouch
The fourth pharyngeal pouch, in a manner similar to the third, develops a dorsal and a ventral diverticulum. Developing from the dorsal diverticulum is the superior parathyroid, which eventually rests on the superior pole of the dorsal surface of the thyroid gland (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). The ventral portion soon disapp
Chapter 5
Embryology of the Head and Neck

Clinical Considerations

Cysts and Fistulas
As the second arch overgrows the third and fourth arches to cover the neck, the grooves are normally buried and become obliterated. Cervical cysts develop if obliteration does not occur, thus connecting the surface of the neck with the pharynx via the branchial fistula. These cysts are usually found in the neck on a line just anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Often these are not evident during childhood but may become apparent later as they enlarge. Surgery is necessary to repair the defect.

Pouch Defects
Sometimes the thymic primordia does not fuse with each other or do not descend into the chest cavity, leaving thymic tissue behind in cords along its path. This may cause ectopic placement of the parathyroid tissue from its normal location on the dorsal aspect of the thyroid. Occasionally, supernumerary parathyroid glands develop or, infrequently, parathyroid development does not occur.

Thyroid
The epithelium destined to become the definitive thyroid tissue, which leaves a depression on the tongue (the foramen cecum), sometimes also leaves a remnant along its migration path, called the thyroglossal duct, along which cysts and sinuses may develop. Should these ever become infected, they may enlarge and open onto the midline of the neck, requiring corrective surgery. Rarely, the thyroid primordium fails to descend, thus forming a lingual thyroid at the base of the tongue. Aberrant or accessory thyroid, which may or may not be functional, may be found anywhere along the usual descent route.

Tongue
The tongue begins its formation in the floor of the pharynx during the fourth week of gestation, first as a small median swelling, the tuberculum impar, bounded by the two larger lateral lingual swellings (Figs. 5-4 and 5-5). These structures develop in the dorsal aspects of the ventral ends of the mandibular arch. Shortly thereafter, another median swelling, the copula develops just posterior to the tuberculum impar. It appears that this structure develops as a result of contributions from the second, third, and fourth arches. Posterior to the copula, yet another median swelling, the epiglottic eminence, which will become the epiglottis and the posterior region of the tongue, develops from the fourth arch (Fig. 5-6). The copula and the epiglottic eminence together are known as the hypobranchial eminence.

Continued growth in the lateral lingual swellings results in overgrowth of the tuberculum impar. Forward growth of the copula and the subsequent fusing with the lateral lingual swellings forms a V on

FLOOR OF THE PHARYNX

Summary Bite. The mouth, lips, gingiva, and enamel of the teeth develop from the stomodeum and the floor of the pharynx, whereas the salivary glands arise as ectodermal buds from the first arch.

The mouth is developed from the stomodeum and from the floor of the pharynx (foregut). The lips, the gingiva, and the enamel of the teeth develop from the ectodermally lined stomodeum. The salivary glands also arise from the oral cavity as ectodermal buds derived from the lining of the first arch. The parotid gland, the first to develop, appears between the maxillary and mandibular processes. It is followed by the submandibular gland and finally the sublingual gland in the floor of the mouth.
the tongue surface, separating, in the adult, the anterior two thirds of the tongue (body) from the posterior one third (base) of the tongue. The V-shaped groove separating the two regions is the terminal sulcus (Fig. 5-6). Located at the apex of the V is a small pit, the foramen cecum, demarcating the place where the primordium of the thyroid gland separated from the pharyngeal wall to migrate into the neck to be located ventral and inferior to the thyroid cartilage.

The tongue musculature does not arise from the pharyngeal arches. The muscle mass probably

**Clinical Considerations**

**Tongue**

Because the tongue develops from diverse origins, several different malformations are possible.

Ankyloglossia (tongue-tie), perhaps the most common defect, results from a shortening of the lingual frenulum, thus restricting the tip of the tongue. It occurs in 1 in 300 infants. Simply clipping the frenulum relieves this condition. An excessively large or unusually small tongue is relatively rare. Macroglossia is apparently the result of generalized hypertrophy of the tongue, and microglossia is usually associated with an underdeveloped mandibular process called micrognathia. Rarely, the lateral lingual swellings of the right and left sides fail to fuse, resulting in a bifid tongue.
migrates from preoccipital somites, taking with it the hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII). The multiple origin of the tongue provides the reason for its multi-innervation. The anterior two thirds, developing from the first arch ectoderm, receive sensory innervation via the trigeminal nerve and special sensation (taste) from the facial nerve. The posterior one third, developing from endoderm of arches II, III, and IV, is served by the glossopharyngeal nerve for general and special sensation, whereas the very base of the tongue is supplied by branches of the vagus nerve. The motor components to the muscles, however, are supplied by the hypoglossal nerve. (See Table 5-2 for a summary of the pharynx and its derivatives.)

**FACE, NOSE, AND PALATE, DEVELOPMENT**

**Summary Bite.** The face, nose, lips, mandible, maxillae, and the palate develop from the frontonasal prominence and the maxillary and mandibular processes as they fuse together.

**Face and Nose**

During the fourth week of gestation, as the maxillary and mandibular processes of the first pharyngeal arch are developing and growing anteriorly, a median bulge covering the brain enlarges and grows forward. This **frontonasal prominence**, with its two lateral thickened areas, the **nasal placodes**, develops just above the stomodeum. Later, the medial and lateral rims of the nasal placodes grow around the placode, leaving a depression, the **nasal pit**. Continued anterior growth of these rims through the fifth week causes a thinning and rupture of the epithelium covering the floor of the nasal pit. At this point, as this bucconasal membrane ruptures, a communication is established with the roof of the developing oral cavity. The lateral rims of the nasal placodes become the **lateral nasal swellings**, which will become the alae (wings) of the nose. The medial rims of the nasal placodes, known as the **median nasal swellings**, fuse together to form the **intermaxillary segment**, which will form the bulb of the nose (Fig. 5-3B, C).

Continued growth of this intermaxillary segment anterior and inferior to the nose will give rise to the inferior aspect of the nasal septum, columella of the nose, philtrum of the upper lip, labial tubercle, and primary palate (premaxilla). The anterior teeth and their supporting structures as well as the gingiva will also develop from the intermaxillary segment (Fig. 5-7A).

During this approximately 2-week period, the maxillary swellings have moved anteriorly, meeting the intermaxillary segment and fusing with it to seal the **nasolacrimal groove**, a deep furrow running between the medial aspect of the eye and the primitive oral cavity on the face. The epithelium lining this groove separates from the surface ectoderm, finally forming the **nasolacrimal duct** (tear duct) opening into the nasal cavity (Figs. 5-3C and 5-8).

During this period, the mandibular processes have fused anteriorly, forming the mandible, thereby reducing the size of the primitive mouth. Also at this time, mesoderm of the second arch has invaded the...
area, forming the muscles of facial expression over the entire face (Figs. 5-3C and 5-9).

Early development of the facial region is believed to be controlled by the migrating neural crest cells. These ectomesenchymal cells express the products of the homeobox genes, such as MSX-1, as well as the signaling molecules fibroblast growth factor (FGF) and sonic hedgehog (SHH). These gene products are believed to orchestrate the morphogenic events required to establish a facial anlagen. Neural crest cells from the region of the midbrain and hindbrain migrate into the upper jaw, whereas those destined for the lower jaw and remaining arches migrate from the rhombomeres, special regions of the hindbrain.

**Palate**

The initial formation and continued growth of the palatal shelves appear to be under the influence of epithelial-mesenchymal interaction and growth factor,
whereas others migrate and become part of the epithelium lining the oral cavity. The intermaxillary segment forms the primary palate, the triangular portion of the palate that is located behind the four incisor teeth and extends posteriorly in the midline to the incisive papilla. Fusion of the secondary palate with the primary palate separates the oronasal cavity into the nasal cavity and the oral cavity. Concomitantly, the nasal septum develops as a downgrowth within the nasal cavity and, as it fuses with the nasal aspect of the palatine shelves, it divides the nasal cavity into bilateral halves.

As the nasal wall continues to develop, diverticula form and invade the maxillae, frontal, ethmoid, and sphenoid bones, giving rise to the paranasal sinuses. (For a summary of the derivatives of facial components, see Table 5-3.)

Retinoic Acid
Retinoic acid, the acidic form of vitamin A, stimulates the expression of homeobox genes and is known to be implicated in early facial development. However, the absence as well as the excess availability of retinoic acid have been shown to result in increased incidences of severe facial malformations.

Treacher Collins Syndrome
Treacher Collins syndrome (mandibulofacial dysostosis) is a severe deformity of the face, eyes, ears, and derivatives of the mandibular arch with undeveloped zygoma bones. Although it is an autosomal dominant trait, it can be produced in laboratory animals following exposure to teratogenic doses of retinoic acid.

Facial Malformations

Retinoic Acid
Retinoic acid, the acidic form of vitamin A, stimulates the expression of homeobox genes and is known to be implicated in early facial development. However, the absence as well as the excess availability of retinoic acid have been shown to result in increased incidences of severe facial malformations.

Treacher Collins Syndrome
Treacher Collins syndrome (mandibulofacial dysostosis) is a severe deformity of the face, eyes, ears, and derivatives of the mandibular arch with undeveloped zygoma bones. Although it is an autosomal dominant trait, it can be produced in laboratory animals following exposure to teratogenic doses of retinoic acid.

Facial Malformations

Retinoic Acid
Retinoic acid, the acidic form of vitamin A, stimulates the expression of homeobox genes and is known to be implicated in early facial development. However, the absence as well as the excess availability of retinoic acid have been shown to result in increased incidences of severe facial malformations.

Treacher Collins Syndrome
Treacher Collins syndrome (mandibulofacial dysostosis) is a severe deformity of the face, eyes, ears, and derivatives of the mandibular arch with undeveloped zygoma bones. Although it is an autosomal dominant trait, it can be produced in laboratory animals following exposure to teratogenic doses of retinoic acid.

Facial Malformations

Retinoic Acid
Retinoic acid, the acidic form of vitamin A, stimulates the expression of homeobox genes and is known to be implicated in early facial development. However, the absence as well as the excess availability of retinoic acid have been shown to result in increased incidences of severe facial malformations.

Treacher Collins Syndrome
Treacher Collins syndrome (mandibulofacial dysostosis) is a severe deformity of the face, eyes, ears, and derivatives of the mandibular arch with undeveloped zygoma bones. Although it is an autosomal dominant trait, it can be produced in laboratory animals following exposure to teratogenic doses of retinoic acid.

Facial Malformations

Retinoic Acid
Retinoic acid, the acidic form of vitamin A, stimulates the expression of homeobox genes and is known to be implicated in early facial development. However, the absence as well as the excess availability of retinoic acid have been shown to result in increased incidences of severe facial malformations.

Treacher Collins Syndrome
Treacher Collins syndrome (mandibulofacial dysostosis) is a severe deformity of the face, eyes, ears, and derivatives of the mandibular arch with undeveloped zygoma bones. Although it is an autosomal dominant trait, it can be produced in laboratory animals following exposure to teratogenic doses of retinoic acid.
Figure 5-9. Development of the face illustrating derivatives of embryologic development. (A) Approximately 8 weeks of development. (B) Adult. (1) Median nasal process; (2) Lateral nasal process; (3) Maxillary process; (4) Mandibular process.

Figure 5-10. Ventral view of the palate, gum, lip, and nose. (A) Normal. (B) Unilateral cleft lip extending into the nose. (C) Unilateral cleft lip involving the lip and jaw extending to the incisive foramen. (D) Bilateral cleft involving the lip and jaw. (E) Isolated cleft palate. (F) Cleft palate combined with unilateral anterior cleft lip.

Figure 5-11. Cleft lip.

Figure 5-12. Cleft palate.
These two malformations are the most common defects observed on the face. Cleft lip occurs in about 1 of every 1,000 births in the United States, being more prevalent in boys (80%) than in girls. The incidence also seems to be related to increasing maternal age. The incidence of cleft palate is about 1 in 2,500 births. Unlike the differences noted with cleft lip, the cases observed in occurrence of cleft palate show girls (67%) to be more prone to develop the defect than boys. Some evidence points to the fact that the slower development in the female, with palatal fusion being delayed 1 week, may contribute to this condition.

Genetic and environmental factors play a large role in malformations of the lip and palate; however, space does not permit discussion of these factors here.

### Cleft Lip

Cleft lip (see Fig. 5-7) may be observed only as a small notching of the lip to a unilateral cleft lip revealing the unfused maxillary process with the intermaxillary segment of one side. Malformation of more severe consequences results in bilateral cleft lip where neither of the maxillary swellings have fused with the intermaxillary segment. Extremely severe cases of bilateral cleft lip display the philtrum and the entire undifferentiated intermaxillary segment, which would have developed into the primary palate. Many cases of cleft lip present malformation of the primary palate and the anterior teeth. Rarely, the median nasal processes fail to fuse and proliferate, resulting in median cleft lip.

Depending on the severity of the cleft lip and the structures associated with it, surgical repair is successful, although it may require several procedures.

### Cleft Palate

Posterior (secondary) cleft palate (see Fig. 5-7) results from failure of the lateral palatine processes to fuse in the midline with the intermaxillary segment, thereby permitting direct communication between the oral and nasal cavities. Unilateral cleft palate results when one palatal shelf does not fuse with the intermaxillary segment. When both shelves fail to fuse with each other and the median nasal septum, bilateral cleft palate results.

Anterior (primary) cleft palate is a consequence of fusion failure between the primary and secondary palatal processes (see Fig. 5-7). Clefts of both anterior and posterior palates result from failure of fusion between the primary palate, palatal shelves of the secondary palate, and the median nasal septum.

Varying degrees of clefting exist, the last described being most severe, and the least severe is observed simply as a bifid uvula. Factors producing cleft lip, with or without cleft palate, are distinctly different from factors producing cleft palate alone.

A team approach, involving specialists in medicine, dentistry, social work, and speech therapy, are often used to correct and rehabilitate the more serious cases of cleft palate and/or cleft lip. Although it may take several surgical and dental procedures over a number of years, along with therapy, the results are usually good.
Osteology

Chapter Outline

Skull and Cervical Vertebrae

Skull
- External Aspect of the Skull

Internal Aspect of the Skull
- Internal Base
- Mandible

Cervical Vertebrae
- Typical Cervical Vertebrae

Hyoid Bone

Key Terms

Atlas, the first cervical vertebra, is greatly modified. The body is replaced by an anterior arch whose ventral surface possesses an anterior tubercle, whereas its dorsal surface presents the **facet** for the **dens** of the axis, thus permitting rotation. Superior facets articulate with facets on the occipital bone, whereas the inferior facets articulate with facets on the axis.

Axis, the second cervical vertebra, is also modified to participate in the formation of the atlantoaxial joint. The body of the axis is modified superiorly to present a projection, the **dens**, which presents an articular facet that meets the articular facet on the internal surface of the anterior arch of the atlas, permitting the arch of the atlas to rotate about the dens of the axis.

Cervical Vertebrae are the superior seven vertebrae of the vertebral column. The superior two cervical vertebrae, the atlas and axis, support the head and permit its rotation at the atlantoaxial joint. With the exception of the 7th cervical vertebra, the transverse processes of all cervical vertebrae are pierced by the large foramen transversarium, housing the vertebral vessels and associated sympathetic plexus.

Cranium is that portion of the skull that houses the brain. Eight bones comprise the cranium, including the paired temporal and parietal bones and the unpaired ethmoid, frontal, sphenoid, and occipital bones.

Dental Arches are two in number. One is formed in the maxillae and the other is formed in the mandible. Each arch normally houses 16 teeth in the adult, which articulate with their counterparts in the opposing arch as a result of the actions of the muscles of the mandible.

Face is composed of the remaining 14 bones of the skull. These include the paired nasal, maxillae, palatine, lacrimal, zygoma, and inferior nasal conchae, and the unpaired vomer and mandible.

Hyoid Bone is a small, U-shaped bone situated horizontally in the middle of the anterior neck. It does not form a joint with another bone; rather, it is suspended by three bilateral ligaments and as many as 10 (and occasionally 11) muscles.

Mandible is the only movable bone of the skull. It is a double-jointed bone that articulates with the articular eminence of the zygomatic process of the paired temporal bones. This is made possible by several ligaments about the joints and the contractions of the muscles that act upon the mandible.
whereas internally the base of the skull and the calvaria are studied.

**External Aspect of the Skull**

**Anterior View**

**Summary Bite.** The anterior view presents the bones of the face and the anterior portion of the calvaria.

From the anterior perspective, the skull is viewed face-on, observing all of the bones that comprise the face as well as some of the bones that form the calvaria. At first glance, the most obvious landmarks are the paired orbits separated medially and inferiorly by the anterior nasal aperture. The bony prominence of the forehead is superior to the orbits, whereas the zygomatic arch is visible lateral and inferior to the orbits. An additional obvious feature is the presence of the teeth located in the upper and lower jaws (Figs. 6-1 and 6-10).

Bearing these landmarks in mind, one may now begin a thorough examination of the anterior aspect of the skull. The forehead is formed by the squamous part of the **frontal bone**, whose posterior aspect extends to the **coronal suture**. Here, the frontal bone articulates with the right and left parietal bones, which are separated from each other by the midline **sagittal suture**. The paired **frontal eminences** are more or less prominent elevations on either side of the middle of the forehead just above the **superciliary arches**, which may be palpated in the living individual as elevations superior to the eyebrows. Between the superciliary arches is a rather smooth depressed area, the **temporal fossa**. Both of these fossae are filled with three of the four muscles of mastication.

### Table 6-1 Bones of the Skull

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cranial</th>
<th>Facial</th>
<th>Ossicles of the Ears</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ethmoid</td>
<td>Inferior concha</td>
<td>2 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal</td>
<td>Lacrimal</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parietal</td>
<td>Maxilla</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoid</td>
<td>Nasal</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Palatine</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vomer</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zygoma</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>14 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Glabella. Superior to the glabella occasionally is another suture, the metopic frontal suture, a remnant of the postembryonic fusion between the right and left halves of the frontal bone. Inferior to the supraciliary arch is the superior rim of the orbit.

Orbit

Summary Bite. The orbit is comprised of several bones, including portions of the frontal, maxilla, ethmoid, palatine, sphenoid, zygoma, and lacrimal. Its concavity houses the eyeball (orb) muscles, vessels, nerves, and connective tissue in the living.

The orbit is a complex cavity formed by seven bones: the maxilla, frontal, ethmoid, palatine, zygomatic, sphenoid, and lacrimal bones (Figs. 6-1 and 6-2). It houses the eyeball (orb) and its associated muscles, vessels, nerves, and connective tissues. The medial walls of the orbits are parallel to each other (and to the sagittal suture), whereas their lateral walls are positioned approximately 45 degrees from their midline. Consequently, each orbit is widest anteriorly and narrowest posteriorly and may be envisioned to have the shape of a truncated pyramid (see Fig. 6-14 and Chapter 10).

The anterior-most aspect of the orbit (or its base), known as the rim, is formed by three bones: the frontal, zygoma, and maxilla. The entire superior aspect of the rim is formed by the frontal bone, which is interrupted by the supraorbital foramen (or, frequently, the “notch”) located medially. This foramen transmits the supraorbital vessels and nerves. Most of the medial and about half of the inferior rim are formed by the maxilla, specifically its frontal and part of its orbital processes. The remaining inferior portion and most of the lateral portion of the rim are formed by the zygoma. The remainder of the orbit will be described in relation to its roof, floor, lateral and medial walls, and apex.

The roof of the orbit is formed by a shelf of the frontal bone known as the orbital plate. Two depressions are located anteriorly on the roof; the smaller medial one, known as the trochlear fovea, houses a small cartilage associated with the superolateral oblique muscle of the eye, and the larger depression, the laterally positioned lacrimal fossa, accommodates the lacrimal gland. The roof is completed posteriorly by a small portion of the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone.

The lateral wall is composed of the greater wing of the sphenoid bone posteriorly and the zygomatic bone anteriorly. The line of fusion between the roof and the lateral wall is incomplete posteriorly, creating the superior orbital fissure, which is bounded also by the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone and the orbital plate of the frontal bone. The superior orbital fissure is traversed by cranial nerves III, IV, VI, and the ophthalmic division of V, as well as small arterial branches and the superior ophthalmic vein. Similarly, a gap between the lateral wall and the floor of the orbit, the inferior orbital fissure, is formed by the greater wing of the sphenoid bone, the maxilla, the palatine bone, and the zygoma. The inferior orbital fissure transmits the maxillary division of cranial nerve V, the zygomatic nerve, infraorbital vessels, and the vein to the pterygoid plexus.

The floor of the orbit is composed of the maxilla, palatine bone, and zygoma. In the middle of the floor, mostly on the orbital plate of the maxilla, is a depression, the infraorbital groove, which communicates with the infraorbital foramen via the infraorbital canal. The infraorbital vessels and nerve leave the orbit through the infraorbital canal.

The medial wall of the orbit is formed by four bones: the maxilla, lacrimal, ethmoid, and sphenoid bones. Bordering the rim of the orbit medially, the frontal process of the maxilla and the lacrimal bone both participate in the formation of a depression, the lacrimal fossa for the lacrimal sac. This fossa is continuous inferiorly with the nasolacrimal canal. Two small foramina, evident on the medial wall of the orbit at the ethmoidal–frontal suture, are the anterior and posterior ethmoidal foramina. The anterior ethmoidal foramen transmits the anterior ethmoidal nerve and vessel, whereas the posterior ethmoidal nerve and vessel pass through the posterior ethmoidal foramen.

The apex of the orbit consists of a single round opening, the optic foramen, through which cranial nerve II, the ophthalmic artery, a branch of the internal carotid artery, as well as the carotid plexus (a sheath of autonomic nerve fibers wrapped around the artery) enter the orbit from the cranial vault.

Nasal Cavity

Summary Bite. The nasal cavity lies in the midline below and between the orbits, covered by the paired nasal bones. Its medial wall is formed by the ethmoid bone, whereas its lateral wall is formed by the zygoma. The frontal bone forms the superior wall, whereas the maxilla forms the floor.

The nasal cavity is below and between the two orbits. Anterosuperiorly, it is covered by the paired nasal bones, which articulate with one another in the midline, with the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid interned, as well as with the frontal process of the maxilla and the frontal bone. The nasal bones and the nasal cartilages form the bony and cartilaginous bridge of the nose.

The cavity opens at its anterior extent via the anterior nasal aperture (piriform aperture), whose boundary is formed by the two nasal bones superiorly and the maxillae laterally and inferiorly. Inferiorly, at the midline of the anterior nasal aperture, the right
and left maxillae fuse, forming a small, bony, nipple-like structure, the anterior nasal spine. Posteriorly, the nasal cavity extends to the posterior nasal aperture, or choanae, where, similarly, the horizontal plates of the palatine bones fuse in the midline to form the posterior nasal spines.

The nasal cavity is divided in the midline into right and left halves by the nasal septum, composed of the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid anteriorly and superiorly and the vomer bone inferiorly and posteriorly. The sphenoid, maxillae, and palatine bones also make minor contributions to the bony nasal septum. The floor of each nasal cavity is formed by the horizontal plate of the palatine bone posteriorly and by the palatine process of the maxilla anteriorly.

The incisive canals are located at the junction of the vomer with the anterior-most portion of the palatine process of each maxilla. These canals transmit the descending septal arteries and the nasopalatine nerves, which course along on both sides of the nasal septum. The two incisive canals open on the oral palatal surface in an anteroposterior direction, and their overlying turbinates, known as conchae.

Several bones, listed in an anteroposterior direction, participate in the formation of the lateral wall: the maxilla, lacrimal, ethmoid, and palatine bones; the medial pterygoid plate of the sphenoid; and the inferior nasal concha. The ethmoid bone has turbinates, the superior and middle conchae, protruding into the nasal cavity.

Lateral, deep, and inferior to these conchae are air passages, the meatuses. The superior meatus extends as far as the middle concha, and it communicates with the posterior ethmoid air cells. The space below and deep to the middle nasal concha and superior to the inferior nasal concha is the middle meatus. This meatus communicates indirectly with the anterior ethmoidal air cells, directly or indirectly with the frontal sinus, and with the maxillary sinus via the opening (ostium) of the maxillary sinus. The space lateral and inferior to the inferior nasal concha is the inferior meatus, which extends as far inferiorly as the floor of the nasal cavity. The nasolacrimal canal opens into the anterior portion of the inferior meatus.

The portion of the face between the inferior rim of the orbit and the upper teeth is formed primarily by the maxillae. Just inferior to the rim is the infraorbital foramen. Lateral to this is the suture between the zygomatic process of the maxilla and the maxillary process of the zygoma, with the two processes contributing to the bony cheek prominence (Figs. 6-1, 6-2, and 6-6).

The inferior-most aspects of the two maxillae house the 16 maxillary teeth, forming the upper dental arch (Figs. 6-1, 6-2, and 6-10). Each maxilla contains a central and a lateral incisor and a canine, whose single root forms a prominent tuberosity on the maxilla, known as the canine eminence. Medial to the canine eminence is a fossa superior to the two incisors, the incisive fossa, and a similar fossa located lateral to the canine eminence, known as the canine fossa (see Fig. 4-3). The maxillary dental arch also houses two premolars and three molars. Teeth of this arch articulate with those of the mandible, the only bone of the skull that possesses the capacity to move.

The right and left halves of the mandible each contain a central and lateral incisor and a canine, whose single root is demarcated on the mandible as the canine eminence. Similarly to the maxillae, medial to this eminence, is the incisive fossa. Two premolars and three molars complete the mandibular dental arch. At the level of the second premolar of the mandible is the mental foramen, through which the mental nerve and vessels exit the mandibular canal.

Occasionally, a line indicating the mental symphysis may be observed in the midline inferior to the interdental septum between the two central incisors, extending through the mental protuberance or point of the chin. This represents the line of fusion of the right and left halves of the mandible during embryogenesis. The oblique line, the angle, and the anterior border of the mandible are also evident from this view.

Lateral View

Summary Bite. The lateral view displays the cranial vault with some of the sutures between the various bones making up the cranium, some of the bones of the face, and the bones forming the zygomatic arch.

From the lateral aspect, the skull is viewed in profile. The large cranial vault is evident, as are the bones of the face (Figs. 6-2 and 6-5). Various suture lines may be observed, namely, the coronal suture, between the frontal and parietal bones, which ends in the sphenoparietal suture at the greater wing of the sphenoid. Another suture, separating the squama of the temporal bone from the parietal bone, is the squamosal suture, which arches posteriorly, ending in the lambdoidal suture separating the occipital and parietal bones. Continuous with the lambdoidal suture inferiorly is the occipitomastoid suture, separating...
the mastoid portion of the temporal bone from the occipital bone. The anterior border of the temporal squama participates in the formation of the sphenosquamosal suture, delineating its fusion with the greater wing of the sphenoid.

Two lines, the superior and inferior temporal lines, arch across the frontal and parietal bones, indicating sites of attachment of the temporal fascia and temporals muscle, respectively. This region of the skull lies deep to the zygomatic arch and constitutes the medial wall of a large region known as the temporal fossa.

**Temporal Fossa**

**Summary Bite.** The temporal fossa is viewed from the lateral aspect and is the depression between the zygomatic arch and the superior temporal lines on the temporal bone indicating the space filled by the temporalis muscle.

The temporal fossa is a space bounded by the zygoma and the zygomatic process of the frontal bone anteriorly and the superior temporal lines superiorly and posteriorly (Figs. 6-5 and 6-6). Inferiorly, its boundary is delineated by the supramastoid crest, the posterior root of the zygomatic arch, a line connecting the posterior and anterior roots of the zygomatic arch, the infratemporal crest of the greater wing of the sphenoid, and its posterior continuation on the temporal bone to the anterior root of the zygomatic arch.

The zygomatic arch marks the boundary of the lateral aspect of this fossa, whereas the bony structures of the skull form its medial wall. The anteromedial aspect of the temporal fossa presents the inferior orbital fissure. The temporal fossa, occupied by muscles, vessels, and nerves, is superior to and continuous with another deep space, the infratemporal fossa.

**Infratemporal Fossa**

**Summary Bite.** The space deep and inferior to the zygomatic arch, when viewed from the lateral aspect, represents the infratemporal fossa. Medially, it is bounded by part of the maxilla, lateral pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone, and the pterygomaxillary fissure. This space houses the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles and the insertion of the temporalis muscle.

This space is located inferior and deep to the zygomatic arch. Its contents include the muscles of mastication, their vascular and nerve supply, as well as other structures of the deep face. The anterior boundary of the infratemporal fossa is the infratemporal surface of the maxilla and the deep surface of the zygomatic bone. Medially, it is bounded by the lateral surface of the lateral pterygoid plate of the sphenoid, the maxillary alveolar border, and a gap, the pterygomaxillary fissure. Superiorly, its boundary is the infratemporal crest of the sphenoid (the boundary between the temporal and infratemporal fossae), the inferior aspect of the temporal squama, and the infratemporal surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid, housing the foramen ovale and the foramen spinosum.

Posteriorly the infratemporal fossa is poorly defined by the anterior limits of the mandibular fossa, whereas inferiorly it is completely open.

**Pterygopalatine Fossa**

**Summary Bite.** The pterygopalatine fossa is viewed from the lateral view and from the lateroinferior view. It lies inside the pterygomaxillary fissure located on the medial wall of the infratemporal fossa between the pterygoid process of the sphenoid and the posterior aspect of the maxilla. The pterygopalatine fossa transmits the maxillary vessels.

Entrance into the pterygopalatine fossa is gained via a gap, the pterygomaxillary fissure, which transmits the maxillary vessels. This fissure is located on the medial wall of the infratemporal fossa and is formed by the interval between the pterygoid process of the sphenoid and the convex posterior aspect of the maxilla.

The fossa is pyramidal in shape and is enclosed by three bones, the maxilla and palatine bones, and the pterygoid process of the sphenoid (Fig. 6-6). It communicates with the interior of the skull through the foramen rotundum, transmitting the maxillary branch of the trigeminal nerve; with the orbit via the inferior orbital fissure; and with the nasal cavity by the sphenopalatine foramen.

Extending posteriorly from this fossa is the pterygoid canal, which transmits the nerve of the pterygoid canal. Inferiorly, the fossa becomes constricted and ends in the pterygopalatine canal (greater palatine canal) conducting the greater palatine vessels and nerves. The fossa contains an autonomic ganglion and its associations and blood vessels.

**Zygomatic Arch**

**Summary Bite.** The zygomatic arch is formed by a suture between part of the zygoma and part of the temporal bone. It may be viewed from the lateral, lateroinferior, frontal, inferior, and lateral oblique aspects. In addition to giving the face form, the contribution of the temporal bone to the zygomatic arch also forms the articular surface for the temporomandibular joint.

The zygomatic arch assists in the formation of the bony prominence of the cheek and provides attachments for the temporalis fascia and the masseter muscle. The zygomatic arch is formed by the temporal process of the zygomatic bone and the zygomatic process of the temporal bone, which are joined to each other by a suture positioned more or less 45 de-
degrees to the vertical (Figs. 6-2, 6-5, 6-6, and 6-7). Just medial to this suture, in the temporal fossa, the temporalis muscle passes to insert on the mandible.

The zygomatic process of the temporal bone arises from two or (according to some) three roots. The anterior root ends in front of the mandibular (glenoid) fossa in a round prominence, the articular eminence, which is the region of articulation of the mandibular condyle with the temporal bone. The posterior root continues further posteriorly, passing above the external auditory meatus and lateral to the mandibular fossa. The postglenoid tubercle, a bony structure posterior to the mandibular fossa that assists in preventing backward excursion of the condyle out of the fossa, is considered by some to be the third root of the zygomatic process of the temporal bone.

The zygomatic arch is continuous medially with the zygoma, a quadrilateral bone constituting a part of the inferior and lateral borders of the orbit. The superior border is formed by the frontal process of the zygoma and the inferior border by its maxillary process.

The zygomaticofacial foramen (frequently two foramina) pierces the body of the zygoma and transmits the zygomaticofacial nerve and vessels. On its orbital aspect, the zygomatic bone presents the two zygomatico-orbital foramina, which transmit nerves and vessels to the zygomaticofacial and zygomaticotemporal foramina. The latter foramen opens on the medial (temporal) surface of the zygomatic bone, and through it the zygomaticotemporal nerve and vessels enter the temporal fossa.

The zygomatic bone articulates with the zygomatic process of the maxilla, which describes an arched line, the zygomaticoalveolar crest, as it curves inferiorly to meet the alveolar portion of the maxilla.

Mastoid and Styloid Processes

Summary Bite. The region just posterior and inferior to the external ear canal is the mastoid process serving as an attachment site for several muscles. Anterior to the mastoid process is a long pointed bone directed inferiorty and anteriorly into the space of the neck. This is the styloid process, which serves as an attachment site for several muscles and ligaments related to movements of the mandible, hyoid bone, tongue, and pharynx.

The external acoustic meatus and the surrounding lateral aspect of the tympanic portion of the temporal bone are wedged between the mastoid process and the posterior root of the zygomatic process of the temporal bone just posterior to the mandibular fossa (Figs. 6-5, 6-6, and 6-7). This oval-shaped opening transmits the cartilaginous external ear canal leading to the tympanic membrane.

Behind and inferior to the external acoustic meatus is the mastoid process, which serves as a region of attachment of several muscles. On its posterior aspect the mastoid foramen is frequently present, transmitting emissary veins. The styloid process, located anterior to the mastoid process, is a long, sharp, pointed, icicle-shaped bone directed inferiorty and anteriorly. It gives attachment to several muscles and ligaments that assist in regulation of the excursion and movements of the mandible, hyoid bone, tongue, and pharynx. Between the mastoid and styloid processes is a constant foramen, the stylomastoid foramen, transmitting the facial nerve.

Posterior View

Summary Bite. The occipital bone and the sagittal and lambdoidal sutures are observed from the posterior view. However, the foramen magnum is not. It may be observed from the lateroinferior view and viewing the base. Many of the muscles of the posterior neck attach to the occipital bone as indicated by the nuchal lines.

When the skull is observed from a posterior view, the foramen magnum is not visible. However, it may be observed in a lateroinferior view (Fig. 6-6) and from viewing the base of the skull (Fig. 6-7). The most obvious features present are the posterior aspects of the sagittal suture and the lambdoidal suture, the former separating the paired parietal bones from each other and the latter acting as the dividing line between the occipital and parietal bones. Occasionally, one or more small islands of bone, known as sutural bones (Wormian bones), are present in the apex of the lambdoidal suture, where it is met by the inferior extent of the sagittal suture. Enclosed by the diverging lines of the lambdoidal suture is the flat, shell-shaped portion of the occipital bone, the squama.

A thick ridge, known as the superior nuchal line, extends to bisect the occipital squama into superior and inferior halves. At the midpoint, the right and left superior nuchal lines meet in a bony point, the external occipital protuberance.

A thin ridge of bone on the occipital squama, known as the external occipital crest or median nuchal line, runs directly inferiorly, to terminate at the posteromedial ridge of the foramen magnum. At the midpoint of the external occipital crest, the inferior nuchal line extends laterally, representing the superior border of attachment for three muscles of the back of the neck. Occasionally, the highest nuchal lines, positioned just above the superior nuchal lines, are also evident. These serve as lines of attachment for the galea aponeurotica.

Superior View

Summary Bite. A superior view of the skull displays an oval shape that is broader posteriorly, being broadest at the parietal eminence. The bones identified
from this view are the paired parietal bones and portions of the frontal and occipital bones.

The skull, observed from a superior view, is oval. It is narrower anteriorly and broader posteriorly, where the broadest region is the parietal eminence. This view reveals the portions of those bones that form the skullcap, consisting of the frontal squama, two parietal bones, and a small portion of the occipital squama. The frontal eminences and, if present, the metopic frontal sutures are evident. The coronal suture, indicating the border between the frontal and paired parietal bones, is met at its midline by the anterior extent of the sagittal suture at the bregma. The sagittal suture separates the right and left parietal bones from each other, terminating posteriorly at the lambda, the apex of the lambdoidal suture.

Anterior to the lambda, just lateral to the sagittal suture, are the paired parietal foramina, through which emissary veins pass. The bones comprising the calvaria (skullcap) are somewhat unusual in that they present two tables of compact bone, the outer and inner plates, which sandwich between them a layer of spongy (cancellous) bone, known as the diploë.

Inferior View
Summary Bite. The base of the skull provides a view of the maxillae containing the teeth of the maxillary arch anteriorly, the zygomatic arches laterally, and the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone posteriorly.

The inferior aspect of the skull (the base of the skull) is usually observed with the mandible detached to permit an unobstructed view of the various structures (Fig. 6-7). The anterior-most border includes the maxillary central incisors, whereas the posterior border is said to be the superior nuchal line.

The lateral extent includes the two zygomatic arches and the two mastoid processes. The base of the skull will be examined in three sections: the anterior portion, which extends as far back as the hard palate; the middle portion, which stops at a tangent drawn along the anterior-most point of the foramen magnum; and the posterior portion, which entails the remainder of the base of the skull.

Anterior Portion
Summary Bite. The anterior portion is represented by the 16 maxillary teeth embedded in the maxillary arch, which fuses behind the third molars forming the alveolar tubercle. Superior to this is the maxillary tuberosity. The hard palate forms the roof between the right and left halves of the maxillary arch.

The anterior portion is a flat-topped, dome-shaped region that houses the 16 maxillary teeth arranged peripherally in a horseshoe-shaped configuration (Figs. 6-7 and 6-8). It is the inferior-most portion of the skull, with the exception of the mandible.

The teeth are embedded in the alveolar arch, and intruding into the space between any two teeth, known as the interproximal region, is a bony extension, the interdental septum. Posterior to the third molars, the buccal and lingual alveolar arches fuse, and the area of fusion is known as the alveolar tubercle. Superior to the alveolar tubercle, the broad, posterior extent of the maxilla is the maxillary tuberosity.

In the anterior portion (and at this point it should be appreciated that although this view observes the skull upside-down, the descriptive terms refer to the normal anatomic position), the roof is arched and is separated into four segments by two intersecting sutures, the cruciform suture. The longer limb of this suture is the combination of the intermaxillary/interpalatine sutures, which separate the hard palate into right and left halves. The shorter limb of this suture is made up of the palatomaxillary sutures, which separate the horizontal plates of the palate bones from the palatine processes of the maxillae.

The anterior-most part of the intermaxillary suture lies in a depression, the incisive fossa (not to be confused with the same-named depression on the external aspect of the maxilla), into which the incisive foramina opens (Fig. 6-8). The incisive foramen receives the right and left incisive canals, each of which transmits the nasopalatine branch of the sphenopalatine artery as well as the nasopalatine nerve.

Posteriorly, on the lateral aspect of the hard palate, normally within the palatomaxillary suture, is the greater palatine foramen, through which the greater palatine vessels and nerves pass. Just posterior to this foramen two, or occasionally three, smaller foramina, the lesser palatine foramina, are present (Fig. 6-8). They permit passage of the lesser palatine vessels and nerves. These foramina are contained in the pyramidal process of the palate bone, which juts out posteriorly and laterally and is interposed between the lateral and medial pterygoid plates of the sphenoid bone.

The posterior aspect of the hard palate ends in a midline, bony projection known as the posterior nasal spine, the origin of the muscle of the uvula.

Middle Portion
Summary Bite. The middle portion represents parts of the sphenoid, palatine, temporal, vomer, and occipital bones and their foramina representing passageways for vessels and nerves to move into and out of the skull.

This is the most complex portion of the base of the skull and is composed of parts of the sphenoid, palatine, temporal, vomer, and occipital bones, housing
several foramina, which present passageways to and from the exterior of the skull (Fig. 6-7 and 6-8). The pyramidal portion of the palatine bone has already been discussed. It covers a portion of the maxillary tuberosity and is interposed between the alveolar tubercle and the medial and lateral pterygoid plates of the sphenoid bone.

The medial pterygoid plate presents a short, wedge-shaped structure at its inferior free edge, the pterygoid hamulus, around which the tendon of the tensor veli palatini muscle passes. This muscle originates in the scaphoid fossa, a small depression at the base of the pterygoid processes. Above this fossa, at the root of the medial pterygoid plate, is the opening of the pterygoid canal (vidian canal), through which the like-named nerve passes. Below this fossa is a large depression, between the lateral and medial pterygoid plates, known as the pterygoid fossa. It contains the origins of the medial pterygoid and tensor veli palatini muscles.

Between the right and left medial pterygoid plates is the choana, the posterior entrance into the nasal cavity, which is separated into right and left compartments by the nasal septum. The posterior aspect of this midline septum is the vomer, whose superior, broadened portion, evident in the inferior view, is met by a horizontal projection from the base of the medial pterygoid plate known as the vaginal process. This process forms the floor of the pharyngeal canal, which transmits the like-named nerve.

Posterior to the vomer is a thick, bridgelike bone, the basilar portion of the occipital bone, which flares out laterally as it extends back to the foramen magnum and the occipital condyles. A bony protuberance in the middle of the basilar portion of the occipital bone is known as the pharyngeal tubercle. It acts as a point of suspension for the entire pharynx, via the pharyngeal raphe. Shallow depressions and slight ridges on either side of the pharyngeal tubercle represent attachments for some of the muscles of the posterior neck.

The occipital bone approximates the jagged petrous portion of the temporal bone, which houses the carotid canal, through which the internal carotid artery gains entrance into the cranial cavity. This canal terminates anteromedially at the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, at the foramen lacerum. This foramen, obstructed in the live individual by a cartilaginous plate, is formed by the junction of the temporal, occipital, and sphenoid bones. Small arterial branches to the meninges and emissary veins from the cavernous sinus are said to pass through it.

The petrous portion of the temporal bone articulates anteriorly with the sphenoid, forming a groove that passes backwards and laterally, finally disappearing as a canal in the petrous bone. This groove and canal house the cartilaginous portion of the auditory tube. A ridge of bone, the spine of the sphenoid, forms the lateral border of this groove and is perforated by the foramen spinosum, through which the middle meningeal artery and recurrent meningeal branch of the mandibular division of cranial nerve V gains entrance into the cranial cavity.

The foramen ovale, located just anterior and medial to the foramen spinosum, pierces the greater wing of the sphenoid and permits the passage of the accessory meningeal artery and the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

Lateral to the foramen ovale is the flat portion of the greater wing of the sphenoid and part of the root of the zygomatic arch of the temporal bone. These form part of the roof of the infratemporal fossa. The lateral border of this table turns upward at nearly a right angle, forming a ridge, the infratemporal crest, which marks the boundary between the infratemporal and temporal fossae. The sphenotemporal suture passes diagonally across this ridge. Posterior to this table is a deep depression, housed in the tympanic and squamous portions of the temporal bone, the mandibular fossa (glenoid fossa). This depression accepts the articular disc and, indirectly, the condyle of the mandible, thus participating in the formation of the temporomandibular joint.

The squamotympanic fissure passes diagonally across the mandibular fossa. Approximately halfway through its course, a thin wedge of bone, the inferiormost tip of the tegmen tympani, protrudes through this fissure, thus creating two new fissures, an anterior (petrosquamous) and a posterior (petrotympanic) fissure.

The petrotympanic fissure transmits the chorda tympani branch of cranial nerve VII and the anterior tympanic branch of the maxillary artery. The anterior border of the mandibular fossa is represented by the articular eminence of the zygomatic process and the posterior extent by the postglenoid tubercle, which is, according to some, the posterior root of the zygomatic arch. Curving inferiorly and posteriorly from the postglenoid tubercle is the free edge of the tympanic portion of the temporal bone.

**Posterior Portion**

**Summary Bite.** The occipital bone and its foramen magnum and occipital condyles, which articulate with the atlas and the mastoid and styloid processes, form most of the posterior portion. Again, many foramina are positioned in the posterior portion.

This portion contains the foramen magnum, the occipital condyles, the styloid and mastoid processes, and the region of the occipital squama as far superiorly as the superior nuchal line (Figs. 6-5, 6-6, and 6-7). The
occupital condyles, which are located on either side of the foramen magnum, articulate with the atlas. Directly in front of and superior to each condyle is the hypoglossal canal, which traverses the bone in a posteromedial direction and transmits cranial nerve XII and a meningeal artery. Just posterior to the condyle is a depression, the condylar fossa, which may or may not be perforated by the condylar foramen, through which emissary veins pass.

Lateral to the hypoglossal canal is the jugular foramen, formed by the jugular notch of the occipital and the jugular notch of the temporal bones. Several important structures pass through this foramen, namely, cranial nerves IX, X, and XI, the inferior petrosal and transverse sinuses (draining into the jugular bulb, the expanded terminus of the internal jugular vein), and some meningeal arteries.

Just lateral to the large jugular foramen is the small stylomastoid foramen, wedged between the needle-shaped styloid process and the thick, cone-shaped mastoid process, through which cranial nerve VII leaves the skull. The mastoid process also gives rise to several muscles, one of which originates from a deep cleft, the mastoid notch, on the medial aspect of the process.

Medial to this cleft is the groove for the occipital artery. This groove is bordered medially by the temporo-occipital suture and laterally by the ridge of bone separating the groove from the mastoid notch. Frequently, above and behind the mastoid process is a small portion of the occipital bone. The anterior aspect may or may not contain the superior-most aspect of the occipital bone. The anterior-most aspect may or may not contain the superior-most extent of the two frontal sinuses housed between the external and internal plates of the frontal bone. A thin, wedge-shaped ridge of bone, the frontal crest, juts out, its sharp edge pointing posteriorly, to which the falx cerebri attaches (Fig. 6-3). The superior aspect of the frontal crest flares out before blending into the surrounding frontal squama. As it flares out, it is grooved, indicating the location of the superior sagittal sinus.

This groove, the sagittal sulcus, becomes deeper as it continues posteriorly in the midline. The coronal, sagittal, and lambdoidal sutures are also evident.

A few shallow, irregular excavations, the foveolae granulares, are present lateral to the sagittal sulcus, indicating the location of the lacunae lateralis, structures associated with arachnoid granulations. The lateral aspects of the cranial vault are grooved by branches of the meningeal vessels (Fig. 6-4).

**Internal Base**

Summary Bite. The internal base of the skull presents three depressions termed the anterior, middle, and posterior cranial fossae. These depressions house different lobes of the brain.

The internal base of the skull is arranged as three depressions positioned in an anteroposterior direction, each lower than the one preceding it: the anterior, middle, and posterior cranial fossae (Fig. 6-9).

In the living individual, the internal base and calvaria are lined by a periosteodural membrane, which is reflected onto itself to form venous sinuses (discussed in Chapter 17). These sinuses leave their marks on the bones as grooves, one of which, the sagittal sulcus, was mentioned previously. Additional marks on these bones are caused by the presence of blood vessels (Fig. 6-4), cranial dura, sulci and gyri of the brain, and foramina permitting the passage of structures into and out of the cranial cavity.

Some of the foramina, viewable in the internal base of the skull, were described in the previous section and their contents were noted there. The relative locations of these will be indicated in the present section, but their descriptions will not be repeated because Table 6-2, as well as the previous section, provide that information.

**Anterior Cranial Fossa**

Summary Bite. The depressions located in the anterior cranial fossa form in the frontal ethmoid and sphenoid bones and house the frontal lobes of the cerebrum.

The anterior cranial fossa is composed of portions of the frontal, ethmoid, and sphenoid bones (Fig. 6-9). The frontal lobes of the cerebrum lie on this floor. The
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Foramen</th>
<th>Location on Skull</th>
<th>Bone(s)</th>
<th>Location on Bone</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anterior ethmoidal</td>
<td>Medial wall of orbit</td>
<td>Ethmoidal and frontal</td>
<td>Fronto-ethmoidal suture</td>
<td>Anterior ethmoidal nerve and vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotid canal</td>
<td>Middle cranial fossa</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Petrous portion of temporal</td>
<td>Internal carotid artery and associated sympathetic plexus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cecum</td>
<td>Anterior cranial fossa</td>
<td>Frontal and ethmoidal</td>
<td>Between the base of the frontal crest and crista galli</td>
<td>Emissary veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condyloid</td>
<td>Posterior cranial fossa</td>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td>In condylar fossa just behind the condyle</td>
<td>Emissary veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater palatine</td>
<td>Anterior base of the skull</td>
<td>Palatine and maxilla</td>
<td>Between the palato-maxillary suture, lingual to the third molar</td>
<td>Greater palatine vessels and nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiatus of the facial canal</td>
<td>Middle cranial fossa</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Petrous portion of temporal, lateral to trigeminal impression</td>
<td>Greater petrosal nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglossal canal</td>
<td>Posterior cranial fossa</td>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td>Directly above the anterior aspect of the occipital condyle</td>
<td>Cranial nerve XII, meningeal branch of the ascending pharyngeal artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incisive</td>
<td>Palatal midline</td>
<td>Maxillae</td>
<td>Opens into the incisive fossa just behind the interdental septum between the two central incisors</td>
<td>Nasopalatine nerves and descending septal branches of the sphenopalatine artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior orbital fissure</td>
<td>Orbit</td>
<td>Sphenoid, maxilla, palatine, and zygoma</td>
<td>Between lateral wall and floor of orbit</td>
<td>Maxillary division of cranial nerve V, zygomatic nerve, infraorbital vessels and veins to the pterygoid plexus, ophthalmic vein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraorbital</td>
<td>Inferior to rim of orbit</td>
<td>Maxilla</td>
<td>Inferior to rim of orbit, lateral to nasal aperture, above canine fossa</td>
<td>Infraorbital vessels and nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal auditory meatus</td>
<td>Posterior cranial fossa</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Posterior aspect of the petrous portion of temporal</td>
<td>Cranial nerves VII and VIII, nervus intermedius and internal auditory vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugular</td>
<td>Posterior cranial fossa</td>
<td>Occipital and temporal</td>
<td>Lateral to the foramen magnum, medial to the stylohyoid process</td>
<td>Cranial nerves IX, X, and XI; inferior petrosal and sigmoid sinuses; meningeal arteries; jugular bulb of internal jugular vein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacerum</td>
<td>Middle cranial fossa</td>
<td>Temporal, occipital, and sphenoid</td>
<td>Medial to the apex of the petrous part of the temporal; lateral to basilar part of occipital</td>
<td>Covered by cartilaginous plate, which is pierced by meningeal arteries and emissary veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser palatine</td>
<td>Palate (posterior palatine part)</td>
<td>Pyramidal process of palatine</td>
<td>Lesser palatine vessels and nerves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Foramen</th>
<th>Location on Skull</th>
<th>Bone(s)</th>
<th>Location on Bone</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Magnum</td>
<td>Posterior cranial fossa</td>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td>Posterior to the clivus</td>
<td>Medulla oblongata and associated meninges, spinal roots of cranial nerve XI, vertebral arteries, anterior and posterior spinal arteries, postganglionic sympathetic fibers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandibular</td>
<td>Medial surface of the mandible</td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>Medial surface of ramus, inferior to lingula</td>
<td>Inferior alveolar vessels and nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastoid</td>
<td>Posterior external surface</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Above and behind the mastoid process near temporo-occipital suture</td>
<td>Emissary veins, mastoid branch of the occipital artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental</td>
<td>Anterior surface of mandible</td>
<td>Mandible</td>
<td>Inferior to interproximal region between first and second premolar</td>
<td>Mental nerve and vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasolacrimal canal</td>
<td>Anteromedial aspect of orbit</td>
<td>Maxilla and lacrimal</td>
<td>Region of articulation between the frontal process of the maxilla and the lacrimal bone</td>
<td>Nasolacrimal duct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olfactory</td>
<td>Anterior cranial fossa</td>
<td>Ethmoid</td>
<td>Cribiform plate of ethmoid surrounding the crista galli</td>
<td>Olfactory nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optic</td>
<td>Middle cranial fossa</td>
<td>Sphenoid</td>
<td>Apex of the orbit, between the two roots of the lesser wing of the sphenoid</td>
<td>Optic nerve, ophthalmic artery and associated post ganglionic sympathetic fibers, central artery of retina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovale</td>
<td>Middle cranial fossa</td>
<td>Sphenoid</td>
<td>Greater wing of sphenoid, anteromedial to the foramen spinosum</td>
<td>Mandibular division of cranial nerve V, accessory meningeal artery, sometimes the lesser petrosal nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parietal</td>
<td>Anterior to lambda on either side of sagittal suture</td>
<td>Parietal</td>
<td>On superior aspect near the sagittal suture</td>
<td>Emissary vein to superior sagittal sinus, sometimes a branch of the occipital artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharyngeal canal</td>
<td>External base of skull; medial to medial pterygoid plate</td>
<td>Sphenoid and palatine</td>
<td>Between the vaginal process of the sphenoid and the sphenoid process of the palatine</td>
<td>Pharyngeal nerve, pharyngeal artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior ethmoidal</td>
<td>Medial wall of orbit</td>
<td>Frontal and ethmoidal</td>
<td>Fronto-ethmoidal suture, posterior to the anterior ethmoidal foramen</td>
<td>Posterior ethmoidal nerve and vessels (when present)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterosuperior alveolar</td>
<td>Anterior to the pterygomaxillary fissure</td>
<td>Maxilla</td>
<td>Infratemporal surface and maxillary tuberosity</td>
<td>Posterosuperior alveolar nerves and vessels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pterygoid canal</td>
<td>Extends from foramen lacerum to pterygopalatine fossa</td>
<td>Sphenoid</td>
<td>Body of sphenoid just above the pterygoid processes</td>
<td>Nerve and vessels of the pterygoid canal (vidian nerve and vessel)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
anterior and lateral extents are formed by the frontal bones, whereas its posterior boundary is formed by the lesser wings and body of the sphenoid.

The frontal bone has a wedge-shaped midline structure, the frontal crest, which ends in a point inferiorly demarcating part of the contribution of the frontal bone to the foramen cecum. This foramen, if patent, transmits emissary veins, and it is here that the superior sagittal sinus originates.

The posterior part of the foramen cecum is formed by the ethmoid bone. Just behind this foramen is a triangular wedge of bone, the crista galli (cock’s comb) of the ethmoid, which provides attachment for the falx cerebri. The base of the crista galli sits in a depression between the two orbital plates of the frontal bone. The floor of this midline depression is known as the cribriform plate of the ethmoid. As its name implies, this plate is perforated by numerous olfactory foramina, which transmit the olfactory nerves to the olfactory bulbs that occupy this depression.

A small, triangular plate of bone extends anteriorly from the body of the sphenoid bone. The apex of this bony triangle, the ethmoidal spine of the sphenoid bone, contacts the posterior-most part of the crista galli. Thus, it is interposed between the orbital plates of the frontal bone and the cribriform plate of the ethmoid. The ethmoidal spine blends laterally into the lesser wings of the sphenoid.

Posteriorly, the lesser wings of the sphenoid bone terminate in a curved knife-edge, the inferior aspect of which contains the sphenoparietal sinus. The lesser wing of the sphenoid becomes broader medially, ending in the blunt, rounded anterior clinoid process, forming a ledge above the middle cranial fossa. This process forms the most anterior attachment of the tentorium cerebelli.
Middle Cranial Fossa

**Summary Bite.** The middle cranial fossa is formed by the lesser wings extending to the greater wings of the sphenoid, part of the temporal and parietal bones. The temporal lobes of the brain rest in the floor of the middle cranial fossa. The middle part of the fossa is occupied by the sella turcica, housing the pituitary gland.

The floor of the middle cranial fossa, which supports the temporal lobes of the brain, is at a lower level than and extends anteriorly underneath the anterior cranial fossa. Anteriorly, the middle cranial fossa is limited by the lesser wings of the sphenoid, the anterior border of the groove for the optic chiasma, and the anterior clinoid processes. Laterally, it extends to the greater wing of the sphenoid, the squamous portion of the temporal, and the inferior part of the parietal bones (Fig. 6-9). Posteriorly, it is limited by the dorum sellae of the sphenoid and the superior aspect of the petrous portion of the temporal bone.

Most of the center of this fossa is occupied by the sella turcica of the sphenoid, spreading anterolaterally and posterolaterally to its wall. The body of the sphenoid is sculpted in the midline to form the sella turcica, whose deepest portion is known as the hypophyseal fossa. The anterior wall of the sella turcica, the tuberculum sellae, is almost vertical and bears a lateral projection on each side, known as the middle clinoid process. The posterior wall of the sella turcica, the dorsum sellae, juts up and bears two small, knoblike projections known as the posterior clinoid processes. These processes provide attachment for the tentorium cerebelli.

The chiasmatic groove leads laterally into the optic foramen, through which the optic nerve, the central artery of the retina, and the ophthalmic branch of the internal carotid artery, with its associated sympathetic plexus, enter the orbit. Immediately lateral to the optic foramen, the diagonal gap between the lesser and greater wings of the sphenoid is known as the superior orbital fissure, which transmits cranial nerves III, IV, VI, and the ophthalmic division of V, along with the ophthalmic veins.

Posterior to the superior orbital fissure is the foramen rotundum, through which the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve exits the cranial fossa. Two additional foramina, the foramen ovale and foramen spinosum, lie posterolateral to the foramen rotundum in the sphenoid bone.

Medial to the foramen ovale is the foramen lacerum, which is, at times, formed into an incomplete canal by a piece of bone, the lingula, jutting out posteriorly from the body of the sphenoid. The lingula, at its origin, participates in the formation of a ridge forming the lateral border of a shallow groove for the internal carotid artery. Posteriorly, the lingula approximates the most medial region of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, the anterior surface of which bears a slight depression known as the trigeminal impression (for the trigeminal nerve ganglion).

Lateral to this impression is a small groove on the anterior, deep surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. The groove opens posteriorly into a canal, the hiatus of the facial canal. Above and lateral to the hiatus is a bony prominence, the arcuate eminence, overlying the superior semicircular canal. The thin, bony roof of the tympanic cavity partly surrounds (laterally and anteriorly) the arcuate eminence and is known as the tegmen tympani.

The superior-most portion of the petrous portion of the temporal bone is a thin ridge, which constitutes part of the posterior border of the middle cranial fossa. This ridge contains the groove for the superior petrosal sinus.

Posterior Cranial Fossa

**Summary Bite.** The posterior cranial fossa is both deeper and larger than the other two fossae and houses the brainstem, the cerebellum, and the occipital lobe of the cerebrum. The foramen magnum occupies its deepest part. Additionally, the jugular foramina are located in this fossa.

The posterior portion of the internal base of the skull is the posterior cranial fossa. Forming it are parts of the occipital, temporal, and parietal bones plus a small contribution from the sphenoid bone. This fossa houses the brainstem, cerebellum, and the occipital lobe of the cerebrum. The foramen magnum is located at its deepest part.

The remainder of the internal base of the skull is referred to as the posterior cranial fossa. It is formed by the occipital, temporal, and parietal bones, along with a small contribution from the sphenoid bone (Fig. 6-9).

Immediately anterior to the foramen magnum, the somewhat concave clivus extends upward to articulate with the sphenoid. Along the lateral aspect of this basilar portion of the occipital bone, as it approximates the petrous portion of the temporal bone, is the groove for the inferior petrosal sinus. An oval foramen, the internal auditory (acoustic) meatus, pierces the posterior face of the petrous temporal bone, leading to the internal ear. Cranial nerves VII and VIII, as well as the internal auditory arteries and veins, pass through it.

Directly inferior to the internal auditory meatus is the large jugular foramen, conducting various nerves and vessels. Medial to the jugular foramen is a bony elevation, the jugular tubercle, whose superior surface is grooved for the passage of cranial nerves IX, X, and XI to the jugular foramen.
The hypoglossal foramen, leading to the hypoglossal canal, pierces the occipital bone just inferior to the jugular tubercle. This canal transmits cranial nerve XII and the meningeal branch of the ascending pharyngeal artery. Occasionally, the condylar canal also pierces the occipital bone, ending at the mouth of the pharyngeal artery. Occasionally, the condylar canal nerve XII and the meningeal branch of the ascending promontory. The cruciate eminence divides the region into four concavities. The lower concavities serve as the housing of the two cerebellar hemispheres and are known as the cerebellar fossae, whereas the two superior depressions mark the location of the occipital lobes of the cerebrum.

At the region where the transverse sinus turns superiority is a large protuberance, the internal occipital protuberance, which marks the intersection of two linear bony elevations forming a cross, the cruciate eminence. The cruciate eminence divides the region into four concavities. The lower concavities serve as the housing of the two cerebellar hemispheres and are known as the cerebellar fossae, whereas the two superior depressions mark the location of the occipital lobes of the cerebrum.

The lower leg of the cruciate eminence, extending from the internal occipital protuberance to the posterior lip of the foramen magnum, is the internal occipital crest, which receives the attachment of the falx cerebelli.

**MANDIBLE**

Summary Bite. The mandible (jaw bone), the only movable bone of the skull, houses the 16 adult mandibular teeth. It is a double-jointed bone articulating with each of the paired temporal bones forming the temporomandibular articulation, thus bringing the lower dental arch into occlusion with the upper dental arch.

The mandible, forming the skeleton of the chin, is one of the largest bones of the skull and the only movable one. The mandible houses the 16 lower teeth and, via its articulation with the temporal bone, brings the lower dentition into intimate contact with the upper dental arch. The mandible consists of a horseshoe-shaped, horizontally placed body and two rami projecting upward and backward (Figs. 6-1, 6-2, 6-5, and 6-10).

The two rami are suspended from the skull by a series of bilateral ligaments and muscles. These limit the excursion of the bone and simultaneously provide great versatility of motion by permitting a plethora of movements, including opening, closing, protrusion, retraction, lateral excursion, and a limited degree of rotation.

The mandible presents an external and internal surface (Fig 6-10). The external surface will be described first. The horseshoe-shaped body presents a fusion line in the anterior midline, between the two central incisors, known as the symphysis mentis (mandibular symphysis), the inferior extent of which is triangular and is referred to as the mental protuberance, or the point of the chin.

The base of the mental protuberance forms the anterior-most portion of the inferior border of the mandible and is somewhat concave in the midline but presents two small, bony projections laterally, the mental tubercles. Above the mental tubercles, on either side of the symphysis mentis, the body of the mandible presents two slight concavities, the incisive fossae.

On the lateral surface, the mental foramen is evident, located inferior to the interproximal region between the first and second premolars. It opens in a posterior direction and transmits the mental nerve and vessels.

A line, the oblique line, connects the mental tubercle with the anterior border of the ramus. This oblique line is very faint until it reaches the first molar, where it becomes prominent and, at the level of the second molar, begins to arch upward to become continuous with the sharp, anterior edge of the ramus.

Medial to the oblique line, just lateral and distal to the third molar, is a shallow depression, the retromolar fossa. Medial to the retromolar fossa is another shallow, triangular depression, the retromolar triangle.

The lateral border of the retromolar triangle becomes continuous with the lateral (buccal) alveolar crest, whereas the medial border is continuous with the medial alveolar crest of the third molar. These crests then continue forward to form the buccal and lingual alveolar plates of the mandible. In the interproximal regions, these plates are connected to each other by bony connections, the interdental septa.

The internal surface in the midline of the body of the mandible bears two, or sometimes four, bony tubercles. The two superior ones are constant and are the mental spines (also referred to as superior mandibular spines or genial tubercles) from which the genioglossus muscles originate. The two lower tubercles, the inferior mandibular spines, serve as the origins of the geniohyoid muscles.

The medial aspect of the body of the mandible bears a bony ridge, the mylohyoid line, extending from the symphysis mentis to the region of the third molar. The mylohyoid line delineates the origin of the mylohyoid muscle. Superior to the mylohyoid line anteriorly is a shallow fossa, the sublingual fossa,
whereas the submandibular fossa projects posteriorly below this line. Each fossa is named after the major salivary gland that occupies it.

Posterior to the body of the mandible is the ramus. The region where the posterior border of the ramus is continuous with the posterior extent of the base of the mandible is the angle of the mandible. The buccal (external) aspect of the ramus is marked with tuberosities and depressions, indicating the site of attachment of the masseter muscle.

Just anterior to the attachment of the masseter is a slight, seldom evident groove on the body of the mandible, the groove for the facial artery, indicating the route that artery takes as it curves upward to enter the face. The upward extension of the ramus ends in the coronoid and condylar processes is known as the pterygoid fovea. The arciform region between the pterygoid muscle inserts into a slight depression, the pterygoid fovea. The arciform region between the pterygoid process flares out and ends in an articular surface, the condyle of the mandible, which articulates with the temporal bone.

The region just below the condyle is the neck of the mandible, on whose medial aspect the lateral pterygoid muscle inserts into a slight depression, the pterygoid fovea. The arciform region between the coronoid and condylar processes is known as the mandibular notch, through which the masseteric nerve and vessels pass into the masseter muscle.

Near the middle of the medial surface of the ramus is the mandibular foramen, which opens into the mandibular canal housing the inferior alveolar nerve and vessels. The opening is guarded anteriorly by a sharp ridge of bone, the lingula, whose free apex points posteriorly toward the condyle. The lingula serves as the region of attachment of the sphenomandibular ligament.

Inferior to the lingula is the mylohyoid groove, extending from the mandibular foramen in an anteroinferior direction and marking the course of the mylohyoid nerve. The angle of the mandible and the region posterior to the mylohyoid groove presents a roughened, craggy appearance caused by the insertion of the medial pterygoid muscle. (See Figs. 6-11 through 6-13.)

The hyoid is a small, U-shaped bone that, at first glance, appears insignificant because of its small size (Fig. 6-15). However, each bilateral half gives attachment to three ligaments and as many as 10 and sometimes 11 muscles. This bone is suspended by ligaments and muscles between the temporal bones and the sternum. It consists of five parts: the quadrilateral, median body (corpus), and four cornua (horns), the two greater and two lesser cornua.

The two greater horns, directed posteriorly, end in a tubercle and are attached by a cartilaginous connection earlier in life. The cartilage ossifies in middle-aged individuals. The lesser cornua, small nipplelike structures pointing cranially and posteriorly, are attached to the articulation of the greater cornua with the body.

Frequently, an anterior midline vertical ridge divides the body of the hyoid bone into right and left halves. The inferior border of the body is flat except for a small, cranially directed midline concavity.

The following muscles attach to the body: genioglossus (via a few tendinous slips), geniohyoid, hyoglossus, levator of the thyroid gland (when present), mylohyoid, omohyoid, sternohyoid, and thyrohyoid. Two ligaments, the hyoepiglottic and thyrohyoid (in part), are also attached to the body of the hyoid bone.

The following muscles are attached to the greater cornu: digastric (via a tendinous loop), hyoglossus, middle pharyngeal constrictor, stylohyoid, and thyrohyoid. The thyrohyoid membrane is attached, in part, to the tubercle of the greater cornu.

The lesser cornu gives attachment to the chondroglossus portion of the hyoglossus muscle as well as to the stylohyoid ligament.

**CERVICAL VERTEBRAE**

Summary Bite. The seven most superior vertebrae are the cervical vertebrae. The first two, the atlas and axis, are highly modified to permit rotation of the head upon the vertebral column.

There are seven cervical vertebrae, and they constitute the most superior extension of the vertebral column. The superior two, the atlas and axis, are greatly modified to support the head and permit its rotation at the atlantoaxial joint. The seventh cervical vertebra (C7) is also modified but will not be treated separately here.

Interposed between any two vertebrae is an intervertebral disc, as well as other cartilaginous struc-
tures involved in regions of facets to facilitate smooth, frictionless movement and provide cushioning and support for the whole vertebral column.

**Typical Cervical Vertebra**

**Summary Bite.** A typical cervical vertebra appears much like thoracic vertebra except that the transverse processes of all cervical vertebrae (except the seventh) are pierced by the large foramen transversarium, housing the vertebral vessels and associated sympathetic plexus.

The typical cervical vertebra, as any other typical vertebra, has a large, anteriorly directed body from which the posterior vertebral arch is directed dorsally (Fig. 6-16). This arch encloses the vertebral foramen. All the vertebral foramina together constitute the vertebral canal, which houses the spinal cord, meninges, and associated vessels. The posterior vertebral arch consists of two short, anterior pedicles and two broader, posterior laminae. Jutting out from the two laminae are two superior articular processes, two inferior articular processes, two transverse processes, and a single posteriorly and inferiorly directed spinous process.

The superior and inferior aspects of the pedicles bear vertebral notches known as the superior and inferior vertebral notches. As two vertebrae articulate with each other, the superior notch of the lower vertebra and the inferior notch of the upper vertebra form the invertebral foramen, through which the spinal nerves leave the vertebral canal.

The transverse processes of all cervical vertebrae (except the seventh) are pierced by the large foramen transversarium, housing the vertebral vessels and associated sympathetic plexus.

The seventh cervical vertebra has a small or doubled foramen transversarium. The superior articular processes project cranially, bearing the posteriorly directed articular facets. The inferior articular processes project caudally, with their articular facets directed anteriorly.

The superior surface of the body is somewhat concave and presents an upward-curving lip on either side. The inferior surface of the body is slightly concave in an anteroposterior direction, while being convex in the transverse plane. The bifid spinous process (longest in C7) projects posteriorly and inferiorly.

**Atlas**

**Summary Bite.** The first cervical vertebra is greatly modified because it articulates superiorly with the occipital condyles rather than with a superior vertebra. Its body is a modified anterior arch that presents a facet for the dens of the axis on its dorsal surface, which is retained in the atlas by a ligament. The inferior facets articulate with the superior facets of the axis.

The atlas, or first cervical vertebra, is greatly modified. The body is replaced by an anterior arch, whose ventral surface possesses an anterior tubercle, whereas the dorsal surface presents the facet for the dens of the axis (Fig. 6-17). The anterior arch is connected to the posterior arch via the right and left lateral masses, which bear the superior and inferior articular facets. The superior facets articulate with the occipital condyles, and the inferior facets articulate with the superior articular facets of the axis.

The dens is retained in the atlas by the transverse ligament of the atlas, a fibrous sling that is attached to a tubercle on the medial surface of each lateral mass.

The transverse processes of the atlas are very long and bear the foramina transversarium for the passage of the vertebral artery and associated structures. The superior surface of the posterior arch possesses a groove for the passage of the vertebral artery to enter the foramen magnum. The posterior arch ends in the small posterior tubercle, representing the remnant of the spinous process.

**Axis**

**Summary Bite.** The second cervical vertebra is modified to help form the atlantoaxial joint. The body is modified, forming the toothlike dens which articulates with the anterior arch of the atlas. The spinous process is large and bifid, and it serves for the attachment for the many muscles responsible for head movements.

The axis, or second cervical vertebra, is also modified to participate in the formation of the atlantoaxial joint (Fig. 6-17). The body of the axis is modified superiorly to present a cranial toothlike projection, the dens, which is notched posteriorly to accept the transverse ligament of the atlas. Anteriorly, the dens possesses an articular facet that meets the articular facet of the atlas's anterior arch.

The pedicles are modified superiorly because they are overlaid by the superior articular facets, and the vertebral notches of this surface are very shallow. The inferior vertebral notches, however, are very deep. The transverse processes of the axis are short and possess only a single tubercle, but otherwise they are unremarkable. The spinous process is large and bifid, and it serves for the attachment of many muscles responsible for various movements of the head.
Figure 6-1. Frontal view of the skull. (continued)
Figure 6-1. (continued) Frontal view of the skull.
Figure 6-2. Anterior oblique view of the skull.
Figure 6-3. Median section of the skull with median nasal septum intact.
Figure 6-4. Median section of the skull with the median nasal septum removed. (continued)
Figure 6-4. (continued) Median section of the skull with the median nasal septum removed.
Figure 6-5. Lateral view of the skull. (continued)
Figure 6-5. (continued) Lateral view of the skull.
Figure 6-6. Lateroinferior view of the skull. (continued)
Figure 6-6. (continued) Lateroinferior view of the skull.
Figure 6-7. Base of the skull. (continued)
Figure 6-7. (continued) Base of the skull.

Figure 6-8. Palate and associated area.
Figure 6-9. Internal base of the skull.
Figure 6-10. Mandible. Lateral aspect (top view). Superior aspect (middle view). Medial aspect (bottom view). (A) Coronoid process. (B) Mandibular condyle. (C) Mandibular notch. (D) Body of mandible. (E) Ramus of mandible. (F) Submandibular fossa. (G) Sublingual fossa.
Figure 6-11. Posteroanterior radiograph of the head. (continued)
Figure 6-11. (continued) Posteroanterior radiograph of the head.
Figure 6-12. Lateral radiograph of the head. (continued)
Figure 6-12. (continued) Lateral radiograph of the head.
Figure 6-13. Cephalometric radiograph ready for orthodontic mark-up.
Figure 6-14. Normal axial scans of the orbit. (A, C, and E) Magnetic resonance scans. (B, D, and F) Contrast computed tomographic scans. Aq, aqueous humor; Az, annulus of Zinn; CIB, ciliary body; Co, cornea; FB, frontal bone; G, glove; I, iris; IO, inferior oblique muscle; IR, inferior rectus muscle; L, lens; LG, lacrimal gland; L-c, lens cortex; LEI, lower eyelid; L-n, lens nucleus; LP, levator palpebrae muscle; LR, lateral rectus muscle; MR, medial rectus muscle; OA, opthalmic artery; OS, orbital septum; R-Ch, retina-choroid; Sc, sclera; SO, superior oblique muscle; SO/MR, superior oblique, medial rectus; SOV, superior ophthalmic vein; SR, superior rectus muscle; SR/LP, superior rectus, levator palpebrae; Tr, trochlea; UEI, upper eyelid; Vi, vitreous; Z, zonule.
Figure 6-16. Typical cervical vertebra.

Figure 6-15. Hyoid bone.
Figure 6-17. Superior views of the atlas (top) and the axis (bottom).
Neck

Chapter Outline

Clinical Considerations
Surface Anatomy
Superficial Structures of the Neck
Superficial Venous Drainage
Sensory Innervation of the Neck
Deep Fascia
Investing Fascia
Prevertebral Fascia
Clinical Considerations
Pretracheal Fascia
Carotid Sheath
Posterior Aspects of the Neck
Triangles of the Neck
Clinical Considerations
Posterior Triangle of the Neck
Accessory Nerve
Muscles Associated with the Posterior Triangle
Omohyoid Muscle
Levator Scapulae Muscle
Scalene Muscles
Nerves Associated with the Posterior Triangle
Brachial Plexus
Cervical Plexus
Ansa Cervicalis
Phrenic and Accessory Phrenic Nerves
Arteries Associated with the Posterior Triangle
Subclavian Artery
Clinical Considerations
Vertebral Artery
Internal Thoracic Artery
Thyrocervical Trunk
Costocervical Trunk
Dorsal Scapular Artery
Veins Associated with the Posterior Triangle
Subclavian Vein
Anterior Triangle of the Neck
Infrahypoglossal Muscles
Cervical Arteries
Clinical Considerations
External Carotid Artery
Superior Thyroid Artery
Ascending Pharyngeal Artery
Lingual Artery
Facial Artery
Occipital Artery
Posterior Auricular Artery
Maxillary and Superficial Temporal Arteries
Internal Jugular Vein
Clinical Considerations
Thyroid Gland
Clinical Considerations
Superior Thyroid Artery
Inferior Thyroid Artery
Venous Drainage
Parathyroid Glands
Nerves Observed in the Anterior Triangle
Vagus Nerve
Cervical Sympathetic Trunk
Superior Cervical Ganglion
Middle Cervical Ganglion
Inferior Cervical Ganglion
Clinical Considerations
Deep Prevertebral Muscles of the Neck
Preganglionic neurons arising from the intermediolateral cell column of the trunk were said to be located in the neurons in the cervical sympathetic nervous system. The student will continue the thoracic sympathetic components, the cervical spinal nerves possess no cervical Sympathetic Trunk

Because cervical spinal nerves possess no sympathetic components, the cervical sympathetic trunk represents a continuation of the thoracic sympathetic trunk into the neck. The student will recall that in Chapter 3 the autonomic nervous system was described as a two-neuron chain, and cell bodies of neurons in the cervical sympathetic trunk were said to be located in the intermedialateral cell column of the upper thoracic spinal cord segments. Preganglionic neurons arising from here are seeking postganglionic cell bodies that are located in postganglionic sympathetic ganglia where synapses will take place. There are three such ganglia located in the cervical sympathetic trunk: superior, middle, and inferior. After synapsing with postganglionic neurons, the axons arising from these ganglia find their way to smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands. Some fibers pass directly, whereas others join a spinal nerve to be distributed to the target.

Deep Fascia of the neck is generally described as surrounding the neck in three distinct layers: investing, prevertebral, and pretracheal. The carotid sheath is made up of contributions of these three layers and it houses the major neurovascular bundle of the neck, namely, the common carotid and internal carotid arteries, the internal jugular vein, and the vagus nerve.

Dorsal and Ventral Primary Rami give rise to the cutaneous branches of the cervical spinal nerves that serve the neck region. Branches of the dorsal primary rami provide cutaneous sensation to the posterior aspects of the neck, whereas branches of anterior primary rami provide cutaneous sensation for the sides and front of the neck. It is interesting to note that the first cervical spinal nerve probably has no cutaneous branches.

Phrenic Nerve is the sole motor nerve to the diaphragm. This nerve arises from the cervical complex, a complex of the first four cervical nerves composed of sensory and motor modalities. Cervical nerves C3, C4, and C5 combine to form the phrenic nerve, which may be observed deep in the posterior triangle lying on top of the anterior scalene muscle. It then passes between the subclavian artery and vein before diving into the thorax on its way to the diaphragm.

Platysma Muscle is the paper-thin sheet of muscle within the superficial fascia of the anterior cervical triangle. It originates in the superficial pectoral and deltoid fasciae rather than from bone, and proceeds cranially over much of the anterior triangle to insert into the inferior portion of the body of the mandible and into the skin and hypodermis of the face. Although this muscle lies outside the confines of the face, it is still considered a muscle of facial expression because it is innervated by the nerve of the second pharyngeal arch, the facial nerve (VII).

Subclavian Artery is the short, large-diameter artery that ends at the lateral border of the first rib. Its right and left origins differ. The left subclavian arises from the arch of the aorta within the thorax, whereas the right subclavian artery arises deep to the sternoclavicular joint from the terminal of the brachiocephalic trunk. Both arteries ascend into the neck arching between the anterior and middle scalene muscles. The subclavian artery serves as the source of many named arteries serving the structures within the neck. The subclavian artery changes its name at the lateral border of the first rib, where it becomes known as the axillary artery.

Triangles of the Anterior Neck are formed by the sternocleidomastoid muscle as it passes diagonally across the quadrilateral area formed between the anterior border of the trapezius muscle and the anterior midline of the neck, and between the inferior border of the mandible, superiorly, and the superior surface of the middle third of the clavicle, inferiorly. This divides the neck into two principal triangles, the anterior and posterior cervical triangles. Each of these triangles is further subdivided by muscles and bones; thus, each major triangle is made up of several subtriangles. Each triangle possesses its own anatomical component parts, including muscles, veins, nerves, etc. All of the cervical triangles are bilateral (right and left sides) with the exception of the submental triangle, which spans across the midline.

Key Terms

Accessory Nerve possesses two roots, one whose origin is in the brain and another whose origin is in the upper cervical spinal cord. These join together later to separate. The cranial portion unites with the vagus nerve, whereas the spinal portion of the accessory nerve descends becoming the only cranial nerve to traverse the posterior triangle. It passes through the sternocleidomastoid muscle and then passes deep in the triangle to enter the deep surface of the trapezius muscle, where it forms the subtrapezial plexus. Although motor innervation is provided to both of these muscles by the accessory nerve, proprioception is provided by cervical nerves C2 and C3 for the sternocleidomastoid and C3 and C4 for the trapezius muscle.

Brachial Plexus is a large complex of cervical spinal nerves that combine, re-form, and divide into anterior and posterior divisions to serve anterior and posterior compartment muscles of the upper limb, with a few contributions to the muscles of the neck. Those of the former are generally the flexors, whereas the latter are the extensors. The spinal nerves making up the plexus arise from C5, C6, C7, C8, and T1. Named peripheral nerves are formed again after the anterior and posterior divisions are completed.

Cervical Sympathetic Trunk Because cervical spinal nerves possess no sympathetic components, the cervical sympathetic trunk represents a continuation of the thoracic sympathetic trunk into the neck. The student will recall that in Chapter 3 the autonomic nervous system was described as a two-neuron chain, and cell bodies of neurons in the cervical sympathetic trunk were said to be located in the intermedialateral cell column of the upper thoracic spinal cord segments. Preganglionic neurons arising from here are seeking postganglionic cell bodies that are located in postganglionic sympathetic ganglia where synapses will take place. There are three such ganglia located in the cervical sympathetic trunk: superior, middle, and inferior. After synapsing with postganglionic neurons, the axons arising from these ganglia find their way to smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands. Some fibers pass directly, whereas others join a spinal nerve to be distributed to the target.
This is the first of several chapters using the regional approach for the examination of the head and neck. The chapter moves from superficial to deeper layers, almost as if the structures were being dissected for the reader. Hence, if a structure passes through the region being discussed, its detailed description will be confined only to that portion that resides in the area being treated. The remainder of that structure will be detailed in the appropriate chapters.

**CLINICAL CONSIDERATIONS**

Clinical involvement of the cervical region is a complex topic, encompassing, among others, congenital malformations, tumors—both benign and malignant—as well as anatomic considerations during surgical procedures, especially those involving the thyroid gland. The intent of the sections on clinical considerations is not to detail exhaustively the possible clinical significance of each structure located in this area, but merely to illustrate the importance of sound anatomic bases for clinicians dealing with this complicated region.

**SURFACE ANATOMY**

**Summary Bite.** The neck is the cylindrical connection between the head and the body. Thus, in addition to its role in supporting the head, it serves as a conduit for vessels and nerves passing between the head and body as well as a passageway for materials entering the digestive system and a passageway for the respiratory system.

The neck is a more or less cylindrical structure connecting the head to the trunk. Anteriorly, it extends from the inferior border of the mandible to the superior surfaces of the manubrium and laterally along the clavicles to the point of the shoulders, or acromion (Fig. 7-1).

Posteriorly, it is bounded inferiorly by a somewhat irregular surface, described by an imaginary line drawn between the right and left acromions that passes through the intervertebral disc between the seventh cervical (C7) and first thoracic (T1) vertebra, and superiorly by the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone. The posterior aspect of the neck is composed mostly of muscle masses on either side of the spinous processes of the cervical vertebrae. These muscle masses are more properly considered to be the deep muscles of the back because they function, in addition to supporting the head, in the extension of the atlanto-occipital and other vertebral joints. These muscle masses are covered by the trapezius muscle, which contributes to shaping the posterior aspect of the neck.

The anterior midline of the neck presents a bulge whose size reflects sexual dimorphism in that it is considerably larger in males than in females. This prominence is the larynx (Adam's apple), specifically the thyroid cartilage, whose superior aspect is marked by the easily palpable thyroid notch, above which lies the less palpable body and greater cornu of the hyoid bone. Inferior to the thyroid notch is the laryngeal prominence, which is formed by the fusion of the right and left plates of the thyroid cartilage.

Immediately inferior to the thyroid cartilage is the cricoid cartilage, below which the superior two or three cartilaginous rings of the trachea may be palpated. The inferior-most region in the midline of the anterior neck is the jugular notch of the manubrium. Tensing the neck reveals the bellies and the tendons of origin of the sternocleidomastoid muscle just lateral to this notch. This muscle may be palpated along its entire length as it passes posteriorly and obliquely to insert on the mastoid process of the temporal bone and superior nuchal line of the occipital bones.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Congenital Malformations**

During embryonic development of the head and neck, various congenital malformations may occur. Some of these were detailed in Chapter 5, and the reader is referred to that section.
SUPERFICIAL STRUCTURES OF THE NECK

Summary Bite. The skin covering the neck overlies the superficial fascia, a connective tissue layer that contains the platysma, a thin sheet of muscle that originates in fascia and inserts upon the mandible and skin of the face. The platysma develops from the second pharyngeal arch; thus, it is innervated by the nerve of the second arch, the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII). The skin covering the neck is arranged in such a fashion that Langer lines run horizontally to encircle it.

Deep to the dermis is a very thin fascial layer consisting of an areolar type of connective tissue known as the hypodermis or superficial fascia. This superficial fascia envelops the neck, just as the overlying skin does, and contains within it a paper-thin sheet of skeletal muscle, the platysma (Fig. 7-2). This muscle originates from the deltoid and pectoralis fasciae and passes cranially, overlying the anterior triangle and the inferior part of the posterior triangle (descriptive divisions of the neck depicted below). The platysma inserts onto the inferior border of the body of the mandible and into the skin and hypodermis of the face. The platysma intermingles with and assists muscles that depress the lower lip and corner of the mouth. The platysma, because it is derived from the second pharyngeal arch, is innervated by the cervical branch of the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII).

Superficial Venous Drainage

Summary Bite. Venous drainage of the superficial neck empties into the external jugular vein coursing deep to the platysma muscle. The course of this vein may be observed in a live individual as it crosses the obliquely oriented sternocleidomastoid muscle. The external jugular vein empties into the subclavian vein at the base of the neck.

The superficial venous drainage consists of the external jugular vein and its tributaries, which drain a limited area of tissue—specifically, the region superficial and immediately deep to the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia. It must be kept in mind that venous drainage exhibits great variability in vessel size and routes of distribution. This section details only the classical description.

The external jugular vein is formed by the union of the posterior auricular and retromandibular veins just posterior to the angle of the mandible, sometimes within the body of the parotid gland. It passes straight down the neck, under the cover of the platysma muscle and associated superficial fascia, superficial to the fleshy belly of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. In its path along this muscle, the external jugular vein crosses the muscle at an oblique angle (Figs. 7-1 and 7-2).

Once the external jugular vein reaches the subclavian triangle, it dives deep to the clavicle to join the subclavian vein. Several tributaries join the external jugular vein along its path, from the back of the neck,
and two others, the transverse cervical and supraclavicular veins. The last two veins drain the region of the shoulder. Another superficial vessel, the anterior jugular vein, occasionally empties into the external jugular vein, but usually it joins the subclavian vein directly. Although it lies between the two laminae of the investing fascia, the anterior jugular vein communicates with its corresponding vein on the other side via a venous connection, the jugular arch, which occupies the suprasternal space.

Sensory Innervation of the Neck

Summary Bite. Branches of dorsal and ventral primary rami of cervical spinal nerves provide cutaneous innervation to the neck. The cervical plexus is formed by ventral primary rami of C1, C2, C3, and C4. Cutaneous sensation to the front and side of the neck is served by C2, C3, and C4.

Cutaneous innervation of the neck is mediated by branches of the dorsal and ventral primary rami of cervical spinal nerves. It is important to remember the following concepts concerning cutaneous innervation of the neck:

- The first cervical spinal nerve probably has no cutaneous branches.
- The ventral primary rami of C1, C2, C3, and most of C4 form the cervical plexus.
- The ventral primary rami of parts of C4, all of C5, C6, C7, and C8, and most of T1 participate in the formation of the brachial plexus.
- The cutaneous supply of the side and front of the neck is derived from branches of the cervical plexus (C2, C3, and C4).

Sensation to the back of the neck is mediated by the medial branches of the dorsal primary rami of C2,
behind and superior to it. The back of the auricle and to the region of the scalp are invested by the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia, crosses over the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and distributes to the regions they serve. They all appear very close to each other at the midbelly of the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

The lesser occipital nerve (C2) closely follows the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid as it ascends toward the mastoid process. Near the insertion of this muscle, the lesser occipital nerve perforates the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia, crosses over the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and distributes to the back of the auricle and to the region of the scalp behind and superior to it.

The great auricular nerve (C2 and C3) pierces the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia at midbelly of the sternocleidomastoid. It travels obliquely across that muscle, accompanying the external jugular vein in its ascent toward the ear. Shortly before reaching the ear, it bifurcates into an anterior branch supplying sensation to the skin overlying the parotid gland, and a posterior branch (or mastoid branch) serving the cutaneous region over the back of the ear and a posterior branch (or mastoid branch) serving the cutaneous region over the spine of the scapula. Occasionally, one or more of these nerves may be observed to perforate the skin over the spine of the scapula.

The transverse cervical nerve (C2 and C3) pierces the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia in the vicinity of, but inferior to, the great auricular nerve. It crosses the sternocleidomastoid muscle horizontally under the cover of the platysma, deep to the external jugular vein, where it bifurcates into ascending and descending branches to supply the skin of the anterior triangle of the neck.

The supraclavicular nerves (C3 and C4) are the only superficial descending branches of the cervical plexus. These nerves pass deep to the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia as a single trunk, surfacing just inferior to the transverse cervical nerve. The trunk descends deep to the platysma and forms three branches: medial, intermediate, and lateral. These branches perforate the investing layer just cranial to the clavicle and distribute as far inferiorly as the sternal angle and second rib and as far laterally and posteriorly as the skin over the spine of the scapula. Occasionally, one or more of these nerves may be observed to perforate the clavicle.

The front and side of the neck receive their sensory supply from branches of the cervical plexus containing fibers derived from the ventral primary rami of C2, C3, and C4. These branches of the cervical plexus are the lesser occipital, great auricular, transverse cervical, and supraclavicular nerves (Fig. 7-2). These nerves emerge in the posterior triangle, pierce the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia, and distribute to the regions they serve. They

The great auricular nerve (C2 and C3) pierces the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia at midbelly of the sternocleidomastoid. It travels obliquely across that muscle, accompanying the external jugular vein in its ascent toward the ear. Shortly before reaching the ear, it bifurcates into an anterior branch supplying sensation to the skin overlying the parotid gland, and a posterior branch (or mastoid branch) serving the cutaneous region over the back of the ear and a posterior branch (or mastoid branch) serving the cutaneous region over the spine of the scapula. Occasionally, one or more of these nerves may be observed to perforate the skin over the spine of the scapula.

The transverse cervical nerve (C2 and C3) pierces the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia in the vicinity of, but inferior to, the great auricular nerve. It crosses the sternocleidomastoid muscle horizontally under the cover of the platysma, deep to the external jugular vein, where it bifurcates into ascending and descending branches to supply the skin of the anterior triangle of the neck.

The supraclavicular nerves (C3 and C4) are the only superficial descending branches of the cervical plexus. These nerves pass deep to the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia as a single trunk, surfacing just inferior to the transverse cervical nerve. The trunk descends deep to the platysma and forms three branches: medial, intermediate, and lateral. These branches perforate the investing layer just cranial to the clavicle and distribute as far inferiorly as the sternal angle and second rib and as far laterally and posteriorly as the skin over the spine of the scapula. Occasionally, one or more of these nerves may be observed to perforate the clavicle.

The deep fascia of the neck is usually thought of as being organized into three distinct layers: investing, prevertebral, and pretracheal fascia. In addition, the carotid sheath, an investment of fascia derived from the component layers of the deep fascia, surrounds the large vessels and nerves that pass between the trunk and the head (Figs. 7-3 and 7-4).

Considerable variation exists in the description of the cervical fascia because there is no precise definition of what constitutes fascia. The descriptions that follow view fascia rather conservatively and presuppose a functional as well as a morphologic basis for this tissue. An important point is that the subdivisions of the cervical fascia form additional compartments and interfascial spaces. One such space, separating the buccopharyngeal and prevertebral fasciae, is the retropharyngeal space, extending from the base of the skull all the way inferiorly into the posterior mediastinum within the thorax (see the “Clinical Considerations” section below).

The alar fascia, another minor fascial layer in this area, represents the posterior lamina of the pretracheal fascia and forms a loose, thin connective tissue sheet between the buccopharyngeal fascia and the prevertebral fascia. It terminates laterally in the carotid sheath. An additional minor fascial layer that envelops the infrahyoid muscles is the fascia of the infrahyoid muscles.

Investing Fascia

Investing fascia (superficial layer of the deep fascia) splits into two laminae to “invest” (sandwich) the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles as it surrounds the neck.

The investing fascia, also known as the superficial layer of the deep fascia, surrounds the neck and covers the anterior and posterior triangles. It is a thin, though in places rather strong, sheet that is attached along the length of the ligamentum nuchae (a strong band of collagenous and elastic fibers along the neck).
Figure 7-3. Cross section of the neck. The view is approximately at the level of the seventh cervical vertebra, illustrating cervical fascia.

Figure 7-4. Cervical fascia in midsagittal view.
spines of the cervical vertebrae) and the spine of the seventh cervical vertebra (Figs. 7-3 and 7-4).

As the investing layer proceeds anteriorly, it splits into two laminae around the trapezius muscle, and then fuses into a single layer to split again into two laminae around the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Subsequent to enveloping this muscle, it again fuses into a single layer and continues anteriorly to the front of the neck to join its counterpart from the opposite side. In its passage, it also encompasses the strap muscles of the neck.

The superior attachment of the investing layer includes the external occipital protuberance, the superior nuchal line, and the inferior extent of the mastoid process. Here it splits to enclose the parotid gland, where it continues superiorly as the parotid fascia. The superficial lamina of the parotid fascia is attached to the inferior border of the zygomatic arch, whereas the deep lamina extends along the temporal bone to the carotid canal.

A part of this deep lamina is thickened and extends from the styloid process to the mandible and is aptly named the stylomandibular ligament. This ligament effectively separates the parotid gland from the submandibular gland.

Superiorly, the investing layer is attached to the spinous process of the seventh cervical vertebra, the spine of the scapula, the acromion, the clavicle, and the manubrium. In places, it is attached to both the anterior and posterior aspects of the clavicle, and scapula, following the course of the attachment of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles. The fascia also splits into two laminae to envelop and fix the intermediate tendon of the omohyoid muscle. Immediately above the suprasternal notch, the two laminae of the investing layer remain separated, forming the small suprasternal space. This space contains adipose tissue as well as the jugular arch, a venous connection between the two anterior jugular veins.

### Clinical Considerations

#### Fascial Layers

Fascial layers play an important role in the localization of infection. However, the spaces between fascial layers occasionally communicate with other regions of the body. One such space, between the two laminae of the prevertebral fascia (or, according to some, between the prevertebral and alar fasciae) is the “danger space,” serving as a conduit for the spread of infection from the neck into the thorax. Spread of infection via this route can be life-threatening.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trapezius</td>
<td>Most superficial layer covering the back of the neck and upper back</td>
<td>External occipital protuberance, superior nuchal line, ligamentum nuchae, and spinous processes of C7–T12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splenius capitis</td>
<td>Immediately deep to the trapezius</td>
<td>Ligamentum nuchae; spinous processes of vertebrae C7–T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splenius cervicis</td>
<td>Lateral and inferior to splenius capitis</td>
<td>Spines of the vertebrae T3–T6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iliocostalis cervicis</td>
<td>Back of neck to the angle of upper few ribs</td>
<td>Angles of ribs 3, 4, 5, and 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longissimus cervicis</td>
<td>Medial to iliocostalis cervicis</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae T1–T5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longissimus capitis</td>
<td>Medial to the longissimus cervicis</td>
<td>Transverse processes of T1–T5 and articular processes of vertebrae C4–C7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinalis cervicis</td>
<td>Inconstant</td>
<td>Inferior portion of ligamentum nuchae; spine of vertebrae C7, T1, and T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinalis capitis</td>
<td>Usually fused with the medial part of the semispinalis capitis</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae T5 and T6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semispinalis capitis</td>
<td>Deep to the splenius capitis</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C7–T6 and articular processes of vertebrae C4–C6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semispinalis cervicis</td>
<td>Deep to the semispinalis cervicis</td>
<td>Transverse processes of T1–T6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multifidus (cervical portion)</td>
<td>On either side of the spinous process of each cervical vertebra</td>
<td>Articular processes of vertebrae C4–C7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rotatores longus and brevis</td>
<td>Dorsal aspect of vertebrae</td>
<td>Transverse processes of C3–C7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spineae (cervical portion)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interspinales (cervical portion)</td>
<td>Between the spines of cervical vertebrae</td>
<td>Spine of each cervical vertebra, except C2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intertransversarii anterior</td>
<td>Between transverse processes of cervical vertebrae, placed anteriorly</td>
<td>Anterior tubercle of transverse process of vertebrae C2-T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cervical portion)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intertransversarii posterior</td>
<td>Behind the intertransversarii anterior</td>
<td>Posterior tubercles of transverse process of vertebrae C2-T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(cervical portion)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obliquus capitis superior</td>
<td>Deep to semispinalis capitis</td>
<td>Transverse process of atlas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obliquus capitis inferior</td>
<td>Deep to semispinalis capitis and inferior to obliquus capitis superior</td>
<td>Spinous process of axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus capitis posterior major</td>
<td>Medial to the obliquus capitis superior</td>
<td>Spine of the axis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus capitis posterior minor</td>
<td>Medial to the rectus capitis posterior major</td>
<td>Tubercle of the posterior arch of the atlas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insertion</td>
<td>Innervation</td>
<td>Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral 1/3 of the clavicle; acromion, spine, and tubercle of the spine of the scapula</td>
<td>Accessory nerve and ventral primary rami of C3, C4 (proprioception)</td>
<td>Most of its action is on the shoulder in suspending, squaring, shrugging, and pulling it in. It is also a rotator of the scapula. Fixing the shoulder, it assists in pulling the head posteriorly and laterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastoid process of temporal bone and lateral 1/3 of superior nuchal line of occipital bone</td>
<td>Dorsal primary rami of middle cervical nerves</td>
<td>Pulls head back and rotates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C1-C3</td>
<td>Dorsal primary rami of lower cervical nerves</td>
<td>Pulls head back and rotates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C4-C6</td>
<td>Dorsal primary rami of lower cervical nerves</td>
<td>Extends and rotates cervical spine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C2-C6</td>
<td>Dorsal primary rami of cervical nerves</td>
<td>Extends and inclines cervical spine laterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior aspect of mastoid process of temporal bone</td>
<td>Dorsal primary rami of cervical nerves</td>
<td>Extends and inclines head laterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spine of vertebrae C2-C4</td>
<td>Dorsal primary rami of cervical nerves</td>
<td>Extends cervical vertebral column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral to the external occipital crest, between superior and inferior nuchal lines</td>
<td>Dorsal primary rami of cervical nerves</td>
<td>Extends the head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital bone between superior and inferior nuchal lines</td>
<td>Branches of dorsal primary rami of cervical nerves</td>
<td>Extends head and, acting unilaterally, tilts it to one side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinous processes of vertebrae C2-C5</td>
<td>Branches of dorsal primary rami of upper thoracic nerves</td>
<td>Extends cervical vertebrae and, acting unilaterally, tilts it to one side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spine of vertebrae C2-C7</td>
<td>Branches of dorsal primary rami of upper thoracic and cervical nerves</td>
<td>Extends cervical vertebral column, and, acting unilaterally, tilts it to one side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base of spinous processes of vertebrae above</td>
<td>Branches of dorsal primary rami of cervical nerves</td>
<td>Pulls back spinal column &amp; rotate neck to opposite side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spine of cervical vertebrae immediately above except C1</td>
<td>Branches of dorsal primary rami of cervical nerves except C1</td>
<td>Extends the cervical spinal column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior tubercles of the transverse processes of vertebrae C1-C7</td>
<td>Ventral primary rami of nerves C2-T1</td>
<td>Tilts the cervical spinal column to one side. Acting in concert with the other side, they fix the cervical spinal column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior tubercles of transverse processes of vertebrae C1-C7</td>
<td>Ventral primary rami of nerves C2-T1</td>
<td>Tilts the cervical spinal column to one side. Acting in concert with the other side, they fix the cervical spinal column</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior to the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone</td>
<td>Dorsal primary ramus of suboccipital nerve (C1)</td>
<td>Pulls head back and, acting unilaterally, tilts it to one side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse process of the atlas</td>
<td>Dorsal primary ramus of suboccipital nerve (C1)</td>
<td>Rotates atlanto-axis joint to turn the face laterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Below and on the inferior nuchal line of the occipital bone</td>
<td>Dorsal primary ramus of suboccipital nerve (C1)</td>
<td>Draws the head back and turns the face laterly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Above superior lip of foramen magnum to inferior nuchal line</td>
<td>Dorsal primary ramus of suboccipital nerve (C1)</td>
<td>Pulls head directly posteriorly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pretracheal Fascia

Summary Bite. The thin pretracheal fascia, whose posterior lamina is called the buccopharyngeal fascia, surrounds the viscera of the neck as it invests the thyroid gland, larynx, trachea, and the lateral aspect of the esophagus.

The pretracheal fascia forms a small, thin, cylindrical fascial layer surrounding the viscera of the neck. Its posterior lamina is referred to as the buccopharyngeal fascia. The pretracheal fascia forms a complete investment for the thyroid gland, and the deep layer of this envelope encircles the larynx and trachea; it also covers the lateral aspects of the esophagus (Figs. 7-3 and 7-4). Posteriorly, the esophagus is separated from the prevertebral fascia by the buccopharyngeal portion of the pretracheal fascia. The superior attachment of the pretracheal fascia is the body and lesser and greater cornua of the hyoid bone, the stylohyoid ligament, medial pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone, and the pharyngeal tubercle of the occipital bone, where the pretracheal fascia is met by its counterpart from the opposite side. Inferiorly, its boundaries include the oblique line of the thyroid cartilage, and it subsequently merges with the fasciae of the aorta and pericardium. Its fate dorsal to the esophagus is not clear because it merges with the fascial layers of the posterior thoracic wall.

Carotid Sheath

Summary Bite. Contributions from the three layers of the deep cervical fascia form the carotid sheath, which encloses the common carotid artery, the internal carotid artery, the internal jugular vein, and the vagus nerve.

The carotid sheath, a consolidation of connective tissue derived from the three fascial layers of the deep cervical fasciae, encloses the major neurovascular bundle of the neck (Fig. 7-3). Compartments exist within this cylindrical connective tissue sheath that separate constituent parts of the neurovascular bundle. The contents of the carotid sheath are the common carotid artery, the internal carotid artery, the internal jugular vein, and the vagus nerve. The ansa cervicalis, a nerve complex composed of spinal nerves, may be found on the surface of, embedded in, or just within the carotid sheath. Superiorly, the sheath is attached to the area of the jugular foramen and carotid canal, whereas inferiorly it is continuous with the fasciae of the great vessels and heart.

POSTERIOR ASPECTS OF THE NECK

The posterior aspect of the neck is normally presented as a portion of the back in most anatomy texts, thus it will not be presented here since the back is not germane to the thrust of this book.

Two tables are presented to acquaint the reader with the muscles located in the back that are associated with the posterior neck. Table 7-1 presents the muscles located in the back of the neck. The reader can correlate this information with Figs. 7-1, 7-2, and 7-3.

Muscles located in the back of the neck, specifically those forming the suboccipital triangle, are presented in Table 7-2. The reader can correlate the tabular information with the information in Figs. 7-4, 7-5, and 7-6.

TRIANGLES OF THE NECK

Summary Bite. The space between the anterior border of the trapezius muscle and the midline of the neck is divided into two triangles by the sternocleidomastoid as it passes diagonally across this space. The space formed anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle is called the anterior cervical triangle, whereas the space located posterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle is called the posterior cervical triangle. These two major triangles are subdivided into subtriangles by various anatomical landmarks.

The quadrilateral area between the anterior midline of the neck and the anterior border of the trapezius muscle is subdivided into two triangular areas, the anterior and posterior triangles. This division is accomplished by a thick, straplike muscle, the sternocleidomastoid, whose oblique path extends from the manubrium of the sternum to the region behind the ear (Fig. 7-7).

Inferiorly, the sternocleidomastoid muscle has two heads of origin, a lateral and a medial, which demarcate a triangular interval between them. Superior to this origin the fibers of the two heads intermingle, forming a thick, muscular belly. The lateral (clavicular) head springs from musculotendinous fibers attached to the medial one third of the clavicle; it is a flattened, quadrilateral-shaped structure. The medial (sternal) head arises from a conical tendon attached to the anterosuperior border of the manubrium just lateral to the jugular notch.
The lateral head passes deep to the medial head, and their fibers merge a few centimeters above their origins. The fleshy belly continues to its wide insertion, becoming tendinous just before reaching the mastoid process of the temporal bone and the lateral one half of the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone. This insertion, in conjunction with the medial-most point of insertion of the trapezius muscle, forms the superior apex of the posterior triangle.

The sternocleidomastoid muscle receives motor fibers from the spinal accessory nerve, which pierces the deep surface of its belly. Proprioceptive fibers derived from the second and third cervical spinal nerves also enter the muscle's deep surface.

The sternocleidomastoid acts on the head to approximate the ear of the same side to the shoulder, acting in concert with its counterpart to assist the deep muscles of the back of the neck in flexing the head, thus raising the chin.

---

**Table 7-2  Boundaries and Contents of the Suboccipital Triangle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Borders</th>
<th>Obliques capitis inferior muscles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inferior</td>
<td>Rectus capitis posterior major muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial</td>
<td>Obliques capitis superior muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof</td>
<td>Dense collagenous and fatty connective tissue deep to the semispinalis capitis muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor</td>
<td>Atlanto-occipital membrane and the posterior arch of the atlas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contents</td>
<td>Vertebral artery, suboccipital nerve and its branches, and the greater occipital nerve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Figure 7-5.** Posterior neck displaying the suboccipital region.
Torticollis

Torticollis is a condition in which the head is held at an angle, with the ear drawn toward the shoulder of one side. This condition may be either congenital or spasmodic.

It is believed that congenital torticollis is caused by trauma during birth, in which one of the sternocleidomastoids is stretched excessively, causing hemorrhage in the muscle, resulting in fibrous invasion and subsequent shortening of the muscle.

Further complications may arise, such as wedge-shaped cervical vertebrae and muscle atrophy. Spasmodic torticollis usually involves the trapezius, sternocleidomastoid, and perhaps other muscles, all of which undergo spasmodic contractions. The position of the head in this condition mimics congenital torticollis. The defect is not in the muscles but is probably related to neurogenic involvement.

Paralysis of the trapezius may occur if deep wounds in the region of the posterior triangle involve the spinal accessory nerve. Such injury limits the movement of the upper limb to the horizontal position during lifting of the arm. In addition, it causes depression of the shoulder on the affected side.

Referred pain in the region of the shoulder may have its origin in pleurisy that is causing irritation of the phrenic nerve. This situation occurs because the phrenic nerve has the same cervical spinal nerve components as the supraclavicular nerves, and signals transmitted via the phrenic nerve may be interpreted as originating in the area of the shoulder served by the supraclaviculars.
Muscular and bony structures located in the triangles further subdivide the anterior and posterior triangles into smaller triangular compartments, as is detailed in Table 7-3. The boundaries of the posterior triangle are as follows:

- Posteriorly, the anterior border of the trapezius muscle
- Anteriorly, the posterior edge of the sternocleidomastoid muscle
- Inferiorly, the middle third of the clavicle

A thin, fusiform muscle, the posterior belly of the omohyoid, enters the posterior triangle at its inferoposterior apex. It traverses the lower aspect of this triangle and disappears deep to the sternocleidomastoid, thus subdividing the posterior triangle into an inferior subclavian (supraclavicular, omoclavicular) triangle and a superior occipital triangle.

The limits of the anterior triangle are as follows:

- Anteriorly, an imaginary line along the anterior midline of the neck extending from the inferior-most portion of the symphysis menti of the mandible down to the center of the jugular notch of the manubrium
- Posteriorly, the anterior edge of the sternocleidomastoid
- Superiorly, the inferior border of the mandible

The superior belly of the omohyoid muscle enters the anterior triangle and inserts onto the body of the hyoid bone. The posterior belly of the digastric muscle also enters the anterior triangle, at the interval between the angle of the mandible and the mastoid.

Figure 7-7. Triangles of the neck.
process. It becomes tendinous as it reaches the greater comu of the hyoid bone (near its junction with the body of the hyoid) and is attached to the hyoid bone by a fascial sling.

The muscle, now known as the anterior belly of the digastric muscle, becomes fleshy again and continues to its insertion into the digastric fossa of the mandible. These muscles, in conjunction with the hyoid bone and the inferior border of the mandible, subdivide the anterior triangle into several smaller triangular components:

- The anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric muscle enclose a space, the submandibular triangle (digastric), just below the body of the mandible.
- The posterior belly of the digastric, superior belly of the omohyoid and the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscles enclose the carotid triangle.
- The superior belly of the omohyoid, the anterior midline of the neck from inferior border of body of hyoid to the jugular notch, and the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid circumscribe the muscular triangle.
- Finally, the two anterior bellies of the digastric muscle (one on either side) and the intervening body of the hyoid bone delimit the submental triangle; this is the only triangle that encompasses both sides of the neck and is, therefore, unpaired.

### Posterior Triangle of the Neck

**Summary Bite.** The posterior triangle is formed by the following structures: anterior border of the trapezius muscle, the lateral border of the sternocleidomastoid...
The boundaries of the posterior triangle are the anterior border of the trapezius, the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid, and the superior border of the middle one third of the clavicle (Figs. 7-2, 7-7, and 7-8, and Table 7-3).

The inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle crosses the floor of the posterior triangle, subdividing it into the inferiorly located small subclavian and the superiorly positioned larger occipital triangles.

The posterior triangle is covered by skin, the underlying superficial fascia, and the platysma muscle. It is roofed over by the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia, superficial to which is the external jugular vein and its tributaries, which were described earlier in this chapter.

The cutaneous nerves, derived from the cervical plexus, appear in the posterior triangle and were described previously along with the superficial veins (Fig. 7-2).

**Accessory Nerve**

The accessory nerve has two component fiber groups: the cranial root derived from the brainstem and the spinal root arising from the spinal cord. The two roots unite and later become separated. The cranial root joins the vagus nerve, whereas the spinal root becomes the distinct peripheral accessory nerve (see Chapter 18).

This nerve then pierces the deep surfaces of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, which it supplies, and emerges in the occipital triangle at the posterior border of that muscle just superior to the appearance of the cutaneous branches of the cervical plexus. The accessory nerve then traverses diagonally across the posterior triangle, passing in the fatty connective tissue between the investing and prevertebral layers of the deep cervical fascia (Figs. 7-2, 7-8, and 7-9). The accessory nerve has no branches in this triangle but dives deep to the trapezius muscle, where it forms the subtrapezial...
plexus in conjunction with spinal nerves C3 and C4 to innervate that muscle. It should be noted that C3 and C4 provide proprioceptive fibers to the trapezius.

Muscles Associated with the Posterior Triangle

Summary Bite. Two groups of muscles are associated with the superficial and deep regions of the posterior triangle. Superficial muscles include the sternocleidomastoid, trapezius, and inferior omohyoid muscles, whereas those forming the floor of the triangle are the prevertebral muscles.

The muscles directly associated with the posterior triangle are the trapezius, the sternocleidomastoid, and the inferior belly of the omohyoid (Table 7-4). In addition, the fascial carpet forming the floor of the posterior triangle lies on a series of muscles that are associated with the triangle although not located in it. These prevertebral muscles are the splenius capitis; the levator scapulae; and the posterior, middle, and anterior scalenes (Fig. 7-8). The trapezius, sternocleidomastoid, and splenius capitis muscles were described earlier.

Omohyoid

The thin omohyoid muscle consists of two bellies, inferior and superior, that are connected to each other by an intermediate tendon. The inferior belly originates on the superior border of the scapula, just medial to the scapular notch, and passes across the inferior aspect of the posterior cervical triangle, where it is enveloped by the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia (Fig. 7-7). This fascia forms a fascial sling that fixes the intermediate tendon to the clavicle and the first rib. The superior belly of the muscle passes obliquely, deep to the sternocleidomastoid, to emerge in the anterior triangle. It inserts onto the inferior border of the body of the hyoid bone. Branches of the ansa cervicalis (C1, C2, and C3) supply the two bellies of this muscle. The omohyoid acts to depress the hyoid bone, thus countering the actions of the suprahyoid muscles.

Levator Scapulae

The levator scapulae is not properly considered a muscle of the neck. It serves as one of the muscles attaching the superior extremity to the trunk, but its location requires at least a cursory description. It arises from the transverse processes of the first four cervical vertebrae, from where it proceeds as one or more fleshy fascicles along the side of the neck to insert into the medial border of the scapula (Fig. 7-8). It receives its innervation from spinal nerves C3 and C4 directly and from C5 indirectly. The levator scapulae

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sternocleidomastoid</td>
<td>Bisects the lateral aspect of the neck</td>
<td>Lateral head: medial one third of clavicle; medial head: manubrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platyisma</td>
<td>Anterior and posterior triangle of the neck</td>
<td>Epimysium of the deltoit and pectoralis major muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Omohyoid</td>
<td>Posterior and anterior triangles of the neck</td>
<td>Superior border of scapula, just medial to the scapular notch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Splenius capitis</td>
<td>Superior apex of posterior triangle</td>
<td>Ligamentum nuchae; spinous processes of vertebrae C7–T4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levator scapulae</td>
<td>Below floor of posterior triangle</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C1–C4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior scalene</td>
<td>Just deep to the clavicular head of the sternocleidomastoid</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C3–C6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle scalene</td>
<td>Lateral to the anterior scalene</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C2–C7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior scalene</td>
<td>Deep and lateral to the middle scalene</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C4–C6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
acts to elevate the scapula and, when the scapula is fixed, its contraction tilts the head backward.

**Scalenes**

The anterior scalene is covered, to a great extent, by the clavicular head of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (Fig. 7-8). The anterior scalene originates from the transverse processes of the third through sixth cervical vertebrae. The fibers pass inferolaterally to form a fleshy belly, which inserts as a flat, tendinous sheath on the scalene tubercle of the first rib and on its ridge, just anterior to the groove for the subclavian artery.

Its nerve supply is via branches from ventral primary rami of spinal nerves C4, C5, and C6. The muscle functions in respiration by initially lifting the first rib. If the thoracic cage is fixed, the muscle then flexes the cervical vertebral column to one side. Acting in concert with its counterpart on the other side, the anterior scalene bends the cervical spinal column anteriorly, provided the thoracic cage is immobilized.

Several important anatomic landmarks are associated with the anterior scalene muscle. The subclavian artery is subdivided into three segments as it curves around the deep aspect of this muscle on its path to the axilla. In addition, the trunks of the brachial plexus traverse the interval between the anterior and middle scalene muscles in passing to the axilla. Moreover, the phrenic nerve lies directly on the anterior scalene muscle, deep to its blanket of prevertebral fascia.

The middle scalene muscle is longer than the anterior and originates from the transverse processes of vertebrae C2 through C7 (Fig. 7-8). The fibers become tendinous as the muscle inserts on the first rib between the tubercle and the groove for the subclavian artery.

The posterior scalene muscle is the smallest of the three scalene muscles, and it is usually intimately related to the deep and lateral aspect of the middle scalene. The fibers of the two muscles are frequently intermingled so that complete separation cannot be effected.

The posterior scalene originates on the transverse processes of the fourth, fifth, and sixth cervical vertebrae and inserts via a slender, narrow tendon on the external aspect of the second rib.
rami of spinal nerves C5 through C7 innervate the muscle, whose action is the same as those of the other two scalenes.

**Nerves Associated with the Posterior Triangle**

**Summary Bite.** Cranial nerves C5, C6, C7, C8, and thoracic nerve T1 are, for the most part, trunks forming the brachial plexus (a very large nerve bundle) that serves the entire arm and some of the muscles of the posterior triangle. The cervical plexus is formed by cranial nerves of C1, C2, C3, and C4 and is also present in the posterior cervical triangle.

**Brachial Plexus**

The ventral primary rami of some spinal nerves appear not to retain their metameric (segmental) identities. Instead, they unite shortly after their origins to form bundles of nerve fibers that become intermixed to form plexuses for redistribution. In this form, the resultant fibers can reach their intended fields, whose original locations became altered.

The brachial plexus is one such intermixing of ventral primary rami of spinal nerves C5 through T1 (and occasionally T2). Although the plexus is primarily responsible for innervation of the upper limb and associated structures, it also supplies some muscles of the neck (Fig. 7-8). A thorough discussion of this important plexus is found in any general textbook of anatomy.

**Cervical Plexus**

Ventral primary rami of the first four cervical spinal nerves participate in the formation of the cervical plexus (Table 7-5 and Fig. 7-9). The ventral primary rami of all but the first cervical spinal nerve bifurcate into ascending and descending branches. These branches then join each other and become united, forming simple loops that lie deep to the prevertebral fascia. Branches arising from the cervical plexus are arranged in a superficial and deep division.

The superficial division is completely sensory and consists of ascending and descending branches. The lesser occipital (C2), great auricular (C2 and C3), and transverse cervical (C2 and C3) comprise the ascending branch, whereas the supraclaviculars (C3 and C4) comprise the descending branches.

The deep division of the cervical plexus is mostly motor, although it does contain sensory components. This division supplies motor innervation to the muscle masses deep to the floor of the posterior triangle, as well as proprioceptive fibers to the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles. Furthermore, the deep division supplies the anterior vertebral muscles. A summary of the specific innervations is in Table 7-5. Two additional important components of this division must be given special consideration: the ansa cervicalis and the phrenic nerve.

**Ansa Cervicalis**

The ansa cervicalis (Figs. 7-9 and 7-13) and its two roots are derived from C1 through C3. The superior
The superior root of the ansa cervicalis receives fibers from C1 and C2. Although the superior root travels for a short distance with the hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII), it does not become a functional part of that nerve.

The superior root joins and travels with the hypoglossal nerve opposite the atlas and descends from that nerve as it passes superficial to the external carotid artery. As the superior root leaves the hypoglossal nerve, two filaments (both derived from C1) continue with the hypoglossal nerve for a few millimeters, then branch to supply motor innervation to the thyrohyoid and geniohyoid muscles. The superior root continues to travel superficial to, embedded within, or just inside the carotid sheath.

At the level just below the middle of the neck, the superior root turns posteriorly to form the ansa (loop) in joining with the inferior root, which has descended in the neck alongside the carotid sheath. Four branches arise from the ansa cervicalis to supply the...
motor innervation to the sternohyoid, sternothyroid, and both bellies of the omohyoid muscles.

**Phrenic and Accessory Phrenic Nerves**
The phrenic nerve (C3, C4, and C5), the only motor nerve of the diaphragm, also carries sensory fibers (Figs. 7-8, 7-9, and 7-13). The phrenic nerve passes deep to the prevertebral fascia as it lies on the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle.

On its way to distribute to the diaphragm, the phrenic nerve passes between the subclavian artery and vein and then enters the thorax, where it lies anterior to the root of the lung, contacting the fibrous pericardium. The sensory fibers carried by the phrenic nerve serve the mediastinal pleura and the pericardium of the heart.

The accessory phrenic nerve (C5) is occasionally present. It descends into the thorax lateral to the phrenic nerve and posterior to the subclavian vein to join the phrenic nerve below the first rib. It also supplies motor fibers to the diaphragm.

**Arteries Associated with the Posterior Triangle**

**Summary Bite.** The subclavian artery, whose right and left origins differ, is the major artery serving the neck. It ascends into the brain and descends into the thorax, serving many structures along its path. It continues into the arm as the axillary artery and, with its branches, is the sole vascular supply to the arm.

**Subclavian Arteries**
The subclavian artery is a short vessel extending as far laterally as the outer border of the first rib (Fig. 7-10). The origins of the right and left subclavian arteries differ in that the left one arises directly from the arch of the aorta, whereas the right one is one of the terminal branches of the brachiocephalic trunk (see Chapter 21).

The right subclavian artery originates deep to the sternoclavicular joint, and the left subclavian artery originates behind the common carotid artery around the third or fourth thoracic vertebra. Both right and left subclavian arteries travel superiorly to the root of the neck and posterior to the anterior scalene muscle, emerging into the posterior triangle through the interval between the anterior and middle scalene muscles on their way to the lateral border of the first rib, where each artery becomes known as the axillary artery.

![Figure 7-10](image)

## Figure 7-10
Root of the neck. The anterior scalene muscle is made transparent so that the second part of the subclavian artery may be observed deep to it. Note that in this dissection the ascending cervical artery arises from the transverse cervical artery rather than from the more common inferior thyroid artery.
This path, deep to the anterior scalene muscle, permits a convenient division of the subclavian artery into three parts. The first part is from the origin of the vessel to the medial border of the anterior scalene muscle; the second part lies deep to this muscle; and the third part extends from the lateral border of the anterior scalene to the lateral border of the first rib. The branches of the subclavian artery are as follows:

- The vertebral artery, the internal thoracic artery, and the thyrocervical trunk from the first part
- The costocervical trunk from the second part
- The dorsal scapular artery from the third part

**Vertebral Artery**
The vertebral artery takes its origin from the posterosuperior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery (Fig. 7-10). It ascends behind the anterior scalene muscle, along the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra, and enters the foramen transversarium of the sixth cervical vertebra. The artery travels through the foramina transversaria of the upper six cervical vertebrae and enters the suboccipital triangle, from where it traverses the foramen magnum to unite with its contralateral vessel to participate in the formation of the basilar artery. Branches arise from the vertebral artery to supply the spinal cord and deep muscles in the vicinity of the suboccipital triangle. The intracranial branches of the vertebral artery are detailed in the description of the brain and spinal cord (see Chapter 17).

**Internal Thoracic Artery**
The internal thoracic artery originates from the inferiorty aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery (Fig. 7-10). This artery passes directly inferiorly on the internal anterior thoracic wall just lateral to the margin of the sternum to the sixth or seventh rib, where it bifurcates to form the medially placed superior epigastric and laterally positioned musculophrenic arteries. Because the internal thoracic artery is a vessel whose distribution is limited to the thorax and abdomen, its branches will not be discussed.

**Thyrocervical Trunk**
The thyrocervical trunk is a short vessel arising from the superior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery (Fig. 7-10). Its origin is opposite the point of origin of the internal thoracic artery. This trunk lies just medial to the anterior scalene muscle, where it trifurcates to form three major branches: the suprascapular, transverse cervical, and inferior thyroid arteries.

- The suprascapular artery travels obliquely across the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle and deep to the sternocleidomastoid, which it supplies. It passes deep to the inferior belly of the omohyoid to reach the scapular notch. Occasionally, the suprascapular artery is a branch of the third part of the subclavian artery.
- The transverse cervical artery crosses the neck in a fashion similar to, but above, the suprascapular artery. It crosses the floor of the subclavian triangle to travel in company with the spinal accessory nerve and it burrows deep to the anterior border of the trapezius, supplying it and other muscles in the vicinity.
- The inferior thyroid artery travels superiorly in front of the medial border of the anterior scalene muscle. It then passes deep to the carotid sheath and approaches the inferior aspect of the thyroid gland, which it supplies. The inferior thyroid artery has several small branches, including the terminal ascending and descending branches, both ending in the body of the thyroid gland, as well as muscular branches and the ascending cervical artery supplying anterior vertebral muscles of the neck.

**Costocervical Trunk**
The costocervical trunk has different origins on the two sides of the body. On the left, it springs from the...
posterior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery, whereas on the right it springs from the posterior aspect of the second part of that artery.

This trunk has two terminal branches: the superior intercostal artery and the deep cervical artery. The former serves the first and second intercostal spaces, whereas the deep cervical artery is interposed between the first rib and the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra. The trunk passes between the semispinalis cervicis and semispinalis capitis, supplying these as well as adjacent muscles, finally anastomosing with the occipital and vertebral arteries.

**Dorsal Scapular Artery**
The dorsal scapular artery is the only branch arising from the third part of the subclavian artery, although frequently it is a branch of the second part.

The dorsal scapular artery proceeds, anterior to the middle scalene muscle, passing among the trunks of the brachial plexus, to reach the superior angle of the scapula, where it supplies the muscles in the vicinity.

**Veins Associated with the Posterior Triangle**

**Summary Bite.** The axillary vein exiting the arm becomes the subclavian vein, which courses for a short distance receiving several venous contributions before joining the internal jugular vein to form the brachiocephalic vein. At this junction the thoracic duct joins on the left side of the neck, whereas the right lymphatic duct joins its counterpart on the right side of the neck.

**Subclavian Vein**
The subclavian vein is short because it is the continuation of the axillary vein, and it joins the internal jugular vein to form the large brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 7-10).

Thus, the subclavian vein extends from its junction with the internal jugular vein to the external border of the first rib, passing anterior to the anterior scalene muscle, which separates it from the subclavian artery. Here it lies in front of the subclavius muscle, which originates on the first rib and inserts on the inferior surface of the clavicle. This muscle, innervated by a branch from the brachial plexus complex, acts as a cushion, protecting the underlying vessels and nerves.

The main tributary of the subclavian vein is the external jugular vein, although frequently the subclavian may receive the dorsal scapular and anterior jugular veins. The left subclavian vein receives lymph from most of the body via the thoracic duct, whereas lymph from the remainder of the body is delivered to the right subclavian vein by the right lymphatic duct. These lymph vessels pierce the superior aspects of the subclavian veins at the angle of their junctions with the internal jugular veins.

**Anterior Triangle**

**Summary Bite.** The anterior triangle is formed by the following: the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the lower border of the mandible, and the midline of the neck. Several muscles coursing through the triangle subdivide it into several subtriangles.

The anterior triangle of the neck is defined by the midline of the neck from the mental symphysis to the jugular notch of the manubrium, the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the lower border of the mandible. The subdivisions of the anterior triangle are the submandibular, carotid, muscular, and submental triangles, whose borders have been detailed earlier (Fig. 7-7 and Table 7-3).

**Clinical Considerations**

**Fractured Clavicle**

The middle third of the clavicle, which forms the base of the posterior triangle, is the most frequently fractured bone in the body. Attached to its deep surface is the subclavius muscle. When the clavicle is fractured it is commonly in the middle third. In this situation, the subclavius muscle affords some protection against a splintered bone from puncturing the neurovascular bundle just deep to the bone. Although the subclavian artery lies behind the anterior scalene muscle just deep to the clavicle, the subclavian vein lying superficial to the anterior scalene muscle makes it especially vulnerable to puncturing by broken bone. The greatest protection against this happening is with the subclavius muscle.
Infrahyoid Muscles

**Summary Bite.** The four pairs of infrahyoid muscles located in the muscular triangle fix and depress the hyoid bone.

Four pairs of straplike muscles represent the infrahyoid muscle group: the sternohyoid, sternothyroid, thyrohyoid, and omohyoid (Fig. 7-11). These muscles act as a group to fix and/or depress the hyoid bone during mastication, deglutition, and speech (Table 7-6).

- **The sternohyoid** is a long, thin muscle originating from the posterior aspect of the sternoclavicular joint region. It ascends to insert onto the inferior border of the body of the hyoid bone just medial to the insertion of the omohyoid muscle.
- **The sternothyroid** muscle is wider and shorter than the sternohyoid, under which it lies. It originates on the manubrium of the sternum and inserts on the oblique line of the thyroid cartilage. The sternothyroid muscle also acts to depress the larynx and/or fix it in position.
- **The thyrohyoid** muscle lies deep to the sternohyoid. This muscle originates on the oblique line of the lamina of the thyroid cartilage and inserts on the inferior border of the greater cornu and body of the hyoid bone. The thyrohyoid muscle depresses and fixes the hyoid bone, and also raises the thyroid cartilage.
- **The omohyoid** muscle was discussed in this chapter’s section on the posterior triangle.

Carotid Arteries

The major blood supply of the head and neck is derived from branches originating from the **common carotid artery** (Fig. 7-12; see Chapter 21). This vessel is enclosed by the carotid sheath, which is incompletely subdivided into compartments housing the common and internal carotid arteries, the internal jugular vein, and the vagus nerve.

The common carotid arteries of the two sides have different origins: the right is a branch of the brachiocephalic trunk, whereas the left one branches directly from the arch of the aorta. Consequently, the right common carotid artery is contained wholly within the neck, whereas the left common carotid begins in the upper thorax and enters the neck in the vicinity of the sternoclavicular joint.

The right and left common carotids usually bifurcate approximately at the level of the thyroid cartilage (although this is variable) into an **external** and an **internal carotid artery** (Fig. 7-12). These are considered “terminal branches,” hence the common carotid is said to have no branches in the neck.

The common carotid artery is somewhat dilated at its bifurcation, and this expansion is known as the **carotid sinus**. This sinus is a modified region of the vessel, richly innervated by branches of the glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve IX) that serves to monitor blood pressure. An additional structure, the **carotid body**, is also associated with this region of bifurcation. This small, oval, reddish-brown structure lying within the internal carotid artery is innervated by the vagus.
and glossopharyngeal nerves. The carotid body functions as a chemoreceptor monitoring oxygen and carbon dioxide tension, as well as hydrogen ion concentration within the internal carotid artery.

The internal carotid artery has no branches in the neck; instead, it passes through the carotid canal of the temporal bone to enter the cranial cavity. Branches of the internal carotid artery are treated in subsequent chapters.

**External Carotid Artery**
The external carotid artery has six collateral and two terminal branches.

**Superior Thyroid Artery**
The superior thyroid artery is the first branch of the external carotid artery, arising from its ventral aspect just superior to the bifurcation of the common carotid artery (Fig. 7-12).

The superior thyroid artery descends in the neck, accompanied by the same-named vein and the external laryngeal nerve; it reaches the superior pole of the thyroid gland and divides into its terminal branches, some of which anastomose with their counterparts of the other side and with branches of the inferior thyroid artery.

The superior thyroid artery has four named branches—the infrahyoid, sternocleidomastoid, superior laryngeal, and cricothyroid arteries—as well as its terminal anterior, posterior, and occasionally lateral glandular branches at the thyroid gland.

**Branches of the External Carotid Artery**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Collateral</th>
<th>Terminal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior thyroid</td>
<td>Superficial temporal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascending pharyngeal</td>
<td>Maxillary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior auricular</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clinical Considerations**

**Carotid Sinus Syndrome**

Carotid sinus syndrome may result in loss of consciousness due to simple head movements. The syndrome relates to the hypersensitivity of the carotid sinus due to an unknown etiology. Sudden slight pressure changes, such as that occasioned by movement of the head, may result in stimulation of the carotid sinus.

Branches of the external carotid artery that supply regions of the neck are treated in this section. However, branches concerned with the superficial and deep face will be discussed in the appropriate chapters.

**Superior Thyroid Artery**
The superior thyroid artery is the first branch of the external carotid artery, arising from its ventral aspect just superior to the bifurcation of the common carotid artery (Fig. 7-12).

The superior thyroid artery descends in the neck, accompanied by the same-named vein and the external laryngeal nerve; it reaches the superior pole of the thyroid gland and divides into its terminal branches, some of which anastomose with their counterparts of the other side and with branches of the inferior thyroid artery.

The superior thyroid artery has four named branches—the infrahyoid, sternocleidomastoid, superior laryngeal, and cricothyroid arteries—as well as its terminal anterior, posterior, and occasionally lateral glandular branches at the thyroid gland.

The infrahyoid artery is a small vessel that passes deep to the thyrohyoid muscle, caudal to the body of the hyoid bone, and serves that general area.
### Neck

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insertion</th>
<th>Innervation</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inferior border of hyoid bone</td>
<td>Ansa cervicalis</td>
<td>Depresses and fixes hyoid bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oblique line of thyroid cartilage</td>
<td>Ansa cervicalis</td>
<td>Depresses larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater cornu and body of hyoid bone</td>
<td>C1, via the hypoglossal nerve</td>
<td>Depresses and fixes hyoid bone; elevated the thyroid cartilage when hyoid bone is fixed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior border of body of hyoid bone</td>
<td>Ansa cervicalis</td>
<td>Depresses and fixes hyoid bone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 7-12.** Carotid artery in the neck. The dashed outline indicates the relative position of the internal jugular vein.
The sternocleidomastoid branch passes ventral to the carotid sheath and supplies the muscle of the same name on its deep surface.

The superior laryngeal artery passes superficial to the inferior constrictor muscle and pierces the thyrohyoid membrane, accompanied by the internal laryngeal nerve, to serve the larynx.

The cricothyroid branch is a small vessel that courses along the cricothyroid ligament supplying the same-named muscle and its vicinity. The terminal branches of the superior thyroid artery are discussed later in this chapter in relation to the thyroid gland.

**Ascending Pharyngeal Artery**
The ascending pharyngeal artery is the smallest branch of the external carotid artery (Fig. 7-12). It arises on the medial aspect of that artery, shortly after the bifurcation of the common carotid, and ascends between the internal carotid and the pharynx. The ascending pharyngeal artery has unnamed muscular branches to the prevertebral muscles, as well as branches supplying additional structures in its vicinity.

This artery has three named branches: the pharyngeal, distributing to some muscles of the pharynx and soft palate; the meningeal, entering the cranium via several foraminae to vascularize the meninges and bone; and the inferior tympanic, supplying the tympanic cavity.

**Lingual Artery**
The lingual artery often arises in common with the facial artery, then becoming the faciolingual artery (Fig. 7-12). The lingual artery arises near the posterior tip of the greater cornu of the hyoid bone, passes deep to the hypoglossal nerve, then between the middle constrictor and hyoglossus muscles, to supply the muscles of the tongue, tonsil, soft palate, epiglottis, floor of the mouth, and sublingual gland. The branches of this artery are described in Chapter 15.

**Facial Artery**
The facial artery arises just above (or in common with) the lingual artery and ascends deep to the stylohyoid and posterior belly of the digastric muscles to lie in a groove on the posterior aspect of the submandibular gland (Fig. 7-12). The vessel enters the face by crossing the base of the mandible just anterior to the masseter muscle in the groove for the facial artery. Branches of the facial artery in the neck are the ascending palatine, tonsillar, glandular, and submental arteries. Those of the face will be discussed in Chapter 15.

The ascending palatine artery originates near the tip of the styloid process. It ascends between that process and the superior constrictor muscle, then between the styloglossus and stylopharyngeus muscles, to supply the levator veli palatini, the superior constrictor and neighboring muscles, the soft palate, the tonsils, and the auditory tube.

**Glandular branches** distribute as three or four vessels to the submandibular gland to supply it and the adjacent area.

The tonsillar artery passes between the styloglossus and medial pterygoid muscles and pierces the superior constrictor to supply the palatine tonsil and the posterior tongue.

The submental artery arises from the facial artery near the anterior border of the masseter. It follows the base of the mandible anteriorly and turns onto the chin at the anterior border of the depressor anguli oris muscle. The artery supplies muscles it encounters along its passage and anastomoses with several arteries in its vicinity.

**Occipital Artery**
The occipital artery originates on the posterior aspect of the external carotid artery, just opposite the origin of the facial artery (Fig. 7-12). It passes deep to the hypoglossal nerve and posterior belly of the digastic muscle, lodges in the groove for the occipital artery on the medial aspect of the mastoid process, and passes between the splenius capitis and semispinalis capitis muscles, to serve the back of the head. Branches of the occipital artery are the sternocleidomastoid, mastoid, auricular, muscular, descending, meningeal, and occipital.

The sternocleidomastoid branches supply the same-named muscle as two vessels, an upper and a lower branch.

The mastoid branch is a small vessel that traverses the mastoid foramen to supply the mastoid air cells and the dura mater in its vicinity.

The auricular branch vascularizes the back of the auricle.

**Muscular branches** of the occipital artery distribute to the digastric, stylohyoid, and splenius capitis muscles.

The descending branch serves the muscles of the back of the neck.

**Meningeal branches** gain entrance to the cranial vault via the condylar and jugular foramina and vascularize the dura and the bones of the posterior cranial fossa.

**Occipital branches** of the occipital artery distribute in the company of the greater occipital nerve to serve the muscles and tissues of the scalp. Small branches may pass through the parietal foramen to supply the parietal meninges.

**Posterior Auricular Artery**
The posterior auricular artery is a small branch arising deep to the parotid gland, where it passes
between the mastoid process and the cartilaginous external auditory tube.

It vascularizes the parotid gland and the sternocleidomastoid, stylohyoid, and digastric muscles. In addition, the posterior auricular artery has three named branches—the styloglossus, auricular, and occipital arteries—which are discussed in Chapter 11.

**Maxillary and Superficial Temporal Arteries**
The maxillary and superficial temporal arteries are the two terminal branches of the external carotid artery. The former and its branches are responsible for the vascularization of the deep face, whereas the latter serves the region of the temple and much of the scalp. These two arteries are discussed in Chapter 8.

**Internal Jugular Vein**

**Summary Bite.** The internal jugular vein originates at the jugular foramen and receives blood from the brain, face, and neck on its way to the brachiocephalic vein. It descends in the neck within the carotid sheath.

The internal jugular vein is the main vessel responsible for collecting blood from the brain, the superficial aspects of the face, and the neck. The vessel extends from its dilated origin, the superior bulb housed in the jugular foramen, to its inferior dilation, the inferior bulb terminating in the brachiocephalic vein (Figs. 7-10 and 7-12).

The internal jugular vein is enclosed in the carotid sheath as it travels the length of the neck, and its tributaries pierce this fascia to deliver their blood to the vessel. The internal jugular vein receives blood from the following tributaries: dural venous sinus drainage from within the cranium; the facial vein from the superficial face; the lingual vein from the tongue and floor of the mouth; the pharyngeal, superior, and middle thyroid, and occasionally the occipital veins from the neck.

The pharyngeal and occipital tributaries are treated presently, whereas the remaining vessels are discussed in later chapters. The pharyngeal veins arise as small vessels from a plexus of veins, the pharyngeal venous plexus, located on the wall of the pharynx. The pharyngeal veins empty into the internal jugular vein in the vicinity of the hyoid bone.

The occipital vein arises from the venous network serving the scalp, perforates the fibers of insertion of the trapezius, and enters the suboccipital triangle. Here it empties its contents into a plexus of veins, tributaries of the vertebral and deep cervical veins. Occasionally, the occipital vein, accompanying the same-named artery, travels along the posterior base of the skull to empty into the internal jugular vein or, less frequently, into the posterior auricular vein.

**Thyroid Gland**

**Summary Bite.** The thyroid gland is located in the midline of the neck, between the infrahyoid muscles and the thyroid and cricoid cartilages and part of the trachea. It possesses a right and a left lobe connected by an isthmus. The gland is richly vascularized by branches of the external carotid and subclavian arteries, and occasionally by a branch from the brachiocephalic trunk of the aortic arch. Venous drainage eventually reaches the internal jugular vein.

The thyroid gland, an endocrine organ lying deep to the infrahyoid muscles, is situated anteriorly in the neck, partly encircling the superior aspect of the trachea, the cricoid cartilage, and the thyroid cartilage (Figs. 7-10 and 7-12).

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**External Jugular Vein**

The external jugular vein may be used as a venous manometer because in a supine patient the venous blood pressure is not high enough to engorge this vessel much above the clavicle. During failure of the right side of the heart, constriction of the superior venae cavae and increased pressure in the thorax induces a pressure buildup in the venous side of the circulatory system, and this is evidenced by engorgement of the external jugular vein.

Under severe conditions, the vessel may be filled as high as the base of the mandible. This extremely important sign should be recognized by dental professionals using reclining chairs in their practice; the patient should be referred immediately for possible cardiac care.
It is composed of two lobes, laterally positioned, and a centrally placed isthmus connecting the right and left lobes. Frequently, a pyramidal lobe is present that extends from the left lobe near its junction with the isthmus occasionally as far up as the body of the hyoid bone.

Infrequently, a fibromuscular connection exists between the isthmus of the thyroid gland and the body of the hyoid bone. This is known as the *levator thyroideae*. A similar nonmuscular structure, the remnant of the *thyroglossal duct*, may also be present in this location and may bear accessory thyroid tissue.

The thyroid gland has its own connective tissue capsule that subdivides the lobes into numerous lobules. In addition, the gland is loosely ensheathed by laminae of the pretracheal layer of the deep cervical fascia. This connective tissue layer is pierced by blood vessels, which then ramify on the external surface of the connective tissue capsule of the gland. These vessels subsequently enter the substance of the gland within the connective tissue septa, which subdivides the gland into smaller components.

These smaller components are composed of numerous colloid-filled follicles lined by cuboidal cells. The colloid is composed of iodinated thyroglobulins, the storage form of thyroid hormones.

Thyroid hormones stimulate the rate of cellular oxidation. In addition, small clumps of parafollicular

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Goiter** is an abnormal enlargement of the thyroid gland. The incidence of goiter is greater in females than in males.

Occasionally, the enlargement of the thyroid is in an inferior direction, and the condition is referred to as intrathoracic goiter. In this condition, the thyroid physically presses on the trachea and causes breathing difficulties.

Goiter has other serious effects, mainly the overproduction of thyroid hormone. In such a hyperthyroid condition there is a loss of weight, lack of heat tolerance, diarrhea, muscle weakness accompanied by trembling of the upper extremity, insomnia, and exophthalmos. The last condition could be extremely serious, for severe exophthalmos could damage the cornea due to the inability of the eyelids to accommodate the protruded eye, causing drying out of that structure. Exophthalmos may also stretch and damage the optic nerve to the point of blindness.

**Hypothyroidism** is a condition caused by a greatly reduced production of thyroid hormone. Although no hormone is produced, excessive amounts of thyroglobulin, which is stored as colloid in the thyroid follicles, greatly enlarges the size of the thyroid gland, causing goiter. The symptoms of hypothyroidism are reduced libido, somnolence, decreased metabolic rate, decreased heart rate and cardiac output, and myxedema, accumulation of body fluids in the interstitial connective tissues.

**Cretinism** is a disorder caused by excessive hypothyroid state during early childhood. This condition is characterized by mental retardation and greatly reduced physical stature, especially involving skeletal growth.

**Thyroidectomy** is a serious procedure. Four major considerations must be kept in mind: parathyroid tetani, external laryngeal nerve, recurrent laryngeal nerve, and thyroid crisis. Because the parathyroid glands are located on the deep surface of the thyroid gland, their presence and vascular supply must be established and the glands must not be extirpated along with the thyroid.

**Parathyroid removal** is not compatible with life, and accidental parathyroidectomy results in parathyroid tetani, whose symptoms are sudden reduction of plasma calcium levels, increased plasma phosphorus levels, and spasmodic muscular contractions, especially in muscles of the larynx, resulting in respiratory obstruction and death.

During thyroidectomy, the external and recurrent laryngeal nerves must be isolated and protected from damage. These two nerves supply the laryngeal musculature and inappropriate handling could damage them, resulting in postoperative hoarseness and even loss of speech.

Bilateral sectioning of the recurrent laryngeal nerve occasionally may result in dyspnea and, unless surgical intervention ensues, even in death.

A treatment for hyperthyroidism is thyroidectomy. One of the postoperative complications that may arise is known as thyroid storm (thyroid crisis), of which the symptoms are high fever, delirium, cardiac arrhythmia, profuse sweating, vomiting, subsequent dehydration, and, if untreated, death.
cells (C cells) have been noted in the thyroid gland. These cells are responsible for the formation of calcitonin, a hormone that depresses blood calcium levels.

The blood supply of the thyroid gland is exceedingly rich and is derived from the external carotid arteries, the subclavian arteries, and, occasionally, the single thyroidea ima artery, a branch of the brachiocephalic trunk or of the aortic arch.

**Superior Thyroid Artery**

The superior thyroid artery is usually the first branch of the external carotid artery. It passes inferiorly along the lateral edge of the thyrohyoid muscle, gives off branches as detailed earlier in this chapter, and reaches the superior pole of the lateral lobe of the thyroid gland, where it divides (Fig. 7-12).

The anterior branch follows the superior border of the lateral lobe, distributes to its anterior surface, and anastomoses with the anterior branch of the opposite side across the isthmus.

The posterior branch follows a similar course on the deep aspect of the lateral lobe, ramifies on that surface, and anastomoses with the inferior thyroid artery, also supplying the parathyroid gland. Occasionally, a lateral branch is present that supplies the lateral aspect of the lateral lobe.

**Inferior Thyroid Artery**

Branches of the inferior thyroid artery were discussed earlier in the section dealing with the subclavian artery (Fig. 7-10). In this section, only its glandular branches are detailed.

As this artery reaches the thyroid gland and forms numerous branches vascularizing the gland, the recurrent laryngeal branch of the vagus nerve passes between these branches. The inferior thyroid artery has two main glandular branches: the inferior (supplying the inferoposterior aspect of the gland), which anastomoses with the posterior branch of the superior thyroid artery, and the ascending branch, which vascularizes the parathyroid glands. The thyroidea ima artery, a small, inconsistent vessel arising either from the brachiocephalic trunk or from the arch of the aorta, supplies the isthmus of the thyroid.

**Venous Drainage**

The superior thyroid vein is a tributary of the internal jugular vein. Its distribution follows that of the superior thyroid artery, hence it drains the area supplied by that vessel.

The middle and inferior thyroid veins and, to a certain extent, the superior thyroid veins drain the venous plexus formed on the surface of the thyroid gland. The middle thyroid veins deliver their blood to the internal jugular vein, whereas the inferior thyroid veins drain into the brachiocephalic veins. Occasionally, the right and left inferior thyroid veins form a single vessel just caudal to the isthmus of the thyroid gland. This is the thyroidea ima vein, which joins the left brachiocephalic vein.

**Parathyroid Glands**

**Summary Bite.** The small endocrine parathyroid glands, usually four in number, are located on the posterior surface of the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland (two superior, two inferior). Their vascular supply is provided by the parathyroid branches of the thyroid arteries. Removal of the parathyroid glands is not compatible with life.

The parathyroid glands are small, oval endocrine glands that lie on the posterior aspect of the lateral lobes of the thyroid gland. Usually, there are two or more on each lobe of the thyroid gland, the superior and inferior parathyroids.

They are vascularized by branches of the superior and/or inferior thyroid arteries and drained by the middle and inferior thyroid veins. The glands have two major types of cell populations: the principal (chief) cells and the oxyphil cells. The former produce parathyroid hormone (parathormone), a hormone that elevates blood calcium levels. Complete removal of the parathyroids is incompatible with life because all muscles undergo tetany and death results.

**Nerves Observed in the Anterior Triangle**

**Summary Bite.** The nerves present in the anterior cervical triangle include the nerves that supply the muscles within the triangle, the vagus nerve and its branches, as well as the cervical sympathetic trunk and its associated ganglia.

**Vagus Nerve**

**Summary Bite.** The vagus nerve (cranial nerve X) leaves the internal aspect of the skull via the jugular foramen and, by way of its ganglia, communicates with other nerves in the neck. It serves the pharynx, the larynx, carotid body, soft palate, and the pharyngeal plexus. As it courses through the neck, the trunk of the nerve lies within the carotid sheath.

The vagus or cranial nerve X is the longest cranial nerve in the body, eventually finding its way into the abdominal cavity. It receives detailed treatment in a subsequent chapter; therefore, only its cervical branches are discussed here. The nerve enters the neck as it leaves the jugular foramen (Fig. 7-13; see Chapter 18). Shortly inferior to this foramen, the nerve...
Figure 7-13. Nerve supply to the neck.

Table 7-7 Deep Prevertebral Muscles of the Neck

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Longus colli</td>
<td>Anterior surface of vertebral column</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C3-T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longus capitis</td>
<td>Anterior to longus colli</td>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C3-C6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus capitis anterior</td>
<td>Deep to the longus capitis</td>
<td>Lateral mass and transverse process of the atlas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rectus capitis lateralis</td>
<td>Just lateral to rectus capitis anterior</td>
<td>Transverse process of atlas</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
displays a ganglion, the nodose or inferior ganglion. The vagus communicates with several other nerves through this ganglion.

Branches of the vagus that arise here are:

- **Pharyngeal branches**, which serve the carotid body, pharynx, and some of the soft palate through the pharyngeal plexus.
- **Superior laryngeal nerve**, which bifurcates to form the internal and external laryngeal nerves, which accompany the medial aspect of the internal carotid artery.
- **Internal laryngeal nerve**, which pierces the thyrohyoid membrane in close association with the superior laryngeal branch of the superior thyroid artery to supply the mucous membrane.
- **External laryngeal nerve**, which continues inferiorly, accompanied by the superior thyroid artery. It pierces the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle, which it supplies in addition to the cricothyroid muscle, and gives branches to the pharyngeal plexus.
- **Two or three cardiac branches** of the vagus nerve are evident in the neck. These are slender filaments that pass deep to the carotid sheath to ramify in the cardiac plexus.

The **recurrent laryngeal branches** of the vagus differ in their recurring locations on the two sides of the body. On the left side, the nerve originates from the vagus at the level of the first part of the subclavian artery, around which it recurs, and ascends in the tracheoesophageal groove. Subsequent to this point, the paths taken by the nerves of the two sides are identical.

Because of the precarious location of the nerve and intimate association with the thyroid gland, surgical procedures involving that gland must include its isolation and strict protection.

**Cervical Sympathetic Trunk**

Summary Bite. The cervical sympathetic trunk is an extension of the thoracic sympathetic trunk into the neck. The cervical sympathetic trunk possesses three sympathetic ganglia which house postganglionic sympathetic cell bodies. Most postganglionic nerve fibers to the head and neck arise from one of these ganglia.

The cervical sympathetic trunk is the cervical continuation of the thoracic sympathetic trunk (Fig. 7-9; see Chapter 18). It consists of three ganglia connected to each other by short cords. The superior-most of these is the **superior cervical ganglion**, located at the level of the axis and third cervical vertebra. The **middle cervical ganglion**, the smallest of the three, is inconstant and lies at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra. The **inferior cervical ganglion**, located at the level of the seventh cervical vertebra, is often fused with the first (and infrequently with the second and even third) thoracic ganglion, then named the **stellate ganglion**.

The cord intervening between the middle and inferior cervical ganglia splits, forming a loop around the subclavian and occasionally the vertebral arteries. The loop around the subclavian artery is constant and is known as the **ansa subclavia**.

### Table: Insertion Innervation Action

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insertion</th>
<th>Innervation</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transverse processes of vertebrae C5, C6; bodies of vertebrae C2, C3, and C4; and anterior tubercle of atlas</td>
<td>Ventral primary rami of spinal nerves C2-C7</td>
<td>Flexes and rotates neck and bends neck to one side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilar part of occipital bone</td>
<td>Ventral primary rami of spinal nerves C1-C3</td>
<td>Flexes the head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilar part of occipital bone</td>
<td>Ventral primary rami of spinal nerves C1, C2</td>
<td>Flexes the head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugular process of occipital bone</td>
<td>Ventral primary rami of spinal nerves C1-C2</td>
<td>Blends head to one side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The cervical sympathetic trunk is embedded in a loose connective tissue layer and positioned between the covering of the prevertebral muscles and the carotid sheath, although often it is located within the deep substance of this structure.

The cervical sympathetic trunk receives no white rami communicantes but does send out gray rami communicantes to each cervical spinal nerve. Preganglionic fibers reach the cervical sympathetic trunk from its thoracic continuation, and these preganglionic fibers synapse in one of these three cervical sympathetic ganglia. Most of the postganglionic fibers of the head and neck originate from these three ganglia.

Superior Cervical Ganglion
The superior cervical ganglion branches into the internal carotid nerve and the pharyngeal branches. The internal carotid nerve arises from the cephalic portion of the ganglion, reaches the internal carotid artery, around which it forms the carotid plexus, and travels into the carotid canal to distribute in the cranial cavity.

Communicating branches go to the common and external carotid arteries and distribute to the head. The pharyngeal branches, composed of four or more fibers, mingle with branches of cranial nerves IX and X to participate in the formation of the pharyngeal plexus. Other branches also go to some cranial nerves and the cardiac plexus.

Middle Cervical Ganglion
The middle cervical ganglion has three branches, which serve cervical spinal nerves, adjacent viscera, and the cardiac plexus.

Inferior Cervical Ganglion
The inferior cervical ganglion has three branches. Vertebral branches are supplied to the vertebral artery, forming the vertebral sympathetic plexus, which serves the head. The other two branches serve lower cervical spinal nerves and supply fibers to the cardiac plexus.

DEEP PREVERTEBRAL MUSCLES OF THE NECK

There are four deep prevertebral muscles of the neck: the longus colli, longus capitis, rectus capitis anterior, and rectus capitis lateralis. These muscles lie deep to the prevertebral fascia, under the floor of the anterior triangle, and function more or less to flex the head and the neck. These muscles are relatively unimportant; hence, their discussion is not warranted. Information concerning their attachments, innervations, and functions is included in Table 7-7.

Horner Syndrome
During arterial insufficiency of the upper limb, sympathectomy is indicated, whereby the cervical sympathetic trunk is severed. The severance of the sympathetic trunk causes Horner syndrome, expressed as the inability to sweat, drooping of the upper eyelid, and constriction of the pupil.

Neurocirculatory compression occurs in an individual when the space between the anterior and middle scalene muscles is reduced in size, thus compressing the subclavian artery and brachial plexus that travel through this space. Occasionally, the neurocirculatory compression is caused by the presence of a cervical rib or a small slip of muscle, the scalenus minimus, lateral to the anterior scalene. Both of these structures reduce the available space.

The symptoms involved in this syndrome include drooping of the shoulder, pain, paresthesia, or even total lack of sensation and reduced circulation in the upper limb of the affected side.
Deep Face

Muscles of Facial Expression are unique in that they migrate to their destinations about the scalp, neck, and mostly about the face from second pharyngeal arch mesenchyme and thus receive their motor innervation via the facial nerve (CN VII), the nerve of the second arch. Although most of these muscles originate on bone, most do not insert on bone; rather, they insert into the dermis of the skin and freely intermingle with muscles in their vicinity. Upon contraction, this arrangement and groupings of muscles about the orifices of the face convey movements about these orifices that we interpret as emotions.

Scalp is composed of thick skin normally covered with hair and overlies the eight bones of the cranium. A fibro adipose hypodermis overlies the epicranius muscle composed of two bellies with an intervening fibrous connecting sheet, the galea aponeurotica. Deep to this sheet is a facial cleft considered the “danger space” of the scalp. Deep to this is the pericranium—a periostal—covering the bones of the cranial vault. Deep to the skin are the anteriorly positioned frontalis muscle originating from certain muscles of the face and the posteriorly positioned occipitalis muscle originating from the skull bones. Both of these muscles insert into the galea aponeurotica. Because these muscles arise from the second pharyngeal arch they are innervated by the facial nerve (CN VII).

Sensory Innervation of the Superficial Face is provided by all three divisions of the trigeminal nerve (CN V); thus, the skin of the face is highly sensitive. The ophthalmic division (V1) serves the forehead and the superior rim of the orbit, upper eyelid, and upper regions and side of the nose. The maxillary division (V2) serves the inferior rim of the orbit, side of the nose, cheek, and upper lip. The mandibular division (V3) serves the chin, cheek, the lower lip area about the temporomandibular joint (TMJ), and part of the anterior surface of and about the ear and most of the temple. Additionally, much of the ear and the area about the mandibular ramus are supplied by branches of the cervical plexus. It is to be noted that there is considerable overlap by these branches, thus contributing to the high degree of sensitivity of the face.
Surface Anatomy of the Face includes the 14 bones of the skull making up the face. These bones are overlaid with an assortment of facial muscles, connective tissue, and skin. The Face Is Highly Vascularized, receiving its vascular supply from several sources. These include branches arising either directly or indirectly from primary branches of the external carotid artery, and from branches arising from the internal carotid artery, namely, the ophthalmic artery. The terminals of these branches form extensive anastomotic networks throughout the face. Because of this fact, facial bleeding is often difficult to control. Because veins of the face do not possess valves, blood within these vessels may flow in either direction, which provides possible routes for infection about the face, especially the “triangular danger zone of the face.” Thus, veins of the face may communicate with the pharyngeal venous plexus of the deep face, which may communicate with the cavernous sinus within the skull. Because of these communications, infections about the face can be very dangerous and life-threatening.

SURFACE ANATOMY

Summary Bite. The eight bones comprising the skeleton of the face are covered by muscles, connective tissue, and skin. The muscles, known as muscles of facial expression, are innervated by the facial nerve because they arise from the second pharyngeal arch.

The bony structures of the skull are overlaid by muscles, connective tissue, and skin that give a characteristic morphology to the face. The facial skeleton, discussed in Chapter 6, may be palpated easily because the overlying soft tissue is very thin over much of its surface.

The mental protuberance can easily be palpated at the chin, as can the body, angle, and ramus of the mandible. The mandibular articulation can be emphasized by repeated opening and closing of the mouth. Proceeding anterosuperiorly from this articulation, the zygomatic arch and zygoma (the prominent portion of the cheek) can be palpated.

The zygomatic bone also forms the lateral and part of the inferior rim of the orbit. The remainder of the inferior rim is formed by the maxilla, whose inferior extent houses the upper dental arch, evident on smiling. Immediately superior to the philtrum of the lip is the fleshy and cartilaginous bulb of the nose. The flexible cartilaginous bridge of the nose becomes immobile near the nasal bones, which lead to the root of the nose, positioned between the two orbits.

Above the superior rim of the orbit, deep to the eyebrows, is the superciliary ridge of the frontal bone, and the forehead is marked by the frontal eminences. The cranium is covered by the scalp and the face is usually considered to be bounded by the anterior hairline of the scalp, the posterior border of the ramus, and the inferior border of the body of the mandible.

SCALP

Summary Bite. The scalp covers the bones of the calvaria and is composed of thick skin and a fibroadipose hypodermis. Deep to this soft tissue is the pericranium, the periosteal covering of the bones constituting the vault of the skull. The pericranium is only loosely attached to the underlying hard tissue, except at the bony sutures.

The scalp is composed of a thick covering of skin and its attending fibroadipose hypodermis overlying the epicranius or occipitofrontalis muscle with its intervening galea aponeurotica, a thick, fibrous aponeurotic connecting sheet. Deep to this sheet is a fascial cleft containing a loose type of connective tissue often considered the “danger space” of the scalp. This tissue separates the aponeurotic sheet from the pericranium, the periosteal covering of the bones constituting the vault of the skull. The pericranium is only loosely attached to the underlying hard tissue, except at the sutures, where it is firmly anchored to the intrasutural material.

The vascular and nerve supply of the scalp is tightly bound to the subcutaneous connective tissue, traveling between the muscular aponeurotic layer and the skin.

Muscles

Epicranius Muscle

Summary Bite. The frontalis muscle originates from certain muscles of the face, whereas the occipitalis muscle originates from bones at the base of the calvaria. These two muscles are connected to each other by the intervening tendinous glea aponeurotica.

The epicranius muscle is composed of two bellies, the frontalis and the occipitalis, connected to each other...
by a tendinous aponeurosis, **galea aponeurotica**, whose collagen fibers run in an anteroposterior direction (Fig. 8–1 and Table 8-1).

The **frontalis** is the larger and somewhat fleshier muscle and is not attached to bone. Its fibers originate from the superficial muscles of the orbit and nose (corrugator, procerus, and orbicularis oculi) and insert into the galea aponeurotica somewhat anterior to the coronal suture.

The **occipitalis** originates from bony landmarks—the mastoid process of the temporal bone and the lateral portion of the superior nuchal line of the occipital bone—to insert into the posterior aspect of the galea aponeurotica.

**Temporoparietalis**

**Summary Bite.** The temporoparietalis muscle, located on the side of the scalp, is attached to the frontalis and to the auricular muscles of the ear.

The **temporoparietalis** is a muscle of variable size extending between the frontal belly of the epicranius and the anterior and superior auricular muscles of the ear.

The frontalis and the temporoparietalis muscles are both innervated by the temporal branch of the facial nerve, whereas the occipitalis receives its innervation via the posterior auricular branch of the facial nerve.

These three muscles acting together furrow the forehead, raise the eyebrows, and widen the eyes. The frontal belly acting by itself raises the eyebrow and the temporoparietalis raises the ear.

**Vascular Supply**

**Summary Bite.** Blood supply to the scalp arises from two major sources: branches of the external carotid artery and branches from the internal carotid arteries.
Arterial supply to the scalp consists of branches from the external and internal carotid arteries (Fig. 8-2). Branches of the external carotid include the **occipital artery**, supplying the medial aspect of the back of the scalp; the **posterior auricular artery**, supplying the area behind and above the ear; and the **superficial temporal artery**, which vascularizes the lateral aspect of the scalp.

Two branches of the internal carotid artery responsible for vascularization of the anterosuperior aspect of the scalp are the **supraorbital** and **supratrochlear arteries**. Both arteries leave the orbit and ascend over the forehead, supplying it and the top of the scalp.

All of the vessels supplying the scalp freely anastomose with each other. Venous drainage accompanies the arteries, and the vessels are named accordingly.

---

**Table 8-1 Muscles of the Face and Scalp**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Muscle</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Origin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Scalp</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontalis</td>
<td>Forehead</td>
<td>Procerus, corrugator, orbicularis oculi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipitalis</td>
<td>Back of the head</td>
<td>Mastoid process and superior nuchal line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporoparietalis</td>
<td>Temple</td>
<td>Temporal fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ear</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auricularis anterior</td>
<td>Anterior to ear</td>
<td>Temporal fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auricularis superior</td>
<td>Above ear</td>
<td>Temporal fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auricularis posterior</td>
<td>Behind ear</td>
<td>Mastoid process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nose</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procerus</td>
<td>Bony bridge of nose</td>
<td>Fascia of nasal bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasalis</td>
<td>Cartilaginous bridge and wing of nose</td>
<td>Maxilla and alar cartilage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depressor septi</td>
<td>Lateral to the philtrum</td>
<td>Maxilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Eye</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbicularis oculi</td>
<td>Around the orbit</td>
<td>Nasal process of frontal bone, frontal process of maxilla, medial palpebral ligament, and lacrimal bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corrugator</td>
<td>Deep to the orbicularis oculi</td>
<td>Medial aspect of superciliary arch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mouth</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levator labii superioris</td>
<td>Upper lip</td>
<td>Zygoma and maxilla just above infraorbital foramen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levator labii superioris alaque nasi</td>
<td>Upper lip and side of nose</td>
<td>Maxilla, frontal process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levator anguli oris</td>
<td>Corner of mouth</td>
<td>Canine fossa of maxilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zygomaticus major</td>
<td>Cheek and corner of mouth</td>
<td>Temporal process of zygoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zygomaticus minor</td>
<td>Cheek and corner of mouth</td>
<td>Maxillary process of zygoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risorius</td>
<td>Cheek</td>
<td>Masseteric fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depressor labii inferioris</td>
<td>Lower lip</td>
<td>Oblique line of mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depressor anguli oris</td>
<td>Corner of mouth</td>
<td>Oblique line of mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mentalis</td>
<td>Chin</td>
<td>Incisive fossa of mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbicularis oris</td>
<td>Circumscribes the mouth</td>
<td>Muscles in the vicinity, maxilla, nasal septum, mandible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccinator</td>
<td>Cheek</td>
<td>Pterygomandibular raphe, alveola arches of mandible and maxilla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neck</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platysma</td>
<td>Neck and chin</td>
<td>Pectoral and deltoid fascia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insertion</td>
<td>Innervation (Branch of VII)</td>
<td>Action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galea aponeurotica</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Wrinkles forehead and raises eyebrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galea aponeurotica</td>
<td>Posterior auricular</td>
<td>Tightens the scalp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galea aponeurotica</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Elevates the ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior part of major helix of ear</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Pulls auricle forward and up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior aspect of ear</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Pulls auricle up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posteroinferior aspect of ear</td>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Pulls auricle back</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermis above glabella</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Depresses eyebrows medially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermis of nose across bridge and on bulb</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Dilates nares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septum and ala of nose</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Constricts nares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral palpebral raphe, frontalis muscle, corrugator muscle, superior and inferior tarsi</td>
<td>Temporal and zygomatic</td>
<td>Closes the eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermis covering the supraorbital foramen</td>
<td>Temporal and zygomatic</td>
<td>Forms vertical wrinkles between eyebrows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper lip</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Elevates upper lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper lip and alar cartilage</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Dilates nares and elevates upper lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corner of mouth</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Lifts corner of mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower lip</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Elevates upper lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corner of mouth</td>
<td>Buccal and mandibular</td>
<td>Draws corner of mouth laterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corner of mouth</td>
<td>Mandibular and buccal</td>
<td>Depresses lower lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermis of skin</td>
<td>Mandibular and buccal</td>
<td>Depresses corner of mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermis of the lips and surrounding muscles</td>
<td>Mandibular and buccal</td>
<td>Wrinkles chin and protrudes lower lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muscles of the mouth</td>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Closes, purses, and protrudes lips</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior border of body of mandible, skin of face</td>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>Compresses cheek</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nerve Supply

**Summary Bite.** Cutaneous branches of the third cervical and greater occipital nerves serve the posterior scalp, whereas the lateral scalp is served by the auriculotemporal and zygomaticotemporal nerves. The anterior scalp is served by the supraorbital and supratrochlear nerves.

The cutaneous nerves of the scalp follow the main vascular elements (Fig. 8-3). The posterior aspect of the scalp is served by the third occipital and greater occipital nerves. Laterally, the scalp receives its cutaneous innervation via the lesser occipital and auriculotemporal nerves, posterior and anterior to the ear, respectively.

The region in the vicinity of the temple is supplied by the zygomaticotemporal nerve, and the forehead and midline of the scalp are served by the supraorbital and supratrochlear nerves.
Bleeding in the scalp is extremely difficult to stop and is dangerous. The blood supply is extensive and the vessels pass through fibrous septa of the superficial fascia, which mechanically inhibit vessel contraction.

Hemorrhage in this region has a tendency to be contained in the loose connective tissue, the subaponeurotic layer, deep to the galea aponeurotica. Furthermore, infection may result in a localized abscess that, having no outlet to the surface, may enter the valveless emissary veins of this region, also known as the “danger zone of the scalp,” and travel to the diploë and/or the dural venous sinuses. Such infection may result in osteomyelitis, thrombosis, and possibly death.
Chapter 8

Superficial Face

FACE

Muscles

Summary Bite. Muscles of the face and scalp develop from the second pharyngeal arch and, consequently, receive their motor innervation from the facial nerve (CN VII), the nerve of the second pharyngeal arch.

The muscles of the face (and scalp) are derived from the second pharyngeal arch (hyoid arch) mesenchyme that migrates to its final destination (Fig. 8-1). Considering the origin of these muscles, it is not surprising that they receive motor innervation from branches of the facial nerve (CN VII).

Rather than inserting into bone, these muscles insert into the dermis of the skin, thus their orchestrated contractions convey various shapes to the face that we interpret as emotions. It is important to understand that fascicles of these muscles intermingle with each other, and they tend to act in groups to control the orifices around which they are grouped, such as the orbit, nose, and mouth. It is according to this grouping that they are described.

Muscles of the Ear and Nose

Summary Bite. Auricular muscles attach to and are capable of moving the external ear but are not often used and thus lose their tone. Three separate muscles of the nose are capable of flaring the nostrils, depressing the eyebrows, and constricting the nares.

The three external muscles of the ear are the auriculares anterior, superior, and posterior. Similarly, the three muscles of the nose are the procerus, nasalis,
and depressor septi. These two groups of muscles are fairly inconsequential; pertinent information concerning them is found in Table 8-1.

Muscles Surrounding the Orbit

Summary Bite. Three muscles are concerned with opening and closing the eyelids and forming vertical wrinkles between the eyebrows.

The three muscles concerned with the orifice of the eye are the orbicularis oculi, corrugator, and levator palpebrae superioris. The last of this group is considered in the Chapter 10, Eye and Ear.

Orbicularis Oculi

The orbicularis oculi muscle is composed of two parts, the palpebral portion and the orbital portion. The former originates from the medial palpebral ligament (attached to the medial aspect of the orbit) and inserts into the lateral palpebral raphe (attached to the lateral aspect of the orbit). The orbital portion of the muscle describes an oval around the orbit.

The orbicularis oculi is innervated by the temporal and zygomatic branches of the facial nerve and acts to close the eyelid completely. Forceful closure is mediated by the orbital portion, whereas the palpebral portion is responsible for light closure, as in blinking.

Corrugator

The corrugator (supercilii) muscle is located deep to the superomedial aspect of the orbicularis oculi, at the medial aspect of the eyebrow. It originates at the medial extent of the superciliary arch and inserts into the skin of the eyebrow.

It is innervated by the temporal and zygomatic branches of the facial nerve; the combined actions of the paired muscles approximate the eyebrows, producing frowns.

Muscles Surrounding the Mouth

Summary Bite. Muscles functioning around the mouth include those elevating the upper lip as well as dilating the nares, lifting and depressing the corners of the mouth, depressing the lower lip, lowering the corners of the mouth, protruding the lower lip, and closing, pursing, and protruding the lips.

The muscles of the mouth act to alter the shape of the orifice. Their fibers of insertion intermingle with each other; therefore, they share a commonality of action and almost always act in concert.

Orbicularis Oris

The orbicularis oris completely encircles the mouth. Its fibers are positioned at various depths and angles in the two lips. Fascicles of this muscle, some of which are derived from those of neighboring muscles—especially the buccinator—freely intermingle with fascicles of other muscles acting on the lips, permitting extensive movability. Many of the fibers of the buccinator cross over each other at the angle of the mouth so the upper fibers proceed to the lower lip and the lower fibers to the upper lip. Hence, the origin of the orbicularis oris is complex and is usually considered to be from the fibers of the surrounding muscles as well as from the alveolar portion of the maxilla, the septum of the nose, and the area lateral to the incisive fossa of the mandible. Insertion is into the skin and into itself, forming an ellipse around the mouth.

Buccal branches of the facial nerve innervate this complex muscle, which closes the lips and, during stronger contraction, purses them, as in osculation and whistling.

Risorius

The risorius is a small, horizontally placed muscle that originates in the masseteric fascia and inserts in the skin of the corner of the mouth. This is the smiling muscle; it is responsible for drawing the corners of the mouth laterally. The risorius is innervated by buccal and mandibular branches of the facial nerve.

Depressors of the Lip

The depressor labii inferioris is quadrangular in shape. It originates on the medial extent of the oblique line of the mandible and inserts into the skin of the lower lip. It acts to depress the lower lip.

The depressor anguli oris (triangularis) originates on the oblique line of the mandible and inserts into the skin of the corner of the mouth and depresses it, expressing sadness.

The mentalis is a small muscle of the chin. Its origin is in the incisive fossa of the mandible, and it inserts into the skin of the chin to wrinkle it and also to protrude the lower lip, as in drinking.

The platysma was previously detailed in Chapter 7. All of the muscles of this group, except the platysma, are innervated by the buccal and mandibular branches of the facial nerve.

Elevators of the Lip

Five muscles elevate the lip and corner of the mouth. The levator labii superioris alaque nasi is the most medial of these muscles, originating from the frontal process of the maxilla passing inferiorly along the
side of the nose. It then splits into a medial and a lateral portion to insert into the wing of the nose and into the upper lip. This muscle functions in dilating the nostril and raising the upper lip.

The **levator labii superioris** originates from the maxilla and zygoma just inferior to the orbit. Its fibers pass across the infraorbital foramen to insert into the upper lip, lateral to and intermingling with the fibers of the levator labii superioris alaque nasi. The levator labii superioris elevates and protrudes the upper lip.

The **levator anguli oris** lies deep to the levator labii superioris. It originates below the infraorbital foramen, from the canine fossa of the maxilla, to insert into the corner of the mouth. This muscle elevates the angle of the mouth and assists in the formation of the nasolabial furrow.

The zygomaticus minor, a slender muscle arising from the maxillary process of the zygomatic bone, inserts just lateral to the insertion of the levator labii superioris muscle. This muscle elevates the upper lip. It also assists in the formation of the nasolabial furrow.

The zygomaticus major is the lateral-most muscle of this group. It originates on the temporal process of the zygomatic bone and inserts into the corner of the mouth. This muscle elevates the corner of the mouth and pulls it laterally.

All of the five muscles acting to elevate the lips are innervated by the buccal branches of the facial nerve.

**Muscle of the Cheek**

The **buccinator**, a quadrangle-shaped muscle occupying the space between the mandible and the maxilla, is the primary muscular component of the cheek. It lies deep to the muscles of facial expression and is separated from them by the buccopharyngeal fascia and the buccal fat pad. The parotid duct pierces the substance of this muscle to enter the oral vestibule.

The buccinator originates on the maxilla and mandible, specifically on the buccal surfaces of the alveolar processes in the vicinity of the three molars, and from the pterygomandibular raphe, a collagenous tendinous inscription attached to the pterygoid hamulus and the mylohyoid line of the mandible. This raphe is interposed between the buccinator and superior pharyngeal constrictor muscles.

The buccinator inserts into the fleshy corner of the lip in such a fashion that the upper fascicles and the lower fascicles decussate at the corner of the mouth and insert into the lower and upper lips, respectively, becoming fibers of the orbicularis oris. The highest and lowest fascicles, however, continue without decussation into the upper and lower lips, respectively.

The buccinator muscle acts to press the mucosa of the cheek against the teeth, thus aiding in mastication and deglutition. In addition, it assists in distending the oral vestibule and forcefully expelling air, as in blowing dust particles off a surface. The buccal branch of the facial nerve innervates this muscle.

**Sensory Innervation**

**Summary Bite.** Sensory innervation to the face is supplied by all three divisions of the trigeminal nerve (CNV). Additionally, areas about the mandibular ramus and the ears are served by sensory branches of the cervical plexus.

Sensory innervation of the greater part of the face is mediated by branches of the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve (Fig. 8-3; see Chapter 18).

In addition, the region superficial to the angle of the mandible, the posterior aspect of the inferior portion of the ramus, and most of the ear are supplied by the great auricular and, to a lesser extent, the lesser occipital branches of the cervical plexus, as discussed in Chapter 7.

The branches of the trigeminal nerve supplying sensory innervation to the superficial face follow:

- **Ophthalmic (V1):** lacrimal, supraorbital, supratrochlear, infratrochlear, external nasal
- **Maxillary (V2):** infraorbital, zygomaticofacial, zygomaticotemporal
- **Mandibular (V3):** auriculotemporal, buccal, mental

**Ophthalmic Division (V1)**

**Summary Bite.** The ophthalmic division (V1) of the trigeminal nerve enters the face through the orbit as several branches to provide sensation for the upper eyelid and the region superior and lateral to the orbit. Another branch exits the lower rim of the orbit to serve the eyelids and the area about the face and side of the nose.

The lacrimal nerve leaves the superolateral aspect of the orbit as the palpebral branch and enters the upper eyelid to distribute to the lateral half of that structure and the conjunctiva of the eye. The frontal nerve bifurcates in the orbit to form the supraorbital and supratrochlear nerves (Fig. 8-13; see Chapter 18).

The supraorbital nerve leaves the orbit via the supraorbital foramen (or notch) after supplying a branch to the frontal sinus. The supratrochlear nerve passes superior to the trochlea and leaves the orbit medial to the supraorbital foramen. These two nerves
supply sensation to the upper eyelid, the conjunctiva, and the medial half of the forehead and scalp.

The infratrochlear nerve, a branch of the nasociliary nerve, leaves the orbit by passing between the middle palpebral ligament of the eye and trochlea to innervate the medial half of the eyelids, the medial angle of the eye, and the side of the nose.

The external nasal nerve, a branch of the anterior ethmoidal branch of the nasociliary nerve, leaves the nasal cavity at the distal end of the nasal bone. This nerve provides sensation to the middle of the bridge and part of the ala of the nose.

Maxillary Division (V2)

Summary Bite. The maxillary division (V2) of the trigeminal nerve enters the face via the infraorbital foramen, providing sensation to the skin of the lower eyelid, nose, upper lip, and mucosa of the labial vestibule.

The infraorbital nerve is a continuation of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve. After coursing through the floor of the orbit, the infraorbital nerve enters the face via the infraorbital foramen, where it forms a tuft of nerves that may be categorized into three groups: inferior palpebral branches, serving the skin of the lower eyelid and conjunctiva; external nasal branches, providing sensory innervation to the side and mobile septum of the nose; and superior labial branches, supplying the upper lip and mucosa of the superior labial vestibule (Figs. 8-3 and 8-4; see Chapter 18).

The zygomatic branch of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve bifurcates to form the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial nerves. The former enters the superficial face a little superior to the zygomatic arch and supplies sensation to the region of the temple. The latter emerges in the superficial face by way of the zygomaticofacial foramen to serve the skin over the zygomatic bone.

Mandibular Division (V3)

Summary Bite. The mandibular division (V3) of the trigeminal nerve provides sensation via several branches to the temporomandibular articulation, the anterior aspect of and about the ear, skin of the temple, skin over the cheek, buccal vestibule and gingival to the corner of the mouth, chin, lower lip and oral vestibule, and the mandibular teeth and supporting tissues.

The auriculotemporal nerve is a branch of the posterior trunk of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (Figs. 8-3 and 8-4; see Chapter 18). It appears in the superficial face just behind the temporomandibular articulation, where it gives rise to the anterior auricular branches serving the anterolateral surface of the ear, and superficial temporal branches to the region of the temple up to the coronal suture.

The buccal nerve lies on the surface of the buccinator muscle as it emerges from beneath the masseter muscle. The buccal nerve provides sensation to the cheek and, on piercing the buccinator muscle, supplies sensation to the mucosa of the buccal vestibule and buccal surfaces of the gingivae as far anteriorly as the corner of the mouth.

The mental nerve enters the superficial face via the mental foramen of the mandible to serve the chin, the lower lip, and the surrounding mucosa of the oral vestibule.

Motor Innervation

Summary Bite. The muscles of facial expression are derived embryologically from the second pharyngeal arch, and thus receive motor innervation from the facial nerve (CN VII), the nerve of that arch.

Facial Nerve VII

The facial nerve, the nerve of the second pharyngeal arch, leaves the cranial cavity via the internal acoustic meatus and travels in the temporal bone along with the vestibulocochlear nerve. After separating from the vestibulocochlear nerve and giving several branches within the temporal bone, it emerges through the stylomastoid foramen (Figs. 8-3, 8-4, and 11-1; see Chapter 18).

A posterior auricular branch arises from the trunk, then passes posterior to the ear on its way to innervate the occipitalis and posterior auricular muscles.

The main stem of the facial nerve then supplies fibers to the stylohyoid muscle and the posterior belly of the digastric muscle before entering the deep aspect of the parotid gland. Here it subdivides into the temporofacial and cervicofacial divisions, which combine to form a loop within the substance of the parotid gland.

It is from this loop that the five terminal branches of the parotid plexus arise to supply motor fibers to the muscles of facial expression (Fig. 8-4 and Table 8-2). Temporal branches, the superior-most of these, supply the muscles in the region of the temple and part of the forehead.

Zygomatic branches fan out to serve muscles in the area of the prominence of the cheek to the lateral angle of the eye.

Buccal branches, the largest of all the branches and serving the greatest area, course across the masseter and buccinator muscles to innervate muscles of the upper lip and nose.

Mandibular branches pass deep to the depressor anguli oris and platysma. Although there is no
universal agreement, most anatomists believe the buccal branches assist the mandibular branches in supplying the muscles of the lower lip.

Cervical branches pass deep to and innervate the platysma muscle.

**Blood Supply**

The face is a very vascular region because it receives its blood supply from the external carotid artery and its major branches. Additional blood is received from branches of the internal carotid artery.

**Table 8-2** Branches of the Facial Nerve in the Superficial Face

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Branches*</th>
<th>Muscles Innervated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temporal</td>
<td>Auricularis anterior; auricularis superior; frontalis; orbicularis oculi; corrugator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zygomatic</td>
<td>Orbicularis oculi; corrugator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>Procerus; nasalis; depressor septi; zygomaticus major; zygomaticus minor; levator labii superioris; levator anguli oris; levator labii superioris alaeque nasi; risorius; orbicularis oris; buccinator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandibular</td>
<td>Depressor anguli oris; depressor labii inferioris mentalis; risorius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical</td>
<td>Platysma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Because of individual variation, there is disagreement regarding innervation to the muscles of facial expression, especially those surrounding the mouth. In many instances, buccal branches assist mandibular branches in innervating the muscles surrounding the lower lip.
**Arterial Supply**

**Summary Bite.** Arterial blood supply to the face is provided by smaller branches of primary branches of the external and internal carotid arteries (Fig. 8-5). Anastomotic networks form over much of the area, ensuring that the face has a very rich blood supply.

Vascular supply of the superficial face is derived from branches directly or indirectly arising from the external carotid artery as well as from branches of the ophthalmic artery, a branch of the internal carotid artery.

Terminal branches of these vessels form an extensive anastomotic network permeating the superficial aspect of the face. Some of these vessels travel with like-named nerves, and their distribution follows that of their nerve counterparts.

**Facial Artery**

The facial artery is a branch of the external carotid artery; its cervical branches were described earlier. This artery crosses the mandible to enter the face just anterior to the masseter muscle, lying in the groove for the facial artery on the mandible.

In the face, the artery travels superficially, just under the cover of the platysma muscle. It passes, via a tortuous path, deep to the zygomaticus major, risorius, and levator anguli oris muscles to the corner of the mouth. Here, it ascends lateral to the nose to terminate as the angular artery at the medial corner of the eye.

Branches of the facial artery in the face are the inferior labial, superior labial, lateral nasal, and angular arteries.

**Superior and inferior labial arteries** arise near the corner of the mouth. The superior labial artery courses between the orbicularis oris and the mucous membrane of the upper lip to serve the upper lip, whereas the inferior labial artery courses deep to the depressor anguli oris to serve the lower lip. The superior labial artery also provides small branches to the wing (ala) and bulb of the nose.

The **lateral nasal artery** arises near the corner of the mouth. The superior labial artery courses between the orbicularis oris and the mucous membrane of the upper lip to serve the upper lip, whereas the inferior labial artery courses deep to the depressor anguli oris to serve the lower lip. The superior labial artery also provides small branches to the wing (ala) and bulb of the nose.

The **angular artery** is the terminal continuation of the facial artery, supplying the tissues in the vicinity of the medial corner of the eye.

**Superficial Temporal Artery**

The superficial temporal artery, one of the terminal branches of the external carotid artery, arises near the level of the earlobe. The vessel branches pro-
fusely at its cranial-most aspect to supply the region superficial to the zygomatic arch as far medially as the lateral corner of the eye as well as the temple and the lateral aspect of the scalp.

The transverse facial artery, a branch of the superficial temporal, accompanies and supplies the parotid duct in its path across the masseter muscle. In addition, it sends branches to the parotid gland and other soft tissues in the vicinity.

The remainder of the arterial supply of the superficial face is derived from either the maxillary artery, a terminal branch of the external carotid artery, or from the ophthalmic artery, a branch of the internal carotid artery.

**Branches of the Maxillary Artery**

The maxillary artery, lying deep to the ramus of the mandible in the infratemporal fossa, provides vascularization of the face through some of its branches. Only those serving the superficial face are described here; the other branches are treated in subsequent chapters.

Branches of the maxillary artery supplying the superficial face are the infraorbital, buccal, and mental arteries.

The infraorbital artery, a branch of the third or pterygopalatine portion of the maxillary artery, passes through the infraorbital fissure to lie in the floor of the orbit. It travels in the infraorbital canal and enters the superficial face via the infraorbital foramen to distribute to the lower eyelid, the upper lip, and the area between these two structures.

The buccal artery, a branch of the second or pterygoid portion of the maxillary artery, makes its appearance on the face on the superficial surface of the buccinator muscle to supply it, the connective tissue of the cheek, and the mucosa of the buccal vestibule.

The mental artery arises from the inferior alveolar branch of the maxillary artery. The mental artery enters the face via the mental foramen of the mandible to supply the soft tissues of the chin.

**Branches of the Ophthalmic Artery**

Branches of the ophthalmic artery supplying the face are the zygomaticofacial, supraorbital, supratrochlear, and dorsal nasal arteries.

The zygomaticofacial artery is derived from the lacrimal branch of the ophthalmic artery. It enters the face via the zygomaticofacial foramen to supply the region of the face superficial to the zygomatic bone.

The supraorbital and supratrochlear arteries both arise in the orbit. The former enters the face via the supraorbital foramen (or notch), and the latter makes its appearance medial to the supraorbital notch. These vessels supply the forehead and the scalp.

The dorsal nasal artery, a terminal branch of the ophthalmic artery, leaves the orbit at its medial corner to supply the dorsum of the nose.

**Venous Drainage**

**Summary Bite.** The superficial face is drained by veins that parallel like-named arteries eventually draining into the facial vein, a tributary of the internal jugular vein. Other veins of the face join the maxillary vein of the deep face to form the retromandibular vein.

Venous drainage of the superficial face is via the supraorbital, posterior auricular, retromandibular, buccal, infraorbital, submental, and superior and inferior labial veins, most of which accompany like-named arteries (Figs. 8-2 and 8-6).

The superficial temporal vein, draining the superficial face, and the maxillary vein, draining the deep face, join to form the retromandibular vein. One additional collecting vein, the facial vein, empties into the internal jugular vein.

**Facial Vein**

The facial vein serves as the principal venous vessel of the superficial face. It begins in the medial corner of the eye as the angular vein and passes inferiorly, following the course of the facial artery deep to the zygomaticus major and zygomaticus minor muscles.
where it parts company with the artery to empty into the internal jugular vein.

The facial vein communicates with the pterygoid plexus of veins as well as with the ophthalmic veins, both of which present possible passageways to the cavernous sinus due to lack of directional valves.

The superficial temporal vein follows the course of the same-named artery to drain the scalp, temple, and part of the forehead and ear. One of its tributaries is the transverse facial vein, which follows the path of the transverse facial artery.

**Superficial Temporal Vein**
The superficial temporal vein follows the course of the same-named artery to drain the scalp, temple, and part of the forehead and ear. One of its tributaries is the transverse facial vein, which follows the path of the transverse facial artery.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Thrombophlebitis of the Facial Vein**

The facial vein does not contain valves; thus, blood flow may pass in either direction and into other venous vessels that may be connected to the cavernous sinus located in the dural venous sinus deep within the cranium. These connections include the superior ophthalmic vein, the pterygoid venous plexus, the inferior ophthalmic vein, and/or the deep facial vein.

Infections in the face, especially in the “triangular danger zone of the face,” may cause inflammation of the facial vein and development of thrombophlebitis (clot formation) of the facial vein. Pieces of the infected clot may become free to eventually pass into the cavernous sinus, giving rise to thrombophlebitis of the cavernous sinus, a life-threatening situation if left untreated.
Chapter 8
Superficial Face

Clinical Considerations

Face

Danger Area of the Face
The area bordered by the upper lip, the lateral aspect of the nose, and the lateral corner of the eye superior to the supraorbital ridge represents the danger area of the face. Squeezing pimples and tampering with boils in this region should be avoided because the area may be drained directly or from communications to the ophthalmic vein, which leads directly into the cavernous sinus of the cranial fossa. Infection may enter the cavernous sinus via this route, resulting in thrombosis, cerebral edema, and possibly death.

Lacerations and Facial Incisions
Because the skin of the face does not possess typical deep fascia, lacerations and facial incisions tend to gape open. Therefore, they must be carefully sutured to minimize scarring.

Bell Palsy
Damage to the facial nerve (or its accidental analgesia during dental procedures) results in paralysis of the muscles of the affected side. Damage may occur during surgical involvement of the parotid gland, infection of the middle ear, knife wounds, or at birth during forceps delivery. Paralysis of the facial muscles results in ptosis of the eye (upper eyelid drooping); depression of the corner of the mouth with accompanying oozing of saliva; speech disorder (especially involving labial sounds); lack of muscle tone; and a sagging, distorted face.

Trigeminal Neuralgia
Trigeminal neuralgia (tic douloureux), an extremely painful, debilitating condition involving pain fibers of the trigeminal nerve, is caused by an unknown etiology but is often associated with dental carious lesions. The pain is often excruciating and is experienced over the face, teeth, gingivae, nasal and paranasal cavities, as well as the external ear canal. These are the areas served by the maxillary and mandibular divisions, although infrequently the area served by the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve may be affected. Treatment varies from alcohol injection into the trigeminal division affected to sectioning of the trigeminal nerve between the pons and the ganglion.
Cranial Fossa

Cranial Nerves are 12 in number and originate from the brain and leave the cranial fossa via foramina to seek their targets. Most of the cranial nerves serve structures about the head and neck; however, the vagus nerve, in addition to serving structures in the head and neck, serves structures in the thorax and abdomen. The cranial nerves are named and numbered by convention with Roman numerals [e.g., facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) where the Roman numeral VII indicates the seventh cranial nerve]. Sometimes the cranial nerve is given a CN designation [e.g., CN VII], but this is often left out as one learns that the Roman numerals are used only to number the cranial nerves. The CN designation will normally not be used in this textbook.

Diploic Veins are the veins located between the internal and external compact layers of the bony skull. These diploic veins are in communication with the veins of the scalp, the meningeal veins, the venous sinuses, and with each other.

Dura Mater is the outermost layer of the three meningeal coverings of the brain because it is housed in the cranial fossa. Dura is the thick, collagenous connective tissue layer covering the brain; however, it does not follow the contours of the brain. It consists of two layers: an outer, vascular periosteal layer in contact with the bony skull, and an inner meningeal layer that is in close contact with the arachnoid, the middle meningeal layer covering the brain. The periosteal layer covers the meningeal arteries and is closely adhered to the skull bones, especially at the bony sutures.

Dural Blood Supply is provided by several meningeal arteries, namely, the anterior, middle, accessory, and posterior meningeal arteries. The anterior meningeal artery branches from a branch of the ophthalmic artery. The middle and accessory meningeal arteries originate from the ascending pharyngeal, occipital, and vertebral arteries. These meningeal arteries all arise from arterial vessels outside the cranial fossa and enter it via foramina to vascularize the meninges.

Dural Reflections are formed in the meningeal layer of the dura. These reflections are interposed between certain...
regions and subdivisions of the brain. For example, the falx cerebri is the dural reflection that is interposed between the right and left halves of the cerebrum; the falx cerebelli is the dural reflection that sub-divides the cerebellar fossa into right and left halves; the tentorium cerebelli is the horizontal dural reflection that partially separates the cerebellum from the occipital region of the cerebral hemispheres; and the diaphragma sella is the dural reflection incompletely covering the sella turcica. Additionally, the sensory ganglion of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V) is covered by a dural reflection. These dural reflections assist in protecting the brain. They also form a framework for the arteries, veins, and the dural sinuses.

**Dural Venous Sinuses** receive venous blood from the meningeal veins, from large veins from the surface of the brain, from most of the named veins of the brain, and from the diploë of the skull. The venous sinuses are not vessels; rather, they are endothelial-lined spaces that collect the venous blood and deliver it to the bulb of the internal jugular vein. From there the blood exits the skull via the internal jugular vein. In addition to receiving venous contributions from several sources, the superior sagittal sinus also receives cerebral spinal fluid from the lacuna lateralis located on either side of the superior sagittal sinus.

**Emissary Veins** are veins that originate outside of the skull and find their way into cranial fossa to communicate with the dural venous sinuses. Although some of these emissary veins are small and inconstant, the fact that all emissary veins are without valves indicates that the blood flow through them is related to pressure. Thus, they could be passageways of infection from an extracranial to an intracranial direction.

The brain is surrounded by three layers of meninges: a tough, fibrous outer **dura mater** and two delicate layers, the inner-most **pia mater** and the middle, web-like **arachnoid**. The latter two layers are discussed further in Chapter 17, whereas only the dura mater is described here. The dura is a thick, collagenous, coarse investment that does not follow the contours of the brain.

It consists of two layers: the one in intimate contact with the bones of the skull is the **periosteal layer** and the other, in close contact with the arachnoid, is the **meningeal layer**. These two layers adhere closely to one another, except in regions occupied by veins and venous sinuses.

The **periosteal layer** is vascular and is attached to the underlying bone via collagen fibers, known as Sharpey fibers. These attachments are particularly

---

**DURA MATER**

**Summary Bite.** The dura mater is the outermost layer of the three meninges covering the brain housed within the cranial fossa. It consists of two layers, a periosteal layer adhering and attaching tightly at bony sutures of the calvaria and a meningeal layer abutting the arachnoid, the middle meningeal layer.

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Cranial Base Fractures**

Hard blows to the head may cause hemorrhage in the middle meningeal arteries to collect between the calvaria and the dura forming extradural or epidural hematomas. These events may produce a slight concussion, with recovery followed by drowsiness (perhaps followed by coma) as the mass of blood compresses the brain. The skull must be opened, the blood evacuated, and the ruptured vessels occluded.

Cranial base fractures may rupture the internal carotid artery, producing an arteriovenous fistula, thus permitting blood flow into the cavernous sinus and from there retrograde flow into its tributaries. In this instance, the nerves coursing through the cavernous sinus (cranial nerves III, IV, V₁, V₂, and VI) may become affected. Cranial nerve III is affected first, with pulsating, protruding eyeballs and engorged conjunctiva.
notable at the suture lines, where the dura is firmly bound to the intrasuture materials. The periosteal layer of the dura covers the meningeal arteries, which groove the inner surface of the cranial vault.

Dural Reflections

Summary Bite. The dura does not follow the contours of the brain except at certain areas where its reflections separate subdivisions of the brain, providing additional support and protection. One major dural reflection, the tentorium cerebelli, separates the cerebellum from the cerebrum. The other major dural reflection, the falx cerebri, separates the right and left halves of the cerebrum. Additionally, there are three minor dural reflections.

The meningeal layer of the dura is folded in certain areas, forming incomplete subdivisions of the cranial cavity. These dural reflections are interposed between various parts of the brain, providing it with additional support and protection (Figs. 9-1 and 9-2). The two major folds are the tentorium cerebelli and the falx cerebri, and the three minor folds are the falx cerebelli, the diaphragma sella, and the covering of the trigeminal cave.

Tentorium Cerebelli

The tentorium cerebelli is a horizontally positioned reflection of the meningeal dura that lies between the cerebellum, which it covers, and the occipital region of the cerebral hemispheres, which it supports (Fig. 9-1).

The anterior margin of the tentorium cerebelli is free and concave; it assists in the formation of an oval opening, the tentorial incisure, whose anterior extent is limited by the dorsum sellae of the sphenoid bone. The attachments of the tentorium cerebelli, which fix this structure and make it taut, are as follows:

- Anteriorly, it is fixed to the anterior and posterior clinoid processes of the sphenoid bone.
- Laterally, it attaches to the superior edge of the petrous temporal bone.
- Posteriorly, it is fixed to the periosteal dura attached to the lips of the groove for the transverse sinus of the occipital bone, thus participating in the formation of that sinus.

Falx Cerebri

The falx cerebri is a sickle-shaped fold of the dura. Its inferior edge is free and forms an arc interposed between the two cerebral hemispheres (Fig. 9-1).
Superior View

Figure 9-2. Major dural venous sinuses and cranial nerves in the floor of the cranial cavity.
Anteriorly, the falx cerebri attaches to the crista galli of the ethmoid bone. Superiorly, it is fixed to the periosteal dura along the lips of the groove for the superior sagittal sinus, thus participating in the formation of that sinus. Posteriorly, the falx cerebri is attached to the periosteal dura of the occipital bone, assisting in the formation of the inferior aspect of the superior sagittal sinus. Inferiorly, it joins to the tentorium cerebelli.

These two meningeal reflections of the dura, the tentorium cerebelli and the falx cerebri, form the straight sinus at their line of intersection. The remainder of the inferior aspect of the falx cerebri is not attached, and this free inferior margin contains the inferior sagittal sinus.

Falx Cerebelli

The falx cerebelli, a small meningeal reflection located deep to the tentorium cerebelli, subdivides the cerebellar fossa into right and left halves. It is attached to the inferior surface of the tentorium cerebelli and is interposed between the two cerebellar hemispheres. The attachments of the falx cerebelli are as follows:

- Posteriorly, the periosteal dura of the region of the internal occipital crest, containing the occipital sinus.
- Superiorly, the inferior surface of the tentorium cerebelli.
- Its anterior edge is free, except at its anterior terminus, where it is attached on either side of the foramen magnum.

Diaphragma Sella

The diaphragma sella is an incomplete covering composed of meningeal dura that acts as a membranous cover over the sella turcica of the sphenoid bone (Fig. 9-3).

The sella turcica houses the pituitary gland. The diaphragma sella is perforated in the middle, permitting the infundibulum and accompanying vessels of the pituitary gland to pass through it.

Covering of the Trigeminal Cave

The trigeminal ganglion sits on the periosteal (dural) lining in the trigeminal impression on the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. The ganglion is covered by a meningeal reflection, thus transforming the depression into a cave, known as the Meckel cave, or the trigeminal cave.

Blood Supply of the Dura Mater

Summary Bite. Several arteries supply the dura and the calvaria. The middle meningeal artery, a branch of the maxillary artery, is the major artery serving the dura. Smaller areas of the dura are served by branches of the ophthalmic artery anteriorly, whereas branches of the occipital and vertebral arteries serve the dura posteriorly.

The dura mater receives its principal vascularization via the anterior, middle, accessory, and posterior meningeal arteries. It should be noted that these vessels also supply the calvaria.

The anterior meningeal artery, derived from the anterior ethmoidal branch of the ophthalmic artery, serves the dura of the anterior cranial fossa.
The middle meningeal artery, the largest of the meningeal vessels supplying the dura, is a branch of the mandibular (or first part) of the maxillary artery and enters the cranial cavity via the foramen spinosum of the sphenoid bone. It grooves the lateral wall of the cranial cavity and divides into branches, forming an arboreal distribution. This vessel and its branches serve the dural lining of the parietal, sphenoid, temporal, and occipital bones. Some of its branches also vascularize the trigeminal ganglion and roots of the trigeminal nerve.

The accessory meningeal artery, also a branch of the maxillary artery, gains entry to the cranial fossa through the foramen ovale to vascularize the dura of the trigeminal cave and the trigeminal ganglion.

The posterior meningeal arteries, branches of the ascending pharyngeal and occipital arteries, enter the cranial fossa via the jugular foramen, hypoglossal canal, foramen lacerum, and mastoid foramen.

An additional posterior meningeal artery arises from the vertebral artery after that vessel has passed through the foramen magnum. All of these small vessels supply the dura of the infratentorial space of the posterior cranial fossa.

Venous drainage of the dura mater is by the anterior, posterior, and middle meningeal veins, which have distributions similar to their corresponding arteries. The anterior meningeal vein empties into dural sinuses of the anterior cranial fossa; the posterior meningeal veins empty into the posterior dural venous sinuses; and the middle meningeal vein delivers its blood into the sphenoparietal sinus and the pterygoid venous plexus.

**Venous Sinuses of the Dura**

**Summary Bite.** Venous sinuses are not vessels but are endothelially lined spaces in the folds of the dura which receive venous blood from emissary veins, the brain, and diploë of the calvaria. They are interconnected and the blood in them eventually reaches the internal jugular vein, which drains blood from the cranial fossa.

The dural venous sinuses are large spaces in comparison to their slender venous tributaries, such as the emissary veins and those that drain the brain and the diploe of the skull. Because the sinuses are endothelially lined spaces between reflections of taut dura mater, their walls are rigid and possess no valves (Figs. 9-1 through 9-3 and Table 9-1). The sinuses deliver their blood either directly or indirectly via other dural venous sinuses to the superior bulb of the internal jugular vein situated in the jugular foramen. The dural sinuses are named superior sagittal, inferior sagittal, straight, occipital, confluence of sinuses, transverse, petrosquamous, sigmoid, cavernous, intercavernous, sphenoparietal, superior petrosal, inferior petrosal, and basilar.

The superior sagittal sinus, located in the superior aspect of the falx cerebri, begins as a narrow channel just anterior to the crista galli at the foramen cecum, where it may receive a small emissary vein from the nasal cavity. This sinus receives several of the superior cerebral, dural, diploic, and emissary veins, as well as communications from the lacunae lateralis, situated on either side of the superior sagittal sinus, which leaves a depression in the parietal bone. The superior sagittal sinus enlarges in diameter as it passes posteriorly toward its termination to empty into the right transverse sinus.

The inferior sagittal sinus occupies the free, inferior margin of the falx cerebri and, draining posteriorly, empties into the straight sinus along with the great cerebral vein.

The straight sinus occupies the line of intersection between the falx cerebri and tentorium cerebelli. It receives the great cerebral vein, the superior cerebellar veins, and the inferior sagittal sinus and delivers its blood to the left transverse sinus. Occasionally, the superior sagittal sinus empties into the left transverse sinus and the straight sinus then terminates in the right transverse sinus.

The occipital sinus lies in the space between the periosteal and meningeal dura of the falx cerebelli and empties into the confluence of sinuses. The confluence of sinuses is a region receiving several of the sinuses into the large dilated space at the internal occipital protuberance. The superior sagittal, straight, and occipital sinuses empty into the confluence, which is then drained by the right and left transverse sinuses.

The transverse sinus occupies the dural space at the attached perimeter of the tentorium cerebelli. The sinus of the right side usually receives blood from the superior sagittal sinus, whereas the one on the left usually drains the straight sinus.

The petrosquamous sinus is located at the fusion of the temporal squama and its petrous portion. This sinus, the superior petrosal sinus, as well as the diploic, emissary, inferior cerebral, and inferior cerebellar veins also empty into the transverse sinus.

The transverse sinus continues anteriorly as the sigmoid sinus, which grooves the temporal, parietal, and occipital bones and empties into the superior jugular bulb of the internal jugular vein.
Table 9-1 Venous Sinuses of the Dura

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sinus</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior sagittal</td>
<td>Superior sagittal sulcus</td>
<td>Receives cerebrospinal fluid from lacunae lateralis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior sagittal</td>
<td>Inferior margin of falx cerebri</td>
<td>Is joined by the great cerebral vein to form the straight sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Straight</td>
<td>Intersection of falx cerebri and tentorium cerebelli</td>
<td>Empties into the left (occasionally the right) transverse sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital</td>
<td>Occipital bone</td>
<td>Empties into the confluence of sinuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confluence of sinuses</td>
<td>At the internal occipital protuberance</td>
<td>Receives blood from the superior sagittal, straight, and occipital sinuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse</td>
<td>At the attached perimeter of the tentorium cerebelli</td>
<td>Drains the superior sagittal sinus on the right and the straight sinus on the left</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sigmoid</td>
<td>Temporal, parietal, and occipital bones</td>
<td>Continuation of the transverse sinus and empties into the superior jugular bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous</td>
<td>Body of the sphenoid bone lateral to the sella turcica</td>
<td>Internal carotid artery and cranial nerve VI pass through it, whereas cranial nerves III, IV, and V, and V2 are embedded in its lateral wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercavernous (anterior and posterior)</td>
<td>Diaphragma sella</td>
<td>Connect the right and left cavernous sinuses to each other</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoparietal</td>
<td>Inferoposterior ridge of the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone</td>
<td>Empties its blood into the cavernous sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior petrosal</td>
<td>Superior border of the petrous temporal bone</td>
<td>Drains the cavernous sinus into the transverse sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior petrosal</td>
<td>Junction of the occipital clivus and the petrous temporal bone</td>
<td>Drains the cavernous sinus and empties into the superior jugular bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilar plexus</td>
<td>Basilar portion of occipital bone</td>
<td>Connects the two inferior petrosal sinuses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The **cavernous sinus**, a labyrinthine space covered by the meningeal layer of the dura mater, is positioned against the body of the sphenoid bone just lateral to the sella turcica. This sinus receives blood from the orbit via the inferior and superior ophthalmic veins, from the pterygoid plexus of veins via emissary veins, and from the brain via cerebral veins. The sphenoparietal and intercavernous sinuses also empty into the cavernous sinus. This large sinus is drained by the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses, delivering the blood to the superior jugular bulb of the internal jugular vein. Two structures pass through the cavernous sinus, each separately isolated from the bloodstream by endothelially lined fibrous sheaths: the internal carotid artery and the abducens nerve. In addition, several cranial nerves are embedded in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus: from superior to inferior, the oculomotor and trochlear nerves and the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve (see Fig. 9-3).

The two **intercavernous sinuses** are termed the anterior and posterior intercavernous sinuses, passing anterior and posterior to the infundibulum, respectively. These connect the right and left cavernous sinuses, thus forming a ring-shaped circular sinus.

The **sphenoparietal sinus** is a small sinus passing along the interoposterior ridge of the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone. It receives small venous contributions from the surrounding dura and empties into the cavernous sinus.
The superior petrosal sinus assists in draining the cavernous sinus and empties into the transverse sinus. It passes along the superior border of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. Along its course, it also receives cerebellar, inferior cerebral, and tympanic veins.

The inferior petrosal sinus also drains the cavernous sinus and empties directly into the superior jugular bulb. It travels in the inferior petrosal sulcus, a depression created at the juncture of the occipital clivus and petrous temporal bones. The internal auditory veins, cerebellar veins, and smaller veins of the brainstem join the inferior petrosal sinus.

The basilar plexus interconnects the two inferior petrosal sinuses. The plexus lies on the basilar portion of the occipital bone and receives blood from the vertebral plexus of veins.

### DIPLOIC AND EMISSARY VEINS

#### Diploic Veins

**Summary Bite.** The diploë is the cancellous bone containing red bone marrow located between the internal and external tables of compact bone of the calvarium. Veins within the diploë are called diploic veins and they communicate with meningeal veins and veins of the scalp. They drain into the dural sinuses.

The diploic veins are located between the two compact layers of bone that form the vault of the skull. They travel in the diploë and, in adults, communicate with each other, the meningeal veins, veins of the scalp, and the dural sinuses. There are four diploic veins: the frontal diploic vein drains into the superior sagittal sinus; the anterior temporal diploic vein, serves mostly the frontal bone, emptying into the sphenoparietal sinus; the posterior temporal diploic vein is responsible for draining the parietal diploë and emptying into the transverse sinus; and the occipital diploic vein serves the occipital bone delivering blood to the confluence of sinuses directly or to the transverse sinus.

#### Emissary Veins

**Summary Bite.** Emissary veins originate outside the skull then enter the skull through foramina, where they communicate with other veins and empty into the dural venous sinuses. Emissary veins do not possess valves; thus, blood flow is directed by pressure, which may serve as a passageway for infections from outside to inside the skull.

The emissary veins, as their collective name implies, serve to connect the veins of the external aspect of the skull with the dural venous sinuses. Although some emissary veins are small and, as such, inconsistent, many are significant. It should be noted that because these vessels do not possess valves, blood flow through them responds to pressures within the system. Consequently, they are possible passageways of infection from an extracranial to intracranial direction. The major emissary veins are those described as follows.

The mastoid emissary vein links the occipital vein with the transverse sinus via the mastoid foramen. The parietal emissary vein interconnects the veins draining the scalp with the superior sagittal sinus by way of the parietal foramen. The deep cervical veins are united with the transverse sinus by the condyloid emissary vein, which passes through the condyloid foramen. The venous drainage of the nasal cavity is connected with the superior sagittal sinus via the emissary vein of the foramen cecum. The internal jugular vein is interlinked with the cavernous sinus via the emissary veins of the carotid canal and the foramen of Vesalius. The pterygoid plexus of veins is united with the cavernous sinus via the emissary veins of the foramen lacerum and foramen ovale. The vertebral vein is connected to the transverse sinus by emissary veins of the hypoglossal canal.

### CRANIAL NERVES

The 12 cranial nerves emanating from the brain leave the cranial cavity via foramina in the cranial fossa (Fig. 9-2; see Chapter 18). During removal of the brain from the cranial cavity, the connections between the brain and the cranial nerves are severed, and these detached nerves may be observed on the floor of the internal base of the skull.

#### Meningeal Nerves

**Summary Bite.** Meningeal nerves are the sensory nerves to the dura. They are supplied mostly from all three divisions of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V). Parts of the posterior cranial fossa and roof are supplied with meningeal branches arising from the vagus (cranial nerve X) and hypoglossal nerves (cranial nerve XII) with contributions from upper cervical spinal nerves.
Sensory fibers that supply the dura are called meningeal nerves and are provided mostly by all three divisions of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V). Additionally, dura of the roof and floor of the posterior cranial fossa are supplied with meningeal branches from the vagus (cranial nerve X) and hypoglossal (cranial nerve XII) nerves and, possibly, meningeal fibers of spinal nerves C2 and C3. It is interesting to note that whereas most of the meningeal fibers arise from the cranial nerves while in the cranial fossa, some arise outside the cranial vault and recur back into the cranial fossa via foramina to provide sensation to the dura.

The anterior (rostal)-most nerve structure is the olfactory tract and bulb, lying just lateral to the crista galli on the cribiform plate of the ethmoid bone. The olfactory nerve, the first cranial nerve (I), passes through the perforations of the cribiform plate to enter the bulb as numerous tiny filaments emerging from the olfactory mucosa of the nasal cavity.

The optic nerve, the second cranial nerve (II), passes through the optic foramen from the retina of the eye. It continues at the optic chiasma, which rests on the chiasmatic groove of the sphenoid bone just anterior to the infundibulum of the hypophysis.

The oculomotor nerve, the third cranial nerve (III), passes through the dura in the vicinity of the cavernous sinus on its way to the orbit via the superior orbital fissure.

The trochlear nerve, the fourth cranial nerve (IV), the smallest of the cranial nerves, courses along the free margin of the tentorium cerebelli. It pierces the dura at the posterior clinoid process to pass forward in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, eventually to traverse the superior orbital fissure on its way to the orbit.

The trigeminal nerve, the fifth cranial nerve (V), the largest of the cranial nerves composed of two roots, is evident just inferior and posterior to the small trochlear nerve. The roots enter the trigeminal cave deep to the dural cover, where the sensory portion displays its sensory ganglion, whereas the motor portion passes deep to that structure. The trigeminal (semilunar) ganglion trifurcates into ophthalmic (cranial nerve V1), maxillary (cranial nerve V2), and mandibular divisions (cranial nerve V3), which leave the cranial cavity via the superior orbital fissure, the foramen rotundum, and the foramen ovale, respectively. The motor root accompanies the mandibular division and, subsequent to passing through the foramen ovale, merges with it.

The abducent nerve, the sixth cranial nerve (VI), is noted piercing the dura medial and inferior to the root of the trigeminal nerve. It passes through the cavernous sinus to exit the cranial vault and enter the orbit via the superior orbital fissure.

The two roots of the facial nerve, the seventh cranial nerve (VII) and the vestibulocochlear nerve, the eighth cranial nerve (VIII), accompany each other into the internal acoustic meatus, under the canopy of the tentorium cerebelli.

The glossopharyngeal nerve, the ninth cranial nerve (IX); the vagus nerve, the tenth cranial nerve (X); and the accessory nerve, the eleventh cranial nerve (XI), all leave the cranial cavity via the jugular foramen. The accessory nerve is composed of a spinal portion ascending through the foramen magnum and a cranial portion with which it unites in the cranial cavity before exiting the cranial vault through the jugular foramen.

The most caudal cranial nerve, the hypoglossal nerve, the twelfth cranial nerve (XII), exits the internal base of the skull via the hypoglossal foramen.

The cranial nerves and their distributions are discussed in chapters relevant to their locations. Specific information concerning the individual cranial nerves is detailed in Chapter 18. Also see Figure 17-3 to view the position of the cranial nerves on the ventral surface of the brain.
**Chapter Outline**

**Key Terms**

- **Eye and Ear**
- **Orbit**
  - Bony Orbit
  - Anterior Anatomy
  - Orb Anatomy
  - Muscles of the Eye
- **Nerves of the Orbit**
- **Vascular Supply**
- **Ear**
  - Development
  - External Ear
- **Middle Ear**
  - Inner Ear

---

**Bony Ossicles**, located in the middle ear, develop from two sources. The malleus and incus and their associated muscles develop from the first pharyngeal arch, whereas the stapes develops from the second pharyngeal arch. These ossicles are attached to each other in series from the tympanic membrane to the oval window of the cochlea. Vibrations of the tympanic membrane are magnified by the bony ossicles, causing the membrane of the oval window to vibrate and thereby setting the fluid within the spiral cochlea in motion. Specialized receptors (neuroepithelial hair cells) within the sensory labyrinth of the organ of Corti are moved by the displacement of the fluid; these mechanical movements are translated into nerve impulses that are transmitted back through the cochlear division of the vestibulocochlear nerve to the brain for processing.

**The Ear** serves two functions: balance and hearing. The vestibulocochlear nerve is the cranial nerve serving the ear but, because two separate entities are functioning in the ear, the vestibulocochlear nerve is divided into two divisions: the vestibular division serves the mechanism of balance, whereas the cochlear nerve serves the hearing mechanism. The anatomical structures responsible for the functioning of these two mechanisms develop from the hindbrain and become embedded in the petrous portion of the temporal bone as the inner ear. The middle ear and auditory tube, lined with endoderm, develop from the first pharyngeal pouch, whereas the external auditory meatus, lined with ectoderm, develops from the first pharyngeal groove. The closing plate between the pouch and the groove forms the tympanic membrane (ear drum) which separates these two developmental regions of the ear.

**Intrinsic Muscles of the Eye** include those muscles responsible for controlling the aperture of the pupil in the iris and for releasing tension on the lens for accommodation. These intrinsic muscles are innervated by the autonomic nervous system. The sphincter pupillae muscle located in the iris is innervated by parasympathetic nerves, whose postganglionic fibers originate in the ciliary ganglion. The dilatator pupillae muscle located in the iris is innervated by sympathetic fibers whose postganglionic fibers originate in the superior...
cervical ganglion. The ciliary muscle, whose contractions ease tension on the lens (thus changing its shape) is innervated by parasympathetic postganglionic nerve fibers that originate in the ciliary ganglion.

**The Orb** is the eyeball. Each orb is set in the bony orbit at an angle such that the optic axis and the ocular axis are not in synchrony with each other. Therefore, two of the extrinsic muscles are located so that this situation can be corrected optically. The superior oblique muscle corrects this by rotating the orb in an inferior–lateral (down and out) position, whereas the inferior oblique muscle rotates the orb in a superior–lateral (up and out) position. These two muscles are innervated by separate cranial nerves. The trochlear nerve (cranial nerve IV) innervates the superior oblique muscle, whereas the oculomotor nerve (cranial nerve III) innervates the inferior oblique muscle. The remaining extrinsic muscles, levator palpebrae superioris and the rectus muscles, are innervated by the oculomotor nerve (cranial nerve III), with the exception of the lateral rectus muscle, which is innervated by the abducens nerve (cranial nerve VI). Secretomotor fibers to the lacrimal gland are supplied by the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII).

The lens (thus changing its shape) is innervated by parasympathetic postganglionic nerve fibers that originate in the ciliary ganglion.

**Refractive Elements of the Eye** include the cornea, aqueous humor, lens, zonula ciliaris, and the vitreous body. These structures, listed from anterior to posterior, refract the light as it passes to the retina. Certain conditions that cause alterations in any of these elements may interfere with visual perception and the vision may become “fuzzy” or less sharp. Scratches on the cornea; high pressure from too much aqueous humor in the anterior chamber; accumulations of pigments or substances in the lens; hardening of the lens; and/or drying and sloughing of cells of the vitreous body as it pulls away from the retina all can have detrimental effects on visual acuity and may even lead to blindness. Some of these conditions include cataracts, glaucoma, and damaged corneas. Fortunately, most of these conditions are reversible by surgical intervention, including transplants.

**Vestibular Apparatus** is the balancing mechanism that senses the body position in space and during movement. It is housed in the inner ear within the semicircular canals. The saccule and the utricle are located within the membranous labyrinth that lines the bony labyrinth. The membranous labyrinth is filled with endolymph. Located within each of these three separate regions of the vestibular apparatus are specialized receptors (neuroepithelial hair cells) that detect movement of the contained fluid. This fluid movement is translated into nerve impulses that are transmitted back by way of the vestibular division of the vestibulocochlear nerve to the brain for processing. The semicircular canals are specialized to function in detecting linear, angular, and circular movements, whereas the saccule and utricle function in detecting linear movement of the head.

---

**Summary Bite.** The orbit houses the orb (eyeball) and its associated extrinsic muscles, and also contains the lacrimal gland, arteries and veins, cranial nerves II, III, IV, V, VI, and VII, and postganglionic sympathetic nerves. The bony orbit is composed of seven bones: the lacrimal bone and parts of the maxilla, ethmoid, frontal, zygoma, sphenoid, and the palatine bones.

The orbit contains the organ of sight; its associated muscles, nerves, and vessels; and some accessory structures, all of which are embedded in periorbital fat. The bulb of the eye and its associated structures function in unison to receive light rays through the cornea and lens of the eye so the rays may be focused on the posterior wall of the bulb. Here, the retina, with its specialized cells, when stimulated by the light, constructs images and transmits the information to the brain for processing into a complex visual image.

The eye develops from three sources. The retina and optic nerve are outgrowths of the forebrain and are first observable at about 4 weeks of development.
orbit from its apex are directed laterally from the midline. The attachments of two specific ocular muscles correct for this lateral divergence.

Chapter 6 discusses the bony orbit, so the reader may wish to review that section for details.

**Anterior Anatomy**

**Eyelid**

Summary Bite. The eyelids cover and protect the orb from injury. Deep to the skin of the eyelid is the orbicularis oculi muscle. Internally, the eyelids are lined by conjunctiva, a mucous membrane that reflects onto the sclera (white of the eye). The upper eyelid is larger than the lower due to the presence of the levator palpebrae superioris muscle. Tarsal glands deep to the conjunctiva secrete an oily substance to help seal the eyelids and prevent the overflow of tears. Eye lashes emanate from the free margins of the eyelids.

The eyeball is covered anteriorly by the eyelids, which protect it from injury (Fig. 10-2). The skin of the eyelids covers the circularly oriented orbicularis oculi muscle, whereas internally the eyelids are lined by

---

**Table 10-1  Bones of the Orbit**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Maxilla</th>
<th>Frontal</th>
<th>Ethmoid</th>
<th>Lacrimal</th>
<th>Zygoma</th>
<th>Sphenoid</th>
<th>Palatine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Apex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lesser</td>
<td>wing, body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor</td>
<td>Orbital plate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Orbital</td>
<td>process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lesser</td>
<td>wing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof</td>
<td>Orbital plate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Orbital</td>
<td>process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial wall</td>
<td>Frontal process</td>
<td>Orbital lamina</td>
<td>Orbital surface</td>
<td>Body</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral wall</td>
<td>Orbital process</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Orbital</td>
<td>process</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Base</td>
<td>Orbital rim</td>
<td>Orbital rim</td>
<td>Orbital rim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 10-2 Communications of the Orbit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Openings Communicating With the Orbit*</th>
<th>Maxilla</th>
<th>Frontal</th>
<th>Ethmoid</th>
<th>Lacrimal</th>
<th>Zygoma</th>
<th>Sphenoid</th>
<th>Palatine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Optic foramen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior orbital fissure</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior orbital fissure</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraorbital canal</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior ethmoidal foramen</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasolacrimal sulcus</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior ethmoidal foramen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraorbital foramen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zygomatico-orbital foramen</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*When more than one bone is indicated, the opening is at the junction of two or more bones, or in the case of foramina, at a suture.

**Figure 10-2.** External anatomy of the eye.
conjunctiva, a mucous membrane that reflects onto the anterior portion of the sclera. In addition, the upper eyelid possesses the levator palpebrae superioris muscle, which makes it larger than the lower eyelid. Evert ing the eyelid permits observation of the tarsal glands deep to the conjunctiva. These glands secrete an oily substance that assists in sealing the margins of the eyelids when they are closed, and this oily substance prevents overflow of tears when the eyelids are open. These glands, along with the ciliary glands (modified sudoriferous glands located in the margin), open via small pores onto the margin adjacent to the eyelashes. The eyelashes, arranged in rows of two or three, curve upward and downward on the upper and lower eyelids, respectively.

The opened margins form an elliptical palpebral fissure narrowing laterally into an acute lateral palpebral commissure (lateral canthus) and medially into a larger medial palpebral commissure (medial canthus) possessing an enlarged triangular lacus lacrimalis with its caruncula.

Lacrimal Apparatus

Summary Bite. The lacrimal gland is located outside the orb proper, housed in a fossa in the anterosuperolateral aspect of the orbit. It secretes lacrimal fluid (tears) that keeps the cornea moistened as the eyelid moves the fluid to the medial corner of the eye where the fluid is drained by the lacrimal ducts into the lacrimal sac.

The lacrimal (tear) gland is located in the lacrimal fossa at the anterosuperolateral aspect of the orbit. The gland secretes fluid that is emptied into the conjunctival sac of the bulb of the eye (Fig. 10-2). Each time the cornea dries, the eyelids, acting as windshield wipers, move the fluid over the sclera and cornea. The fluid moves medially to the lacrimal ducts, which begin as puncta (tiny orifices) at the lateral aspects of the lacus lacrimalis on the medial margins of the eyelids. The fluid passes via these ducts into the lacrimal sac located in the groove mostly within the lacrimal bone. The sac represents the upper dilated portion of the nasolacrimal duct, which opens into the nasal cavity at the inferior nasal meatus. Secretomotor innervation to the lacrimal gland is supplied by parasympathetic fibers of the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII).

Orb Anatomy

Summary Bite. The orb is spherical structure with a bulge on its anterior surface represented by the transparent cornea. Because of the lateral divergence of the orb in the orbit, the optical axis and the orbital axis do not coincide. Two of the extrinsic muscles of the orb are arranged to compensate for this.

The bulb of the eye is almost spherical, except for its anterior portion, which bulges away from the surface in the region of the eyelids (Fig. 10-3). This anteriorly directed surface projection is the cornea.

The transparent cornea represents a segment of a sphere occupying the anterior one sixth of the bulb, and the remaining opaque bulb represents a more complete segment of a different-sized sphere. The anterior pole of the curvature of the cornea is nearly parallel with the posterior pole of the curvature of the remaining bulb, forming the optical axis. Because of the lateral divergence of the orbit cone, the optical axis and the orbital axis do not coincide. The optic nerve (cranial nerve II) enters the posterior wall of the orb at the orbital axis about 3 mm to the nasal side of the optical axis, represented by the macula, the region for greatest visual acuity.

Tunics

Summary Bite. The wall of the orb consists of three separate tunics: the fibrous tunic includes the sclera and cornea; the vascular tunic includes the choroid, ciliary body, and iris; and the retinal tunic, the 10-layered retina.

Clinical Considerations

Conjunctivitis

Conjunctivitis is a mild inflammation of the conjunctiva, which can be either bacterial or an allergic reaction. The sclera and undersides of the eyelids are involved. It is especially prevalent in newborns as they pass through the birth canal. Thus, newborns are immediately given prophylactic antibiotic eye drops to prevent neonatal conjunctivitis. In adults, conjunctivitis is caused mostly by seasonal allergy.
The bulb of the eye is composed of three separate layers fabricated into one wall. The outer covering is the sclera, which is modified anteriorly as the cornea (Figs. 10-3 and 10-4). The middle or intermediate tunic is the pigmented, vascular coat composed of the choroid, ciliary body, and iris. The inner-most tunic is the nervous component, the retina.

Fibrous Tunic

Summary Bite. The tough, fibrous sclera is the white of the eye; it receives attachments of the extrinsic muscles of the eye. The cornea is the anteriorly placed transparent portion of the fibrous tunic.

Vascular Tunic

Summary Bite. The vascular tunic is the posteriorly located, highly vascular, darkly pigmented choroid adhering to the sclera and retina. Intermediate between the choroid and iris is the ciliary body and its smooth ciliary processes.

Clinical Considerations

Cornea

The cornea, the transparent, avascular portion of the fibrous tunic of the eye, is highly sensitive and is mostly exposed to the environment. Slight scratches and abrasions of the cornea usually heal without much scarring. However, more severe scarring impedes vision to such a point that a corneal transplant is prescribed. Presently, most transplanted corneas are received from human donors, whereas some transplants are plastic.
Chapter 10  Eye and Ear

Posterior segment of globe  Anterior segment of globe

Vitreous chamber (containing vitreous humor)

Macula  Optic disc  Optic nerve

Retinal artery and vein

Sclera  Choroid  Retina

Figure 10-4. Anatomy of the anterior portion of the eye.

muscle attached by suspensory ligaments to the lens. The anteriorly placed, disc-shaped iris contains two separate smooth muscles that regulate the aperture of the pupil in the iris.

The choroid, the posteriorly located portion of the intermediate tunic, is a vascular, darkly pigmented layer closely adhering to the sclera and the retina. It is pierced by the optic nerve posteriorly.

The ciliary body is a structure located in an intermediate zone between the choroid and the iris portions of the vascular tunic and extends between the most anteriorly located parts of the retina and the iris (Figs. 10-3 and 10-4).

Contained within the ciliary body, as it juts away from the wall, is the ciliary muscle. Radiating out from the ciliary body and attached to the lens are the suspensory ligaments of the lens. The ciliary muscle is smooth muscle and therefore, involuntary. It receives its innervation via parasympathetic fibers originating in the oculomotor nerve. Contraction of this muscle reduce the tension on the suspensory ligament of the lens, permitting the lens to become more convex, thereby accommodating the eye to focus on objects nearby.

The iris is the most anteriorly placed portion of the intermediate tunic. This circular disc, imparted with color from a deep pigmented layer, possesses two separately arranged layers of smooth muscle whose contractions, when stimulated by autonomic nerves, alter the diameter of the hole in the center of the iris, known as the pupil.

The iris is continuous with the ciliary body and is connected to the cornea at its periphery. Its location, between the lens and the cornea, separates this space into an anterior chamber in front of it and a posterior chamber behind it (Fig. 10-5). A watery fluid, the aqueous humor, is secreted into the posterior chamber of
the eye by the ciliary body. The fluid passes from this chamber into the anterior chamber through the pupil lying on the anterior surface of the lens. It exits the anterior chamber by draining into the canal of Schlemm, a venous channel located at the junction of the iris and cornea.

**Retinal Tunic**

**Summary Bite.** The retina consists of three parts: a nervous portion housing 10 layers of cells, including the photoreceptor rods and cones and the optic nerve layer; the pars ciliaris is a reduced, thin, non-nervous portion of the retina lining the ciliary body and the non-nervous layer lining the iris as the pars iridica.

Changes in the longitudinal dimension of the optical axis will cause images to be focused either anterior (myopia) or posterior (hyperopia) to the retina. This is usually the result of changes in the refractive elements of the eye, notably the cornea, which assumes a slight change in shape or a change in the dimension of the orb. Both processes often occur as a function of aging. These conditions can be diagnosed and treated with prescription-ground glasses that can optically correct the longitudinal dimension of the optical axis to the retina.

The **internal tunic** is composed of the nervous layer of the retina posteriorly and the non-nervous pars ciliaris and pars iridica retinae anteriorly. Posteriorly, the nervous retina fans out from the optic nerve (where it is thickest) to near the ciliary body, where it ends in an irregular margin, the **ora serrata**. Although the nervous portion ends here, a remaining
Chapter 10
Eye and Ear

membrane passes over the deep surfaces of the ciliary body and the iris as the pigmented pars ciliaris and pars iridica retinae (Figs. 10-4 and 10-5).

The nervous component of the retina is composed of 10 layers, the outer layer being the pigmented layer next to which lie the specialized receptors of light, the rods and cones. The rods are more numerous than the cones, except in the area of the macula and its centrally depressed fovea centralis, where the cones are concentrated, making vision most acute.

No rods or cones are located in the optic disc, which marks the exit of the optic nerve and the entrance of the artery of the retina. This disc represents the only spot on the retina insensitive to light and is thus known as the blind spot. The nervous portion of the retina ends at the ora serrata; however, the non-nervous portion continues on as a thin layer known as the pars ciliaris, overlying the deep aspect of the ciliary body and the pars iridica lining the iris.

Space does not permit the discussion of the individual layers of the retina. Further information may be gained from any standard histology textbook.

Refractive Media

Summary Bite. The refractive media permits light rays to pass through them and be refracted to focus on the retina. The refractive media include the cornea, aqueous humor, lens, zonula ciliaris, and the vitreous body.

Refractive media of the eye include (listed in order from anterior to posterior) the cornea, aqueous humor, lens, zonula ciliaris, and vitreous body (Figs. 10-3 and 10-4).

Lens and Vitreous Body

Summary Bite. The lens is a pliable, biconvex body composed of layers of transparent cells. It lies immediately posterior to the iris and is held in place by the suspensory ligaments attached to the ciliary body. The vitreous body is a semigelatinous structure filling the interior of the globe between the lens and the retina to which it is securely adherent.

The cornea and the aqueous humor have been discussed. The lens, a biconvex body that develops from surface ectoderm, is composed of several transparent layers covered by a capsule and retained in position by suspensory ligaments attached to the ciliary body (Fig. 10-5). The transparent zonula ciliaris, ribbonlike fibrils radiating out from the ciliary body to the lens, imparts refractive capability to the lens.

Filling the concavity behind the lens and posterior chamber of the eye is the semigelatinous vitreous body, which is the most posteriorly located of the light-refracting structures.

Clinical Considerations

Glaucoma refers to a condition resulting from increased pressure in the anterior chamber of the eye because more aqueous humor is being produced than is being drained off through the venous system. If protracted, the increased pressure can damage the retina, causing blindness. Therapeutic drugs may be used to reduce the production of the aqueous humor.

Detached Retina

The 10-layered retina is loosely attached to the choroid layer of the orb and is retained in that position by the vitreous body. Sudden jolts absorbed in the orbit may detach the retina, causing a medical emergency. The detached retina is sightless and will remain so, thus requiring surgical reattachment.
Muscles of the Eye
Extrinsic Muscles

Summary Bite. The extrinsic muscles are seven in number. One muscle operates the upper eyelid, whereas the remaining extrinsic muscles function to rotate the orb in any direction to focus for sight.

There are seven extrinsic muscles of the eye: the levator palpebrae superioris, the superior, inferior, medial, and lateral recti muscles, and the superior and inferior oblique muscles (Figs. 10-5 and 10-6 and Table 10-3).

The levator palpebrae superioris originates on the inferior surface of the lesser wing of the sphenoid bone and inserts into the upper eyelid. As previously described, this muscle functions to elevate the upper eyelid. The four recti muscles—lateral, medial, superior, and inferior—originate from a common tendinous ring surrounding the optic foramen. Each of these four muscles passes into the orbit and inserts into the sclera of the orb, a few millimeters posterior to the cornea in the position indicated by their names. These muscles function to pull the orb in the direction of the muscle insertion.

It should again be noted that because of the lateral divergence of all structures entering the orbit, the resultant action of the superior and inferior recti muscles are complicated by a slight rotation and medialward deviation.

The superior oblique muscle arises from the body of the sphenoid bone immediately above the superior rectus muscle and passes anteriorly to end in a tendinous pulty attached to the trochlear fovea of the frontal bone. From here, the tendon turns laterally beneath the superior rectus muscle to insert into the sclera between the insertions of the superior and lateral rectus muscles (see Fig. 10-7). Contraction of this muscle directs the eye downward and laterally.

The inferior oblique muscle arises from the orbital surface of the maxilla lateral to the lacrimal groove. The muscle passes between the orbital floor and the inferior rectus to be inserted in the sclera between the insertions of the lateral rectus and superior oblique muscles (see Fig. 10-7). The inferior oblique muscle functions to direct the eye upward and lateralward.

The levator palpebrae superioris, the superior, inferior, and medial recti, and the inferior oblique muscles are all innervated by branches of the oculomotor nerve. The superior oblique muscle is innervated by the trochlear nerve, the sole function of this nerve. Innervation to the lateral rectus muscle is provided by the abducent nerve, another cranial nerve that serves only a single function.

Intrinsic Muscles of the Eye

Summary Bite. The intrinsic muscles of the eye are three in number. These muscles lie within the orb and function to innervate smooth muscles of the ciliary body and the two separate muscles of the iris.

The three intrinsic muscles of the eye are all involuntary. Although the ciliary muscle was described with the choroid layer, it will be reviewed here. When the ciliary muscle (attached to the sclera and the ciliary body) contracts, it stretches the ciliary body, thereby releasing tension on the suspensory ligaments and, in so doing, releasing tension on the lens. The effect is that the lens becomes more convex, thus enabling the eye to focus on close objects (this is known as accommodation). Because the ciliary muscle is an involuntary muscle, it is innervated by the autonomic nervous system, specifically by parasympathetic fibers originating in the oculomotor nerve (cranial nerve III). The two remaining intrinsic muscles, both located within the iris, are the sphincter pupillae and dilatator pupillae muscles (Figs. 10-3 through 10-5).

The sphincter pupillae muscles are arranged in a circular fashion in the iris around the pupil. Their contraction constricts the pupil. The dilatator pupillae muscles are arranged in a radiating band from near the margin of the pupil to the outer walls of the deep surface of the iris. Contraction of this muscle group produce a dilation of the pupil.

Cataract is an age-related condition where the lens loses its transparency and becomes milky, causing blurred vision. It is the major cause of poor vision and blindness around the world. Modern techniques now permit surgical placement of plastic lenses resulting in restored vision.
# Table 10-3 Muscles of the Eye

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Muscle</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Insertion</th>
<th>Innervation</th>
<th>Action*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Levator palpebrae superioris</td>
<td>Orbit roof</td>
<td>Upper eyelid, tarsal plate</td>
<td>Oculomotor</td>
<td>Elevates eyelid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extrinsic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recti</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior</td>
<td>Superior sclera anterior to equator</td>
<td>Oculomotor</td>
<td>Elevates cornea slightly medialward.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior</td>
<td>Common tendinous ring surrounding the optic foramen</td>
<td>Inferior sclera anterior to equator</td>
<td>Oculomotor</td>
<td>Depresses cornea slightly medialward.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial</td>
<td>Medial sclera anterior to equator</td>
<td>Oculomotor</td>
<td>Rotates cornea medially.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral</td>
<td>Lateral sclera anterior to equator</td>
<td>Abducent</td>
<td>Rotates cornea laterally.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obliques</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior</td>
<td>Orbit roof</td>
<td>Trochlea to posterosuperior quadrant of sclera</td>
<td>Trochlear</td>
<td>Rotates cornea inferolaterally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior</td>
<td>Orbit floor</td>
<td>Sclera posteroinferior to superior oblique</td>
<td>Oculomotor</td>
<td>Rotates cornea superolaterally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intrinsic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciliary</td>
<td>Located in ciliary body adjacent to iris and attached to suspensory ligament of lens</td>
<td>Oculomotor via ciliary ganglion and short ciliary nerves</td>
<td>Releases pressure on suspensory ligament of lens, permitting it to accommodate.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pupillae</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphincter</td>
<td>Circular band in iris surrounding the pupil</td>
<td>Oculomotor (parasympathetic) via ciliary ganglion and short ciliary nerves</td>
<td>Constricts pupil.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dilatator</td>
<td>Radiating out in deep layers of iris from pupil</td>
<td>Sympathetic from superior cervical ganglion via long and short ciliary nerves</td>
<td>Dilates pupil.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Actions described are assuming each muscle is acting alone.

---

*Figure 10-7. The eye.*
Both of these muscle groups are innervated by fibers of the autonomic system. The sphincter muscle group is supplied by parasympathetic fibers originating in the oculomotor nerve, whereas the dilator muscle group is innervated by the sympathetic system, whose postganglionic cell bodies are located in the superior cervical ganglion. It should be mentioned again that the lacrimal gland, which lies within the orbit but outside the orb, is provided with secretomotor fibers from the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII).

### Nerves of the Orbit

**Summary Bite.** Cranial nerves serving the orbit include II, III, IV, V, VI, and VII. Additionally, postganglionic sympathetic fibers serve the orbit.

The orbit possesses nerve components from six cranial nerves: the optic, oculomotor, trochlear, trigeminal, abducent, and secretomotor. In addition, sympathetic fibers also serve the orbit (Fig. 10-6 and Table 10-3). Each cranial nerve serving the orbit is discussed in detail in Chapter 18 and summarized in Table 18-1.

#### Optic Nerve

The optic nerve consists of the axons of the ganglionic layer of the retina passing to the brain from the bulb through the optic foramen and to the optic chiasma. Here, certain fibers cross over to the contralateral side to enter the optic tract, whereas other fibers remain on the ipsilateral side to enter the optic tract.

#### Oculomotor Nerve

The oculomotor nerve enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure, where it divides into superior and inferior divisions to innervate the intrinsic ciliary and sphincter pupillae muscles and all of the extrinsic muscles except the lateral rectus and the superior oblique.

The superior division sends branches to the levator palpebrae superioris and the superior rectus, whereas the inferior division innervates the medial and inferior recti and the inferior oblique muscles. This division also supplies parasympathetic motor fibers to the ciliary ganglion, a parasympathetic terminal ganglion located about 1 cm from the apex of the orbit between the optic nerve and the lateral rectus muscle. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers synapse on postganglionic cell bodies within the ganglion. The axons of these cell bodies reach the orb via the short ciliary nerves, to be distributed to the ciliary and sphincter pupillae muscles (see Tables 10-3 and 18-2).

#### Trochlear Nerve

The trochlear nerve enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure on its way to the superior oblique muscle, the only muscle it serves.

#### Trigeminal Nerve

The ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure as three branches: the lacrimal, frontal, and nasociliary nerves, all serving sensory function only (see Tables 18-1 and 18-3).

The smallest branch, the lacrimal nerve, runs laterally, superior to the lateral rectus, on its way to supply the lacrimal gland and adjacent conjunctiva with sensory innervation.

This nerve often communicates with a secretomotor postganglionic parasympathetic fiber for the lacrimal gland from the pterygoplatine ganglion.

Preganglionic fibers reach the ganglion from the facial nerve, whereas the postganglionic fibers are distributed to the lacrimal nerve via zygomaticotemporal branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

The frontal nerve is the largest nerve of the ophthalmic division. It courses forward above the levator palpebrae superioris muscle. Midway in the orbit, it divides into a medial branch, the supratrochlear nerve, and the laterally oriented supraorbital nerve.

The supratrochlear nerve pierces the orbital fascia and supplies the conjunctiva, eyelid, and skin over the medial part of the forehead.

The supraorbital nerve exits the orbit through the supraorbital notch or foramen to supply the forehead and scalp. A small twig of this nerve enters the frontal bone to serve the frontal sinus.

The nasociliary nerve crosses over the optic nerve on an oblique course to the anterior ethmoidal foramen. It communicates with the ciliary ganglion, where sensory fibers may pass through the ganglion without synapsing on their way to the orb via the short ciliary nerves that carry postganglionic parasympathetic fibers. Other branches, termed long ciliary nerves (sensory and postganglionic sympathetic), pass to the orb directly. Branches of the nasociliary nerve enter the anterior and posterior (and occasionally, middle) ethmoidal foramina.

Just before entering the anterior ethmoidal foramen, the infratrochlear nerve arises from the nasociliary nerve and passes to the medial angle of the eye, supplying the skin of the eyelids and the side of the nose.

The anterior and posterior ethmoidal nerves serve the ethmoidal and frontal sinuses. Internal and external nasal branches, derived from the anterior ethmoidal nerve, supply the mucous membranes of
the anterior septum and the skin over the ala of the nose, respectively.

The **maxillary division** of the trigeminal nerve enters the floor of the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure. It is not discussed here because its only contribution to the orbit is a few periostial branches.

**Abducent Nerve**
The abducent nerve enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure, passing laterally to innervate the lateral rectus muscle, the only muscle it serves.

**Sympathetic Nerves**
Postganglionic sympathetic fibers, whose cell bodies are located in the superior cervical ganglion, find their way into the orbit as communications to several cranial nerves from the carotid plexus. They travel to their destination via these routes or via the sympathetic nerve plexus wrapped around the arteries of the orbit.

Nerves destined for the dilator pupillae muscles reach the orb either by the long ciliary nerves or by passing, with sensory branches from the nasociliary nerve, through the ciliary ganglion and on to the dilator pupillae muscles located within the iris via the short ciliary nerves.

**Vascular Supply**
**Summary Bite.** The arterial supply to the structures in the orbit, including the extrinsic muscles, retina, ciliary body, and intrinsic muscles, comes from branches of the ophthalmic artery. Superior and inferior ophthalmic veins drain the orbit into the cavernous sinus. The inferior ophthalmic vein communicates with the pterygoid venous plexus.

The **ophthalmic artery** enters the orbit through the optic canal and divides into two groups. The orbital group serves some of the accessory structures to the orbit, whereas the ocular group serves the extrinsic muscles and the orb proper, along with the retina, the ciliary body, and the intrinsic muscles (Fig. 10-6).

**Superior and inferior ophthalmic veins** drain the structures of the orbit and empty their contents into the cavernous sinus. The inferior ophthalmic vein also communicates with the pterygoid venous plexus.

**EAR**
**Summary Bite.** The ear is a purely sensory organ specialized for the sensations of hearing and balance.

**Development**
**Summary Bite.** The internal ear develops from the hindbrain and eventually becomes encased within the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It is composed of two parts: the vestibular apparatus (for balance) and the cochlea (for hearing).

The organ of hearing and balance begins its development shortly after that of the eye. It develops from a thickening of the hindbrain to form the mechanism for balance and the cochlea for hearing, both of which make up the internal ear and eventually become surrounded by the petrous portion of the temporal bone.

The middle ear and auditory tube develop from the first pharyngeal pouch, as described in Chapter 5. Interposed between the endodermal lining of the

**Clinical Considerations**

**Conductive Hearing Loss**

**Otitis Media**
The auditory tube permits the spread of infection from the nasal cavity into the middle ear cavity. This condition (otitis media), resulting from acute infection, may rupture the eardrum and/or may pass into the mastoid air cells. Antibiotics are used to circumvent and treat this condition. Auditory tube obstructions often lead to middle ear infections, especially in children.

**Otosclerosis**
Occasionally, the stapes becomes immobilized as a result of bony deposits around the oval window. This condition, known as otosclerosis, is a major cause of hearing loss, especially in older adults. It is usually correctable by surgical procedures. Both otitis media and otosclerosis, if left untreated, will result in deafness.
auditory tube and the ectodermal lining of the pharyngeal groove is the closing plate, which persists as the tympanum (eardrum) (see Fig. 5-4).

It is within this middle ear cavity that the bony ossicles develop. By way of review, the malleus (hammer) and its muscle, the tensor tympani, develop from first arch mesenchyme, as does the incus (anvil). The stapes (stirrup) and its muscle, the stapedius, develop from second arch mesenchyme. In keeping with the rule that structures developing within an arch are innervated by the nerve of that arch, it then follows that the tensor tympani muscle is innervated by the trigeminal nerve, and the stapedius muscle is innervated by the facial nerve.

**External Ear**

**Summary Bite.** The external ear includes the pinna and several extrinsic muscles of the ear, as well as the external auditory meatus to the tympanic membrane.

The external ear comprises the pinna and the external auditory meatus; it develops from the first pharyngeal groove as well as from the tubercles from pharyngeal arches I and II that surround the first pharyngeal groove (Fig. 10-8).

Several muscles develop from the second arch in the vicinity of the ear; thus, all are innervated by the facial nerve. They are the extrinsic muscle group of the pinna, (including the anterior, superior, and posterior auricular muscles) and an intrinsic group (including some six small, insignificant, vestigial muscles that are not described here).

**Nerve Supply**

**Summary Bite.** Sensory innervation to the external ear emanates from several sources that overlap the area serviced. These include branches from the cervical plexus and branches from cranial nerves V, VII, and X with contributions from IX.

Sensory innervation to the pinna and the external auditory meatus is broad and overlapping. It includes the great auricular and lesser occipital nerves, originating from the cervical plexus, and branches from several cranial nerves, including the auricular branch of the facial, the auriculotemporal branch of the trigeminal, the auricular branch of the vagus, and perhaps contributions from the glossopharyngeal nerve to the auricular branch of vagus.

**Middle Ear**

**Summary Bite.** The middle ear (tympanic cavity), housing the three bony ossicles and their associated muscles, lies within the temporal bone and communicates with the mastoid air cells; it also communicates with the nasopharynx via the auditory tube.

The middle ear or tympanic cavity is a mucous membrane-lined, air-filled space within the temporal bone that communicates with the mastoid air cells through a small opening, and with the nasopharynx via the cartilaginous auditory tube (Fig. 10-8). It is through the latter communication that atmospheric pressure is equalized on either side of the tympanum (see Fig. 4-20).

The rostral end of the tympanic cavity contains the bony ossicles. On the lateral wall, attached to the tympanicum by several ligaments, are the malleus and its muscle, the tensor tympani. The stapes and the stapedius muscle are attached by the ligaments to the medial wall, where the footplate of the stapes impinges on the fenestra vestibuli (oval window) of the cochlea. Interposed between the malleus and the stapes is the incus, which articulates with both. Vibrations received at the tympanic membrane set the malleus, incus, and stapes in motion because they are articulated together in series. The result is that the vibrations are amplified by about 20 times when the footplate of the stapes articulates with the membrane of the oval window. The tensor tympani muscle attached to the malleus and the stapedius muscle attached to the stapes modulate the vibrations and function as protective measures for the hearing mechanism. The tensor tympani muscle prevents large movement of the malleus during loud sounds that have set the tympanum into heavy vibration. The stapedius muscle prevents large movement of the stapes as it impinges upon the oval window (Table 10-4). Located inferior to the oval window is the fenestra cochleae (round window) covered by a membrane; this secondary tympanic membrane is where the hydraulic pressure within the membranous labyrinth is dissipated (Table 10-4).

**Vessels and Nerves**

**Summary Bite.** Branches of several arteries provide a rich blood supply to the middle ear. Venous drainage delivers blood to the petrosal sinus and the pterygoid plexus of veins. The tympanic plexus is formed by branches of cranial nerve IX and from sympathetic fibers; it serves the mucous membranes. Cranial nerve V innervates the tensor tympani muscle, whereas cranial nerve VII innervates the stapedius muscle.

Many vessels supply the structures of the middle ear. These vessels arise from several sources, which include tympanic branches from the maxillary, the
stylo-mastoid branch of the posterior auricular, and many small branches from the pharyngeal, middle meningial, and internal carotid arteries.

Venous drainage generally parallels the arteries to become tributaries of the superior petrosal sinus and the pterygoid plexus of veins.

The tympanic plexus of nerves, located in the middle ear, is derived from the glossopharyngeal nerve and sympathetic fibers to serve the mucous membranes. In addition, the cranial portion of the facial nerve enters the bony medial wall of the cavity on its way to the stylomastoid foramen, where it will exit the skull. While there, it gives off a motor branch to the stapedius and to the chorda tympani, which passes over the tympanic membrane and across the malleus to exit the cavity. The tensor tympani receives its motor innervation from a like-named branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

**Inner Ear**

**Summary Bite.** The inner ear, embedded within the petrous portion of the temporal bone, is composed of two separate functional, but interconnected, components. The vestibular system, composed of the vestibule and semicircular canals, functions in balance. The other component, the cochlea, functions in hearing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10-4 Bony Ossicles and Their Associations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ossicle</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malleus (Hammer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incus (Anvil)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stapes (Stirrup)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The inner ear, entirely embedded in the petrous temporal bone, lies medial to the middle ear. It consists of a bony and a membranous labyrinth. The bony labyrinth is composed of the vestibule, semicircular canals, and the cochlea, filled with fluid (perilymph). Suspended within the perilymph is the membranous labyrinth, containing its own endolymph (Fig. 10-8).

The vestibule, housing the oval window, occupies a central position in the bony labyrinth. Projecting from it, posteriorly and superiorly, are the three semicircular canals, arranged so that each canal and its dilated ampulla lies at right angles to the other two. Projecting anteriorly from the vestibule is the cochlea, a bony structure turned on itself two and one half times around a central core termed the modiolus, giving it the appearance of a snail's shell. Its lateral wall contains the round window.

The membranous labyrinth is composed of the semicircular ducts, the cochlear duct, and two sacs, the utricle and the saccule. The utricle occupies the vestibule and the saccule lies anteroinferior to it. The endolymph from the semicircular ducts is received in the utricle.

Endolymph from the cochlear duct is received into the saccule via the small ductus reuniens. A small endolymphatic duct ending in a blind pouch projects posteriorly and communicates with the saccule and utricle. The cochlear duct separates the cochlea into the scala vestibuli superiorly and the scala tympani inferiorly. These two scalae are in communication near the summit of the cochlea through a tiny pore called the helicotrema.

The cochlear duct, composed of a spiral membranous tube, houses the spiral organ of Corti in its basilar membrane. The spiral organ receives peripheral nerve endings from that portion of the vestibulocochlear nerve responsible for receiving sensations and transmitting them to the brain for processing into what we perceive as sounds.

Nerves

**Summary Bite.** The vestibulocochlear nerve (cranial nerve VIII) consists of two divisions: a vestibular division conveying impulses for balance, and a cochlear division conveying impulses for hearing.

Clinical Considerations

**Inner Ear Disorder**

Ménière’s Disease is an inner ear disorder affecting both the vestibular and cochlear mechanisms. It causes hearing loss, vertigo, dizziness, nausea, tinnitus, and vomiting. It is related to an excess of endolymphatic fluid in the cochlea. It is cyclic and, if left untreated, can result in permanently impaired hearing or complete hearing loss.

**Neural Hearing Loss**

Nerve deafness is the result of lesions within nerve transmission from the spiral organ of Corti to the brain, as in the case of the formation of a neuroma within the vestibulocochlear nerve. Although this is a benign condition and can be surgically eliminated, hearing may not be recovered.

Vestibulocochlear nerve destruction caused by certain drugs and other factors, including intense noise of high frequency for a prolonged period of time, may also lead to loss of hearing.
The vestibulocochlear nerve, in company with the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII), enters the internal auditory meatus of the temporal bone. Shortly thereafter, the facial nerve parts company from the vestibulocochlear nerve to enter the facial canal. Recall that it supplies the stapedius with motor fibers and that it gives rise to the chorda tympani. The remainder of the facial nerve will be discussed in later chapters. The vestibulocochlear nerve conveys impulses from the vestibular (balance) and auditory (hearing) mechanisms (Fig. 10-8).

The vestibulocochlear nerve consists of two separate sets of fibers: the vestibular nerve for balance, and the cochlear nerve for hearing. After entering the meatus as a single nerve, the two separate and enter the membranous labyrinth to terminate as special endings at their receptor sites. For additional information regarding anatomy and the function of the statoacoustic system, refer to anatomy textbooks.
Parotid Bed

Chapter Outline

Superficial Anatomy and Boundaries
Parotid Gland
  Clinical Considerations
  Relationships
  Clinical Considerations
  Vascular Supply

Lymphatics
Innervation
Clinical Considerations

Carotid Arteries
Facial Nerve
Clinical Considerations

Structures Deep to the Parotid Bed
  Muscles
  Ligaments
  Clinical Considerations
  Nerves and Arteries

Key Terms

The Facial Nerve (cranial nerve VII) passes from the stylomastoid foramen to enter the parotid gland. Several arteries and veins pass through the gland on their way to other regions of the head and neck. Also, several cranial nerves that emanate from the brain pass through the gland on their way to their targets. The facial nerve forms a loop inside the substance of the gland. Arising from this loop are the five terminal branches of the facial nerve (temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, and cervical branches) that leave the gland on the face to provide motor innervation to the muscles of facial expression.

Parotid Duct also known as the Stenson duct, exits the most anterior superficial portion of the gland to travel, just deep to the skin, over masseter muscle on the lateral aspect of the face. It then dives, at the anterior border of the masseter, into the buccal fat pad. The duct then pierces the buccinator muscle to enter the oral cavity at the parotid papilla located in the buccal vestibule opposite the second maxillary molar. Parotid salivary secretions are delivered into the oral cavity through the parotid papilla.

Parotid Gland is the largest of the three major salivary glands. It is enclosed in its own capsule which is a reflection of the deep fascia. Superficially, the parotid gland is located on the side of the face lying, in part, over the masseter muscle, anterior to the ear and superior to the zygomatic arch. It is irregular in shape and therefore is wedged in between the ramus of the mandible and the space posterior and medial to it; that space is called the parotid bed. Many fingerlike projections of the parotid gland fill this irregular space with glandular tissue. Thus, there are no definite descriptions as to the extent of the gland within the parotid bed.

Secretomotor Innervation to the Parotid Gland is provided by the parasympathetic component of the autonomic nervous system. The glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve IX) is the nerve of origin for the secretomotor innervation of the parotid gland. Remember that autonomic innervation is a two-neuron chain system with an preganglionic and postganglionic...
The space lying between the ramus of the mandible, external acoustic meatus, and mastoid and styloid processes of the temporal bone is known as the parotid bed (Fig. 11-1).

The medial extent of this bed is bordered by the posterior belly of the digastric muscle and the muscles attached to the styloid process. Inferiorly, the bed is bounded by the superoanterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. This somewhat irregularly-
shaped area houses the parotid gland, which is molded into this space, thus assisting in filling out the contour of the jaw/neck/ear junction.

Representatives of two cranial nerves—the facial nerve and trigeminal nerve—pass through the substance of the parotid gland to reach their destinations in and about the head and neck. Similarly, the external carotid artery and some of its branches course through the gland, as do some of the tributaries forming the external jugular vein.

**Summary Bite.** The parotid gland, the largest of the three major salivary glands, is encapsulated by portions of the deep cervical fascia. Part of the gland lies on the lateral surface of the masseter muscle, whereas most of it lies within the parotid bed with fingerlike projections between some muscle masses in the deep face.

The parotid gland is the largest of the three major salivary glands (parotid, submandibular, and sublingual glands) and is enclosed within a capsule that is part of the deep cervical fascia. It is located on the lateral aspect of the face and in the parotid bed (Figs. 11-1 and 11-2).

Because the gland is molded into an irregular space, it is also irregular in shape. The superficial aspect of the gland extends superiorly over the masseter muscle to the zygomatic arch, where an accessory portion of the gland may be detached from the main substance.

 Inferiorly, it is mostly confined to the region between the mastoid process, the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the angle of the mandible, where it extends over the posterior aspect of the masseter muscle.

Medially, the gland extends into the deeper portions of the parotid bed to the styloid process and its attached musculature. Here, a wedge-shaped portion of the gland may intervene between the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles for a short distance. Often, glandular lobes extend into other spaces adjacent to the parotid bed. One such lobe passes between the ramus of the mandible and the medial pterygoid muscle (above that muscle’s insertion), whereas other lobes pass between the external auditory meatus and the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) and between the external carotid artery and the superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx.

**Figure 11-2.** Structures of the parotid bed. Note that some of the parotid gland has been removed to expose structures passing through the gland.
Exiting the anterior aspect of the superficial portion of the gland is the parotid duct (Stenson duct), which passes anteriorly, superficial to the masseter muscle, to dive medially into the buccal fat pad; it pierces the buccinator muscle on its way to the oral vestibule. It delivers the parotid salivary secretions at the opening of the parotid papilla located opposite the second maxillary molar.

Relationships

Summary Bite. Many structures passing between the neck and the head, including arteries and veins as well as several cranial nerves emanating from the brain, pass through the parotid gland.

Because the parotid gland is irregular in shape, possessing many fingerlike projections radiating in several directions from the parotid bed, the gland associates with or engulfs many of the structures passing through this region (Fig. 11-2).

Structures associated with the superficial aspect of the gland include branches of the great auricular nerve originating from the cervical plexus that provide sensory innervation to the region, and small lymph nodes that drain the superficial area.

Structures associated with the deep aspect of the gland, provided it sends projections medial to the styloid process, include the external and internal carotid arteries, the internal jugular vein, and both the vagus and glossopharyngeal nerves.

Several structures pass through the gland. The external carotid artery enters the substance of the gland, and it is there that several of its branches arise, including the posterior auricular, maxillary, and superficial temporal arteries. The retromandibular vein, as well as the veins uniting to form it, also pass through the gland.

The facial nerve (cranial nerve VII), exits the stylomastoid foramen and enters the substance of the gland. While in the gland, the facial nerve forms a plexus before exiting the gland to innervate the muscles of facial expression.

The auriculotemporal nerve, a branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V), enters the substance of the gland from its deep aspect along the neck of the mandible and emerges from the gland just inferior to the root of the zygomatic arch. While within the gland, it communicates with the facial nerve and distributes fibers to the gland. The functions of these communications are considered in the next section and in the section in this chapter on the facial nerve.

Clinical Considerations

Sialography of the Parotid Duct

Occasionally, calculus accumulations occur in the parotid duct, thereby obstructing salivary flow. Radiologic examination on injecting radiopaque dye into the parotid duct opening (sialography) identifies the blocked region, and the obstruction may have to be relieved surgically.

Mumps

Mumps, a viral infection of the parotid gland that causes acute inflammation and profuse swelling of the gland, impinges on the auriculotemporal and great auricular nerves, causing much pain as the gland is pressured during mastication. Occasionally, it causes orchitis, pancreatitis, and encephalitis. Fortunately, this condition has been mostly eradicated as a result of vaccination.
The structures entering the parotid gland exit from its posterior, superior, inferior, and anterior surfaces (Figs. 11-2 and 11-3). The posterior auricular artery exits from the posterior aspect of the gland. The superficial temporal artery and vein, auriculotemporal nerve, and temporal branches of the facial nerve may be observed at the superior margin of the gland. Inferiorly, the retromandibular vein exits the parotid gland just before joining the posterior auricular vein to form the external jugular vein. Emanating from the entire facial margin of the gland are the terminal branches of the facial nerve, grouped into five major branches: the temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, and cervical branches (see Fig. 11-1).

**Vascular supply**

**Summary Bite.** The posterior auricular artery is the major vascular supply to the parotid gland.

The posterior auricular artery, arising from the external carotid artery within the substance of the parotid gland, exits from the posterior aspect of the gland. The superficial temporal artery and vein, auriculotemporal nerve, and terminal branches of the facial nerve may be observed at the superior margin of the gland. Inferiorly, the retromandibular vein exits the parotid gland just before joining the posterior auricular vein to form the external jugular vein. Emanating from the entire facial margin of the gland are the terminal branches of the facial nerve, grouped into five major branches: the temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, and cervical branches (see Fig. 11-1).

**Clinical Considerations**

**Parotid Gland**

Infections of the parotid gland may be confused with toothache as a result of trigeminal nerve involvement. An inflamed parotid papilla (the orifice of the parotid duct in the oral cavity) may be an indication that the problem may be caused by the parotid gland rather than by a tooth. Diseases of the parotid gland cause pain to be referred to the ear, the TMJ, and the external auditory meatus. This is due to the overlapping of sensory branches of various nerves serving the regions of the parotid bed, ear, and TMJ.
gland, provides branches that vascularize the gland. Additional small glandular branches arising from the superficial temporal and transverse facial arteries also supply the gland. Venous drainage is via the tributaries passing through the gland, and these vessels empty into the external jugular vein.

### Lymphatics

**Summary Bite.** Lymph nodes are located within the gland and drain into the cervical lymph nodes.

Lymph percolating through lymph nodes located superficially and within the substance of the gland is delivered into the **superficial** and **deep cervical lymph nodes**. A more detailed discussion of the lymphatic system of the head and neck is found in Chapter 20.

### Innervation

**Summary Bite.** General sensation to the parotid gland is provided by the great auricular nerve of the cervical plexus. Sympathetic innervation is supplied by the carotid plexus, whereas secretomotor innervation is supplied by the glossopharyngeal nerve and delivered to the gland by the auriculotemporal nerve.

The parotid gland receives sensory and autonomic innervation. General sensation is provided by branches of the **great auricular nerve**, from the cervical plexus, as it ramifies over the surface of the gland.

The sympathetic component of the autonomic nervous system reaches the gland via postganglionic sympathetic fibers derived from the carotid plexus; these fibers travel on the external carotid artery and its branches that course through the gland. Sympathetic innervation to the parotid gland mediates vasoconstriction to these vessels.

Parasympathetic innervation is distributed to the gland by the auriculotemporal nerve (a branch of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V)), even though these parasympathetic fibers do not arise within the trigeminal complex. Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers, from the glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve IX), pass from its tympanic branch via the lesser petrosal nerve to the otic ganglion, where they synapse on postganglionic cell bodies. Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers from here then join the auriculotemporal branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, to be distributed to the gland effecting secretomotor functions.

### CAROTID ARTERIES

**Summary Bite.** The internal carotid artery ascends in the neck deep to the parotid gland within the carotid sheath in company with the internal jugular vein and the vagus nerve. Several arteries arise from the external carotid artery and pass near or through the parotid gland.

The internal and external carotid arteries arise in the neck from a bifurcation of the common carotid artery at the level of the superior border of the thyroid cartilage (Fig. 11-3).

The internal carotid artery then ascends in the neck, providing no branches before it enters the carotid canal of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. In its ascent deep to the parotid gland, the digastric muscle, and the muscles attached to the styloid process, this artery is contained within the carotid sheath in company with the internal jugular vein and the vagus nerve (cranial nerve X).

The external carotid artery, in contrast, supplies many of the structures of the neck and face. Those branches supplying the neck are described in Chapter 7. Branches originating from the external carotid artery inferior to the parotid bed, such as the lingual and facial arteries, are discussed in appropriate chapters.

Several arteries either originate in or are in close association with the parotid bed and are best described at this point. These are the ascending pharyngeal,

---

**Clinical Considerations**

### Parotid Secretomotor Innervation

Although secretomotor innervation to the parotid gland is described as being provided from the glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve IX), some evidence suggests that the facial nerve may supply parasympathetic innervation to the parotid gland in addition to that from the glossopharyngeal nerve. This subject is discussed in more detail in Chapter 18.
occipital, posterior auricular, maxillary, and superficial temporal arteries.

The ascending pharyngeal artery arises from the external carotid artery near its origin and ascends between the pharynx and the internal carotid artery. Through its several named branches, it supplies some of the prevertebral muscles, a portion of the tympanic cavity, and portions of the soft palate. Pharyngeal branches arise to supply the stylopharyngeus and the pharyngeal constrictor muscles before the ascending pharyngeal artery terminates as two or more meningeal branches that enter the jugular foramen to ascend into the cranium.

The occipital artery originates from the posterior aspect of the external carotid artery just before the external carotid diverges to the posterior belly of the digastric muscle. The occipital artery courses under the cover of the digastic and stylohyoid muscles (Fig. 11-3), supplying both muscular branches, as it passes posteriorly to groove the mastoid process of the temporal bone. This artery supplies the sternocleidomastoid muscle, auricle, posterior neck musculature, and meninges through its named branches, whereas the terminal branches serve the scalp and its musculature.

The internal and external carotid arteries become separated from their close association in the parotid bed as they pass deep and superficial, respectively, to the styloid process. The superficial position places the external carotid within the substance of the gland and, while there, the posterior auricular artery arises, as do the two terminal arteries of the external carotid, the maxillary and superficial temporal (Fig. 11-3).

The posterior auricular artery arises near the apex of the styloid process and, passing through the parotid gland that it supplies, sends branches to the digastic, stylohyoid, and sternocleidomastoid muscles (Fig. 11-2). Named branches include the stylo mastoid artery, which enters the like-named foramen to supply the tympanic cavity; the auricular artery, passing to the posterior aspect of the ear; and the occipital artery, which supplies the scalp and occipitalis muscle.

The maxillary artery arises from the external carotid artery as it nears the deep aspect of the neck of the mandible (Fig. 11-3); while within the gland, branches named the deep auricular and anterior tympanic pass posteriorly to the ear and tympanic cavity. The artery then passes anteriorly between the rami of the mandible and the sphenomandibular ligament, where it exits the substance of the gland to enter the deep face. Its branches and distribution are presented in Chapter 12.

The smaller, terminal superficial temporal artery exits the parotid gland to become superficial as it crosses the zygomatic arch posterior to the mandible, in company with the auriculotemporal nerve (Figs. 11-2 and 11-3). While within the parotid gland, the artery sends unnamed branches to the gland, the TMJ, and the masseter muscle.

The transverse facial artery also originates within the parotid gland and exits that structure between the zygomatic arch and the parotid duct (Fig. 11-2). Its distribution is discussed in Chapter 8.

Other named branches arising from the superficial temporal artery include the middle temporal; zygomatico-orbital; anterior auricular; and terminal, frontal, and parietal branches. These branches freely anastomose with other arteries distributing to these same areas.

### FACIAL NERVE

Summary Bite. The facial nerve exits the cranial vault via the stylomastoid foramen. It then enters the parotid gland where it forms a loop from which arise the five terminal nerves that provide motor innervation to the muscles of facial expression.

The facial nerve is treated in detail in Chapter 18; however, because the nerve is in intimate association with the parotid bed and gland, its relationship and distribution to the structures in this area are discussed here (Figs. 11-1 and 11-2; for more detail see Tables 18-1 and 18-2).

The facial nerve, cranial nerve VII, exits from the cranial cavity at the stylomastoid foramen located in the temporal bone just posterior to the styloid process. On exiting, it communicates with the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves and with the great auricular nerve of the cervical plexus.

The auriculotemporal nerve from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve communicates with the facial nerve after it has entered the substance of the parotid gland. Presumably, this communication provides general sensory fibers from the trigeminal nerve to the facial nerve for distribution to the face. Branches arising from the facial nerve as it passes through this area include the posterior auricular, digastic, stylohyoid, and parotid plexus with its terminals.

The posterior auricular nerve arises near the stylomastoid foramen and ascends behind the ear. This branch supplies motor innervation to the auricular and occipital muscles. The digastic and stylohyoid branches provide motor innervation to the like-named muscles as each branch arises near that muscle.
Chapter 11
Parotid Bed

Clinical Considerations
Parotid Tumors

Tumors of the parotid gland may be excised, but extreme care must be exercised during surgery because any damage to the facial nerve will result in at least partial facial paralysis. Total destruction of the facial nerve results in complete facial paralysis (Bell palsy).

On entering the substance of the parotid gland, the facial nerve terminates into two communicating branches, often forming a loop within the gland (Fig. 11-1). The superior of these is the temporofacial branch, whereas the cervicofacial branch is the inferior portion of the nerve.

Arising from this parotid plexus are the five major nerve branches emanating from the facial aspect of the parotid gland, ramifying over the superficial face as the temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, and cervical branches serving the muscles of facial expression with motor innervation. The specific distribution of these branches is described in Chapter 8.

The masseter muscle, which is attached to the lateral aspect of the ramus of the mandible, is in intimate association with the parotid gland (Figs. 11-1 and 11-2). However, because it is one of the muscles of mastication, a discussion of it is deferred to Chapter 12.

The digastric muscle, it will be recalled, serves to form the boundaries of several of the subtriangles in the anterior triangle of the neck. It is composed of two separate bellies united by an intermediate tendon at the hyoid bone, and also assists in forming the medial boundary of the parotid bed. Its posterior belly, the only portion associated with the parotid bed (Figs. 11-2 and 11-3), arises from the mastoid notch on the temporal bone and passes anteroinferiorly to the hyoid bone. It is about this bone that the intermediate tendon unites the two bellies, as the tendon perforates the stylohyoid muscle near its insertion on the hyoid bone.

The posterior belly of the digastric muscle is innervated by a branch of the facial nerve that enters its deep surface at about midbelly. With its anterior component, the posterior belly functions to fix the hyoid bone. Specifically, the posterior belly pulls the hyoid bone posteriorly. A more thorough discussion of both bellies is presented in Chapter 15 on the submandibular region.

The stylohyoid muscle, another muscle forming the medial boundary of the parotid bed, arises from the posterior and lateral aspects of the styloid process of the temporal bone. The origin of this muscle places it anterior to the posterior belly of the digastric (Fig. 11-3). The two muscles are rather closely associated because the stylohyoid also passes anteroinferiorly to insert on the body of the hyoid bone. The muscle is perforated, as described previously, by the digastric tendon.

The stylohyoid muscle is innervated by a branch of the facial nerve, which passes very close by, on its way to the parotid gland. This muscle, not unlike the posterior belly of the digastric, assists in fixing the hyoid bone by pulling it posteriorly and superiorly.

Two other muscles arise from the styloid process in addition to the stylohyoid muscle: the styloglossus and stylopharyngeus muscles. Although a more complete discussion of these two muscles is presented in subsequent chapters, a brief discussion is warranted here.

The styloglossus muscle arises from the styloid process and inserts into the side of the tongue. This
muscle is innervated by the hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII) and functions to draw the tongue superiorly and posteriorly.

The *stylopharyngeus muscle* arises from the styloid process and inserts into the lateral wall of the pharynx between the superior and medial pharyngeal constrictor muscles. The glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve IX) innervates this muscle, which functions to elevate the pharynx and larynx.

**Nerves and Arteries**

*Summary Bite.* Deep to the styloid process are the glossopharyngeal, accessory, and hypoglossal nerves. However, the vagus nerve is within the carotid sheath along with the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein.

Immediately deep to the muscles originating on the styloid process are the last four cranial nerves, the internal carotid artery, and the internal jugular vein (Figs. 11-2 and 11-3).

The glossopharyngeal, vagus, and accessory nerves exit the skull through the jugular foramen, whereas the hypoglossal nerve exits the skull via the hypoglossal canal. As these nerves descend to the structures they innervate, they may be observed passing on the lateral surface of the internal carotid artery and internal jugular vein housed, along with the vagus nerve, in the carotid sheath.

Within the carotid sheath, the laterally placed internal jugular vein, originating at the jugular foramen, descends to enter the subclavian vein at the root of the neck. The internal carotid artery ascends within the sheath to enter the carotid canal in the petrous portion of the temporal bone, whereas the vagus nerve descends through the neck on its way to the thorax and abdomen.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Stylohyoid Ligament**

Occasionally, the stylohyoid ligament becomes cartilaginous and/or ossifies and thus appears as a radiopaque structure in a panographic radiograph. Apparently, this condition has no pathologic consequence.

**Ligaments**

*Summary Bite.* The stylohyoid ligament, formed by a thickened portion of the parotid fascia, helps to separate the parotid and submandibular glands.

Associated with the stylohyoid muscle and the styloid process is a ligamentous band, the *stylohyoid ligament*, suspended between the tip of the styloid process and the lesser cornu of the hyoid bone. This ligament, formed by a thickening of the deep parotid fascia, assists in separating the parotid and submandibular glands, as does the similarly formed stylomandibular ligament, described as an accessory ligament to the temporomandibular joint (see Chapter 13).
Deep Face

Descriptions and Boundaries
- Temporal Fossa
- Infratemporal Fossa

Muscles and Fascia
- Muscles of Mastication
- Fascia

Vascular Supply
- Maxillary Artery
- Pterygoid Plexus and Maxillary Vein

Innervation
- Trigeminal Nerve

Mastication

Deep Face is that portion of the side of the head located deep to the mandible and zygomatic arch. It contains the origins and insertions of three of the four muscles of mastication.

Depressor of the Jaw is the lateral pterygoid muscle, the muscle of mastication that functions in initiating opening of the jaw.

Elevators of the Jaw are the muscles of mastication, including the masseter, temporalis, and medial pterygoid muscles that function primarily in closing the jaw.

Infratemporal Fossa is the region inferior and deep to the zygomatic arch and the mandible. It contains the origins and insertions of the muscles of mastication except the masseter. Its contents include branches of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V), the maxillary artery and its branches, and the pterygoid plexus of veins.

Mandibular Division of the Trigeminal Nerve is the portion of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V) that supplies motor innervation to the muscles of mastication and sensory innervation to the TMJ and the side of the head. Additional branches of the mandibular division that arise in the infratemporal fossa are bound for other regions and will be discussed with those regions.

Maxillary Artery and its branches serve the structures located within the temporal and infratemporal fossae, including all of the muscles of mastication. Additionally, the maxillary artery serves the external acoustic meatus, tympanum, and TMJ. Other branches of the maxillary artery arise within the deep face but are bound for other anatomical regions and will be discussed with those regions.

Muscles of Mastication are a set of four bilateral muscles whose function is to move the mandible about the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) as it functions in phonation, chewing (masticating), and swallowing. All of these muscles except the masseter muscle originate from either the temporal or infratemporal fossae, and all
The region to be described in this chapter is considered the deep face. It encompasses the structures deep to the mandible, including three of the muscles of mastication. The fourth muscle of mastication, the masseter muscle, lies superficial to the mandible, but it is described here for the sake of continuity. Additionally, a newly discovered muscle of the deep face will also be discussed. The normal functioning of this muscle group, a part of the stomatognathic system, is essential for good oral health.

A thorough understanding of this region of anatomy is of paramount importance to the healthcare professional if that person is to comprehend the complexities of the stomatognathic system in normal and pathologic functions. It is imperative that a person diagnosing and treating inadequate anesthesia, malocclusion, the maladies of pain, and the spread of infection in and about the oral cavity “know her or his anatomy.”

Located within the deep face are sensory branches of the maxillary and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve which transmit sensory innervation from the teeth and associated structures of the upper and lower jaws, respectively. In addition, the mandibular division provides sensory innervation to the temporomandibular joint, another component of the stomatognathic system.

The motor root of the trigeminal nerve unites with the mandibular division just outside the skull for distribution to the muscles of mastication and the few additional muscles developed within the first pharyngeal arch mesoderm. The vascular supply to this region similarly serves some of the oral cavity and teeth, in addition to supplying the temporomandibular joint, some parts of the ear, and the muscles of mastication.
Figure 12-1. Temporal fossa.

Figure 12-2. Infratemporal fossa.
mandible, whereas its medial extent is the lateral pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone.

Superiorly, the fossa is limited by the infratemporal surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid bone and the very anteroinferior-most portion of the temporal squama. The bony ridge extending across these two bones, known as the infratemporal crest, delineates the superior-most extent of the roof of the fossa. Inferiorly, the infratemporal fossa has no boundary but extends into the neck lateral to the pharynx.

**Communications**

The infratemporal fossa communicates with the temporal fossa as the temporalis muscle descends from its origin in the temporal fossa to be inserted onto the coronoid process of the mandible (Table 12-1).

Nerves and vessels supplying the temporalis muscle pass from the infratemporal fossa to the temporal fossa to pierce the deep surface of this muscle.

Two foramina open onto its roof on the medial aspect of the infratemporal region of the greater wing of the sphenoid. The larger of the two, the foramen ovale, transmits the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve exiting from the cranial vault and the accessory meningeal artery proceeding to the cranium.

The smaller foramen, the foramen spinosum, lies between the foramen ovale and the spine of the sphenoid. It transmits the middle meningeal artery and the recurrent meningeal nerve from the fossa into the cranium.

The fossa communicates with the orbit at its most superoanterior aspect via the inferior orbital fissure between the maxilla and the greater wing of the sphenoid. Through this fissure pass the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve, on its way to the floor of the orbit, as well as the zygomatic branch which arises from it.

The cleft between the maxilla and the lateral pterygoid plate is the pterygomaxillary fissure communicating with the pterygopalatine fossa, medially. It is through this fissure that the maxillary artery distributes to the fossa, eventually to reach the nasal cavity via the sphenopalatine foramen.

The posterior superior alveolar nerve, arising from the maxillary nerve as the latter nerve traverses the pterygopalatine fossa, utilizes the pterygomaxillary fissure as an exit on its way to the tuberosity of the maxilla.

**Muscles and Fascia**

**Muscles of Mastication**

The muscles of mastication (Table 12-2), all of which are developed in first pharyngeal arch mesoderm, are located within the confines of the deep face, with the exception of the masseter muscle previously described as lateral to the mandible.

These muscles, excepting the masseter, originate on the deep bony aspect of the temporal and infratemporal fossae.

---

**Table 12-1 Boundaries, Communications, and Contents of the Infratemporal Fossa**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Boundary</th>
<th>Communications</th>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior</td>
<td>Infratemporal surface of greater wing of sphenoid and infratemporal crest plus small part of temporal</td>
<td>Cranial cavity via foramen ovale, foramen spinosum; temporal fossa</td>
<td>Temporalis muscle (inferior portion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medial pterygoid muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lateral pterygoid muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maxillary artery and branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pterygoid plexus of veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chorda tympani nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Otic ganglion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mandibular nerve and branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Posterosuperior alveolar nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior</td>
<td>Continuous with submandibular region</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial</td>
<td>Lateral pterygoid plate of sphenoid</td>
<td>Pterygopalatine fossa via pterygomaxillary fissure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral</td>
<td>Ramus and coronoid process of mandible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td>Posterior aspect of maxilla to the inferior orbital fissure</td>
<td>Orbit via inferior orbital fissure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td>Continuous with structures about the styloid process</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
poral fossae and insert upon the medial aspect of the mandible. The masseter, in contrast, originates on the zygomatic arch and inserts upon the lateral aspect of the mandible (Fig. 12-2).

This group of muscles (the temporalis, medial pterygoid, lateral pterygoid, and masseter) are covered by their epimysia, which become the fascia encircling the masticator compartment. The masticator compartment contains the four muscles of mastication and the ramus of the mandible (Fig. 12-3).

Fascia

Summary Bite. The fascia covering the muscles of mastication and the parotid gland are all divisions of the deep fascia. This fascia completely surrounds the muscles of mastication and encircles the ramus of the mandible. It splits to cover the pterygoid muscles, joins again, and then attaches to the stylomandibular ligament, assisting in the formation of the sphenomandibular ligament.

The temporal fascia spans from the superior temporal line over the temporalis muscle to attach to the zygomatic arch and encircles the ramus of the mandible. It splits to cover the pterygoid muscles, joins again, and then attaches to the stylomandibular ligament, assisting in the formation of the sphenomandibular ligament.

The parotidomasseteric fascia, attached cranially to the zygomatic arch, splits to encompass the parotid gland as it passes on the lateral surface of the masseter muscle to become continuous with the deep cervical fascia about the suprathyroid muscles.

The masseteric fascia covers the masseter muscle and encircles the ramus of the mandible, inferiorly, where it becomes continuous with the pterygoid fascia (Fig. 12-3).

Both the lateral and medial pterygoid muscles are enclosed by the pterygoid fascia. However, the fascia is much thicker covering the inferior aspect of the medial pterygoid muscle, where it becomes continuous with the cervical and masseteric fascia as well as with the stylomandibular ligament.

As the pterygoid fascia reflects over the superior portion of the medial pterygoid muscle, it splits to encompass the lateral pterygoid muscle as well and is attached to the bony origin of that muscle and to the spine of the sphenoid bone. The latter attachment is much thickened, forming the sphenomandibular ligament from the spine of the sphenoid bone to the lingula of the mandible (Fig. 13-3). The thickened portion of the pterygoid fascia, located between the two pterygoid muscles spanning between the spine of the sphenoid and the lateral pterygoid plate, is known as the pterygospinous ligament. Occasionally this ligament is ossified. When that is the case, a pterygospinous foramen is present between the ligament and the skull for the transmission of branches of the mandibular nerve to the muscles. This fascia possesses an interval, near the neck of the mandible, for the passage of the maxillary vessels to the infratemporal fossa. Lying between the temporalis and over much of the surface of the pterygoid muscles is the venous pterygoid plexus, connecting many of the venous tributaries both inside and outside the cranial cavity, face, deep face, orbit, and nasal cavity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 12-2 Muscles of Mastication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Muscle</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Masseter                        | Superficial: tendinous aponeurosis from zygomatic process of maxilla and anterior two-thirds of inferior border of zygomatic arch  
Deep: medial aspect and inferior border of posterior one-third of zygomatic arch | Lateral aspect of ramus and angle of mandible as far anteriorly as the last molar tooth, as far superiorly as base of coronoid process |
| Temporalis                      | Inferior temporal line and bones of the temporal fossa | As a tendon on coronoid process and anterior border of ramus of mandible as far inferiorly and anteriorly as third molar |
| Medial (internal) pterygoid      | Pterygoid fossa and medial surface of lateral pterygoid plate; one slip from lateral portion of pyramidal process of palate bone and adjacent maxillary tuberosity | Medial surface of mandibular ramus as far superiorly as the sphenomandibular ligament, inferiorly to mylohyoid groove |
| Lateral (external) pterygoid     | Superior head: greater wing of sphenoid and infratemporal crest  
Inferior head: lateral surface of lateral pterygoid plate | Superior head: articular capsule of temporo-mandibular joint—the disk and the superior portion of mandibular neck  
Inferior head: anterior surface of mandibular neck |
### Temporalis Muscle

**Summary Bite.** The temporalis, a muscle of mastication, originates in the temporal fossa and inserts onto the coronoid process of the mandible.

The temporalis muscle is a fan-shaped muscle originating on the bones of the broad temporal fossa (Figs. 12-3 and 12-4). Specifically, the site of origin extends inferiorly from the inferior temporal line over the entire temporal fossa, including parts of the parietal and most of the squama of the temporal bones, and the greater wing of the sphenoid, including its infratemporal crest and the temporal surface of the frontal bone. Occasionally, some fibers arise from the posterior temporal surface of the frontal process of the zygoma. The muscle bundles converge to insert as a tendon on the coronoid process of the mandible and down along its anterior surface and the anterior border of the ramus as far anteriorly as the third molar (Figs. 12-2, 12-3, and 12-4, and Table 12-2). The anterior fibers of this muscle are directed in a vertical plane from origin to insertion, the middle fibers in an oblique plane, and the posterior fibers in an almost horizontal plane.

The muscle is primarily an elevator of the mandible; however, because of the directional alignments of the muscle fibers, the posterior and middle portions of the muscle are reported to act also in retracting the mandible.

The temporalis muscle is innervated by anterior and posterior deep temporal nerves from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. The nerves enter the muscle from its deep aspect in the temporal fossa. Vascularization is supplied to the temporalis muscle via branches of the superficial temporal and maxillary arteries. Arising from the former is the middle temporal artery, which enters the muscle on its superficial aspect. Anterior and posterior deep temporal arteries, arising from the maxillary artery, accompany the like-named nerves and enter the deep aspect of the muscle, where they anastomose with the middle temporal artery.

### Masseter Muscle

**Summary Bite.** The masseter, the only muscle of mastication located outside the deep face, originates from the zygomatic arch and inserts upon the angle and ramus of the mandible.

The shape of the posterior region of the jaw is due to the quadrangular form of the masseter muscle overlying the angle and ramus of the mandible (Figs. 12-1, 12-3, and Table 12-2). The masseter muscle, as previously described, is the only muscle of mastication that lies outside the anatomical confines of the deep face, since it originates on the zygomatic arch and inserts into the lateral surface of the mandible.

This muscle possesses, from its origin, a superficial portion and a smaller, deep portion. The superficial portion arises, via a tendinous aponeurosis, from
The deep fascia about the mandible splits, forming two laminae around its inferior border. As a consequence, the muscles of mastication (the temporalis, masseter, and medial and lateral pterygoid muscles) are thus enclosed into a compartment termed the masticator space (see Fig. 12-3). The two laminae fuse again at the superior border of temporalis muscle where it originates from the skull. In addition to containing the muscles of mastication, this large space also contains the maxillary artery and many of its branches; the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve and many of its branches; and much of the buccal fat pad. The masticator space also communicates with many other spaces within the head and neck which may contribute to the spread of infections and or neoplasms from the oral cavity. Salivary gland tumors, abscesses, hemangiomas, and metastatic extensions of squamous cell carcinoma (especially from the floor of the mouth, tonsilar fossa, and nasopharynx) can extend into the masticator space. Persons suspected of having masticator space infections are very ill and need immediate medical attention.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Masticator Space Infection**

The deep fascia about the mandible splits, forming two laminae around its inferior border. As a consequence, the muscles of mastication (the temporalis, masseter, and medial and lateral pterygoid muscles) are thus enclosed into a compartment termed the masticator space (see Fig. 12-3). The two laminae fuse again at the superior border of temporalis muscle where it originates from the skull. In addition to containing the muscles of mastication, this large space also contains the maxillary artery and many of its branches; the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve and many of its branches; and much of the buccal fat pad. The masticator space also communicates with many other spaces within the head and neck which may contribute to the spread of infections and or neoplasms from the oral cavity. Salivary gland tumors, abscesses, hemangiomas, and metastatic extensions of squamous cell carcinoma (especially from the floor of the mouth, tonsilar fossa, and nasopharynx) can extend into the masticator space. Persons suspected of having masticator space infections are very ill and need immediate medical attention.

Figure 12-3. Muscles of mastication and their fascia.
Some fibers derived from the deeper portion insert as far superiorly as the base of the coronoid process. It is in this region that fibers of the temporalis muscle, arising from the inner surface of the zygomatic arch, may be fused with those of the deep portion of the masseter; in such cases it is termed the zygomaticomandibularis muscle.

The masseter muscle functions as a powerful elevator of the jaw. The superficial fibers act to direct a powerful force on the molars, whereas the deep fibers, more vertically directed, effect a retractive force, especially in closing the jaws.

The muscle is innervated by the masseteric nerve derived from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. This motor nerve enters the muscle on its deep aspect adjacent to the mandibular notch, through which it gains access from its origin in the deep face.

Vascular supply to the muscle is provided by the masseteric branch of the maxillary artery. The artery and vein accompany the nerve in its path to the muscle.

Medial Pterygoid Muscle

Summary Bite. The medial pterygoid, the deepest-located muscle of mastication, inserts on the inner aspect of the ramus and angle of the mandible, mirroring the insertions of the masseter.

The medial (internal) pterygoid muscle, originating in the deepest aspect of the deep face, inserts onto the medial aspect of the ramus and angle of the mandible. Thus, it is anatomically and functionally a counterpart to the masseter muscle (Figs. 12-2, 12-3, 12-5 through 12-8, and Table 12-2).

The specific sites of origin are the pyramidal process of the palatine bone in the pterygoid fossa and the medial surface of the lateral pterygoid plate. This area of origin is broad in that it extends to the tensor veli palatini muscle.

An additional anterior muscular slip arises from the lateral portion of the pyramidal process and the adjacent region of the maxillary tuberosity. Although the main mass of the muscle lies deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle, the additional anterior slip lies superficial to that muscle.

The medial pterygoid muscle is directed inferiorty, posteriorly, and laterally to be inserted onto the medial surface of the ramus of the mandible. The insertion site lies between the mandibular angle, the mylohyoid groove, and the mandibular foramen.

The sphenomandibular ligament marks the superiormost extent of the insertion. Occasionally, a tendinous inscription denotes the meeting of the fibers of the masseter and medial pterygoid muscles at the inferior border of the angle of the mandible. This arrangement is referred to as the pterygomasseteric sling.

The medial pterygoid muscle functions primarily as an elevator of the mandible. Its fibers are directed in an oblique fashion; however, the force is more pronounced in a vertical direction. The insertions of the masseter and medial pterygoid muscles—suspending the angle of the mandible between them—form the mandibular sling, about which these muscles act synergistically, utilizing the temporo-mandibular joint (TMJ) as a guide.
The medial pterygoid muscle receives its motor innervation from a like-named nerve branching from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve and entering the deep surface of the muscle. The muscle is vascularized by a branch of the maxillary artery.

Lateral Pterygoid Muscle

**Summary Bite.** The lateral pterygoid muscle possesses two heads of origin which converge to insert on the neck of the mandible and various structures of the TMJ.

The lateral (external) pterygoid muscle is a short muscle, filling the remainder of the infratemporal fossa and covering much of the medial pterygoid muscle. This muscle possesses two heads of origin. The smaller, superior head originates from the infratemporal region of the greater wing of the sphenoid bone as far laterally as the infratemporal crest. The larger, inferior head originates from the lateral surface of the lateral pterygoid plate (Figs. 12-2, 12-3, 12-5 through 12-8, and Table 12-2).

The fibers of the superior head course posteriorly and laterally in an almost horizontal direction from the infratemporal crest. Fibers of the inferior head are...
Figure 12-7. Deep face. A portion of the zygomatic arch and ramus of the mandible have been cut away to reveal the deep structures. Note the maxillary artery diving beneath the lateral pterygoid muscle.
Figure 12-8. Arteries and nerves of the deep face. The lateral pterygoid muscle has been removed to reveal many branches of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.
directed posteriorly, laterally, and slightly superiorly on their way to the mandible.

Though the two heads of origin are separated from each other, their fibers converge as they approach the site of insertion on and about the mandible. The superior head inserts into the articular capsule of the TMJ, the anterior border of the articular disc, and the superior part of the mandibular neck. The inferior head inserts along the anterior surface of the mandibular neck. Recent evidence indicates that the two heads remain separated even at the insertion site, perform different functions, and may be separately innervated.

The lateral pterygoid muscle is described classically as the “jaw opener,” which protrudes the mandible and moves the mandible from side to side when functioning unilaterally.

Recent evidence supports the concept that the lateral pterygoid muscle is in fact two separate muscles, with a superior and an inferior head. The superior head, attached to the articular capsule and disc, is reported to function in stabilizing the mandibular condyle, whereas the inferior head is reported to function in pulling the mandible and disc forward and down, effecting jaw opening.

The lateral pterygoid muscle is innervated by a branch entering its deep surface from either the anterior division separately or as a branch of the buccal nerve from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. Vascular supply is provided by a branch from the maxillary artery as it passes either superficial or deep to the muscle. Prolongations of the buccal fat pad fill in the spaces between the muscles of mastication deep to the mandible.

The TMJs are bilateral in that they are formed by the heads of the condyles of the mandible as each articulates with the bilateral temporal bones of the skull at the articular eminence of their zygomatic processes. Interposed between these articulating surfaces is a connective tissue disc that is reinforced by muscle attachment, ligaments, and a strong capsule. The forces that act upon this joint, resulting in opening and closing the mouth as well as side-by-side motions for chewing, are produced by the bilateral muscles of mastication.

The origins and insertion sites of these muscles on the mandible dictate the joint function. Generally, the functions are for opening or closing the jaw; however, subtle variations exist when muscles are acting antagonistically or synergistically with other muscles on one side or the other or on both sides (see Chapter 13).

**Sphenomandibularis**

Recently an additional muscle, the sphenomandibularis, was discovered in the deep face. Previously this muscle was described to be a part of the temporalis muscle; however, careful dissections have demonstrated it to be a separate entity. The sphenomandibularis muscle originates from the infratemporal surface of the greater wing of the sphenoid and has a tendinous insertion onto the temporal crest of the mandible. The vascular supply of this muscle is derived from small branches of the maxillary artery, in common with vessels destined for the medial pterygoid muscle. Its nerve supply has not as yet been determined.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Temporomandibular Disorder**

There are instances when the TMJ malfunctions, a term referred to as temporomandibular disorder (TMD). The symptoms are many and include (but are not restricted to) the following: tender, sore jaw muscles (muscles of mastication); pain at opening or closing the jaw; inability to open or close the jaw; pain upon clenching; unusual headaches; clicking or grinding noise when chewing or yawning; and crunching sounds when chewing.

The causes of TMD are not always clear but may include bruxing, grinding the teeth when asleep, clenching during periods of stress, injury to the face and/or jaw, fractured mandible, whiplash, rheumatoid arthritis, unequal jaw growth, malocclusion, missing teeth, poor-fitting dentures, and periodontal disease. Any one or combination of these events may produce acute TMD that, if left to progress to a chronic state, may be difficult to manage and may eventually cause the addition of psychological factors to the problem. Persons experiencing TMD symptoms should consult a dentist or a TMD specialist.
VASCULAR SUPPLY

Summary Bite. Structures of the deep face receive their vascular supply from branches of the maxillary artery.

The vascular supply to the entire region of the deep face is provided by branches of the maxillary artery along with a small contribution from the middle temporal artery to the superior surface of the temporalis muscle.

Maxillary Artery

Summary Bite. The maxillary artery, a terminal of the external carotid artery, courses deep to the mandible and passes through the parotid gland. The artery is described as consisting of three portions and terminates as several branches within the pterygopalatine fossa.

The maxillary artery (Table 12-3), the larger of two terminals of the external carotid artery, arises from that artery deep to the neck of the mandible embedded within the substance of the parotid gland.

The artery immediately turns anteriorly, passing between the mandibular ramus and the sphenomandibular ligament on its way to the pterygopalatine fossa, where it subsequently divides into terminal branches (Fig. 12-9). Along its course to that fossa, it provides branches to the ear, TMJ, meninges, muscles of mastication, teeth and supporting structures of the mandible, buccinator muscle, cheek, and mucous membrane of the mouth.

Terminals, branching from the artery while it is within the pterygopalatine fossa, serve the teeth and supporting tissues of the maxilla, the nasal cavity, and the palate. The major terminal enters the floor of the orbit as the infraorbital artery, which eventually exits upon the face.

The following discussion is confined mostly to descriptions of the artery and its branches supplying the structures of the deep face.Excluding a few exceptions, the terminal branches have been or will be detailed in the appropriate chapters.

The maxillary artery is described as consisting of three segments as it courses through the mandibular, pterygoid, and pterygopalatine regions.

Mandibular Portion

Summary Bite. The mandibular portion of the maxillary artery (located deep to the mandible) sends branches to the meninges, to the mandibular teeth, mylohyoid muscle, and supporting tissues, and to the lower lips as well as to the chin to anastomose with branches from other sources.

The mandibular portion runs behind the mandible between the ramus and the sphenomandibular ligament. Branches arising from this portion include the deep auricular and anterior tympanic arteries (described in Chapter 21).

Arising also from this portion are the middle and accessory meningeal arteries. Both of these arteries ascend to enter the skull via the foramen spinosum and foramen ovale, respectively. The distribution of these arteries is described in Chapter 9. Another artery arising from this portion of the maxillary artery is the inferior alveolar artery, which gives rise to the mylohyoid artery just before entering the mandibular foramen. The mylohyoid artery courses along the mylohyoid groove to the mylohyoid muscle, which it supplies. Within the mandibular canal, the inferior alveolar artery supplies the bone, teeth, and adjacent supporting structures as far anteriorly as the first premolar tooth, where it divides into an incisive branch and a mental branch. The incisive branch continues on to vascularize the anterior teeth and supporting structures. The mental branch exists the mandible through the mental foramen onto the face to anastomose with the inferior labial and submental arteries vascularizing the area of the chin.

Occasionally, a lingual artery may arise from the inferior alveolar artery near its origin from the mandibular portion of the maxillary artery. When present, this artery will descend to assist in vascularizing the mucous membrane of the mouth.

Pterygoid Portion

Summary Bite. The pterygoid portion of the maxillary artery vascularizes the muscles of mastication and the buccinator muscle.

Branches arising from the pterygoid segment of the maxillary artery are responsible for vascularizing the muscles of mastication and the buccinator muscle.

The course of this portion of the artery is not constant, since it may pass either superficial or deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle (see Figs. 12-7 and 12-8).

The masseteric artery, arising from this portion of the maxillary artery, passes through the mandibular notch to enter the masseter muscle.

The anterior and posterior deep temporal arteries accompany the like-named nerves to enter the deep surface of the temporalis muscle, anastomosing with the middle temporal branch of the superficial temporal artery.
Mandibular Originates deep within parotid gland, coursing behind the mandibular ramus near the condylar process superficial to the sphenomandibular ligament. Supplies the TMJ, wall of external auditory meatus, and tympanic membrane.

Anterior Enters tympanic cavity to supply tympanic membrane and associated structures. Enters mandibular foramen. Bifurcates into incisive branch supplying mandibular teeth and supporting tissues, and mental branch that exits mandible at the mental foramen to supply chin. The branch arising from the artery just prior to entering the mandibular foramen is the mylohyoid artery, which will supply the mylohyoid muscle.

Middle and accessory meningeal arteries arise separately or by a common trunk. The middle meningeal artery enters the skull through the foramen spinosum. The accessory meningeal artery enters through foramen ovale. These serve the meninges.

Pterygoid May course either superficial or deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle on way to the pterygopalatine fossa.

Anterior and posterior deep temporal arteries pass anteriorly and posteriorly as they ascend deep to the temporalis muscle, which they supply.

Pterygoid arteries Short branches that provide vascular supplies to the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles. This artery accompanies the same-named nerve through the mandibular notch to supply the masseter muscle.

Buccal artery Accompanies the buccal nerve, passing in close association with the temporalis tendon on its way to arborize on the buccinator muscle, providing a vascular supply to it and associated buccal mucosa of the mouth.

Infraorbital artery Is the continuation of the maxillary artery, although it may arise in common with the PSA (posterior superior alveolar artery). Enters the floor of the orbit through the infraorbital fissure, then leaves the orbit via the infraorbital canal to exit onto the face at the infraorbital foramen. While in the floor of the orbit, it gives orbital branches serving the inferior oblique muscle and the lacrimal gland. Anterior superior alveolar branches supply the maxillary sinus, canine and incisor teeth, and their associated gingiva. Upon exiting the infraorbital foramen, it supplies branches to some of the regional facial muscles and palpebrae as well as the nasal area and upper lip.

Table 12-3 Maxillary Artery

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Portion</th>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Branches</th>
<th>Distribution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mandibular Portion</td>
<td>Originates deep within parotid gland, coursing behind the mandibular</td>
<td>Deep auricular artery</td>
<td>Supplies the TMJ, wall of external auditory meatus, and tympanic membrane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First Part</td>
<td>ramus near the condylar process superficial to the sphenomandibular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ligament.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td>Enters tympanic cavity to supply tympanic membrane and associated structures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td>Enters mandibular foramen. Bifurcates into incisive branch supplying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td>mandibular teeth and supporting tissues, and mental branch that exits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td>mandible at the mental foramen to supply chin. The branch arising from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td>the artery just prior to entering the mandibular foramen is the mylohyoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td>artery, which will supply the mylohyoid muscle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pterygoid Portion</td>
<td>May course either superficial or deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle</td>
<td>Deep temporal arteries</td>
<td>Anterior and posterior deep temporal arteries pass anteriorly and posteriorly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Part</td>
<td>on way to its way to the pterygopalatine fossa.</td>
<td></td>
<td>as they ascend deep to the temporalis muscle, which they supply.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pterygoid arteries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Masseteric artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Buccal artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pterygopalatine</td>
<td>Courses into the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary</td>
<td>Posterior superior alveolar artery</td>
<td>Branches from the third part as it enters the pterygomaxillary fissure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portion</td>
<td>fissure.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Travels along the maxillary tuberosity to enter the posterior superior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>alveolar foramen. Serves the maxillary sinus, molar and premolar teeth, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>adjacent gingiva. Is the continuation of the maxillary artery, although it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>may arise in common with the PSA (posterior superior alveolar artery).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Enters the floor of the orbit through the infraorbital fissure, then leaves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the orbit via the infraorbital canal to exit onto the face at the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>infraorbital foramen. While in the floor of the orbit, it gives orbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>branches serving the inferior oblique muscle and the lacrimal gland.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior superior alveolar branches supply the maxillary sinus, canine and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>incisor teeth, and their associated gingiva. Upon exiting the infraorbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>foramen, it supplies branches to some of the regional facial muscles and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>palpebrae as well as the nasal area and upper lip.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Short pterygoid arteries arise from this portion to vascularize the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles as well as the sphenomandibularis muscle.

The buccal artery accompanies the buccal nerve as it passes to and enters the buccinator muscle. Although the buccal nerve does not innervate this muscle, the buccal artery vascularizes it, as well as the adjacent skin and mucous membrane of the mouth. This artery anastomoses with the facial and infraorbital arteries.

Pterygopalatine Portion

Summary Bite. The pterygopalatine portion of the maxillary artery enters the pterygopalatine fossa and terminates in several branches that supply the maxillary molar and premolar teeth, supporting tissues, and the maxillary sinus.

This portion of the maxillary artery enters the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure. As the vessel enters the fossa to terminate into several arteries, the posterior superior alveolar artery arises from it and descends over the maxillary tuberosity to enter the posterior superior alveolar foramen with the like-named nerve. This artery vascularizes the molar and premolar teeth, adjacent supporting tissues, and the maxillary sinus.

The remaining arteries of this portion will be described in Chapters 14 and 16.

Pterygoid Plexus and Maxillary Vein

Summary Bite. The pterygoid venous plexus lying on the surfaces of pterygoid muscles and within spaces of the deep face receives tributaries from a number of sources, including all of the venous branches that accompany the named branches of the maxillary artery.

The pterygoid plexus of veins is a massive network of venous channels lying on and about the surfaces of the lateral and medial pterygoid muscles and extending into the spaces of the deep face within the infratemporal fossa (Fig. 12-10). The plexus receives venous tributaries from vessels corresponding to the named arteries branching from the maxillary artery. This plexus is in direct or indirect communication with a vast area, including the cranial cavity and cavernous sinus, the nasal cavity, orbit, paranasal sinuses, facial vein, deep facial veins, and angular veins.

The maxillary vein is the short venous trunk that accompanies the maxillary artery as it lies behind the mandible. This vein serves to connect the pterygoid venous plexus with the superficial temporal vein, thus forming the retromandibular vein.
Clinical Considerations

Anesthesia

Improper administration of anesthesia for a maxillary molar tooth may cause the needle to puncture the pterygoid venous plexus, resulting in a hematoma with noticeable swelling. The needle tract may permit the spread of a possibly fatal infection to the cavernous sinus.
INNERVATION

Summary Bite. Most of the sensory innervation and all of the motor innervation to the structures of the deep face are supplied by branches of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

Trigeminal Nerve

Summary Bite. The trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V) has three divisions: ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular. Most of the structures of the deep face are supplied by branches of the mandibular division, with only a small contribution from the maxillary division.

Mandibular Division

Summary Bite. The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve is the only division that contains both sensory and motor components. The two unite outside the foramen ovale to form the trunk of the mandibular nerve.

The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve exits the cranium via the foramen ovale. Motor and sensory roots pass individually through the foramen before uniting into a trunk within the infratemporal fossa.

The trunk is very short and it divides into two major divisions. The anterior division is mostly motor with some sensory branches, whereas the posterior division is mainly sensory with some motor branches.

Two branches arise from the trunk: the meningeal branch and the medial pterygoid nerve.

- The **meningeal branch** reenters the cranial cavity through the foramen spinosum in company with the middle meningeal artery. Within the cranial cavity, it provides sensory innervation to the dura mater.
- The **medial pterygoid nerve** arises from the medial aspect of the trunk, passing through the adjacent otic ganglion on its way to the medial pterygoid muscle. Two small branches arise from the medial pterygoid nerve close to its origin and are named:
  - The **nerve to the tensor tympani** and the **nerve to the tensor veli palatini**. The former passes to the auditory tube and on to the same-named muscle in the middle ear cavity. The latter nerve...
enters the tensor veli palatini muscle near its origin.

**Anterior Division**

**Summary Bite.** The anterior division of the mandibular nerve (mostly motor) innervates all of the muscles of mastication except the medial pterygoid muscle. It also contains sensory nerves to the skin and mucous membranes of the cheek.

The **anterior division of the mandibular nerve** provides motor innervation to all the remaining muscles of mastication (with the possible exception of the sphenomandibularis muscle). This division also contains a sensory component for the skin and mucous membrane of the cheek. Arising from this division are the masseteric, deep temporal, lateral pterygoid, and buccal nerves.

- The **masseteric nerve** passes superior to the lateral pterygoid muscle and then laterally to the mandibular notch, sending a twig to the TMJ before gaining access to the deep portions of the masseter muscle.
- The **deep temporal nerves**, usually an anterior and posterior (sometimes an intermediate also), ascend between the two heads of the lateral pterygoid muscle to enter the deep surface of the temporalis muscle. Occasionally, these nerves may arise from either the masseteric or buccal nerves.
- The **lateral pterygoid nerve** enters the deep surface of the muscle lying over it.
- The **buccal nerve** passes between the two heads of the lateral pterygoid muscle and then continues anteriorly beyond the border of the masseter muscle as it forms a plexus on the surface of the buccinator muscle. Here it freely communicates with the facial nerve, sending sensory branches with the facial nerve to supply the skin over the cheek. The nerve then pierces the muscle to provide sensory innervation to the mucous membrane of the cheek and adjacent gingiva.

**Posterior Division**

**Summary Bite.** The posterior division of the mandibular nerve possesses only one motor nerve, which serves the mylohyoid muscle and anterior belly of the digastric muscle. Sensory components serve the meninges, the TMJ, mandibular teeth and supporting tissues, skin of the temple region, ear and tympanic membrane, and anterior two thirds of the tongue. It also communicates with the facial and glossopharyngeal nerves.

The **posterior division of the mandibular nerve** is mostly sensory, possessing but one motor nerve—the mylohyoid nerve that supplies innervation to the mylohyoid muscle and the anterior belly of the digastric muscle. Arising from this division are the auriculotemporal, lingual, and inferior alveolar nerves.

- The **auriculotemporal nerve** arises from the posterior division of the mandibular nerve, usually as two roots that join after encircling the middle meningeal artery just before that artery enters the foramen spinosum. The auriculotemporal nerve then courses deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle as it passes posteriorly deep to the parotid gland. The nerve then surfaces between the auricula and the temporomandibular joint below the zygomatic arch. It subsequently passes superficial to the zygomatic arch, along with the superficial temporal artery, to be distributed to the side of the head. Near its origin, the auriculotemporal nerve receives communications from the otic ganglion. These are postganglionic parasympathetic fibers to be distributed to the parotid gland via the auriculotemporal nerve (see Table 18-2). As the nerve passes through the gland, these fibers will leave it to provide secretomotor innervation to the gland. The preganglionic fibers are a part of the glossopharyngeal nerve and reach the otic ganglion via the lesser petrosal nerve.
- The auriculotemporal nerve communicates also with the facial nerve within the substance of the parotid gland. These sensory fibers are communicated to the facial nerve for further distribution over the face. As the auriculotemporal nerve passes by the ear and the TMJ, it provides the anterior auricular branches to the skin of the anterior portion of the ear and the external acoustic meatus and articular branches to the joint. Superior to the zygomatic arch, the nerve branches into superficial temporal nerves which distribute to the skin of the side of the head.
- The **lingual nerve** arises deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle and descends to pass superficially over the medial pterygoid muscle as it courses anteriorly to enter the submandibular region. The lingual nerve is joined by the chorda tympani nerve while it is under the cover of the lateral pterygoid muscle. The chorda tympani nerve, a branch of the facial nerve, makes its appearance in the deep face at the spine of the sphenoid. The nerve carries special sensory fibers for taste and preganglionic parasympathetic fibers destined for the submandibular ganglion (see Table 18-2).
- The lingual nerve provides general sensation to the anterior two thirds of the tongue, adjacent areas of the mouth, and the lingual gingiva. Special sensory taste fibers from the chorda tympani are distributed to the anterior two thirds of the tongue by the lingual nerve. Preganglionic
parasympathetic fibers leave the nerve at the submandibular ganglion, where they synapse on postganglionic parasympathetic cell bodies whose secretomotor fibers are distributed to the submandibular, sublingual, and minor salivary glands in the floor of the mouth. Details of the pathway followed by the lingual nerve are outlined more precisely in Chapter 15.

The inferior alveolar nerve originates deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle and lateral to the lingual nerve. This nerve passes between the sphenomandibular ligament and the ramus of the mandible to enter the mandibular foramen. Inside the mandibular canal, the nerve distributes to the mandibular teeth, supporting structures, and gingiva.

A branch of the inferior alveolar nerve, the mental nerve, emerges from the mental foramen to provide sensory innervation to the skin of the chin and lower lip. Incisive branches continue anteriorly in the mandibular canal to innervate the canine and incisor teeth, supporting structures, and gingiva. Just before the inferior alveolar nerve enters the mandibular foramen, it gives off the mylohyoid nerve, the only motor component of the posterior division. This motor nerve courses along the groove for the mylohyoid nerve before it enters the mylohyoid muscle. Upon crossing its superficial surface, the nerve also provides motor innervation to the anterior belly of the digastric muscle.

Maxillary Division

Summary Bite. The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve may be observed in the deep face as it passes through the pterygopalatine fossa. Here a small branch leaves the nerve and courses along the maxillary tuberosity to provide sensory innervation to the mucous membranes of the cheek. A division of this branch enters the posterior superior alveolar foramen to supply the maxillary sinus, gingiva, supporting tissues, and the three molar.

A small contribution from the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve is observed in the deep face. As the maxillary nerve passes through the pterygopalatine fossa, a small branch arises from it and passes laterally into the deep face via the pterygomaxillary fissure.

This posterior superior alveolar nerve descends over the maxillary tuberosity to enter the posterior superior alveolar foramen; some twigs continue on to innervate the gingiva and mucous membranes of the cheek.

Those fibers entering the foramen distribute to the maxillary sinus, teeth, supporting structures, and gingiva as far anteriorly as the first molar, where a dental plexus is formed with the middle and anterior superior alveolar nerves, innervating the remaining maxillary sinus, teeth, supporting structures, and gingiva.

Mastication

Summary Bite. The process of ingesting, biting, chewing, and swallowing is a complex process which begins consciously and then blends into a learned, automatic rhythmic activity involving neurological control of the muscles of mastication along with several groups of accessory muscles. Complex neural circuitry, including input from specialized sensory mechanisms within the periodontal ligaments, acts to prevent destruction of the masticatory apparatus.

Although it is not within the scope of this text to detail the precise timing and coordination of events in

Clinical Considerations

Injury to the Mandibular Nerve

The mandibular nerve division of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V) may be injured due to a number of different events, including trauma to the side of the head or face; fracture of the mandible; fracture of the facial bones; tumors; and meningeal infections. Symptoms of injury may include paralysis of the muscles of mastication on the injured side causing a deviation of the mandible to the opposite side; loss of sensation on the lower face, skin of the temple, chin and lower lip, buccal mucosa, and gingiva of the affected side; and loss of sensation on the anterior two thirds of the tongue and the mandibular teeth on the affected side. The intensity of the symptoms is related to the type and severity of the injury.
the process of mastication, a generalized description is warranted. The reader wishing more detail is referred to the Selected References at the end of this book.

The complex process of mastication involves many muscle groups besides the group commonly known as the “muscles of mastication.” The process is initiated consciously; however, the total movements and the rhythmic activity are controlled by complex neural circuitry within the central nervous system. The exact process varies with the individual but, once the pattern is established, it remains fairly constant for that particular person. This is not to imply that the process is static; indeed it is continually altered, since changes within the stomatognathic system are constant and dynamic throughout life.

The process begins with ingestion or the cutting of food by the anterior teeth and continues as the food is maneuvered by the muscles within the cheek and the tongue to position the food between the premolars and molars of the upper and lower arches. The muscles of mastication (masseter, temporalis, medial pterygoid) then act to elevate the mandible, move it from side to side (elevators of contralateral side and ipsilateral medial pterygoid), depress it (lateral pterygoid, digastric, mylohyoid, and geniohyoid), protrude it (external pterygoid), and retract it (part of temporalis), effecting a grinding action in a coordinated pattern. More information regarding the muscles involved in the exact movement patterns may be found in Chapter 13 on the TMJ.

The forces applied to the bolus of food are carefully monitored by special receptors (proprioception) located within the periodontal ligaments and the muscles themselves, preventing the possible self-destruction of the stomatognathic system.

The process of mastication prepares the food for deglutition by reducing the ingested bolus to less than two centimeters in diameter. Chewing also serves to bring the food in contact with saliva in the mouth and stimulates the secretion of digestive juices within the digestive system.
Temporomandibular Joint (TMJ) is the jaw joint composed of the condylar heads of the mandible and the articular eminence of the temporal bones. The right and left halves of the mandible are mirror images of each other and, because of this arrangement, the right and left heads of the mandible articulate with the right and left temporal bones, respectively. Therefore, the TMJ is considered to be a bilateral joint. Interposed between the articulating surfaces of these two bones is an articular disc contoured to fit over the head of the condyle and into the concavity of the mandibular fossa. The TMJ is operated by four bilateral muscles of mastication assisted by accessory muscles that manipulate the lower jaw in mastication, swallowing, and phonation.

Temporomandibular Joint (TMJ) Articular Coverings include the joint capsule, lateral ligaments, and accessory ligaments on the medial aspect of the joint. The TMJ is entirely enclosed by the joint capsule attached to the temporal bone, and it continues inferiorly where it is attached to the mandibular neck. The articular disc is attached to the capsule on its medial and lateral surfaces, causing the capsular space to be divided into superior and inferior synovial compartments. Obliquely oriented ligaments reinforce the capsule. The lateral ligament or temporomandibular ligament restricts mediolateral movement. The sphenomandibular ligament, located on the medial aspect of the TMJ, has been suggested to limit lateral mandibular movement. The other medial ligament, the stylomandibular ligament (a specialization of the deep cervical fascia) may assist in limiting the protrusion of the mandible.
The **temporomandibular joint (TMJ)** is the site of articulation between the mandible and the skull, specifically the area about the **articular eminence of the temporal bone**. This bilateral joint functions to open and close the jaws and to approximate the teeth of the opposing arches during mastication. The articulation consists of parts of the mandible and temporal bones, which are covered by dense, fibrous connective tissue and are surrounded by several ligaments.

Interposed between the two bones is a fibrous articular disc, compartmentalizing the joint into two separate synovial-lined cavities. Several pairs of muscles attached to the mandible produce the movements necessary to suckle, ingest, and masticate food; swallow; yawn; and produce speech.

Interrelationships of the stomatognathic system in occlusion, neuromuscular function, and temporomandibular articulation are of paramount importance to the dental professional because treatment of any component affects the functioning of this entire system.

## Joint Anatomy

### Summary Bite

The anatomy of the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) concerns the articular eminence of the temporal bone and the condylar heads of the mandible.

The anatomy of the TMJ structure is depicted in Fig. 13-1A–C, illustrating the relationship between the mandible and the temporal bone as they form the TMJ.

### Mandible

**Summary Bite.** The mandible is the only freely moving bone of the skull. It possesses two condylar processes whose condyle articulates with a disc that is pressed against the articular eminence of the temporal bone.

The mandible possesses two articular surfaces, a condyle (head) located on the superior extremity of each of the bilateral condylar processes. Each condyle articulates with a disc that is interposed between it and the temporal bone (Figs. 13-1A–C and 13-2B).

The condyles, which are characteristically "football-shaped," measure about 20 mm through the long mediolateral axis and 10 mm through the anteroposterior axis. The condyles are directed at an oblique angle to each other and to the frontal plane so that if the planes of the long axes were continued they would meet at the foramen magnum. The long axis is also at right angles to the ramus of the mandible. Anteriorly, the condyle is strongly convex, whereas posteriorly, the convexity is reduced to

---

**Figure 13-1.** Sagittal views of the temporomandibular joint (TMJ). *(A)* Anatomy of the temporomandibular articulation. *(B)* Anatomy of the joint with the mouth closed. *(C)* Anatomy of the joint with the mouth open.
Temporal Bone

Summary Bite. The temporal bone forms the side of the head above the ear, a portion of the zygomatic arch, and the mastoid process.

The site of TMJ articulation on the temporal bone is on the inferior surface of the zygomatic process (Fig. 13-1A). The specific location is situated on the posterior slope of the articular eminence. The term “articular eminence,” as it applies here, replaced the term “articular tubercle” by those specializing in the study of the temporomandibular articulation. Although the new term has not as yet been adopted universally by anatomists, it will be used in this text because it is the term most often used in the literature regarding the TMJ.

The articular eminence is defined as the strongly convex bony elevation on the root of the zygomatic process representing the anterior-most boundary of the articular or mandibular fossa (also referred to as the glenoid fossa). The articular tubercle is the bony “knob” on the lateral aspect of the articular eminence, where the fibrous capsule and the temporomandibular ligament attach.

It would appear in the dried skull that, lying immediately anterior to the external auditory meatus, the mandibular condyle articulates within the mandibular fossa between the bony articular eminence and the postglenoid process. However, close observation of the mandibular (glenoid) fossa reveals a rather thin bony roof separating it from the middle cranial fossa. This fact, coupled with the knowledge of the biconcave anatomy of the disc, simply does not support the conclusion that the roof of the mandibular fossa can function as the stress-bearing articulation. Indeed, radiographic evidence indicates that the TMJ articulation occurs against the slope of the articular eminence.

Articular Disc

Summary Bite. The articular disc is a dense, fibrous connective tissue contoured to fit between the articular head of the condyle and the articular eminence of the temporal bone.

The articular disc is a compact, dense, and fibrous connective tissue plate that is oval and contoured to fit between the mandibular condyle and the articular eminence of the temporal bone (Figs. 13-1A–C and 13-2B).

The inferior surface of the disc is concavely contoured to fit the convex condyle of the mandible. Superiorly, its surface is concavoconvex. The convex portion conforms to the concave mandibular fossa posteriorly, whereas anteriorly, the disc becomes

medial and lateral slopes. This resembles (from a lateral view) the profile of an anteriorly tilted clenched fist. It is important to remember, however, that individual variations do exist in the shape, form, and size of the mandibular condyle—variations that may be caused by any one or a combination of factors, including heredity and functional adaptation.
The disc is thickest at its periphery and thinnest at the stress-bearing area of the joint. Peripherally, the disc becomes less dense as it merges into the surrounding capsule.

Posteriorly, the disc is attached to a highly vascular connective tissue known as the retrodiscal tissue. Occasionally, the disc (especially of older individuals) becomes perforated at its center, where it is thinnest.

**Articular Coverings**

**Summary Bite.** The articular surfaces of temporal bone and mandibular condyle are covered by a dense, collagenous connective tissue overlying proliferative cells of hyaline cartilage. In adults, the hyaline cartilage is replaced with fibrocartilage covered by a layer of proliferative cells.

The coverings of the articular surfaces of the condyle and the slope of the articular eminence are composed of dense, collagenous connective tissue overlying a thin proliferative layer of cells associated with the underlying hyaline cartilage.

It is reported that the hyaline cartilage of the condyle is present while the individual is still growing, until about 20 years of age, whereas the cartilage covering the articular eminence has a shorter life span. At the termination of growth, this cartilage layer is replaced by compact bone.

In the adult, the compact bone of the condyle is covered by a layer of fibrocartilage that, in turn, is covered by a thin layer of proliferative tissue. Cells of the proliferative layer may become activated to function in remodeling of the joint as a result of changes in function, wear, and tooth movement. Superficial to the proliferative layer is a relatively thick layer of dense, irregular collagenous connective tissue whose deeper layers house fibroblasts.

Although the articular structures are avascular, they are bathed in synovial fluid, which provides lubrication and nourishment for the cellular coverings.

Peripheral regions of the disc are very vascular, whereas the central, stress-bearing portion is devoid of blood vessels.

**Capsule**

**Summary Bite.** A dense, irregular collagenous connective tissue capsule encloses the articulating surfaces of the TMJ. The capsule is attached to the temporal bone and the neck of the mandible. The position of the disc within the capsule forms a superior compartment above the disc and an inferior compartment below the disc. Each compartment is lined with synovial membrane.

The TMJ capsule, composed of dense, irregular collagenous connective tissue, encloses the entire articulating region of the temporal bone, disc, and mandibular condyle, sealing the joint space (Figs. 13-2A,B and 13-3).

Superiorly, the capsule is attached to the temporal bone about the circumference of the mandibular fossa and, anteriorly, around the articular eminence. Inferiorly, the capsule is attached to the mandibular neck. The placement of the disc between the two articulating bones and its peripheral attachments to the walls of the capsule causes the capsule space to be divided into separate compartments.

The larger, superior compartment between the disc and temporal bone (Figs. 13-1A and 13-2B) permits some freedom of movement between the disc and articular eminence.

Anteriorly, the capsule and disc are tightly fused, permitting the insertion of some fibers of the lateral pterygoid muscle into the disc. Medially and laterally, the capsule and disc are attached to the condyle margins, thus necessitating associated simultaneous movement of the condyle and disc.

The inferior compartment encloses the entire neck of the mandible and is more firmly attached to the disc. This attachment prohibits excessive movement between the disc and condyle.

**Innervation and Vascularization**

**Summary Bite.** The joint and joint capsule are heavily endowed with sensory nerves derived from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V).

The joint capsule is richly endowed with sensory endings from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, most of which are supplied from articular branches of the auriculotemporal nerve (see Fig. 12-8). Additional articular branches supplying the joint are derived from the masseteric branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. Vascular supply to the joint is provided by branches of the superficial temporal and maxillary arteries as they approximate the joint.

**Ligaments**

**Summary Bite.** The temporomandibular joint is reinforced by collateral ligaments on the medial and lateral aspects. The temporomandibular ligament is the large obliquely oriented lateral ligament reinforcing the joint. Two accessory ligaments reinforce the medial aspect of the joint.
Two collateral ligaments (discal ligaments) serve to anchor the medial and lateral borders of the articular disc to the poles of the condyle. Reinforcements of the joint capsule along its lateral margin by obliquely oriented bundles of collagenous fibers are responsible for naming this pronounced lateral portion of the capsule, the lateral ligament or temporomandibular ligament (Fig. 13-2A,B).

The temporomandibular ligament possesses two separate bands of fibers, whose directions are oblique to each other. The superficial layer, which is more extensive, arises as a broad band from the lateral surface of the articular eminence at the articular tubercle. The ligament narrows as it passes obliquely inferior and posterior to be inserted on the posterolateral aspect of the mandibular neck just inferior to the lateral pole of the condyle.

The smaller, medially situated portion of the lateral ligament arises from the crest of the eminence to pass almost horizontally to insert into the lateral aspect of the condyle. The lateral ligaments permit free movement in the anteroinferior plane but check mediolateral movements of the joint.

The superficial portion of the temporomandibular ligament prevents lateral movement, whereas the deeper horizontal portion prevents posterior displacement of the condyle.

A similar arrangement does not exist on the medial side of the condyle with the capsular ligament. This difference can be understood by recognizing that the bilateral TMJs are connected through the mandible and, therefore, the articulations function as a single unit rather than independently.

Two additional ligaments are considered accessory to the temporomandibular articulation (Fig. 13-3). The sphenomandibular ligament, a remnant of the Meckel cartilage, is a flat band that spans the space between the spine of the sphenoid bone and the lingula at the mandibular foramen. The stylomandibular ligament, the other accessory ligament, is a specialization of the deep cervical fascia. This ligament extends as a thin band from the apex of the styloid process of the temporal bone to the posterior border of the angle and ramus of the mandible.

Although the precise functions of these two accessory ligaments are not fully understood as they relate to the temporomandibular articulation, it has been suggested that the sphenomandibular ligament assists in limiting lateral mandibular movement, whereas the stylomandibular ligament apparently assists in limiting the anterior extent of protrusion of the mandible.
Chapter 13  Temporomandibular Joint

Summary Bite. The anatomy of the TMJ dictates that there are only two possible movements of this joint, namely, ginglymus (hinge) movement and arthrodial (gliding) movement.

The joint just described is composed essentially of two convex structures opposed to each other, with an intermediate articular disc placed between them. Considering the anatomy of the disc, it becomes clear that movement within the TMJ is basically of two types:

- **Ginglymus (hinge)** movement is possible between the condyles of the mandible and the inferior surface of the disc. The other movement possible within the joint is an arthrodial (gliding) motion. This becomes possible as the superior surface of the articular disc slides down at the articular eminence. Therefore, the TMJ is considered a ginglymoarthrodial joint.

- The mandibular/disc movement is rotatory, and that of the disc/temporal bone is translatory. Functionally, movements of the joint are translated as mandibular locations away from the resting position, such as opening, closing, protrusion, retrusion, and lateral rotation.

The **resting position** is defined as having the patient's head in the anatomic position (in an upright posture). This places the masticatory musculature at rest, permitting a small free-way space to exist between the teeth of the upper and lower jaws but having the upper and lower lips touching. It is in this attitude that the mandibular condyles are positioned so that the anterosuperior articulating surfaces are opposite the posterior slopes of the articular eminence of the temporal bone, with the disc between the two bones.

- **Opening the jaws** involves the translatory (gliding) movement of the disc and condyle down the slope of the articular eminence coupled with rotatory (hinge) movement of the mandibular condyles against the disc.

The translatory phase effects a slight anteroinferior movement as the mandibular condyle slides down the eminence.

The hinge action phase (condyles rotating) produces a center of suspension in the ramus. Thus, the posterior portion of the angle of the mandible moves slightly posterior, and the mandibular body moves inferiorly to open the jaw. The lateral pterygoid muscles initiate the action, followed by the digastric, geniohyoid, and mylohyoid muscles depressing the mandible. This assumes that the hyoid bone has been fixed by the infrahyoid musculature.

The lateral pterygoid muscles are always in a state of tonus and are able to stabilize the condyle against gravity, thus maintaining the free-way space for long periods of time without tiring. However, falling asleep while sitting in an upright position relaxes this muscle tone, and the mandible opens in response to gravity.

- **Closing the jaws** is more involved. First, the mandible is protruded as the condyles and disc slide down and forward on the articular eminence. This is followed by fixing the condyles and elevating the mandible, coupled with depression/retraction.

  The lateral pterygoid muscles, assisted by the medial pterygoid muscles, protrude the mandible, whereas the masseter and temporalis muscles elevate it. Retrusion is performed by the deep portion of the masseter and some fibers of the temporalis muscles.

- **Mandibular protrusion**, or jutting the mandible forward, is accomplished by contracting the lateral pterygoids, which causes the disc and condyles to slide forward and down the articular eminence.

- **Mandibular retraction**, in contrast, returns the mandible to a position posterior to the resting position. This action is accomplished by portions of the temporalis muscles.

- **Mandibular lateral rotation** (i.e., a lateral rotatory motion on one side) is accomplished by the condyle and disc of the opposite side sliding inferiorly and anteriorly on the articular eminence while moving medially.

  The result of this active process effects a passive lateral rotation on the opposite side. The lateral pterygoid muscle of the side opposite the lateral rotation effects the movement.

It must be pointed out that the entire masticatory and accessory musculatures are involved in producing any one or combinations of these movements. Space limitations do not permit an extensive discussion of the muscles involved in the entire masticatory process.

Generally, the information presented here is in agreement with published research regarding muscle function for specific and separate actions of the TMJ. The process of ingesting and masticating food is an intricate one, involving the entire stomatognathic complex under the control of the voluntary and involuntary nervous system.
Alterations in any one or a combination of the functioning components of the stomatognathic system (i.e., teeth, periodontal ligament, TMJ, or muscles of mastication) eventually result in TMJ dysfunction syndrome. These dysfunctions are clinically referred to as TMD, the term now used to describe a number of clinical manifestations in the masticatory system involving muscles and the joint (or both) and involving pain of nondental origin. Although the term is not ideal, it is considered to be a subclassification of musculoskeletal disease. Changes in the free-way dimensions (usually 2 to 4 mm) of the rest position imposed by occlusal changes, disease, muscle spasms, nervous tension, restorative prostheses, and so on may develop into temporomandibular disorders.

Crepitus
Crepitus (clicking) is one of the most common complaints of patients with TMD and, for the most part, it is believed to evolve from a delay in the anterior disc movements on opening and/or closing the mouth. Unless the condition worsens or becomes socially irritating, it is usually left untreated.

Dislocation of the TMJ
Dislocation of the mandible from its articulation with the temporal bone may occur in an anterior direction only as the condyles slide down unchecked along the slope of the articular eminence to pass anteriorly into the infratemporal fossa. When this occurs, the jaw remains open and the person is unable to close it. This condition may result from a side blow to the chin, a fractured mandible, or spasm of the lateral pterygoid muscles causing an excessive contraction, as in taking an exceptionally large bite of food or from deep yawning (Fig. 13-4).

Intense blows to the chin (e.g., from a fall) may fracture the neck of the mandible. When this happens, great care must be taken during the surgical procedure to prevent damage to the facial nerve and the auriculotemporal nerve, both being in close association with the joint. Failure to protect the facial nerve may lead to a drooping face on the damaged side with loss of facial muscle tone (Bell palsy). Damage to the auriculotemporal nerve, particularly its articular branches, may lead to instability of the TMJ.

Arthritis of the TMJ
Temporomandibular disorders, especially those that are chronic, may give rise to arthritic changes in the joint and create lasting inflammation of the TMJ. These arthritic changes may eventually lead to crepitus and may affect occlusion.

Clinical Considerations

Temporomandibular Disorders (TMD)

Figure 13-4. Temporomandibular joint scans. (A) Magnetic resonance image of a sagittal section through a normal closed temporomandibular joint. (B) Magnetic resonance image of a coronal section through a normal temporomandibular joint.
Table 13-1 Muscles Acting on the Temporomandibular Joint

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Muscle</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Muscles of mastication</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. masseter</td>
<td>+ A, M, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. temporalis</td>
<td>+ A, M, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial pterygoid</td>
<td>+ M, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral pterygoid</td>
<td>+ M, P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Suprahyoid muscles</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. digastric</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. mylohyoid</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. geniohyoid</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. stylohyoid</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ = major activity; ✓ = minor activity; A = anterior; M = middle; P = posterior

The stylohyoid, although not connected to the mandible, assists in fixing the hyoid bone.

It should be clear from this brief description that the double TMJ is not controlled by one or a pair of muscles at any one time. Rather, the actions of all of the muscles affecting movement are synchronized and these muscles function in unison as prime movers, synergists, antagonists, fixers, sling balancers, and so on. Considerable disagreement exists concerning the actions of certain muscles in producing the various movements at the temporomandibular articulation. The major difficulties in resolving this dilemma arise from the duality of the joint, its interrelated multiple movements, its complex movements from particular points in space, and associated organs and musculatures in and about the oral apparatus.

A table of muscular activity affecting TMJ function is presented in this chapter. This table is grossly oversimplified and attempts to present merely a synopsis of muscle function in a general manner (Table 13-1). The reader seeking more information on the subject of the TMJ is referred to material cited in the Selected Readings at the end of this book.
Maxillary Nerve is a purely sensory division of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V). It leaves the cranial fossa to enter the pterygopalatine fossa. Its continuation enters the floor of the orbit and exits the orbit via the infraorbital foramen onto the face and side of the nose. Along its route, its branches provide sensory fibers to the face, paranasal sinuses, tonsil, palate, maxillary teeth and supporting tissues, nasopharynx, and auditory tube. Additionally, the maxillary nerve delivers secretomotor fibers derived from the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) from the pterygopalatine ganglion to the lacrimal gland and mucosal glands of the nasal fossa, palate, and pharynx.

Paranasal Sinuses are hollow cavities within the maxillae, frontal, ethmoid, and sphenoid bones. These sinuses, lined with respiratory mucosa, are in communication with the nasal fossa via small ostia. The function of the paranasal sinuses is not clear. The mucus produced within the sinuses drains, via the ostia, into the nasal cavity. However, during nasal congestion, the ostia may be closed so that the sinus(es) may be filled and unable to drain, thus increasing pressure that may be related to sinusitis, sinus headache, and sinus infection.

The maxillary sinus is the largest sinus and, because of the location of its ostium (high on the medial wall), it is difficult to drain and is frequently a source of sinusitis and congestion. Also, the roots of the molar teeth bulge into the floor of the sinus and may create problems for dental treatment.

Pterygopalatine Fossa is that pyramid-shaped space surrounded by the sphenoid, maxilla, and palatine bones. Housed within this space are the terminals of the maxillary nerve and the pterygopalatine ganglion.
maxillary artery, the maxillary division (V₂) of the trigeminal nerve, and the pterygopalatine ganglion (a parasympathetic ganglion of the facial nerve). Branches of these structures and their communications serve the region about the nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, the maxilla, palate, dentition and supporting structures of the maxillary arch, and parts of the face and cheek.

**Pterygopalatine Ganglion** is housed in the pterygopalatine fossa. It is a parasympathetic ganglion of the autonomic nervous system. Preganglionic parasympathetic nerve fibers originating in the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) synapse in the ganglion with postganglionic cell bodies whose secretomotor fibers join the maxillary division (V₂) of the trigeminal nerve and its branches to distribute to the lacrimal gland, and mucosal glands of the nasal fossa, palate, and pharynx.

---

**Chapter 14** Pterygopalatine Fossa, Nasal Cavity, and Paranasal Sinuses

### Pterygopalatine Fossa

**Summary Bite.** The pterygopalatine fossa is a small, open space where the maxilla, sphenoid, and palatine bones approximate each other. It is a place where nerves, ganglia, and vessels converge to communicate with other regions of the skull.

The pterygopalatine fossa—a small, pyramid-shaped space—is situated between the maxilla, sphenoid, and palatine bones. It communicates via canals, fissures, and foramina with various regions of the skull. The contents of the pterygopalatine fossa include the terminal portion of the maxillary artery; the pterygopalatine ganglion; the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve; and branches of these structures. The osteology of this region is detailed in Chapter 6, where its communications with other regions are noted.

### Maxillary Artery

**Summary Bite.** The third portion of the maxillary artery leaves the deep face and enters the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure. Branches of the pterygopalatine artery serve structures in the orbit as well as the maxilla and teeth, palate, pharynx, paranasal sinuses, nasal cavity, and auditory tube.

The third, or **pterygopalatine portion**, of the maxillary artery enters the pterygopalatine fossa from the infratemporal fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure (Fig. 14-1; see Chapter 21). Branches of the pterygopalatine portion of the maxillary artery are the posterior superior alveolar, infraorbital, greater palatine, pharyngeal, and sphenopalatine arteries as well as the artery of the pterygoid canal.

- The **posterior superior alveolar artery** branches from the maxillary artery as that vessel enters the pterygomaxillary fissure. It travels on the maxillary tuberosity and enters the posterior superior alveolar foramen accompanied by the like-named nerve. The vessel ramifies within the maxilla to vascularize the maxillary sinus, molars, and premolars as well as the neighboring gingiva.

- The **infraorbital artery**, a continuation of the maxillary artery, enters the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure, lies in the infraorbital groove, leaves the orbit via the infraorbital canal, and enters the face by way of the infraorbital foramen. Branches of the infraorbital artery are the **orbital branches**, serving the lacrimal gland and the inferior oblique and inferior rectus muscles; the **anterior superior alveolar branches**, which vascularize the anterior teeth and the maxillary sinus; and the **facial branches**, discussed in Chapter 8.

- The **greater palatine artery** and its branch, the **lesser palatine artery**, pass through the pterygopalatine canal and gain entrance to the palate via the greater palatine and lesser palatine foramina, respectively, to vascularize the hard and soft palates as well as associated structures. The **pharyngeal branch** passes dorsally, through the **pharyngeal canal**, to vascularize the auditory tube, sphenoidal sinus, and portions of the pharynx. The **sphenopalatine artery** leaves the pterygopalatine fossa via the **sphenopalatine foramen** on its medial wall to enter the nasal fossa. The distribution of this vessel and its branches is discussed later in this chapter. The small artery of the **pterygoid canal** passes through the posterior wall of the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygoid canal. It supplies part of the auditory tube, pharynx, middle ear, and sphenoidal sinus.

### Maxillary Nerve

**Summary Bite.** The maxillary nerve (V₂), a purely sensory nerve, enters the pterygopalatine fossa where it gives rise to nerves that serve the orbit, the hard and soft palate, maxillary molars and supporting tissues, portions of the nasal cavity, anterior maxillary teeth and supporting tissues, and nasopharynx. It also communicates...
with the pterygopalatine ganglion (a parasympathetic ganglion associated with the facial nerve [cranial nerve VII] while in the pterygopalatine fossa).

The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve enters the pterygopalatine fossa at its posterior boundary via the foramen rotundum (Fig. 14-2; see Table 18-3). While in the fossa, it gives off the zygomatic nerve, which, passing into the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure, will bifurcate to form the zygomaticotemporal and zygomaticofacial nerves.

The posterior superior alveolar nerves also branch from the maxillary nerve, exit the fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure, and enter the maxillary tuberosity to serve the maxillary sinus, molars, and adjacent gingiva and cheek. The maxillary nerve then enters the orbit by way of the inferior orbital fissure and is referred to as the infraorbital nerve.

While in the pterygopalatine fossa, the maxillary nerve communicates with the pterygopalatine ganglion via two small trunks, the pterygopalatine ganglion.
nerves (Figs. 14-2 and 14-3); however, these nerves do not bear a functional relationship with the ganglion. Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers derived from the ganglion ride along and distribute with branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve. These branches, which appear to arise from the ganglion, are described here and, in more detail, in Chapter 18.

Orbital branches are slender nerves that supply the periosteum of the orbit and the mucoperiosteum of the ethmoidal and sphenoidal sinuses. The greater palatine nerve and its branches, the lesser palatine and posterior inferior nasal branches (Fig. 14-3), descend through the pterygopalatine canal to supply regions of the palate, gingiva, tonsil, and lateral wall of the nasal fossa.

Figure 14-2. The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

Figure 14-3. Pterygopalatine ganglion and associated nerves and arteries.
Posterior superior nasal branches leave the pterygopalatine fossa via the sphenopalatine foramen to serve the posterior aspect of the nasal fossa and part of the ethmoidal sinus. Its nasopalatine branch grooves the vomer bone in its path to the incisive foramen of the anterior hard palate, which it supplies (Fig. 14-3). The pharyngeal nerve traverses the pharyngeal canal to innervate part of the nasopharynx.

Pterygopalatine Ganglion

Summary Bite. The pterygopalatine ganglion is a parasympathetic ganglion of the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII). Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers enter the ganglion where they synapse on postganglionic cell bodies. Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers are communicated to the maxillary nerve for distribution to the lacrimal gland, mucosal glands of the nasal fossa, palate, and pharynx.

The pterygopalatine ganglion seems to be functionally associated with the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve because it is suspended by the pterygopalatine nerves within the fossa. It is, however, a parasympathetic ganglion of the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) (Figs. 14-2 and 14-3, and Table 18-2).

This ganglion receives its parasympathetic preganglionic root by way of the pterygoid canal, which opens onto the posterior wall of the fossa. The preganglionic parasympathetic fibers synapse with postganglionic parasympathetic cell bodies within the ganglion. Postsynaptic parasympathetic fibers leave the ganglion and distribute with branches of the maxillary division of cranial nerve V. These fibers are secretomotor in function. They provide parasympathetic flow to the lacrimal gland and mucosal glands of the nasal fossa, palate, and pharynx.

EXTERNAL NOSE

General Morphology

Summary Bite. The base of the nose, located between the two orbits and projecting forward from there to overhang the upper lip, is composed of a bony skeleton that is continuous with a cartilaginous skeleton anteriorly. The entire nose is covered by skin.

The external nose is triangular. The base of the nose is located between the two orbits, and its distal portion overhangs the upper lip. Its skeleton is both bony and cartilaginous and is covered by integument. The skin is movable over the bony and superior part of the cartilaginous support but is intimately attached to the cartilage composing the bulb of the nose (Fig. 14-4).

The region of the nose between the two orbits is known as the root, from which the bony bridge extends along the dorsum, inferiorly, to terminate in the movable bulbous apex. The inferior surface of the apex contains the two oval openings, the nares, leading into the internal nose. The two nares are separated by a midline columna (columella), the inferior part of the cartilaginous nasal septum.

The lateral aspect of the naris is formed by the ala, or wing, of the nose. The skin of the nose follows the contours of the nares and enters the internal nose for a short distance to form a junction with the mucous membrane lining the cavity.

Short, thick, bristlelike hairs, vibrissae, protrude from skin rich in sebaceous glands to strain particulate matter from the inhaled air.

Nasal Skeleton

Summary Bite. Nasal bones, located at the root of the nose, articulate with bones of the face. The remainder of the nose is composed of a framework of several cartilages, the principal one being the median nasal septum.

The skeleton of the nose is both bony and cartilaginous. The bony root is composed of the nasal bones, which articulate with each other, the maxillae, frontal, and ethmoid bones (Fig. 14-4).

The cartilaginous framework of the external nose is composed of five large, principal cartilages and a variable number of smaller cartilages. The principal cartilages are the median nasal septal and the paired lateral nasal and greater alar cartilages. The smaller...
ones are the vomeronasal, lesser alar, and accessory cartilages.

The **median nasal septal cartilage** is a quadrangular plate of hyaline cartilage that articulates with the nasal bone and the lateral and greater alar cartilages superoanteriorly; the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid bone posteriorly; and the vomer, anterior nasal spine, and vomeronasal cartilage inferiorly. It separates the nasal cavity into right and left halves (see Figs. 6-3 and 6-4). The **lateral nasal cartilage** forms the part of the dorsum of the nose. It is a triangular plate of hyaline cartilage whose base articulates with the nasal and maxillary bones superolaterally, the median septal cartilage medially, and the lesser and greater alar cartilages inferiorly. The **greater alar cartilage** is a C-shaped hyaline cartilage forming the lateral and medial walls of the nostril of the same side so that the nares present a constant opening. It is connected to the lesser alar and lateral nasal cartilages superiorly and the median nasal septal cartilage medially and inferiorly.

The muscles, vascular supply, and nerve supply of the nose are discussed in Chapter 8.

### INTERNAL NOSE

The internal nose is the nasal cavity and the structures surrounding it. The osteology of this region is described in Chapter 6.

### NASAL CAVITY

**Summary Bite.** The nasal cavity is divided into right and left nasal fossae by the median nasal septum. The anterior aperture of each fossa is the naris, whereas the posterior aperture is the choana. Each nasal fossa possesses four outpocketings called paranasal sinuses.

The **median nasal septum**, consisting of bony and cartilaginous components, subdivides the **nasal cavity** into a right and a left **nasal fossa** (see Figs. 6-3 and 6-4). Each nasal fossa has anterior and posterior apertures, the **naris** and **choana**, respectively. In addition, each possesses four outpocketings termed the **paranasal or accessory sinuses**, a medial and a lateral wall, a floor, and a roof. The entrance into the nasal fossa immediately superior to the naris is a bilateral area of that cavity ringed by the greater alar cartilage termed the **vestibule**. The vestibule is lined by skin possessing vibrissae and sebaceous glands. The superior-most portion of the nasal fossa, specialized for olfaction, is the olfactory region, whereas the larger, inferior portion is the respiratory region.

### Medial Wall

The medial wall of the nasal fossa—the median nasal septum—is composed of the vomer, the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid, and the median nasal septal cartilage. The entire median nasal septum is covered by mucoperiosteum. Frequently, this septum deviates to one side, infringing on the nasal fossa of that side. Associated with the anteroinferior aspect of the septum is the vestigial vomeronasal organ (the Jacobson organ) lying on the vomeronasal cartilage. This structure, olfactory in nature, is well-developed in some lower animals.

### Lateral Wall

The lateral wall of the nasal fossa differs from the medial wall. Instead of being relatively smooth, it presents three scrolled laminae of bone that jut medially.

### Epistaxis (Nosebleed)

Bleeding from the nose subsequent to injury of the nose is a common occurrence and is usually relatively easy to control. Normally, the source of blood flow is the **Kiesselbach area**—the anteroinferior region of the nasal septum where the septal branch of the superior labial, anterior ethmoidal, nasopalatine, and greater palatine arteries anastomose. The bleeding is controlled by pressure or by packing the nose with cotton. Occasionally, bleeding is from higher up in the nose where control may require more heroic action. When the injury is from a direct blow, the cribiform plate of the ethmoid bone may fractured.
into the nasal fossa. These turbinate bones, covered by mucoperiosteum, are referred to as the superior, middle, and inferior nasal conchae (Fig. 14-5).

Inferior and lateral, under the cover of the projecting concha, is the correspondingly named meatus. Superior to the superior meatus, just anterior to the body of the sphenoid bone, is the sphenoid sinus. A region of another sinus, the posterior ethmoidal air cells, opens below the superior concha into the anterior region of the superior meatus.

The middle nasal concha overlies and covers the lateral wall of the middle meatus. A marked, rounded projection is formed on this wall by the middle ethmoidal air cells of the ethmoidal air sinus. This rounded projection is known as the ethmoidal bulla.

The nasal septum can be deviated from birth but, more often, it is from an injury in childhood or during adulthood, especially those associated with contact sports. A slight deviation may be unnoticeable or it may be observed as a lateral bend in the nose when observed from a frontal view. When severe, the nasal septum may be displaced to one side so that it is in contact with the lateral nasal wall, thus reducing respiratory capability, causing infection, inflammation, and sinusitis, indicating the necessity for surgical treatment.

Clinical Considerations

Deviated Nasal Septum

The nasal septum can be deviated from birth but, more often, it is from an injury in childhood or during adulthood, especially those associated with contact sports. A slight deviation may be unnoticeable or it may be observed as a lateral bend in the nose when observed from a frontal view. When severe, the nasal septum may be displaced to one side so that it is in contact with the lateral nasal wall, thus reducing respiratory capability, causing infection, inflammation, and sinusitis, indicating the necessity for surgical treatment.
inferior to which is a thin, arched ledge of bone, the **uncinate process of the ethmoid**. Located between the bulla and the uncinate process is an arch-shaped opening, the **semilunar hiatus**, connecting the ethmoidal infundibulum with the middle meatus. The anterior ethmoidal air cells, the maxillary sinus, and, frequently, the frontonasal duct from the frontal sinus open into the ethmoidal infundibulum.

The inferior nasal concha, usually the largest of the three conchae, is a separate bone, whereas the middle and superior conchae are projections of the ethmoid bone. The inferior concha overhangs the inferior meatus, whose inferior extent is formed by the floor of the nasal cavity. The **nasolacrimal duct** opens into the anterosuperior aspect of the inferior meatus.

**Floor and Roof**

The floor of the nasal fossa is formed by the horizontal process of the palatine bone and the palatine process of the maxilla. The **incisive canal**, transmitting the nasopalatine nerve and vessels, perforates the mucous membrane of the anteromedial aspect of the floor adjacent to the septum, leading into the **incisive foramen** (Fig. 14-6). The contained nerves and vessels serve the anterior hard palate.

The roof of the nasal fossa is concave cranially, and its bony vault is composed of the cribiform plate of the ethmoid bone as well as parts of the sphenoid, palatine, vomer, frontal, and nasal bones.

The mucous membrane lining the nasal fossa may be classified into two categories: a pink to red, 

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Nose and Nasal Passages**

The nose usually is not affected by anomalous development, with the exception of incomplete fusion of the lateral nasal process with the maxillary process resulting in cleft lip and oblique facial clefts, as discussed in Chapter 5 in the section on the development of the head and neck. Occasionally, one or both nasal passages are blocked or are completely absent. This condition is known as **congenital atresia** of the nose. The occlusion may involve the anterior nares, the nasal fossae, and/or the choanae.

Frequently, a slight depression may be noted at the tip of the nose. This may be an indication of a very mild form of **bifid nose**, which in certain individuals may be severe enough to involve the entire bulb of the nose.
richly vascularized respiratory mucosa lining most of the nasal fossa and moistening the inhaled air, and
a yellowish-brown olfactory mucosa, responsible for
olfaction, located superiorly.

PARANASAL SINUSES

Summary Bite. Paranasal sinuses are hollow cavities lined with respiratory mucosa within the maxillae, frontal, ethmoid, and sphenoid bones. These sinuses are in communication with the nasal fossa via small ostia.

The maxillae, frontal, ethmoid, and sphenoid bones contain hollow cavities, the paranasal sinuses, lined by respiratory mucosa (Fig. 14-7). These cavities, as described earlier, communicate with the nasal fossae via small ostia. The function of these sinuses is not known, although it has been suggested that they act as resonators during speech and decrease the weight of the head. The latter explanation is not reasonable because the weight of bone marrow and cancellous bone that would occupy this space is negligible. The capacity of these sinuses as resonators during speech is also questionable because they are present in animals that seldom vocalize. Furthermore, in humans, blocked or fluid-filled sinuses do not impair speech production to any great extent.

The sinuses develop postnatally, although the anlagen of the sphenoidal, maxillary, and ethmoidal sinuses are present at birth. The mucous membrane lining the sinuses is continuous with that of the nasal fossae via the various ostia of the sinuses into the fossa. These openings and the chambers with which they are associated are listed in Table 14-1.

The ostia, although already small on the dry skull, are reduced even further in size in the living individual, so much so that they are minute. Hence, communication between the sinuses and the nasal fossa is readily impeded during respiratory congestion. Three of the four sinuses are bilateral. Although the sphenoidal sinus, located in the midline, is not bilateral, it is divided into two halves by an interposed plate of bone.

Maxillary Sinus

The maxillary sinus, the largest of the paranasal sinuses, is positioned lateral to the nasal cavity, inferior to the orbit, and often extends into the zygomatic process of the maxilla (Fig. 14-7).

The floor of the sinus is intimately related to the maxillary first and second molars, whose roots not only form considerable bulges but also may perforate the osseous floor of the sinus. Moreover, if the sinus is large, the third molar and second premolar may also be involved with its floor.

The superomedial wall of the sinus consistently communicates with the ethmoidal infundibulum by way of the maxillary ostium, and inconsistently communicates with the middle meatus via the accessory maxillary ostium.

Frontal Sinus

The frontal sinus pneumatizes the forehead and is incompletely subdivided into two or more compartments

<p>| Table 14-1 Openings of the Paranasal Sinuses |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sinus</th>
<th>Opening</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Constancy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maxillary</td>
<td>Maxillary ostium</td>
<td>Middle meatus via ethmoidal infundibulum</td>
<td>Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Accessory maxillary ostium</td>
<td>Middle meatus</td>
<td>Inconstant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal</td>
<td>Frontonasal duct</td>
<td>Frontal recess of middle meatus</td>
<td>Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Frontal ostium</td>
<td>Middle meatus via the ethmoidal infundibulum</td>
<td>Inconstant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethmoidal</td>
<td>Ostia of the posterior ethmoidal air cells</td>
<td>Superior meatus</td>
<td>Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ostia of the middle ethmoidal air cells</td>
<td>Middle meatus</td>
<td>Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ostia of the anterior ethmoidal air cells</td>
<td>Middle meatus via ethmoidal infundibulum or via frontal recess</td>
<td>Inconstant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoidal</td>
<td>Sphenoidal ostium</td>
<td>Sphenoethmoidal recess</td>
<td>Constant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The right and left frontal sinuses are separated from each other by the frontal septum, which usually deviates to one side, resulting in asymmetry of the two sinuses. The frontal sinus drains into the frontal recess of the middle meatus by way of the frontonasal duct, or into the ethmoidal infundibulum via the same duct.

**Ethmoidal Sinus**

The ethmoidal sinus is composed of three sets of ethmoidal air cells: the anterior, middle, and posterior (Fig. 14-7). These thin-walled, bony, honeycombed spaces collectively form the ethmoidal labyrinth located between the orbits and the nasal fossae. The

**Clinical Considerations**

**Maxillary Molars and the Maxillary Sinus**

The roots of the maxillary molars bulge into the floor of the maxillary sinus but normally do not perforate the mucus membrane of the sinus. Extreme care must be given when extracting the maxillary molars because a fractured root may be driven into the maxillary sinus, forming a communication between the oral cavity and the maxillary sinus and thus increasing the chance of sinus infection.

Maxillary sinus inflammation can be confused with toothache in the molar region because the posterior superior alveolar nerve of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve serves both the maxillary sinus and the molar teeth with sensory innervation.
posterior air cells drain into the superior meatus; the middle cells into the middle meatus just above the bulla ethmoidalis; and the anterior air cells into the ethmoidal infundibulum and thence into the middle meatus via the semilunar hiatus.

Sphenoidal Sinus

The sphenoidal sinus hollows out the body of the sphenoid bone and is separated into two asymmetrical halves by a plate of bone, the sphenoidal septum, which usually deviates to one side (Fig. 14-7). The sphenoidal sinus drains into the sphenoethmoidal recess of the nasal fossa through the sphenoidal ostium.

Vascular Supply

Summary Bite. Branches of the facial, ophthalmic, and maxillary arteries vascularize the nasal cavity and paranasal sinuses.

The vascular supply of the nasal fossa is derived from several sources: branches of the facial, ophthalmic, and maxillary arteries. The vestibule receives septal branches from the facial artery. The ophthalmic artery supplies anterior and posterior ethmoidal branches to regions of the superior and middle conchae and meatuses, to the middle nasal septum, and to the frontal and ethmoidal sinuses.

The maxillary artery provides several branches to the nasal fossa. The greater palatine branches serve the anterior floor and posterior aspect of the nasal fossa. The sphenopalatine branch, entering via the sphenopalatine foramen, vascularizes portions of the nasal conchae and meatuses via its posterior lateral nasal branches as well as the posterior segment of the median nasal septum by its posterior septal branches. Terminal branches of these vessels form a rich anastomotic vascular plexus in the mucoperiosteum. The maxillary artery provides vascularization of the four paranasal sinuses (Table 14-2) via the posterior lateral nasal branch of the sphenopalatine artery. In addition, the anterior and posterior superior alveolar arteries serve the maxillary sinus, whereas the pharyngeal artery and the artery of the pterygoid canal supply the sphenoidal sinus.

The opthalmic artery, via its anterior and posterior ethmoidal branches, assists in vascularizing the frontal, ethmoidal, and sphenoidal sinuses.

Venous drainage of the nose and paranasal sinuses is by way of the anterior and posterior ethmoidal veins into the opthalmic vein, the sphenopalatine vein into the pterygoid plexus of veins, and the vein of the foramen cecum into the superior sagittal sinus. Because these venous elements usually do not possess valves, infection may be propagated throughout the entire system, affecting the dural venous sinuses—especially the cavernous sinus—and resulting in serious and, perhaps, life-threatening complications.

Nerve Supply

Summary Bite. Ophthalmic (V1) and maxillary (V2) divisions of the trigeminal nerve provide general sensation to the respiratory mucosa. Olfaction (smell) is provided by cranial nerve I. Secretomotor fibers from the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) are communicated from the pterygopalatine ganglion to the maxillary division (V2) for delivery to the mucoperiosteum.

General sensory innervation to the respiratory mucosa is derived from the trigeminal nerve, in particular from its ophthalmic and maxillary divisions. The olfactory epithelium receives its special visceral afferent fibers for smell from the olfactory nerves (cranial
Sinusitis, or inflammation of the mucosa of the paranasal sinuses, results in swelling of the mucoperiostium, which blocks the ostia of the sinuses. This irritation causes accumulation of mucus in the sinuses, resulting in increased pressure and displacement of the air normally located therein. This pressure causes “sinus headaches” of varied intensity, and, if untreated, the infection may spread to the inner ear and the middle ear as well as to other areas.

Infection of the frontal sinus, if left untreated, may result in frontal bone osteomyelitis because venous drainage of this sinus is intimately related to diploic veins and indirectly related with those of the dura and scalp.

The ethmoidal air cells are in close relationship with the orbit, with only a paper-thin lamina of bone separating these structures. Hence, in cases of severe infection, this bony separation may be perforated and the infection may involve the orbit, resulting in orbital cellulitis.

The maxillary sinus is prone to infection because it is intimately associated with the first and second maxillary molars. Dental involvement may result from abscess, from carious lesions, or from tooth extractions with part of the floor of the maxillary sinus being removed in the process. Knowledge of the anatomy of the sinuses and roentgenographic analysis of the involved area should be a prerequisite to maxillary tooth extraction.

### Table 14-2  Vascular and Sensory Nerve Supply of the Paranasal Sinuses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sinus</th>
<th>Arteries</th>
<th>Veins</th>
<th>Nerves</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maxillary</td>
<td>Maxillary Sphenopalatine</td>
<td>Sphenopalatine, greater palatine anterior, middle and posterior superior alveolar</td>
<td>Maxillary division Infraorbital Anterior superior alveolar Middle superior alveolar Posterior superior alveolar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sphenopalatine Posterior lateral nasal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Greater palatine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior superior alveolar Infraorbital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior superior alveolar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal</td>
<td>Ophthalmic Anterior ethmoidal</td>
<td>Anastomosis of supraorbitals and superior ophthalmic</td>
<td>Ophthalmic division Frontal Nasociliary Anterior ethmoidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maxillary Sphenopalatine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior lateral nasal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethmoidal</td>
<td>Ophthalmic Anterior ethmoidal</td>
<td>Anterior ethmoidal Posterior ethmoidal</td>
<td>Ophthalmic division Nasociliary Anterior ethmoidal Posterior ethmoidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maxillary Sphenopalatine</td>
<td>Sphenopalatine</td>
<td>Maxillary division Orbital branch Posterior superior nasal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior lateral nasal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoidal</td>
<td>Ophthalmic Posterior ethmoidal</td>
<td>Posterior ethmoidal</td>
<td>Ophthalmic division Nasociliary Posterior ethmoidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maxillary Artery of the pterygoid canal</td>
<td>Sphenopalatine</td>
<td>Maxillary division Orbital branch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Pharyngeal branch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sphenopalatine Posterior lateral nasal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Clinical Considerations

**Paranasal Sinuses**

*Sinusitis,* or inflammation of the mucosa of the paranasal sinuses, results in swelling of the mucoperiostium, which blocks the ostia of the sinuses. This irritation causes accumulation of mucus in the sinuses, resulting in increased pressure and displacement of the air normally located therein. This pressure causes “sinus headaches” of varied intensity, and, if untreated, the infection may spread to the inner ear and the middle ear as well as to other areas.

Infection of the frontal sinus, if left untreated, may result in frontal bone osteomyelitis because venous drainage of this sinus is intimately related to diploic veins and indirectly related with those of the dura and scalp.

The ethmoidal air cells are in close relationship with the orbit, with only a paper-thin lamina of bone separating these structures. Hence, in cases of severe infection, this bony separation may be perforated and the infection may involve the orbit, resulting in orbital cellulitis.

The maxillary sinus is prone to infection because it is intimately associated with the first and second maxillary molars. Dental involvement may result from abscess, from carious lesions, or from tooth extractions with part of the floor of the maxillary sinus being removed in the process. Knowledge of the anatomy of the sinuses and roentgenographic analysis of the involved area should be a prerequisite to maxillary tooth extraction.
nerve I), axons of which pass via perforations in the overlying cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone to the olfactory bulb. Secretomotor fibers derived from the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) reach the mucoperiosteum via communications carried by branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

The paranasal sinuses also receive sensory innervation via the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve (Table 14-2). The frontal sinus receives its sensory innervation via branches of the frontal and nasociliary nerves of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve.

The ethmoidal sinuses are served by ethmoidal branches of the nasociliary nerve and by orbital and nasal branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve. The sphenoidal sinus is served by ethmoidal branches of the nasociliary nerve and orbital branches of the maxillary division. The maxillary sinus receives its innervation solely from the maxillary division, specifically from the superior alveolar nerves.
Submandibular Region and Floor of Mouth

Contents and Boundaries
Muscles and Fascia

- Suprahyoid Muscles
- Group Actions
- Tongue Muscles
- Clinical Considerations
- Innervation and Vascularization
- Group Actions

Salivary Glands
- Submandibular Gland
- Clinical Considerations
- Sublingual Gland

Innervation
- Trigeminal Nerve
- Hypoglossal Nerve
- Clinical Considerations

Vascular Supply
- Lingual Artery
- Clinical Considerations
- Facial Artery
- Veins

Lymphatics

Major Salivary Glands are six in number (three pairs). These are the parotid, submandibular, and sublingual glands. Because the parotid gland is not located in this region, it is not studied here. The submandibular gland is located primarily in the submandibular triangle, whereas the sublingual gland is located in the floor of the oral cavity, beneath the tongue.

Submandibular Region or Suprahyoid Region includes the region from the inferior border of the mandible to the hyoid bone. This includes some of the structures of the floor of the oral cavity, including those muscles that originate on the mandible and insert on the hyoid bone as well as those that originate on the hyoid bone and insert into the tongue.

The submandibular or suprahylid region lies between the hyoid bone and the mandible in the anterior triangle of the neck. However, it is more often studied with the head because it is a transition zone between these two regions and because the structures contained therein function in association with the jaws and the floor of the mouth.

Suprahyoid Muscle Group Functions include those muscles that originate or insert on the hyoid bone and function on structures in the region. These would include, among some others, all of the muscles whose name ends in “hyoid” (i.e., stylohyoid, mylohyoid, geniohyoid) and the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastric muscle.

Tongue Muscles include both intrinsic extrinsic muscles. The intrinsic tongue muscles, located within the tongue, include longitudinal, transverse, and vertical groups. These three groups function to alter the shape of the tongue when necessary for mastication, phonation, and deglutition. The extrinsic muscles whose names end in “glossus” originate from several anatomic sites and insert into the tongue to intermingle with other tongue muscles. The intrinsic muscles and three of the extrinsic muscles are innervated by the hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII).
MUSCLES AND FASCIA

Summary Bite. Muscles contained within the submandibular region include the suprahyoid muscles and those attaching either to the mandible or to the hyoid bone. The tongue muscles are also included in this region, with the exception of the palatoglossus muscle, which originates from the palate and is innervated by the trigeminal instead of the hypoglossal nerve. The mylohyoid muscle forms the floor of this region.

Muscles constituting the submandibular region and the floor of the oral cavity include the suprahyoid muscles of the anterior triangle of the neck and those attaching either to the mandible or hyoid bone forming the floor of the mouth and/or the tongue. Both intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the tongue are generally described with this region, the exception being the palatoglossus muscle, which originates from the palate and is thus more appropriately described with muscles of that region.

The suprahyoid structures are enclosed in the investing fascia of the neck. This fascia is attached to the hyoid bone and extends superiorly, attaching to the inferior border of the mandible. The platysma, a muscle immediately deep to the skin, overlies this region.

Cutaneous sensation to the area is provided by branches of the cervical plexus. Additionally, branches of several cranial nerves, including the trigeminal (cranial nerve V), facial (cranial nerve VII), and hypoglossal (cranial nerve XII) nerves, provide sensory, special sensory, motor, and secretomotor innervation to the structures within this region.

The major vascular supply to the region is provided by branches of the lingual artery but branches of the facial and maxillary arteries also contribute to its vascularization. Venous drainage is accomplished by like-named veins and the anterior jugular vein.

Two of the three major salivary glands, the submandibular and sublingual glands, occupy the submandibular and sublingual regions, respectively. These two glands receive postganglionic parasympathetic innervation from the submandibular ganglion located in the vicinity of the submandibular gland.

The submandibular region is bounded superiorly by the inferior rim of the mandible and inferiorly by the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastic muscle, as these two bellies converge onto the hyoid bone to form the submandibular triangle. The mylohyoid muscle, spanning between the two sides of the mandible, is attached inferiorly to the anterior aspect of the hyoid bone. Its superior surface underlies the tongue, thus forming the floor of the mouth, whereas its inferior surface forms the floor of the submandibular triangle.

Attached to much of the posterior aspect of the hyoid bone is the hyoglossus muscle ascending into the tongue. The interval between the mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles permits the passage of neurovascular and lymphatic elements into and out of the floor of the oral cavity.

CONTENTS AND BOUNDARIES

Summary Bite. The submandibular region and floor of the mouth are contained mostly within the submandibular triangle and the space spanning across the midline between them. Contained within this region are the suprahyoid muscles as well as the muscles of the tongue. Two of the major salivary glands are also contained in this region.

Muscles contained within the submandibular region and the floor of the mouth and/or forming its boundaries include the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastic, stylohyoid, mylohyoid, and geniohyoid muscles. Both intrinsic and extrinsic tongue musculatures, namely, the styloglossus, genioglossus, and hyoglossus muscles, also occupy the region. Strictly described, the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle also may be included because it originates from the hyoid bone. The platysma, a muscle immediately deep to the skin, overlies this region.

Cutaneous sensation to the area is provided by branches of the cervical plexus. Additionally, branches of several cranial nerves, including the trigeminal (cranial nerve V), facial (cranial nerve VII), and hypoglossal (cranial nerve XII) nerves, provide sensory, special sensory, motor, and secretomotor innervation to the structures within this region.

The major vascular supply to the region is provided by branches of the lingual artery but branches of the facial and maxillary arteries also contribute to its vascularization. Venous drainage is accomplished by like-named veins and the anterior jugular vein.

Two of the three major salivary glands, the submandibular and sublingual glands, occupy the submandibular and sublingual regions, respectively. These two glands receive postganglionic parasympathetic innervation from the submandibular ganglion located in the vicinity of the submandibular gland.

The submandibular region is bounded superiorly by the inferior rim of the mandible and inferiorly by the anterior and posterior bellies of the digastic muscle, as these two bellies converge onto the hyoid bone to form the submandibular triangle. The mylohyoid muscle, spanning between the two sides of the mandible, is attached inferiorly to the anterior aspect of the hyoid bone. Its superior surface underlies the tongue, thus forming the floor of the mouth, whereas its inferior surface forms the floor of the submandibular triangle.

Attached to much of the posterior aspect of the hyoid bone is the hyoglossus muscle ascending into the tongue. The interval between the mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles permits the passage of neurovascular and lymphatic elements into and out of the floor of the oral cavity.

Summary Bite. The digastic muscle consists of two heads that originate from different locations; however, both insert onto the hyoid bone via an intermediate tendon. These two heads, along with the inferior border of the mandible, form the boundary of the submandibular triangle.
The **digastric muscle** consists of two portions: a **posterior belly**, which arises from the mastoid notch of the temporal bone, and an **anterior belly**, arising from the digastric fossa of the anterior lower border of the mandible. Both of these muscle bellies descend to the hyoid bone to be inserted by an intermediate tendon (Table 15-1).

A fibrous loop surrounds the tendon as well as the body and the greater cornu of the hyoid bone. At the loop, the tendon perforates the stylohyoid muscle at its attachment on the hyoid bone.

The combined function of the two bellies of the digastric is to elevate the hyoid bone and also to assist in opening the mouth when the hyoid bone is fixed by the infrayoid muscles. Acting independently, the anterior belly draws the hyoid anteriorly, whereas the posterior belly draws it posteriorly.

Embryologically, the digastric muscle is really two separate muscles, each derived from different pharyngeal arches. The anterior belly originates from the mandibular arch (pharyngeal arch I) and is innervated by a branch of the mylohyoid nerve from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. The posterior belly develops in the hyoid arch (pharyngeal arch II) and is innervated by a branch of the facial nerve that enters its deep surface at midbelly.

The posterior belly of the digastric muscle is vascularized by the posterior auricular artery, with contributions from the suprahyoid branch of the lingual artery and muscular branches of the occipital artery. The anterior belly is vascularized by the submental branch of the facial artery.

### Stylohyoid Muscle

**Summary Bite.** The stylohyoid muscle originates from the styloid process of the temporal bone and descends to the hyoid bone in association with the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, which perforates it close to the insertion.
The **stylohyoid muscle** arises from the posterior and lateral surfaces of the styloid process of the temporal bone (Fig. 15-1 and Table 15-1). As this muscle descends to insert on the body of the hyoid bone, it is in close association with the posterior belly of the digastric muscle, which perforates it close to its insertion.

The stylohyoid muscle functions to draw the hyoid bone superiorly and posteriorly, in addition to assisting in fixing it. Motor innervation to this muscle is provided by a branch of the facial nerve that enters its midbelly. Vascular supply is provided by posterior auricular and occipital branches of the external carotid artery. Additional vascular elements may reach the muscle via the suprathyroid branch of the lingual artery and from muscular branches of the facial artery.

### Mylohyoid Muscle

**Summary Bite.** The mylohyoid muscle originates from the mylohyoid line on each half of the mandible and inserts upon itself in the median raphe to form the floor of the oral cavity.

The **mylohyoid muscle** forms the floor of the mouth as it unites in the midline with its counterpart from the opposite side of the mandible. This muscle arises from the entire length of the mylohyoid line of the mandible, from the symphysis menti to the region opposite the last molar tooth (Fig. 15-2 and Table 15-1). Anteriorly, the fibers of each side insert into a median raphe, whereas the more posteriorly oriented fibers insert into the body of the hyoid bone.

The mylohyoid muscle assists in depressing the mandible when the hyoid bone is fixed. When the mandible is fixed, the muscle elevates the hyoid bone, and consequently the tongue, for swallowing.

The mylohyoid nerve from the inferior alveolar branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve innervates this muscle as the nerve approaches its inferolateral border. Vascular supply is provided by the anastomoses from the submental branch of the facial artery and the sublingual branch of the lingual artery.

### Geniohyoid Muscle

**Summary Bite.** The geniohyoid muscle originates superior to the mylohyoid muscle from the inferior mental spine of the mandible and inserts upon the hyoid bone.

Immediately superior to the mylohyoid muscle is the **geniohyoid muscle**, originating from the inferior mental spine (genial tubercle) of the mandible before descending to the anterior surface of the body of the hyoid bone (Figs. 15-1 and 15-2, and Table 15-1). At its insertion, the geniohyoid is in contact with its counterpart from the opposite side of the mandible.

The geniohyoid muscle functions to draw the hyoid bone anteriorly and, in so doing, draws the tongue as well because some of the extrinsic muscles of the tongue are attached to the hyoid bone.

The geniohyoid muscle is innervated by fibers of the first cervical nerve, which are transported to it via the hypoglossal nerve. Vascularization is provided by the sublingual branch of the lingual artery.
Group Actions

Summary Bite. The suprahyoid muscles all originate from various areas superior to the hyoid bone, but all insert upon the hyoid bone, hence their names end in “hyoid.” As a group, these muscles assist in fixing the hyoid bone for swallowing and for retracting the mandible. They function in concert with the infrahyoid muscles of the neck.

The suprahyoid muscles, all of which attach to the hyoid bone and another structure superior to it, function as a group to assist in swallowing by lifting the hyoid bone, the floor of the mouth, and the tongue. As food passes down the esophagus, the stylohyoid and posterior digastric muscles retract the hyoid bone to prevent regurgitation. This muscle group may also assist in fixing the hyoid bone and in retracting the mandible when the hyoid bone is fixed by the infrahyoid muscles.

Tongue Muscles

Summary Bite. Intrinsic muscles of the tongue are confined within the tongue, whereas the extrinsic muscles originate from various places and insert into the tongue.

The tongue muscles are composed of two groups: intrinsic tongue muscles and extrinsic tongue muscles (Figs. 15-1, 15-3, 15-4, and Table 15-1).

The intrinsic muscles of the tongue are confined within the tongue itself and are described as longitudinal, transverse, and vertical muscles. The longitudinal muscle group is subdivided into a superior and an inferior group.

The intrinsic muscles function generally to alter the shape of the tongue as necessary in mastication, deglutition, and phonation. The varying shapes of the tongue can be predicted by relating the fiber orientations of the intrinsic muscles as named.

The four extrinsic muscles of the tongue originate outside it: the genioglossus, hyoglossus, styloglossus, and palatoglossus muscles. The palatoglossus muscle, as was stated at the beginning of the chapter, is described in Chapter 16 rather than here because it originates from the palatal region.

Genioglossus Muscle

Summary Bite. The genioglossus muscle originates from the superior mental spine and inserts into the internal aspect of the inferior surface of the tongue.
Chapter 15 Submandibular Region and Floor of Mouth

Figure 15-3. Dorsum of the tongue.

Figure 15-4. Muscles of the tongue. (A) Lateral view. (B) Medial view of the right half of bisected tongue.
The **genioglossus muscle** arises from the superior mental spine (genial tubercle) of the mandible directly above the geniohyoid muscle (Figs. 15-1, 15-4A and B, and Table 15-1). From here, the muscle fans out to enter the entire length of the inferior surface of the tongue. The most anterior fibers curve upward to insert into the tip of the tongue. The posterior fibers pass to the base of the tongue, whereas some of the most inferior fibers are attached to the body of the hyoid bone. The genioglossus muscle acts to protrude the tongue, whereas the most anterior fibers depress the tongue tip.

**Hyoglossus Muscle**

**Summary Bite.** The hyoglossus muscle originates from the hyoid bone and passes vertically to insert into the tongue.

The **hyoglossus muscle** originates from the side of the body and greater cornu of the hyoid bone, passing vertically to enter the tongue, where the fibers intermingle with those of the styloglossus muscle (Figs. 15-1, 15-4A and B, and Table 15-1).

A separate slip of muscle, referred to by some as the **chondroglossus muscle** because it is separated from the hyoglossus by a small interval, is considered a part of the hyoglossus in this text. The hyoglossus functions as the major depressor of the tongue.

**Styloglossus Muscle**

**Summary Bite.** The styloglossus muscle originates from the styloid process of the temporal bone and inserts into the tongue on its lateral surface to intermingle with fibers of the hyoglossus muscle.

The **styloglossus muscle** arises from the anterior surface of the styloid process of the temporal bone and the stylomandibular ligament (Figs. 15-1 and 15-4A, and Table 15-1). It then descends anteriorly and medially to enter the tongue from the lateral aspect, as it turns horizontally. Most fibers of the styloglossus muscle continue on to the tip of the tongue. Some of the posterior fibers decussate with those of the hyoglossus muscle. This muscle functions to retract the tongue, whereas the more anterior fibers elevate the tip.

**Innervation and Vascularization**

**Summary Bite.** All of the muscles (extrinsic as well as intrinsic) of the tongue, with the exception of one, are innervated by the hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII). The palatoglossal muscle, which originates from the palate, is innervated by the pharyngeal plexus. Vascular supply is provided by branches of the lingual artery, again except for the palatoglossal muscle, which is vascularized by arteries of the palate.

All of the tongue musculature is innervated by the hypoglossal nerve, with the exception of the palatoglossus, which is innervated by the pharyngeal plexus (Figs. 15-5 and 15-6).

The vascular supply to the muscles of the tongue is provided primarily by the deep lingual artery, the terminal branch of the lingual artery (Figs. 15-7 and 15-8). The exception, again, is the palatoglossus, which is served by the arteries of the palate.

**Group Actions**

**Summary Bite.** The intrinsic tongue muscles generally function to alter the shape of the tongue, whereas metastasize to deep cervical lymph nodes early on, whereas those on the anterior part of the tongue do not metastasize to the deep cervical lymph nodes until later in the disease. Thus, because the deep cervical lymph nodes drain into the internal jugular vein, it is extremely important that the disease be identified and treated as early as possible to prevent metastases into structures within the neck.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Lingual Cancer**

Cancer of the tongue is the most common cancer of the oral cavity (36.2%). About 95% of the cancers located on the tongue and floor of the mouth are squamous cell carcinomas that are correlated with a history of high use of alcohol and tobacco. Two thirds of the tongue cancers occur on the lateral surfaces of the middle third of the tongue, whereas one third are located on the ventrolateral or the anterior undersurface of the tongue. Malignancies in the posterior portion of the tongue
the extrinsic tongue muscles generally function to direct the movement of the tongue (e.g., retract, protrude). All tongue movements are the result of coordinated contractions of several intrinsic and extrinsic muscles.

Complex movements of the tongue are accomplished by intricate and coordinated contractions of both intrinsic and extrinsic muscles of the tongue. Generally, "movements" other than those that basically alter the shape of the tongue are the result of contractions of the extrinsic muscles, although one group seldom functions alone.

The overlapping, intermingling, and decussating nature of the intrinsic and extrinsic muscle groups permit the fine coordinated effort so necessary in speech.
SALIVARY GLANDS

Summary Bite. Two of the three major salivary glands, the submandibular and sublingual glands, are located in this region. Both empty their secretions into the floor of the mouth.

Two of the three major salivary glands are located within the submandibular region or in the floor of the mouth: the submandibular and sublingual glands. The third major salivary gland, the parotid gland, is located on the side of the face and in the retromandibular space. It has been described in Chapter 11.

Most of the submandibular gland is located superficially in the submandibular triangle, with only a small portion extending into the floor of the mouth. The entire sublingual gland, however, is housed in the floor of the mouth.

Submandibular Gland

Summary Bite. The submandibular gland is located mostly within the submandibular triangle and in the

Figure 15-7. Blood supply of the tongue.

Figure 15-8. Hypoglossal nerve.
submandibular recess, a region situated on the medial surface of the mandible. The submandibular duct extends to the sublingual caruncula, where its contents are emptied into the mouth.

The submandibular gland occupies much of the space within the submandibular triangle. Superficially, it is covered by skin, platysma, and the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia. The superior extent of the gland is recessed under the cover of the mandible in the submandibular fossa. Inferiorly, the gland extends to the hyoid bone, overlapping the intermediate tendon of the digastric muscle. The gland extends anteriorly to the anterior belly of the digastric muscle and posteriorly as far as the stylohyoid muscle. The deep surface of the gland lies on the hyoglossus, stylohyoid, styloglossus, and mylohyoid muscles. Usually, a fingerlike projection extends into the sublingual space on the superior surface of the mylohyoid muscle.

It is from this deep process that the submandibular duct (the Wharton duct) emerges to pass anteriorly between the mylohyoid, hyoglossus, and genioglossus muscles, then between the last-named muscle and the sublingual gland to open onto the sublingual caruncula, just lateral to the base of the lingual frenulum (Fig. 15-9).

The facial artery vascularizes the submandibular gland as that artery passes through the gland’s posterior portion on its way to the superficial face (Fig. 15-7). The artery ascends across the lateral border of the mandible just anterior to the masseter muscle. The sublingual branch of the lingual artery also provides additional vascular supply to the gland. Venous drainage follows the named arterial channels.

Sublingual Gland

**Summary Bite.** The sublingual gland is located beneath the anterior aspect of the tongue. It lies superior to the mylohyoid muscle and is covered by the sublingual fold. The gland lies in the sublingual fossa of the mandible and is bordered medially by the genioglossus muscle. Saliva is delivered by tiny excretory ducts onto the floor of the mouth, although some ducts join to form a sublingual duct that empties into the submandibular duct.

The sublingual gland, the smallest of the three major salivary glands, is housed in the floor of the mouth between the sublingual fold (mucous membrane of the oral cavity) superiorly and the mylohyoid muscle inferiorly. This almond-shaped gland lies between the genioglossus muscle medially and the sublingual fossa of the mandible laterally. Posteriorly, it is in contact with the submandibular gland.

Ducts from the sublingual gland may open into the oral cavity as tiny excretory ducts (ducts of Rivinus) on the surface of the plica sublingualis located in the sublingual sulcus. Some ducts may unite to form the sublingual duct (duct of Bartholin), opening into the submandibular duct (Fig. 15-9).

The vascular supply to this gland is derived from two sources: the sublingual artery from the lingual artery and the submental artery, a branch of the facial artery (Fig. 15-7).

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Sialography**

Sometimes the ducts of the parotid and submandibular glands become obstructed. After injecting the duct with a contrast medium, a sialogram (a special type of radiograph) may be taken to visualize the contents of the duct.
Autonomic Innervation

Summary Bite. Secretomotor innervation to the salivary glands originates in the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) and is transmitted to the submandibular ganglion via the chorda tympani. Postganglionic fibers are transmitted to the glands via the lingual nerve, a branch of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V3). Vasomotor innervation originates in the carotid plexus and is delivered via the facial artery.

Autonomic innervation to the submandibular and sublingual glands is provided by secretomotor fibers originating in the facial nerve. These fibers are transmitted to the submandibular ganglion via the chorda tympani branch of the facial nerve and on to the lingual nerve of the trigeminal nerve.

Sympathetic innervation (vasomotor) is provided from the superior cervical ganglion via the carotid plexus, whose nerve fibers are transmitted to these two glands by the facial artery. A more complete description of the autonomic system’s relationships with these two glands is detailed in Chapter 18.

Innervation

Two cranial nerves may be observed coursing through the submandibular region. The trigeminal nerve is represented by two branches from the mandibular division. The other cranial nerve is the hypoglossal nerve serving the tongue musculature (Fig. 15-1).

Trigeminal Nerve

Summary Bite. The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V3) innervates muscles of the first pharyngeal arch. Autonomic fibers to the salivary glands and taste sensation to the anterior two thirds of the tongue (both from cranial nerve VII) travel on the lingual nerve to reach their destinations. The lingual nerve also provides general sensation to the anterior two thirds of the tongue, gingiva, and adjacent mucosa.

The trigeminal nerve is represented by branches of its mandibular division in the vicinity of the submandibular region (Fig. 15-10; see Tables 18-1 through 18-3). Arising from the inferior alveolar nerve, just before that nerve enters the mandibular foramen, is the mylohyoid nerve. This nerve courses inferiorly in a groove on the deep surface of the mandibular ramus to reach the mylohyoid muscle, which it supplies with motor innervation. A small branch continues along the superficial surface of the mylohyoid muscle to supply motor innervation to the anterior belly of the digastric muscle.

The lingual nerve arises from the posterior division of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve within the infratemporal fossa. Here it is joined by the chorda tympani, a branch of the facial nerve, carrying special sensory fibers for taste and postganglionic parasympathetic fibers for the submandibular ganglion (Fig. 15-10).

The lingual nerve courses anteriorly between the mandible and medial pterygoid muscle, obliquely across the styloglossus muscle, and then into the submandibular region. It next passes between the submandibular gland and the hyoglossus muscle and over the submandibular duct to the tip of the tongue, where it provides general sensation to the anterior two thirds of the tongue as well as the adjacent mucosa and gingiva.

Special sensory fibers transmitted to the lingual nerve from the chorda tympani are distributed to all the taste buds on the anterior two thirds of the tongue, with the exception of the taste buds of the circumvallate papilla, which are supplied by the glossopharyngeal nerve.

The submandibular ganglion, suspended from the lingual nerve by short filaments, lies on the hyoglossus muscle in the vicinity of the posterior margin of the mylohyoid muscle. In this position, this parasympathetic ganglion is in close association with the submandibular gland (Fig. 15-1).

Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the chorda tympani leave the lingual nerve and enter the ganglion to synapse on postganglionic cell bodies. Postganglionic fibers exit the ganglion some to enter the submandibular gland, and some to reenter the lingual nerve for distribution to the sublingual gland and minor salivary glands of the oral cavity, providing them with secretomotor innervation.

Hypoglossal Nerve

Summary Bite. The hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII) provides motor innervation to all of the muscles of the tongue, with the exception of the palatoglossus muscle.

The hypoglossal nerve exits the cranial cavity through the hypoglossal canal to make its way to the tongue musculature. In its course, it passes anteriorly across the external carotid and lingual arteries, remaining above the hyoid bone and lying deep to the posterior digastric and stylohyoid muscles. It continues forward along the genioglossus muscle to the tip of the tongue, providing motor innervation to all of the muscles of the tongue, except the palatoglossus, as described previously (Figs. 15-1, 15-6, and 15-8).
Figure 15-10. Mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

Clinical Considerations

Hypoglossal Nerve Injury

Difficult third molar extractions and/or fractures of the mandible may damage the hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII), causing paralysis of the tongue on the affected side. When the mouth is opened and the tongue is protruded, the genioglossus of the unaffected side will cause the tongue to deviate to the affected side. If the damage is prolonged, the tongue muscles will atrophy.
Near the posterior border of the hyoglossus muscle, branches communicated to the hypoglossal nerve from the first cervical nerve leave the hypoglossal nerve to pass to the thyrohyoid and geniohyoid muscles, providing them with motor innervation.

Nerves to the posterior one third and root of the tongue are derived from branches of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves, respectively. Discussion of their contributions to innervation of the tongue is in Chapter 18.

**Vascular Supply**

**Summary Bite.** Branches of the lingual and facial arteries provide vascular supply to the submandibular region and floor of the mouth.

Vascular supply to the submandibular region and the floor of the mouth is provided mainly by the lingual and facial arteries (Fig. 15-7).

Other contributions of minor importance provide vascular supply to those structures originating outside the region or located on its periphery, including the occipital and posterior auricular arteries, serving the posterior digastric and stylohyoid muscles, and the mylohyoid artery from the inferior alveolar branch of the mandibular portion of the maxillary artery, serving the mylohyoid muscle.

**Lingual Artery**

**Summary Bite.** The lingual artery arises from the external carotid artery and passes deep into the submandibular triangle to enter the tongue, coursing to its tip. On its way, it provides several branches that supply the suprahyoid structures and the substance of the tongue.

The lingual artery arises from the external carotid artery, usually near the greater cornu of the hyoid bone. Sometimes, however, it arises in common with the facial artery, and that common vessel is known as the lingual/facial trunk.

The lingual artery passes deep to the posterior digastric, stylohyoid, and hyoglossus muscles to ascend to the tongue, turning anteriorly as it courses to its tip (Fig. 15-7). During its passage, it gives off the following branches: suprahyoid, dorsal lingual, sublingual, and deep lingual arteries.

- The **suprahyoid artery** arises near the hyoid bone and, while staying cranial to it, supplies most of the muscles attaching to the hyoid bone.
- The **dorsal lingual artery** arises deep to the hyoglossus muscle and ascends to the posterior dorsum of the tongue to supply the palatoglossal arch, mucous membrane of the tongue, palatine tonsil, and some of the soft palate; it freely anastomoses with other vessels in the area.
- The **sublingual artery** arises at the anterior margin of the hyoglossus muscle to course between the genioglossus and mylohyoid muscles, and the mylohyoid artery from the inferior alveolar branch of the mandibular portion of the maxillary artery, serving the mylohyoid muscle.
- The **deep lingual artery** is the terminal of the lingual artery lying immediately deep to the mucous membrane of the inferior surface of the tongue (Fig. 15-5). It lies lateral to the genioglossus muscle and is accompanied by the lingual nerve. Anastomosis is accomplished with its counterpart of the opposite side at the tip of the tongue.

**Facial Artery**

**Summary Bite.** The facial artery arises from the external carotid artery to ascend to the submandibular triangle to supply the submandibular gland. Before crossing the mandible to enter the face, it provides several branches to structures in the neck and to suprahyoid structures.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Sublingual Artery Damage**

The sublingual artery, occasionally injured during dental procedures, may present problems to the surgeon attempting to ligate its source because it may arise from the submental branch of the facial artery rather than from the lingual artery.
The facial artery, as detailed in Chapter 7, arises from the external carotid artery just cranial to the lingual artery (Fig. 15-7). At first, it ascends deep to the posterior belly of the digastric and stylohyoid muscles and passes through the substance of the submandibular gland before crossing the lateral border of the mandible to enter the face.

Four named branches arise from this artery as it courses through the neck: the ascending palatine, tonsillar, glandular, and submental arteries. These arteries are described in Chapters 7 and 16.

Particularly important to this description are the glandular and submental branches.

- **Glandular branches** arise from the facial artery as it courses through the submandibular gland, which these branches supply. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers enter the gland via these branches of the facial artery as it courses through it.

- The **submental artery** arises near the anterior border of the masseter muscle, after the facial artery has exited the submandibular gland but before it ascends to enter the face. The submental artery courses on the mylohyoid muscle, which it serves, in addition to providing branches to the anterior belly of the digastric muscle. A deep branch perforates the mylohyoid muscle to anastomose with the sublingual and mylohyoid arteries. At the symphysis menti, a branch of the artery ascends cranial onto the face to anastomose with the inferior labial artery.

**Veins**

Several veins drain the tongue and sublingual area, including the deep lingual vein that is visible on the ventral surface of the tongue. These veins drain into the facial vein or directly into the internal jugular vein. The tongue and sublingual area are drained by several dorsal lingual veins and a large *deep lingual* vein visible on the ventral surface of the tongue (Fig. 15-5). These veins may empty directly into the internal jugular vein or may drain into the facial vein, along with the submental and sublingual veins.

**Lymphatics**

*Summary Bite.* A considerable amount of lymph drains into the submandibular/sublingual area. Lymph from the tongue is drained through several nodes. A considerable amount of lymph drains into the submandibular/sublingual area. Lymph from the tongue is drained through several nodes. Submandibular nodes drain the nose, lips, gingival, and part of the tongue. Efferents from these and from the submental nodes pass through the jugulodigastric lymph node (the principal node of the tongue), which is located close to the bifurcation of the common carotid artery.

Several lymphatic channels drain the submandibular/sublingual area (see Fig. 20-2). The lymph vessels of the tongue drain into the submandibular region, with nodes located along the posterior digastric and omohyoid muscles. One node of particular importance, the **jugulodigastric lymph node** (known as the **principal node of the tongue**), lies in close association with the bifurcation of the common carotid artery.

**Submandibular nodes**, located beneath the mandible in the submandibular triangle, drain that area, including the nose, upper lip, lower lip, gingiva, and the part of the tongue. Efferents from the submental and submandibular nodes pass into the jugulo-omohyoid lymph node of the deep cervical nodes and eventually into the jugular trunk before emptying into the subclavian vein. The lymphatic system is detailed in Chapter 20.
Chapter 16
Palate, Pharynx, and Larynx

Chapter Outline

Pharyngeal Plexus
- Palate
  - Hard Palate
  - Soft Palate
- Clinical Considerations
- Vascular and Nerve Supply
- Palatine Tonsil
- Clinical Considerations

Pharynx
- Nasal Pharynx
  - Clinical Considerations
- Oral Pharynx
- Laryngeal Pharynx
  - Clinical Considerations
- Pharyngeal Wall
  - Vascular and Sensory Nerve Supply of the Pharynx

Esophagus
  - Clinical Considerations

Larynx
- Laryngeal Cartilages
- Membranes, Ligaments, and Muscles
- Vascular and Nerve Supply
  - Clinical Considerations

Trachea
- Deglutition

Key Terms

Palate forms the roof of the oral cavity and separates it from the nasal cavity. The anterior palate contains a bony shelf and is immovable, whereas the posterior soft palate is a flexible muscular structure that seals off the nasal pharynx from the oral pharynx during the process of swallowing.

Pharyngeal Plexus is the neural complex that provides sensory and motor innervation to the structures about the oropharyngeal isthmus, including the palate, nasal pharynx, and oral pharynx. The pharyngeal plexus is located on the posterior wall of the pharynx and receives contributions from the glossopharyngeal nerve (cranial nerve IX), serving the sensory modality; the vagus nerve (cranial nerve X), serving the motor modality; and postganglionic sympathetic nerves from the superior cervical ganglion that supply vasomotor innervation.

The pharynx is a passageway for the respiratory and digestive systems, which are separated in the laryngeal pharynx.

Tonsils The palatine tonsils are located in a sinus between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches. They form a part of a tonsilar ring (the Waldeyer ring) of lymphoid tissue that guards the oropharyngeal entrance. The other components of this ring include a mass of lymphoid tissue, the pharyngeal tonsil located in the posterior wall of nasopharynx, as well as another mass of lymphoid tissue known as the lingual tonsil.
anterior portion is bony and is called the hard palate, whereas the posterior portion is without bone and is called the soft palate.

The palate forms the roof of the mouth and the floor of the nasal cavities. It consists of two regions, one containing a bony shelf, the immovable hard palate, and the other, a more posteriorly located, muscular, movable soft palate.

**Hard Palate**

**Summary Bite.** The hard palate composed of the palatine processes of the maxillae fused with the horizontal processes of the palatine bone. Anteriorly it is bounded by the alveolar arch and posteriorly it ends where the soft palate begins.

The hard palate is a bony plate composed of the palatine processes of the maxillae and the horizontal processes of the palatine bones fused in the midline with their counterparts of the opposite side (Fig. 16-1).

Anteriorly and laterally, it is bounded by the alveolar arches, and posteriorly its boundary is demarcated by the beginning of the soft palate. The bone is covered by a specialized mucoperiosteum on both its oral and nasal surfaces. The posterior border of the hard palate possesses the palatine aponeurosis for attachment of the muscles of the soft palate.

An additional complication must be resolved to clarify the components of the pharyngeal plexus. The cranial portion (motor root) of the accessory nerve and the motor components of the vagus and glossopharyngeal nerves all arise from a singular nucleus in the brain, the nucleus ambiguous.

The motor root of the accessory nerve joins the vagus nerve within the cranial vault, and the three cranial nerves (glossopharyngeal, vagus, and accessory nerves) exit the skull together via the jugular foramen. Because of these complications, some authors specify the pharyngeal plexus, others the vagus nerve, and still others the cranial portion of the accessory nerve as the motor supply of the muscles of the palate, pharynx, and larynx.

For purposes of the present text, with the noted exception of the tensor veli palatini and the stylopharyngeus muscles, all muscles of the palate, pharynx, and larynx are said to be innervated by named branches of the vagus nerve or via its contributions to the pharyngeal plexus. This is with the understanding that the motor fibers to these muscles are contributed to the vagus nerve from the cranial root of the accessory nerve.

**Soft Palate**

**Summary Bite.** The soft palate is a muscular structure suspended between the oral pharynx and nasal pharynx. Since it is flexible, it may be elevated to isolate the oral cavity from the nasal pharynx.

The soft palate is a muscular structure, encased in a mucous membrane, suspended between the oral pharynx and the nasal pharynx. Its sides are attached to the lateral pharyngeal walls. The anterior portion of the soft palate, near its junction with the hard palate, is almost immobile, whereas its posterior-most extent, the uvula, is capable of great excursion (Fig. 16-1).

Lateral to the uvula is the palatoglossal arch or palatoglossal fold, containing the palatoglossal muscle, forming the anterior pillar of the oropharyngeal isthmus (fauces), extending into the side of the tongue.
Arising posteriorly is the **palatopharyngeal arch**, containing the **palatopharyngeus muscle**, forming the **posterior pillar of the oropharyngeal isthmus** extending into the lateral pharyngeal wall. The palatine tonsils are located between the two fauces in the tonsillar sinus (Fig. 16-1).

**Muscles of the Soft Palate**

**Summary Bite.** Five muscles are associated with the soft palate. These include muscles that originate outside of the soft palate proper and insert into it and other muscles that originate in the soft palate and insert into the

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Cleft Palate**

Congenital defects of the palate, such as the various degrees of cleft palate, are discussed in Chapter 5.

**Hard Palate**

Osseous protrusions, palatal tori, may be observed on the hard palate. These tori, usually bilateral, are asymptomatic, although they can interfere with fitting of maxillary dentures. They may need to be excised surgically before the taking of impressions.
tongue and/or pharyngeal wall. All are innervated by vagal contributions to the pharyngeal plexus except the tensor veli palatine, which is innervated by the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

The muscles of the soft palate are the levator veli palatini, tensor veli palatini, musculus uvulae, palatoglossus, and palatopharyngeus (Figs. 16-1 and 16-2 and Table 16-1).

**Clinical Considerations**

**Soft Palate**

The soft palate is a movable structure and must be avoided by the posterior aspect of a maxillary denture because its muscular action will break the palatal seal and dislodge the prosthesis.

The posterior aspect of the soft palate is sensitive to touch and may induce vomiting on tactile stimulation.

**Levator Veli Palatini**

The **levator veli palatini** is a thick, pencil-shaped muscle that is intimately associated with the lateral aspect of the choana. It has three regions of origin, one tendinous and two fleshy. The tendinous origin is the inferior aspect of the petrous portion of the temporal bone on the proximal aspect of the apex just anteromedial to the entrance into the carotid canal.

![Figure 16-2](image_url). Medial view of a sagittal section of the oropharynx.
The fleshy origins are from the tympanic part of the temporal bone and from the cartilage of the auditory tube. The muscle fibers are directed medially, between the salpingopharyngeus and tensor veli palatini muscles, to insert into the palatine aponeurosis, passing between the two layers of the palatopharyngeus muscle.

As the levator inserts into the soft palate, its muscle fibers interdigitate with those of its counterpart from the other side. This muscle is innervated by the vagus nerve via its contributions to the pharyngeal plexus. The levator veli palatini, as its name implies, elevates the soft palate.

**Tensor Veli Palatini**
The tensor veli palatini, a pyramid-shaped muscle, is situated anterior to the levator veli palatini and medial to the medial pterygoid muscle. It originates in the scaphoid fossa, on the spine of the sphenoid bone, and the cartilaginous portion of the auditory tube. The fibers collect into a tendinous cord that wraps medially around the hamulus of the medial pterygoid plate to insert into the palatine aponeurosis.

The tensor veli palatini is innervated by a branch of the nerve to the medial pterygoid, arising from the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. This muscle acts to flatten and tense the soft palate.

---

**Table 16-1  Muscles of the Palate and Pharynx**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Insertion</th>
<th>Innervation</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Levator veli palatini</td>
<td>Petrous temporal, tympanic temporal, auditory tube</td>
<td>Palatal aponeurosis</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus</td>
<td>Elevates the soft palate; opens auditory tube (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tensor veli palatini</td>
<td>Scaphoid fossa, spine of sphenoid, auditory tube</td>
<td>Palatine aponeurosis</td>
<td>Mandibular division of the trigeminal</td>
<td>Tenses the soft palate, opens auditory tube (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musculus uvulae</td>
<td>Posterior nasal spine, palatine aponeurosis</td>
<td>Uvula</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus</td>
<td>Elevates and retracts the uvula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palatoglossus</td>
<td>Fascia and muscles, lateral aspect of soft palate</td>
<td>Side of the tongue</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus</td>
<td>Elevates root of tongue and constricts fauces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palatopharyngeus</td>
<td>Soft palate</td>
<td>Thyroid cartilage and muscular wall of pharynx</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus</td>
<td>Constricts oropharyngeal isthmus and elevates larynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stylopharyngeus</td>
<td>Styloid process</td>
<td>Muscular wall of the pharynx, thyroid cartilage</td>
<td>Glossopteryngeal</td>
<td>Elevates the larynx and pharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salpingopharyngeus</td>
<td>Auditory tube</td>
<td>Muscular wall of the pharynx</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus</td>
<td>Elevates pharynx; opens auditory tube (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior pharyngeal constrictor</td>
<td>Medial pterygoid plate and hamulus; pterygo-mandibular raphe; mylohyoid line of mandible; alveolar process of mandible; root of tongue</td>
<td>Pharyngeal raphe; pharyngeal tubercle</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus</td>
<td>Constricts the pharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle pharyngeal constrictor</td>
<td>Lesser and greater cornua of hyoid bone; stylohyoid ligament</td>
<td>Pharyngeal raphe</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus</td>
<td>Constricts the pharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior pharyngeal constrictor</td>
<td>Cricoid cartilage; thyroid cartilage</td>
<td>Pharyngeal raphe</td>
<td>Pharyngeal plexus and external and recurrent laryngeal branches of vagus</td>
<td>Constricts the pharynx and acts as a pharyngoesophageal sphincter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Musculus Uvulae
The musculus uvulae is a small, thin muscle lying between the two layers of the palatine aponeurosis. The muscle originates on the posterior nasal spine of the palatine bone and from the palatine aponeurosis to insert in common with its counterpart from the opposite side, forming the substance of the uvula.

The musculus uvulae is innervated by the vagus nerve via its contributions to branches of the pharyngeal plexus. It acts to retract and elevate the uvula.

Palatoglossus
The palatoglossus muscle, a small, longitudinally disposed muscle, is overlaid by a mucous membrane, thus forming the palatoglossal arch. It is a thin, cylindrical muscle originating in the fascia and musculature of the lateral aspect of the soft palate. It inserts by interdigitating with the intrinsic muscles of the tongue in its lateral margin.

Motor innervation to the muscle is derived from the vagus nerve via its contributions to branches of the pharyngeal plexus. The palatoglossus acts to elevate the posterior one third of the tongue and, acting with its counterpart on the other side, constricts the fauces.

Palatopharyngeus
The palatopharyngeus muscle and its mucosal covering form the palatopharyngeal arch. It is a long, thin, cylindrical muscle arising by two fleshy slips from the side of the soft palate, with the levator veli palatini and the musculus uvulae being interposed between the two origins. The muscle inserts, along with fibers of the stylopharyngeus muscle, into the posterior aspect of the thyroid cartilage and also into the muscular coat of the pharynx.

The palatopharyngeus receives its motor fibers from the vagus nerve via its contributions to branches of the pharyngeal plexus. This muscle functions to elevate the pharynx and larynx and to assist in closing the oropharyngeal isthmus.

Vascular and Sensory Nerve Supply
Vascular Supply

Summary Bite. The major vascular supply to the palate is provided by the greater and lesser palatine arteries (branches of the maxillary artery), whereas minor contributions are from the ascending palatine branch of the facial artery and the ascending pharyngeal branch of the external carotid artery.

The vascular supply of the palate is derived chiefly from the greater and lesser palatine branches of the maxillary artery, the ascending palatine branch of the facial artery, and the ascending pharyngeal artery from the external carotid artery (Fig. 16-1).

The greater and lesser palatine arteries descend in the pterygopalatine canal to enter the palate via the greater and lesser palatine foramina, respectively.

The greater palatine artery passes anteriorly on the lateral aspect of the hard palate to supply the palatal mucosa, gingiva, and glands, and then proceeds to anastomose with the nasopalatine artery in the incisive canal.

The lesser palatine artery vascularizes the soft palate and tonsil and then anastomoses with the ascending palatine branch of the facial artery. The lesser palatine bifurcates, and one branch travels along the surface of the levator veli palatini muscle to vascularize the soft palate. The other branch perforates the superior constrictor muscle to serve the auditory tube and the tonsil.

The ascending pharyngeal artery from the external carotid artery travels along the lateral external surface of the superior constrictor muscle, reaches the levator veli palatini muscle, and gives off a palatine branch to serve the tonsil, auditory tube, and soft palate.

Venous drainage is by similarly named veins that are tributaries of the pterygoid and tonsillar plexus.

Sensory Nerve Supply

Summary Bite. The major sensory nerve supply to the palate is provided by the greater and lesser palatine branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve as well as from its nasopalatine nerve.

Sensory nerve supply of the palate is derived chiefly from the greater and lesser palatine branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve, which also carry sensory fibers from the facial nerve via the greater petrosal nerve. Additional sensory supply is derived from the nasopalatine nerve of the posterosuperior nasal branch of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve and the tonsillar branches of the glossopharyngeal nerve.

Palatine Tonsil

Summary Bite. The palatine tonsil is a lymphoid mass that lies within a sinus between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches. It is a part of the Waldeyer ring, which guards the oropharyngeal entrance. The tonsil is richly vascularized and receives its nerve supply by the tonsillar branches from the glossopharyngeal nerve.

The palatine tonsil, located in the tonsillar sinus between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches, is an almond-shaped mass of lymphoid tissue covered
by mucous membrane (Fig. 16-1). The palatine tonsil is smaller than the tonsillar sinus, and the small triangular recess above the tonsil is the supratonsillar fossa. However, it has been suggested that this is a misnomer because tonsillar tissue surrounds this space and thus this recess is merely a large intratonsillar cleft.

The medial surface of the tonsil is visible when the tongue is depressed, and presents tonsillar crypts that may invade nearly the entire depth of the tonsil. The lateral or deep surface is covered by a fibrous capsule, separating the tonsil from the pharyngeal musculature. The palatine tonsil forms a part of the tonsillar circle (the Waldeyer ring), which guards the oropharyngeal entrance.

Arterial supply to the palatine tonsil is derived from branches of four arteries. The facial artery via its tonsillar branch is the chief vascular supplier of the tonsil, but this artery also makes a minor contribution via its ascending palatine branch. Other minor vessels serving the palatine tonsil are the palatine branch of the ascending pharyngeal, the lesser palatine branch of the maxillary artery, and the tonsillar twig from the dorsal lingual branch of the lingual artery.

Venous drainage is by way of the tonsillar plexus of veins on the deep aspect of the tonsil, a tributary of the pharyngeal venous plexus, and the facial vein.

Sensory innervation to the palatine tonsil is from the glossopharyngeal nerve and the lesser palatine branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve. Contributions are also derived from the greater petrosal branch of the facial nerve via the trigeminal nerve.

Clinical Considerations

Palatine Tonsils

The palatine tonsils of a child are much larger than those of an adult. They are prone to infection because they tend to accumulate debris in the tonsillar crypts. Frequent tonsillitis may indicate the need for tonsillectomy, a relatively minor surgical procedure in children. However, the proximity of the tonsils to the common carotid artery and the rich vascular supply of the tonsils necessitate extreme care in the procedure. Moreover, the glossopharyngeal nerve as well as an unusually tortuous internal carotid artery may also be vulnerable to injury.

PHARYNX

Summary Bite. The pharynx extends from the base of the skull to become continuous with the esophagus.

Clinical Considerations

Palatine Tonsils

The palatine tonsils of a child are much larger than those of an adult. They are prone to infection because they tend to accumulate debris in the tonsillar crypts. Frequent tonsillitis may indicate the need for tonsillectomy, a relatively minor surgical procedure in children. However, the proximity of the tonsils to the common carotid artery and the rich vascular supply of the tonsils necessitate extreme care in the procedure. Moreover, the glossopharyngeal nerve as well as an unusually tortuous internal carotid artery may also be vulnerable to injury.

The pharynx is a fibromuscular tube, 12 to 14 cm long, extending from the base of the skull to become continuous with the esophagus. It is broadest at its cranial extent and narrowest at its esophageal junction.

- Superiorly, it is attached to the basilar part of the occipital bone and the body of the sphenoid bone.
- Laterally, it is fixed to the medial pterygoid plate, pterygomandibular raphe, alveolar process of the mandible, lateral aspect of the tongue, hyoid bone, and thyroid and cricoid cartilages.
- Posteriorly, the pharynx approximates the bodies of the first six cervical vertebrae, being separated from them by the prevertebral fascia.
- Anteriorly, the pharynx has no complete wall; instead, it opens into the nasal, oral, and laryngeal cavities.

Consequently, the pharynx is conveniently divided into nasal, oral, and laryngeal parts.

Nasal Pharynx

Summary Bite. The nasal pharynx is the superiormost portion of the pharynx. It communicates with the oral pharynx via the pharyngeal isthmus, which can be sealed by the soft palate. It also communicates with the auditory tube. The posterior wall contains the pharyngeal tonsil.

The nasal pharynx is the superiormost and broadest region of the pharynx. Its walls are rigid and present, on the two lateral aspects, several elevations. Anteriorly, it begins at the paired choanae; inferiorly, it is limited by the soft palate (Figs. 16-2 through 16-5).
Figure 16-3. Muscles of the pharynx. (A) Posterior view. (B) Lateral view.

Figure 16-4. Posterior view of the palate, pharynx, and larynx.
During respiration, the soft palate is flaccid and the nasal pharynx communicates with the oral pharynx through the **pharyngeal isthmus**, a space between the posterior wall of the pharynx and the free border of the soft palate.

During deglutition, the soft palate is elevated and contacts the posterior wall of the pharynx, blocking the communication between the nasal and oral cavities.

The lateral wall of the nasal pharynx presents an opening, the **ostium of the auditory tube**, which is located inferoposterior to the inferior nasal concha. This ostium is located on the medial end of the cartilaginous auditory tube, which, protruding into the nasal pharynx, forms an elevation called the **torus tubarium**.

Behind the torus is the **pharyngeal recess**, a mucosa-lined space extending to the base of the skull. Two folds extend from the torus: the smaller salpingopalatal fold covers the levator veli palatini muscle, extending from below the ostium of the internal auditory tube to the root of the soft palate, and the larger salpingopharyngeal fold covers the salpingopharyngeus muscle, extending from the postero-inferior aspect of the torus and passing inferiorly, becoming indistinguishable as the muscle merges with the muscles of the pharynx.

The posterior wall of the nasopharynx contains a mass of lymphatic tissue, the **pharyngeal tonsil**.

**Oral Pharynx**

**Summary Bite.** The oral pharynx extends from the soft palate to the epiglottis and contains the palatine tonsil.

The oral pharynx is relatively uncomplicated, being that portion of the chamber that leads into the laryngeal pharynx. It extends from the soft palate to the...
cranial aspect of the epiglottis, which is positioned at the level of the hyoid bone.

Anteriorly, the oral pharynx begins at the oral cavity via the oropharyngeal isthmus. The lateral wall of the oral pharynx presents the palatine tonsil between the palatoglossal and palatopharyngeal arches (Figs. 16-1 through 16-5).

**Laryngeal Pharynx**

**Summary Bite** The laryngeal pharynx begins at the epiglottis and becomes continuous with the esophagus at the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage.

The laryngeal pharynx, the inferior-most region of the pharynx, extends from the epiglottis, at the level of the hyoid bone, to the esophagus, at the level of the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage (Figs. 16-4 and 16-5).

Anteriorly, it begins at the larynx, whose aperture appears to be guarded by the epiglottis—a movable, flaplike structure. The epiglottis is connected to the midline and side of the pharyngeal root of the tongue by the median and lateral glossoepiglottic folds, respectively. The resultant fossa on either side of the median glossoepiglottic fold is known as the epiglottic vallecula.

Inferior to the laryngeal opening, the anterior wall of the laryngeal pharynx consists of the posterior, mucosa-lined aspect of the arytenoid and cricoid cartilages. The mucosal aryepiglottic fold connecting the epiglottis to the arytenoid cartilage constitutes the lateral boundary of the opening of the larynx. Lateral to this fold is a fossa, the piniform recess, whose lateral border is the thyroid cartilage with its thyrohyoid membrane.

The internal laryngeal nerve and its branches pass just deep to the mucosal floor of this recess.

**Pharyngeal Wall**

**Summary Bite** The pharyngeal wall consists of an inner-most mucous layer, a middle fibrous and muscular layer, and the outer fibrous layer. Lying deep to the mucosa is the pharyngobasilar fascia attached to the base of the skull. It also attaches at various bony or cartilaginous structures along its path. Finally, it attaches to the pharyngeal raphe, a longitudinal fibrous band on the posterior wall of the pharynx.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Adenoids**

Adenoids is the term that commonly refers to the pathologic state when the pharyngeal tonsil becomes hypertrophied due to infection. Excessive hypertrophy partially (or completely) blocks the posterior choanae, necessitating mouth breathing and causing nasal speech and loud snoring during sleep. Persistent inflammation and infection of the pharyngeal tonsil may lead to spreading of the infection into the internal auditory tube, resulting in otitis media, with subsequent temporary or permanent hearing loss. The infection may eventually reach the mastoid air cells. Although in the past this was a relatively common disease (treated with mastoidectomy), the advent of antibiotics has done much to control and subdue it.

**Adenoids**

Clinical Considerations

**Pharynx**

The laryngopharynx, specifically the piriform recess, is a common site for lodging of sharp objects, such as chicken and fish bones. The presence of foreign material in this region causes gagging, and the person is unable to remove the irritant. Care must be exercised in working in the piriform recess, for deep to the mucous membrane is the internal laryngeal nerve, which may be damaged during probing procedures.
The pharyngeal wall is composed of three layers: an inner-most mucous layer, a middle fibrous and muscular layer, and an outer fibrous layer. The mucosa lining the pharynx is continuous with the mucosa of the chambers into which the pharynx opens. Hence, it is either a respiratory or an oral type of mucosa.

Just deep to the mucosa is the pharyngobasilar fascia, a layer of fibrous connective tissue that is especially thick cranially but dwindles as it progresses caudally. The cranial portion of the pharyngobasilar fascia has no muscular covering. It is attached to the base of the skull at various points: at the basilar portion of the occipital bone, anterior to the pharyngeal tubercle; at the petrous temporal bone; and at the medial pterygoid plate. Further anteriorly, it is attached to structures in the neck, thyroid cartilage, hyoid bone, stylohyoid ligament, and pterygomandibular raphe. A region of this fascia is attached posteriorly to a strong, longitudinally oriented, fibrous band of connective tissue, the pharyngeal raphe, which extends from the pharyngeal tubercle of the occipital bone almost to the caudal border of the pharynx.

The constrictor muscles of the pharynx insert into the pharyngeal raphe. The muscular layer of the pharynx is positioned between the pharyngobasilar fascia and the thin, outer-most layer of the pharynx, the buccopharyngeal fascia. Cranially, in the region devoid of the superior constrictor, this fascia fuses with the pharyngobasilar fascia.

Nerves and vessels traveling along the pharynx course in the buccopharyngeal fascia.

Muscles of the Pharynx

**Summary Bite.** In addition to the superior, middle, and inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscles of the pharynx, additional accessory muscles originate from other areas and insert into the pharynx.

The musculature of the pharynx is composed of the superior, middle, and inferior pharyngeal constrictors as well as the stylopharyngeus, salpingopharyngeus, and palatopharyngeus muscles (the last muscle is discussed earlier in this chapter; Figs. 16-2 through 16-5, and Table 16-1).

The constrictor muscles partly overlap each other and may be visualized as three sleeves partially telescoped inside one another from superior to inferior.

**Superior Pharyngeal Constrictor**

The superior pharyngeal constrictor is a thin, quadrilateral muscle whose fibers originate from the pterygoid hamulus and an adjoining region of the medial pterygoid plate, the pterygomandibular raphe, the posterior quarter of the mylohyoid line, the alveolar process of the mandible, and the lateral aspect of the root of the tongue.

The muscle fibers curve posteriorly to insert into the pharyngeal raphe and pharyngeal tubercle. A thin slip of this muscle, couched on the internal surface of its cranial portion, passes lateral to the levator veli palatini muscle. It arises from the palatal aponeurosis and merges with the fibers of the main muscle mass of the superior constrictor. This muscle slip, the palatopharyngeal sphincter, produces a ridge, the bar of Passavant, on the posterior pharyngeal wall, which is contacted by the elevated soft palate during deglutition, effectively separating the nasal pharynx from the oral pharynx.

The superior constrictor, innervated by the vagus nerve via its contributions to branches of the pharyngeal plexus, acts to constrict the pharynx.

**Middle Pharyngeal Constrictor**

The middle pharyngeal constrictor, a fan-shaped muscular sheet, originates on the lesser and greater cornua of the hyoid bone and the stylohyoid ligament. The cranial fibers pass superficial to the superior constrictor muscle, thus covering part of it; the inferior fibers pass deep to the inferior constrictor muscle. The middle constrictor inserts into the median raphe.

The middle pharyngeal constrictor is innervated by the vagus nerve via its contributions to branches of the pharyngeal plexus and acts to constrict the pharynx.

**Inferior Pharyngeal Constrictor**

The inferior pharyngeal constrictor, the caudal-most of the three constrictors, envelopes the lower part of the middle constrictor. It arises from the lateral aspect of the cricoid cartilage, from the oblique line of the thyroid cartilage and the area behind it, to insert into the pharyngeal raphe. The caudal-most fibers of the inferior constrictor are continuous with the cranial-most, circular inner muscle fibers of the esophagus.

The inferior constrictor receives its motor nerve supply from the vagus nerve via its contributions to branches of the pharyngeal plexus and from the external and recurrent laryngeal branches of the vagus nerve.

Functionally, the inferior constrictor may be considered to have two parts: the superior thyropharyngeal and the inferior cricopharyngeal. The former constricts the pharynx, and the latter acts as a pharyngoesophageal sphincter, preventing reflux of esophageal contents into the pharynx.

**Stylopharyngeus**

The stylopharyngeus muscle, a long, thin, cylinder-shaped muscle, arises from the styloid process of the
temporal bone and passes inferomedially between the middle and superior pharyngeal constrictor muscles to insert in common with the palatopharyngeus muscle on the dorsal aspect of the thyroid cartilage.

The stylopharyngeus is the only muscle to receive its motor innervation from the glossopharyngeal nerve. It acts to elevate the larynx and pharynx.

**Salpingopharyngeus**

The salpingopharyngeus muscle is a thin, fusiform muscle arising from the inferior aspect of the cartilaginous auditory tube at its terminal end in the nasopharynx. The salpingopharyngeus passes inferiorly, deep to the pharyngeal mucosa, to insert into the muscular wall of the pharynx by interdigitating with the fibers of the palatopharyngeus muscle.

The salpingopharyngeus is innervated by the vagus nerve via its contributions to branches of the pharyngeal plexus. It functions in elevating the pharynx and may assist in opening the auditory tube during deglutition.

**Vascular and Sensory Nerve Supply of the Pharynx**

**Vascular Supply**

**Summary Bite.** Pharyngeal branches from the external carotid artery, the maxillary artery, and branches of the facial artery supply the pharynx. The caudal portion of the pharynx is supplied by the superior and inferior thyroid arteries.

Arterial supply of the cranial portion of the pharynx is derived chiefly from the ascending pharyngeal branch of the external carotid artery, the pharyngeal branches of the maxillary artery, and the ascending palatine and tonsillar branches of the facial artery.

The superior thyroid and, to a lesser extent, the inferior thyroid arteries supply the caudal portion of the pharynx.

Venous drainage is via a plexus of veins, the pharyngeal plexus, located between the prevertebral fascia and the constrictor muscles. This plexus is drained by the pterygoid plexus of veins and the internal jugular and facial veins.

**Sensory Nerve Supply**

**Summary Bite.** Sensory nerves to the naso- and oropharynx are branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal and glossopharyngeal nerves, whereas the sensory supply to the remainder of the pharynx is supplied by the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves.

Sensory innervation of the nasopharynx and part of the oropharynx is via branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal and glossopharyngeal nerves.

The remainder of the pharynx is supplied by branches of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves. In addition, as indicated previously, overlapping innervation in the region of the fauces is provided by the facial nerve via its greater petrosal branch.

**ESOPHAGUS**

**Summary Bite.** The esophagus serves as a passageway for food from the pharynx to the stomach. The trachea lies anterior to it, and the groove between these two structures is a passageway for the recurrent laryngeal nerve.

The esophagus is a 25-cm long muscular tube whose main function is to serve as a passageway for food from the pharynx to the stomach (Fig. 16-4).

Along its length, the esophagus resides in the neck, thorax, and abdomen. It is situated somewhat anterior to the bodies of the vertebrae, until it pierces the diaphragm to enter the abdomen. The lumen of the esophagus is normally closed in its cervical and abdominal portions, whereas the thoracic portion is usually partially patent and contains air.

The esophagus is in close association with various important structures along its descent through the neck and thorax, but only its cervical relations will be considered here.

It begins at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra, as a continuation of the pharynx, near the inferior border of the cricoid cartilage, where the esophagus lies on the prevertebral fascia over the longus colli muscle. The trachea lies directly anterior to the esophagus, thus creating a tracheoesophageal groove in which the recurrent laryngeal nerve makes its ascent.

Lateral to the esophagus is the carotid sheath, with its neurovascular contents. The thyroid gland, specifically its lateral lobes, is also in close association with the lateral aspect of the esophagus. Although the microscopic anatomy of the esophagus is not pertinent to the study of its gross morphology, mention should be made of the fact that the external muscular layers are composed of skeletal muscle in the cervical portion of the esophagus, smooth muscle in the lower thoracic and abdominal regions, and a combination of the two in the upper and middle thoracic regions.

Vascular supply of the cervical portion of the esophagus is via the inferior thyroid arteries and veins, and its nerve supply is derived from the recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve, and the cervical sympathetic trunk.
Clinical Considerations

Esophageal Defects

A relatively common type of developmental defect of the esophagus is the tracheoesophageal fistula, which usually occurs just cranial to or at the bifurcation of the trachea. This anomaly is less common in females than in males. The fistula provides esophageal (and occasionally gastric) contents with free access to the respiratory system. This defect is the result of abnormal partitioning of the esophagus and trachea by the tracheoesophageal septum during embryonic development.

LARYNX

Summary Bite. The larynx is continuous with the laryngeal pharynx cranially and with the trachea caudally (Figs. 16-3, 16-4, 16-6, and 16-7).

It is a passageway for inspired and expired air; a sphincter preventing the entry of solids or liquids into the respiratory system caudal to itself; and an organ of phonation permitting the production and modulation of sound.

The larynx, or voice box, is continuous with the laryngeal pharynx cranially and with the trachea caudally (Figs. 16-3, 16-4, 16-6, and 16-7).

It is a passageway for inspired and expired air; a sphincter preventing the entry of solids or liquids into the respiratory system caudal to itself; and an organ of phonation permitting the production and modulation of sound.

It is composed of a series of cartilages, muscles, membranes, and ligaments that, acting in concert,
accomplish these functions. It is interesting to note that the larynx of the male and female are the same size before puberty; however, in adults the male larynx is larger than that of the female.

The larynx lies anteriorly in the midline of the neck and is covered by skin, the infrahyoid group of muscles, and associated fascia. The great vessels of the neck pass posterolateral to it. It is lined by a mucous membrane, which is continuous with and similar to those of the pharynx and trachea. This membrane is modified in places to form two pairs of folds, the cranially positioned ventricular fold (false vocal folds) and the caudally placed vocal folds (true vocal folds), the latter overlying the vocalis muscles and being responsible for the formation of sound (Fig. 16-7).

It is convenient to describe the cavity of the larynx as consisting of three compartments: the vestibule, the ventricle, and the infraglottic cavity.

- The **vestibule** extends from the superior laryngeal aperture (aditus) to the rima glottidis (the space between the two true vocal folds and the two arytenoid cartilages).
- The **ventricle** is a space lying directly between the ventricular and vocal cords, being lateral outpocketings of the vestibule.

- The **infraglottic cavity** is the space between the rima glottidis and the beginning of the tracheal cavity.

Laryngeal Cartilages

**Summary Bite.** Nine cartilages make up the framework of the larynx: the unpaired thyroid, cricoid, and epiglottic cartilages and the paired arytenoid, cuneiform, and corniculate cartilages. Most of these cartilages serve as origins or insertion sites for the intrinsic muscles.

**Thyroid Cartilage**

The **thyroid cartilage** is composed of two quadrilateral plates, the right and left laminae, which fuse to form the **laryngeal prominence** (Adam’s apple) of the neck. The angle of fusion is more acute in the male than in the female, accounting for the sexual dimorphism evidenced by this structure. Superiorly, this prominence ends in the **superior thyroid notch** and, inferiorly, in the inferior thyroid notch. The superior and inferior borders of each lamina end posteriorly in a superior and inferior cornu, respectively.

The posterolateral surface of the cartilage bears the **oblique line**, extending from the superior to the inferior thyroid tubercles. The medial surface of the thyroid lamina is smooth and unremarkable.
Cricoid Cartilage
The cricoid cartilage is a ring-shaped structure whose width is greater posteriorly than anteriorly. It comprises the anteroinferior and lateroinferior walls as well as most of the posterior wall of the larynx. It consists of a quadrilateral, dorsal lamina and a ventral, narrow arch. At each junction of the lamina and the arch are the facets for articulation of the cricoid with the inferior cornua of the thyroid cartilage.

The internal surface of the cricoid cartilage is smooth and unremarkable. The superior margin of the lamina on either side of the midline bears two elliptical depressions for articulation with the arytenoid cartilages.

Epiglottic Cartilage
The epiglottic cartilage, an unpaired, leaflike elastic cartilage, is attached by the thyroepiglottic ligament to the internal aspect of the laryngeal prominence, just inferior to the superior thyroid notch. This ligament attaches to the slender petiole, the narrow, inferior, stalklike extension of the epiglottic cartilage.

The broad, leaf-shaped, superior portion of the epiglottic cartilage extends cranial but in a posterior direction behind the tongue and hyoid bone, projecting above and anterior to the superior laryngeal aperture. Laterally, the aryepiglottic folds attach the epiglottis to the arytenoid cartilages.

The epiglottis is invested by a mucous membrane that is continuous with the mucosa of the root of the tongue and the lateral pharyngeal walls. The mucosa forms three folds between the tongue and the epiglottis: the single median glossoepiglottic fold and the two lateral glossoepiglottic folds. The depressions between these folds, on either side of the median glossoepiglottic fold, are known as the epiglottic valleculae.

Arytenoid Cartilage
The paired arytenoid cartilages are pyramidal structures located on the superior border of the lamina of the cricoid cartilage. The arytenoid cartilage has a concave base that articulates with the arytenoid articu lar surface of the cricoid lamina, a dorsomedially
inclined apex to which the corniculate cartilage attaches, and three surfaces that provide attachments for muscles and ligaments.

The base has two free processes: the lateral angle, which is the muscular process, the point of insertion for the posterior and lateral cricoarytenoid muscles, and the anterior angle, or vocal process, to which the vocal cord attaches.

The posterior surface serves for the attachments of the transverse arytenoid muscles. The ventrolateral surface presents a superiorly positioned, triangular fovea containing mucous glands and providing attachment to the vestibular ligament. Positioned inferiorly is an oblong fovea that is the site of attachment for the vocalis and, frequently, the lateral cricoarytenoid muscles. The medial surface is smooth and is invested by a mucous membrane.

**Corniculate and Cuneiform Cartilages**
The corniculate and cuneiform cartilages are tiny pieces of elastic cartilage. The former articulates with the arytenoid apex, whereas the latter is attached to the aryepiglottic fold just anterior to the corniculate cartilage.

**Membranes, Ligaments, and Muscles**

*Summary Bite* The larynx is composed of several membranes and ligaments, which are associated with the muscles that move the cartilages. Tensions and movements of the vocal ligaments and vocal cords modulate the air passage through the larynx producing audible sounds.

Deep to the laryngeal mucosa is a thick, intrinsic membrane of elastic lamina whose cranial portion is referred to as the quadrangular membrane and whose caudal portion is the elastic cone.

The inferior free edge of the quadrangular membrane assists in the formation of the ventricular vocal cords. The elastic cone has a well-defined anterior portion, known as the median cricothyroid ligament, and two thickened lateral portions, the vocal ligaments, whose free edges assist in formation of the vocal cords. Two extrinsic membranes of interest are the thyrohyoid and cricothyroid membranes. The former is a thick, fibroelastic membrane suspended between the body and greater cornua of the hyoid bone superiorly and the cranial aspect of the thyroid cartilage inferiorly. It becomes thicker in its median portion, thus its name, median thyrohyoid ligament, whereas the lateral portions are called lateral thyrohyoid ligaments. The median cricothyroid ligament is a narrow band of fibroelastic tissue connecting the superior rim of the cricoid cartilage with the inferior rim of the thyroid cartilage. Issuing from the inferior rim of the cricoid cartilage and attaching to the superior rim of the first tracheal cartilage is the cricotracheal ligament.

**Muscles of the Larynx**

*Summary Bite* The muscles of the larynx may be classed into extrinsic and intrinsic groups. The extrinsic muscles have been described previously. There are six bilateral pairs of intrinsic muscles.

The intrinsic muscles of the larynx are the cricothyroid, lateral cricoarytenoid, posterior cricoarytenoid, arytenoid, and thyroarytenoid, and the vocalis (see Fig. 16-8 and Table 16-2).

**Cricothyroid Muscle**
The cricothyroid muscle is situated on the ventrolateral aspect of the larynx, bridging the space between the cricoid and thyroid cartilages (Fig. 16-6). It originates on the arch of the cricoid cartilage and fans out to insert onto the inferior margin of the lamina and the inferior cornu of the thyroid cartilage.

The external branch of the superior laryngeal branch of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve, supply motor innervation to this muscle. The cricothyroid muscle acts to elevate and tip the thyroid cartilage ventrally, thus placing tension on the vocal cords.

**Lateral Cricoarytenoid Muscle**
The lateral cricoarytenoid muscle is a small muscle originating on the arch of the cricoid cartilage to insert onto the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage (Fig. 16-6). This muscle is frequently fused with the thyroarytenoid muscle.

Inferior laryngeal branches of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve, supply motor innervation to this muscle. The lateral cricoarytenoid muscle assists in adducting the vocal cord by rotating the vocal process of the arytenoid cartilage in a medioinferior direction. This movement approximates the two vocal cords, narrowing the rima glottidis.

**Posterior Cricoarytenoid Muscle**
The posterior cricoarytenoid muscle arises from most of the inferomedial aspect of the cricoid lamina to insert on the muscular process of the arytenoid cartilage (Figs. 16-6 and 16-8).

It receives motor fibers from the inferior laryngeal branches of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve, and acts to tense the vocal cords and draw them away from each other.
Arytenoid Muscle
The arytenoid muscle, located on the dorsal aspect of the arytenoid cartilages, consists of transverse and oblique portions. The transverse portion (transverse arytenoid) is attached to the posterior surface of the lateral aspect of the two arytenoid cartilages. The oblique portion of the arytenoid muscle (oblique arytenoid) consists of two slender muscular filaments that cross over each other on the dorsal surface of the transverse arytenoid muscle. The oblique portion originates on the muscular process of one arytenoid cartilage to insert on the apex of the next (Figs. 16-6 and 16-8).

The muscle fibers frequently continue in the aryepiglottic region of the quadrangular membrane. This portion of the muscle is then called the aryepiglotticus muscle.

The arytenoid muscle is innervated by the inferior laryngeal branch of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve. This muscle adducts the vocal cords.

Vocalis Muscle
Although some authors do not recognize the vocalis muscle as a separate entity, it will be so recognized here.

The vocalis is described as arising from the thyroid lamina and cricothyroid ligament to insert into the lateral margin and base of the vocal ligament. It is often regarded as a slip of the thyroarytenoid muscle that inserts into the vocal process of the arytenoid cartilage and is attached to the vocal ligament.

The thyroarytenoid and the vocalis muscles are innervated by the inferior laryngeal branch of the recurrent laryngeal nerve. These muscles act on the arytenoid cartilages and vocal ligament to decrease the rima glottidis by approximating the vocal cords.

Movements of the Vocal Folds

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Insertion</th>
<th>Innervation</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cricothyroid</td>
<td>Arch of the cricoid cartilage</td>
<td>Lamina and inferior cornu of thyroid cartilage</td>
<td>External branch of superior laryngeal nerve</td>
<td>Tenses vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral</td>
<td>Arch of the cricoid cartilage</td>
<td>Muscular process of arytenoid cartilage</td>
<td>Inferior laryngeal nerve</td>
<td>Adducts vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cricoarytenoid</td>
<td>Lamina of the cricoid cartilage</td>
<td>Muscular process of arytenoid cartilage</td>
<td>Inferior laryngeal nerve</td>
<td>Abducts vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arytenoid</td>
<td>Posterior surfaces of the two arytenoid cartilages</td>
<td>Inferior laryngeal nerve</td>
<td>Adducts vocal cords</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse</td>
<td>Muscular process of one arytenoid cartilage</td>
<td>Apex of opposite arytenoid cartilage</td>
<td>Inferior laryngeal nerve</td>
<td>Adducts vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oblique</td>
<td>Thyroid lamina and cricothyroid ligament</td>
<td>Lateral margin and base of the arytenoid cartilage</td>
<td>Inferior laryngeal nerve</td>
<td>Adducts vocal cords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocalis</td>
<td>Thyroid lamina and cricothyroid ligament</td>
<td>Vocal ligament</td>
<td>Inferior laryngeal nerve</td>
<td>Modifies tension on vocal cord</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The thyroarytenoid muscle is innervated by the inferior laryngeal branch of the recurrent laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve. This muscle adducts the vocal cords.

Summary Bite
Movements of the vocal folds toward each other (adduction) or away from each other (abduction) either open or restrict the air passage through the rima glottides, thus causing the tensed vocal folds to vibrate differentially, thereby producing sounds of various pitch.
The vocal folds may be adducted, that is, moved toward each other, so that the intervening space, the rima glottidis, is almost obliterated. They may also be abducted, that is, moved apart, so that the rima glottidis is opened. Air passing from the trachea through the rima vibrates the tensed vocal folds, producing sounds.

The rima glottidis may be thought of as having two regions, an intermembranous region, between the vocal folds, and an intercartilaginous region, between the arytenoid cartilages.

During normal breathing, the intermembranous portion is triangular and the intercartilaginous portion is rectangular in outline. During forced breathing, the arytenoid cartilages are rotated laterally so that the vocal folds are abducted greatly, describing a triangle whose apical angle is less acute than in normal respiration. The intercartilaginous portion of the rima also becomes triangular; thus the rima is shaped like a rhomboid.

During phonation, the rima is reduced to a thin slit in both its intermembranous and intercartilaginous portions, and the vocal folds are tensed by the cranial tilting of the cricoid cartilage by the cricothyroid muscle. The pitch of the sound is directly dependent on the degree of tilting.

During soft speech, the intercartilaginous portion of the rima opens, whereas the intermembranous portion is almost obliterated.

**Vascular and Nerve Supply**

**Vascular Supply**

(Summary Bite) The vascular supply to the larynx is provided by branches from superior thyroid artery and a branch of the thyrocervical trunk. Venous drainage of the larynx is via the superior and inferior laryngeal veins.

The arterial supply of the larynx is derived mainly from the superior thyroid artery and the inferior thyroid branch of the thyrocervical trunk (Fig. 16-9). These vessels provide superior and inferior laryngeal branches, respectively, which vascularize the larynx. The cricothyroid branch of the superior thyroid artery also serves the larynx.

Venous drainage is accomplished by the superior and inferior laryngeal veins, tributaries of the superior and inferior thyroid veins, respectively.

**Sensory and Motor Innervation**

(Summary Bite) Sensory and motor innervation to the larynx is provided by several branches originating from major branches of the vagus nerve in the neck and from recurrent branches of the vagus arising within the thorax.

Sensory innervation of the larynx, above the vocal cords, is via the internal laryngeal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve of the vagus (Fig. 16-9). The

![Figure 16-9. Vessels, nerves and lymph nodes of the larynx.](image-url)
internal laryngeal nerve accompanies the superior laryngeal branch of the superior thyroid artery, pierces the thyrohyoid membrane, and distributes deep to the mucosa of the epiglottis, aryepiglottic fold, and larynx. Taste buds of this region are also supplied by the internal laryngeal nerve.

Sensory innervation below the vocal cords is via sensory fibers of the recurrent laryngeal branches of the vagus nerve.

Motor innervation of the larynx has been detailed earlier but, in summary, all intrinsic muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid are innervated by the recurrent laryngeal branch of the vagus nerve. The cricothyroid muscle is served by the external laryngeal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve, a branch of the vagus nerve.

**TRACHEA**

**Summary Bite.** The trachea begins at the inferior border of the larynx and continues into the thorax, where it bifurcates into right and left bronchi. It is a membranous structure whose patency is maintained by incomplete cartilaginous rings.

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Heimlich Maneuver**

Foreign objects, such as a piece of meat, can be aspirated into the inlet of the larynx and become lodged in the laryngeal vestibule above the vestibular folds, causing muscle spasms that tense the vocal folds, thus closing the rima glottidis. At this point, depending upon the degree of constriction, air movement into the trachea is restricted or may be completely obstructed from entering the trachea. The individual may start choking and perhaps will be unable to speak. The obstruction may result in complete asphyxiation and the person may die within approximately five minutes. Depending on the severity and condition of the patient, the Heimlich maneuver is performed to dislodge the obstruction by sudden compression of the abdomen to force a blast of air out of the lungs through the trachea and into the larynx, expelling the foreign object. When this procedure is unsuccessful, an emergency airway must be made into the trachea with a large-bore needle through the cricothyroid ligament.

**Larynx**

The intrinsic laryngeal musculature is served by two nerves, the inferior laryngeal branch of the recurrent laryngeal nerve and the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve, both branches of the vagus nerve. Because these two nerves are prone to damage, it is essential that they be protected from injury during surgical procedures. The external laryngeal nerve, passing deep to the superior thyroid artery, supplies only a single muscle, the cricothyroid. Its section does not cause excessive damage to phonation. It will, however, affect the ability to tense the vocal cords and the ability of the patient to produce high-pitched sounds. In addition, damage to it causes some hoarseness and easy tiring of the voice.

Damage to the recurrent laryngeal or the inferior laryngeal nerves will result in serious complications, whose severity depends on the degree of damage and whether the injury is bilateral. Involvement may range from slight hoarseness to complete inability to vocalize and breathe, necessitating performance of a tracheotomy.

**Tracheotomy**

Tracheotomy is a surgical procedure performed to provide an airway passage to relieve dyspnea. This procedure is now generally used only for long-term maintenance of airway passage. Although the procedure may be performed any place along the trachea between the cricoid cartilage and the jugular notch, several complications may result because of the possibility of severing major venous channels and the isthmus of the thyroid gland overlying the trachea.

A much safer emergency procedure for opening the airway is **cricothyrotomy**, in which opening the passageway is accomplished by incising the cricothyroid membrane between the thyroid and cricoid cartilages. This procedure is easily performed, having few possible complications.
The trachea begins at the inferior border of the larynx, to which it is attached by the cricotracheal ligament (Figs. 16-3 and 16-6). The trachea enters the thoracic cavity, where it bifurcates, forming the right and left bronchi.

The cervical portion of the trachea is superficial, being only partially covered by the infrahyoid muscles. Its superior portion may be palpated between the sternal heads of the sternocleidomastoid muscles as well as in the jugular notch. It is a membranous structure, whose lumen is maintained by incomplete cartilaginous rings distributed more or less evenly along the length of the tube. The complete portion of the ring is placed anteriorly, and the posteriorly placed interval contains smooth muscle fibers that are able to regulate the size of the lumen to a limited extent.

**DEGLUTITION**

| Summary Bite. Deglutition (swallowing) is a complex and incompletely understood process. Generally, there is agreement that the process, though continuous, is divided into three stages: voluntary, involuntary, and final stages. Deglutition, or the act of swallowing, is a complex neuromuscular phenomenon that is only incompletely understood. For this reason, the anatomy of deglutition is an area rife with disagreement. The present discussion focuses on generally accepted aspects of deglutition. Although the act of swallowing, once initiated, is a continuous process, it is divided into three phases here for the sake of convenience: voluntary, involuntary, and final stages.

- The **voluntary**, or first, stage involves formation of the bolus of food by the actions of the tongue against the hard palate and by the assistance of the soft palate as it approximates the back of the tongue. Once the bolus is ready, the suprahyoid muscles fix the hyoid bone and the tongue forces the bolus through the oropharyngeal isthmus.
- The **involuntary** or second, stage of deglutition is initiated when the bolus enters the oral pharynx. The levator veli palatini and tensor veli palatini muscles elevate and tense the soft palate, which comes into contact with the bar of Passavant, thus isolating the nasopharynx from the oral pharynx.
- The **final stage** of deglutition begins when the inferior constrictor muscle contracts, thereby forcing the bolus of food into the esophagus, whose cranial portion is completely relaxed. The esophagus, via its musculature, then performs peristaltic actions to transmit the bolus of food into the stomach.

The actions of the tensor veli palatini and salpingopharyngeus muscles also open the auditory tube. The paired palatoglossus muscles also contract, bringing the palatoglossal folds in close proximity to the back of the tongue. Thus, the bolus cannot pass laterally, superiorly, or ventrally—only inferiorly.

Simultaneously, the stylopharyngeus, palatopharyngeus, salpingopharyngeus, and thyrohyoid muscles elevate the larynx and pharynx in a dorsal direction, approximating the laryngeal part of the pharynx to the descending bolus and pulling the laryngeal inlet out of the way.

To protect the larynx, the aryepiglottic, thyroarytenoid, and oblique arytenoid muscles contract to bring the aryepiglottic folds medially, creating a chute leading to the piriform recess. The bolus of food, sliding along the sides of the epiglottis, descends via this chute to the piriform recess.
The Brain develops from five primordia. Later, as certain divisions become greatly enlarged, they overgrow other regions of the developing brain so that the adult brain, on a cursory inspection, presents only three divisions: the cerebral hemispheres, the cerebellum, and the brainstem. The largest portion of the adult brain is the cerebral hemispheres, which are generally responsible for analyzing sensory input, memory, learning, motor function, etc. The cerebellum is generally responsible for coordination, balance, and influences on muscle. The brainstem, the third part, is responsible for many basic vital life functions such as heartbeat, breathing, blood pressure, etc. Additionally, all of the cranial nerves emanate from the brainstem.

Cerebrospinal Fluid (CSF) bathes the entire central nervous system (CNS). The CNS develops from a hollow tube that later expands to form ventricles within the brain and the central canal of the spinal cord. This lumen is filled with CSF, which is produced by the choroid plexus in the ventricles. The CSF enters the subarachnoid space via certain foramina, where it circulates and is eventually resorbed into the superior sagittal sinus by elements from both the pia and the arachnoid called the arachnoid granulations. The CSF may act as a hydrodynamic protective cushion to absorb sudden traumas, in addition to providing nutrient functions.

Meninges are the three layers of membrane that cover the central nervous system (CNS). The fibrous outer layer is called the dura mater. It is firmly attached the interior of the bony cranium, whereas it is unattached to the vertebral column as it houses the spinal cord. The arachnoid, middle layer, is separated from the dura only by a simple layer of epithelium. Weblike processes extend from it into cerebrospinal fluid-filled subarachnoid space housing blood vessels between the arachnoid and the innermost of the meninges, the pia mater. The pia is closely adhered to the surface of the brain.

The Spinal Cord is a continuation of the medulla, extending from the first cervical vertebra to the first or second lumbar vertebra where the spinal cord ends as the conus medullaris. However, lumbar and sacral spinal nerves continue as the cauda equinae to exit their respective
The external aspect of the spinal dura is not attached to bone; instead, a fatty connective tissue layer, the epidural fat, separates it from the periosteum and provides further cushioning of the spinal canal. The epidural fat contains the internal vertebral venous plexus, which empties into the venous sinuses of the cranial dura.

The internal aspect of the cranial and spinal dura mater is lined by a simple, squamous type of epithelium, which separates the dura from the arachnoid. A potential space, the subdural space, is interposed between the epithelial linings of the dura and the arachnoid.

The arachnoid, a thin, avascular layer, is covered by a simple, squamous epithelium and extends thin, weblike processes into the subarachnoid space, a CSF-filled region between the arachnoid and pia mater. The arachnoid and dura, although separated from each other by the potential subdural space, follow each other’s contours. These membranes display connections at the spinal and cranial nerves, at the infundibulum of the hypophysis, in regions where vessels penetrate the dura to and from the subarachnoid space, as well as at the points where the denticulate ligaments of the pia attach and fix the pia to the dura.

The subarachnoid space contains blood vessels and CSF. This fluid exits the subarachnoid space via the specialized arachnoid granulations, which, piercing the meningeal dura in the parietal region, deliver the CSF into the lacunae lateralis, located in the fovea granularis of the parietal bone. These lacunae are drained by vessels that empty into the superior sagittal sinus.

The subarachnoid space becomes dilated in certain regions, forming cisterns, which are detailed later in this chapter.

The brain and spinal cord are invested by three layers of membranes that, in addition to providing support and protection, act as a covering for blood vessels that supply the CNS. These three layers include the external-most dura mater, the middle arachnoid, and the inner-most pia mater.

The dura mater, the outer, coarse, fibrous covering of the brain, also covers the spinal cord, and the two are continuous with each other through the foramen magnum. The dura of the brain is described in Chapter 9 (see Figs. 9-1 and 9-2); that of the spinal cord is similar in concept, but it forms no reflections as does the cranial dura. Instead, the spinal dura is a cylindrical sheath that surrounds the spinal cord as well as the spinal nerve roots that pass through the intervertebral foramina.

The pia mater is a delicate, cellular membrane that closely follows the contours of the brain and spinal cord, as well as the nerves emanating from them. Blood vessels passing through the subarachnoid space branch extensively on the superficial surface of the pia, which they pierce to enter the substance of the brain. Here, glial cells (supporting cells of the CNS) form a protective coating around the vessels, assisting in the establishment of an effective blood-brain barrier.
The brain is composed of five divisions. During early embryogenesis, the brain is noted to be composed of five divisions. Some of these divisions greatly enlarge to overgrow other divisions, causing the brain to fold upon itself such that only three regions are immediately visible in the adult brain: the cerebral hemispheres, the cerebellum, and the brainstem.

The brain, during embryogenesis, is noted to be clearly divided into five continuous parts: the telencephalon, diencephalon, mesencephalon, metencephalon, and myelencephalon, arranged in an anteroposterior (rostrocaudal) direction.

Regions of the developing brain become greatly enlarged and some of these portions overgrow others such that the brain begins to fold on itself, so much so that parts of the brain become submerged and surrounded by more rapidly growing elements. Hence, only three regions are evident on cursory examination of the whole adult brain: the cerebral hemispheres, the cerebellum, and the brainstem.

Cerebral Hemispheres
The largest portion of the brain is composed of the two cerebral hemispheres. The two hemispheres, derived from the telencephalon, are partly separated from each other by the deep longitudinal fissure, a space occupied by the falx cerebri (Figs. 17-1 through 17-3).

The surface of the brain is intimately invested by the almost invisible pia mater, which follows the convoluted elevations and depressions of the surface. Each elevation, or gyrus, is bounded by the depressions, or sulci. The locations of these sulci and gyri are relatively constant.

The cerebral hemispheres completely fill the supratentorial space of the skull and may be subdivided into regions reflecting their anatomic position. Hence, there are frontal, parietal, temporal, occipital, and insular lobes.

The surface of each cerebral hemisphere is the cortex, consisting of gray matter. Deep to the cortex is white matter, consisting of fiber tracts passing to and from the cortex and other parts of the brain.

Deep within this fibrous region of the cerebrum reside subcortical nuclei, groups of cell bodies that constitute the basal ganglia associated with somatic motor functions.

The lateral convex surface of the cerebral hemisphere resembles a boxing glove, of which the thumb, pointing inferiorly, is the temporal lobe. A deep fissure, the lateral sulcus, separates the temporal from the frontal and parietal lobes (Fig. 17-1).

Deep to the temporal lobe, forming the floor of the lateral fissure, is the insula, a cortical lobe also covered by the frontal and parietal lobes.

The occipital lobe, a relatively small, triangular portion of the cerebrum, lies caudal to the parietal lobe, forming the posterior terminus of the cerebrum.

The central sulcus, running obliquely from just behind the center of the hemisphere to, but not into, the lateral fissure, separates the frontal and parietal lobes. The gyri, anterior and posterior to the central sulcus, are known as the precentral gyrus and the postcentral gyrus, respectively. The former is a motor area, whereas the latter is a sensory area of the cortex. The sulcus caudal to the postcentral gyrus is the postcentral sulcus and the one anterior to the precentral gyrus is the precentral sulcus.

The largest, or frontal lobe, of the cerebral hemisphere is bounded anteriorly by the anterior pole, posteriorly by the central sulcus, and inferiorly by the lateral sulcus. The precentral sulcus and precentral gyrus complete the frontal lobe. The region of the frontal lobe that covers the insula is known as the frontal operculum. The operculum and part of the inferior frontal gyrus function in speech.

The parietal lobe is incompletely defined morphologically. Its anterior boundary is the central sulcus, whereas posteriorly the lobe is separated from the occipital lobe by an imaginary line extending from the parieto-occipital sulcus to the preoccipital notch. The region of the parietal lobe covering the insula is the parietal operculum.
Figure 17-1. Lateral view of the whole brain.
Figure 17.2. Midsagittal section of the whole brain.
Figure 17.3. Ventral view of the whole brain and its major arterial supply.
The temporal lobe has well-defined superior and inferior boundaries—the lateral sulcus and the inferior extent of the convexity of the cerebrum—and its posterior boundary is the imaginary line between the parieto-occipital sulcus and the preoccipital notch. Several short gyri may be observed on the inner aspect of the temporal lobe forming the inferior border of the lateral sulcus. These transverse gyri represent the primary auditory cortex.

The occipital lobe is the posterior-most aspect of the cerebral hemisphere and is separated from the parietal and temporal lobes by the imaginary line connecting the parieto-occipital sulcus and the preoccipital notch. The occipital lobe functions as the visual cortex.

The insula is the region of the cerebral hemispheres that is hidden from view by the parietal, the frontal, and especially the temporal opercula. It forms the floor of the lateral sulcus and is reported to function in taste.

The two cerebral hemispheres are structurally and functionally connected to each other by commissures, the larger of which is the corpus callosum, a midline structure forming the floor of the longitudinal fissure. The other commissure is the much smaller anterior commissure. The fornix also contains some commissural fibers, although these are not well developed in the human brain. The corpus callosum is best appreciated in the midsagittal view, where it is noted as a white, dense, salient feature of the brain (Fig. 17-2). Fortuitous hemisection of the brain displays the septum pellucidum (stretched between the inferior aspect of the corpus callosum and the fornix), which intervenes between the two lateral ventricles of the cerebral hemisphere. The two lateral ventricles communicate with each other and with the third ventricle through the interventricular foramina (of Monro), which are located just inferior to the anterior portion of the fornix. The medial aspect of the hemisectioned brain displays the cingulate gyrus, located superior to the corpus callosum. The well-defined parieto-occipital sulcus, delineating the anterior border of the occipital lobe, is also evident. The occipital lobe is subdivided into a superior cuneus and an inferior lingula by the calcarine fissure.

When the cerebral hemisphere is viewed from the inferior perspective, the occipital and part of the temporal lobes are hidden by the cerebellum and the brainstem (Fig. 17-3). The anteroinferior aspect presents the midline longitudinal cerebral fissure, lateral to which is the thin gyrus rectus and the olfactory sulcus with the attendant olfactory bulb and tract. Olfactory nerves synapse in the inferior aspect of the bulb after passing through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone.

Cerebellum

The cerebellum is a large structure displaying thin, leaflike plates, the cerebellar folia, giving the cerebellum its distinctive appearance. The cerebellum lies deep to the tentorium cerebelli and is composed of two cerebellar hemispheres and the intervening vermis (Figs. 17-1 through 17-3). This portion of the brain is derived from the metencephalon. The cerebellum consists of a thin gray-matter mantle known as the cerebellar cortex, overlying the centrally located white matter containing several nuclei. Functionally, the cerebellum may be divided into three areas. The neocerebellum is responsible for precise coordination of muscle action, especially that related to movements of the hand. The paleocerebellum functions in maintaining proper posture in response to gravity. The archicerebellum is responsible for proprioception, especially that involved with spatial orientation.

Brainstem

The brainstem, the oldest part of the CNS, is obscured by the large cerebral and cerebellar hemispheres to such an extent that only its ventral and lateral aspects are visible in the whole brain. Removal of the cerebrum and cerebellum exposes the entire brainstem, which extends from the diencephalon rostrally to the medulla oblongata caudally. All cranial nerves arise from the ventral aspect of the brainstem, except for the trochlear nerve, which originates from its dorsal surface (Fig. 17-4).

Diencephalon

Summary Bite. The diencephalon is the rostral-most portion of the brainstem. It is composed of four regions: the epithalamus, thalamus, hypothalamus, and subthalamus.

The diencephalon surrounds an ependymal-lined space, the third ventricle, which communicates with the lateral ventricles of the cerebrum via the interventricular foramen and with the fourth ventricle through the cerebral aqueduct (Fig. 17-5).

The epithalamus is the dorsal surface of the diencephalon and is composed of the pineal body (an endocrine gland), the stria medullaris, and the habenular trigone, whose nuclei and interhabenular connections are associated with the olfactory system.

The thalamus is the largest portion of the diencephalon and is separated into right and left halves by the third ventricle. The two thalami are interconnected by a bridge of gray matter, the massa intermedia (or interthalamic adhesion) (Fig. 17-2).

All sensory stimuli, with the exception of olfaction, enter the thalamus and are redistributed to the sensory cortex for finer perception via the thalamocortical
The thalamus contains many nuclei, some of which create prominent bulges on the surface of the diencephalon. The **pulvinar** is one such large caudal region of the thalamus, located just above the midbrain. Two other nuclei, the **medial and lateral geniculate bodies**, associated with hearing and sight, respectively, are located in the vicinity of the pulvinar.

The **hypothalamus** is separated from the thalamus by a groove, the hypothalamic sulcus, located on either wall of the third ventricle. This small region of the diencephalon is associated with endocrine function, sleep, emotion, and regulation of temperature. Structures of the hypothalamus evident on the ventral surface of the brainstem are the **hypophysis** (pituitary gland), the small, elevated **tuber cinereum** with the attendant **infundibulum** of the hypophysis; and the two **mamillary bodies**, located caudal to the tuber cinereum (Figs. 17-2 and 17-4).

The **subthalamus** contains one major nucleus, the subthalamic nucleus, and a few small bundles of fiber tracts. This subdivision of the diencephalon is associated with somatic efferent functions.

**Mesencephalon**

The mesencephalon (midbrain) is a short segment surrounding the cerebral aqueduct situated between the diencephalon and the pons.

The dorsal aspect, or **tectum**, contains four marked elevations: the **corpora quadrigemina**, consisting of the two rostrally placed **superior colliculi**, functionally related to the visual system, and the two caudally placed **inferior colliculi**, associated with hearing. The lateral geniculate body is connected to the superior colliculus via fiber bundles, the **brachium of the superior**...
The metencephalon is separated from the mesencephalon by the superior pontine sulcus and from the myelencephalon by the inferior pontine sulcus. The dorsal aspect of the pons, which forms the floor of the fourth ventricle, is known as the **tegmentum**.

The tegmentum contains the nuclei of cranial nerves V, VI, VII, and VIII. As the facial nerve passes over the nucleus of cranial nerve VI, it forms a bulge on the floor of the fourth ventricle, the **facial colliculus**. The **superior and middle cerebellar peduncles** connect the cerebellum to the brainstem, and cranial nerve V pierces the rostral part of the middle cerebellar peduncle (Fig. 17-5). The other three cranial nerves associated with the metencephalon leave this structure at the inferior pontine sulcus.
Myelencephalon

Summary Bite. The myelencephalon (medulla oblongata) is the caudal-most portion of the brainstem. It extends from the inferior pontine sulcus to the spinal cord, demarcated approximately by the foramen magnum.

The V-shaped lateral walls of the myelencephalon close over the fourth ventricle at the apex, the obex. Bilateral, cylindrical structures, the pyramids, are evident on the ventral surface of the medulla. Pyramidal decussations, or crossings of fibers, appear across the anterior midline fissure from one pyramid to the other (Fig. 17-4). Lateral to each pyramid is an olive pit-shaped bulge, the olive.

Filaments of cranial nerve XII are lodged in the groove (anterior lateral sulcus) between the pyramid and the olive, whereas cranial nerves IX, X, and XI are located in the groove dorsal to the olive (Fig. 17-4).

Fiber connections between the medulla and the cerebellum are via the inferior cerebellar peduncle. Located in the midline of the dorsal surface of the medulla is the posterior median fissure, lateral to which is the tuberculum gracilis, a swelling demarcating the underlying nucleus gracilis, on which many lower sensory neurons synapse. Lateral to the tuberculum gracilis is a similar swelling, the tuberculum cuneatus with the underlying nucleus cuneatus, where many sensory neurons from the upper part of the body synapse. The most lateral swelling is the tuberculum cinereum, representing the descending tract of the trigeminal nerve.

Cerebrospinal Fluid and Ventricles

Cerebrospinal Fluid

The CNS develops from a hollow cylindrical tube and retains this space in the adult as the ventricles of the brain and the central canal of the spinal cord.

The ventricles and the central canal form a continuous channel filled with CSF, a clear, colorless, acellular liquid produced by specialized structures, the choroid plexus, located mostly in the ventricles.

CSF is elaborated continuously, bathing the CNS. Some of the fluid enters the subarachnoid space via specialized foramina of the myelencephalon, the paired lateral foramina of Luschka and the single, medial foramen of Magendie.

The CSF circulates in the subarachnoid space, eventually to be transported into the superior sagittal sinus by arachnoid granulations, structures composed of elements from both the pia and the arachnoid (Fig. 17-6).

The subarachnoid space closely follows the contours of the brain, except in certain regions where the arachnoid diverges, forming larger spaces known as cisterns. The three foramina of the myelencephalon empty into the cisterna magna (cisterna cerebellomedullaris), the largest of the cisterns, located between the cerebellum and the medulla oblongata.

Two other large cisterns in the head are worthy of mention, the cisterna superior, between the cerebellum and the midbrain, and the cisterna interpeduncularis, located between the two cerebral peduncles. Hence, the CNS is completely surrounded by CSF, which may act as a hydrodynamic protective cushion, absorbing sudden traumas in addition to providing possible nutrient functions.

Ventricles

Summary Bite. The four ventricles of the brain are ependymal-lined spaces containing CSF.

The four ventricles of the brain containing CSF are the paired lateral ventricles of the cerebral hemispheres and the third and fourth ventricles. The paired lateral ventricles, the largest of the four, hollow out the cerebral hemispheres. These two ventricles...
are separated from each other by the intervening septum pellucidum, although a connection, the interventricular foramen, permits communication between the lateral ventricles and the third ventricle (Fig. 17-2). Each lateral ventricle has a body and anterior, posterior, and inferior horns.

The third ventricle is surrounded by the right and left halves of the thalamus and is interrupted by a mass of gray matter, the massa intermedia, which crosses this ventricle. The third ventricle communicates with the fourth ventricle by the cerebral aqueduct.

The fourth ventricle is located in the hindbrain and also communicates with the central canal of the medulla. CSF, as indicated previously, leaves the fourth ventricle to enter the subarachnoid space by way of the paired lateral foramina of Luschka and the median foramen of Magendie.

**Blood Supply**

**Arterial Supply**

**Summary Bite.** Branches of the two vertebral arteries and the two internal carotid arteries provide the arterial supply to the brain.

Arterial supply to the brain is derived from the two vertebral and two internal carotid arteries (Fig. 17-3 and 17-7). The vertebral arteries enter the cranial cavity through the foramen magnum and, just before reaching the pons, fuse to form the single basilar artery.

The two internal carotid arteries gain access to the cranial cavity via the carotid canals, pass through the cavernous sinus, and give branches to the brain.

The vertebral artery, a branch of the first part of the subclavian artery, supplies three named branches to the CNS: the single anterior spinal artery and the posterior spinal artery, serving the medulla and the spinal cord; and the posteroinferior cerebellar artery, vascularizing the inferior aspect of the caudal portion of the cerebellum. The vertebral arteries of the two sides join to form the single basilar artery, which travels along the ventral aspect of the pons in the basilar groove. Branches of the basilar artery are the anteroinferior cerebellar, labyrinthine, pontine, superior cerebellar, and posterior cerebral arteries.

The anteroinferior cerebellar artery, the caudalmost branch of the basilar artery, supplies the inferior aspect of the anterior portion of the cerebellum. The small labyrinthine artery serves the cochlea and
vestibular apparatus. Several small pontine arteries vascularize the pons, whereas the superior cerebellar artery passes between the cerebral hemispheres and the cerebellum to serve the superior aspect of the latter structure.

The basilar artery bifurcates to give rise to the two posterior cerebral arteries, which serve the inferomedial aspect of the temporal and occipital lobes of the cerebrum. The posterior cerebral artery possesses an arterial connection to the internal carotid artery, the posterior communicating artery, thus forming the posterior arch of the cerebral arterial circle of Willis (Fig. 17-7).

Branches of the internal carotid artery are the anterior choroidal, middle cerebral, anterior cerebral, and ophthalmic arteries.

- The anterior choroidal artery supplies the choroid plexus and portions of the cerebral hemispheres.
- The middle cerebral artery courses laterally to pass between the temporal and parietal lobes. It supplies the lateral surfaces of most of the frontal, parietal, and temporal lobes.
- The anterior cerebral artery passes anteriorly, on the inferomedial aspect of the gyrus rectus, to vascularize the medial and superior aspects of the frontal and parietal lobes. The two anterior cerebral arteries are interconnected by the short anterior communicating artery, thus completing the cerebral arterial circle.

This arterial circle, circumscribing the mamillary bodies, the hypophysis, and the optic tracts, is composed of:

**Clinical Considerations**

**Arterial Occlusion or Rupture**

The deeper regions of the brain, unlike most areas of the body, do not possess arterial anastomoses. Therefore, when an artery (e.g., one of the named branches of the circle of Willis) is occluded or ruptures, the area of the brain that is affected is often widespread and, because nerve tissue does not repair itself, the damage produced is permanent.
Figure 17-8. Brain and spinal cord and proximal portions of the spinal nerves.
of the two posterior cerebral, two posterior communicating, two internal carotid, two anterior cerebral, and the single anterior communicating arteries.

The ophthalmic artery is not associated with vascularization of the brain. It passes through the optic foramen to enter and supply the orbit and its contents.

Venous Drainage
Venous drainage of the brain arises from the pial venous plexus derived from the confluence of minute venous vessels. The cerebral veins are divisible into external and internal groups.

■ The external veins drain into the regional venous sinuses. Venous drainage of the deeper regions of the brain eventually empty into the straight sinus via the great cerebral vein. Cerebellar veins also are of two groups, superior and inferior cerebellar veins. These drain into the straight sinus or other regional sinuses.

Stroke

Stroke results from ischemic blood flow usually caused by occlusion of a cerebral artery in the brain, causing the patient to develop sudden neurological deficits. Although the first attack is not usually fatal, the patient is left neurologically impaired. Vessels of the circle of Willis provide collateral circulation to the damaged area, thus permitting some degree of rehabilitation for the patient.

SPINAL CORD

The spinal cord is an anteroposteriorly flattened cylindrical continuation of the medulla, extending from the cranial border of the first cervical vertebra to the first or second lumbar vertebra. Thus, the spinal cord of the adult does not fill the whole vertebral canal, but ends in a conical structure, the conus medullaris. The pial covering continues as a threadlike filament, the filum terminale, anchoring the conus medullaris to the coccyx (Fig. 17-8).

The spinal cord is fixed also to the lateral wall of the dural covering by toothlike extensions of pia, the denticulate ligaments, located equidistant between the ventral and dorsal roots of each spinal nerve.

Although the spinal cord extends only to L1 or L2 vertebral levels, the dural covering continues to line the entire extent of the vertebral canal, creating a large, fluid-filled subarachnoid space, the lumbar

Figure 17-9. Typical thoracic spinal cord segment and spinal nerve.
cistern, used for spinal fluid taps and lumbar punctures. The lumbar cistern contains, in addition to the filum terminale and CSF, the cauda equinae, root filaments of lumbar, and sacral spinal nerves, which must pass from the spinal cord to the intervertebral foramina of their destination.

The spinal cord, in cross section, displays the peripheral white matter, with the central gray matter arranged in a characteristic H-shaped configuration (Fig. 17-9). The horizontal crossbar of the H is represented by the dorsal and ventral gray commissures, posterior and anterior to the ependyma-lined central canal, respectively.

The legs of the H are represented by the ventral and dorsal horns. The ventral horns house the motor neurons, whose axons leave the spinal cord as ventral rootlets (Fig. 17-10). Sensory fibers enter the spinal cord as dorsal rootlets via the dorsal horns. Internuncial cell bodies occupy the dorsal gray column, whereas, at thoracic levels (T1–L2), the intermediolateral cell column houses all presynaptic sympathetic cell bodies.

The right and left sides of the spinal cord are partly separated from each other by the dorsal median septum and the somewhat wider ventral median fissure, neither of which penetrates the gray matter. Each half of the spinal cord is an apparent mirror image of the other, and the white matter of each half contains groups of nerve fiber tracts (or fasciculi) ascending or descending in the cord.
Cranial Nerve Modalities represent the seven specific functional components transmitted within the cranial nerves, including afferent (sensory) as well as efferent (motor) modalities. Although each cranial nerve may transmit one to several modalities, none carry all of them; thus, each cranial nerve possesses specific modalities that are responsible for receiving sensory input from receptors or delivering output from its motor component. An additional component, general proprioception (GP), is generally understood, if not specified, as sensory input from within the muscles innervated by those cranial nerves.

**Motor Modalities:**
General somatic efferent (GSE) represents motor innervation to skeletal muscles developed from somites.

General visceral efferent (GVE) represents motor fibers that innervate smooth muscles, cardiac muscles, and glands.

Special visceral efferent (SVE) represents motor fibers to skeletal muscles of branchiomerteric origin (pharyngeal arch origin).

**Sensory Modalities:**
General somatic afferent (GSA) represents general sensation (touch, pressure, temperature, pain) from the skin about the anterior face and lateral head.
CRANIAL NERVES

Twelve pairs of cranial nerves originate in the brain, leave its surface, and pass through certain foramina of the skull to be distributed in and about the head and neck. One cranial nerve, the vagus, continues into the thorax and abdomen to innervate some of the viscera. The cranial nerves are named and numbered sequentially with roman numerals, progressing rostrally to caudally:

I. Olfactory
II. Optic
III. Oculomotor
IV. Trochlear
V. Trigeminal
VI. Abducens
VII. Facial
VIII. Vestibulocochlear
IX. Glossopharyngeal
X. Vagus
XI. Accessory
XII. Hypoglossal

As explained earlier, peripheral nerves consist of several nerve fiber types specific for their function. Typically, each peripheral nerve contains somatic and visceral components, each with afferent and efferent fibers.

Peripheral nerves emanating from the brain (known as cranial nerves) are more complex than those arising from the spinal cord, since these nerves serve special sensory functions—such as hearing, seeing, smelling, and tasting—in addition to supplying special skeletal muscles of branchiomerin origin.

The cranial nerves, then, carry certain components in addition to the general somatic and general visceral components carried by spinal nerves, designated as special somatic afferent, special visceral afferent, and special visceral efferent.

CRANIAL NERVE MODALITIES

General visceral afferent (GVA) represents general sensation from the viscera, generally perceived as pressure and/or pain.

Special somatic afferent (SSA) represents special sensation from the eye (vision) and the ear (auditory and equilibrium).

Special visceral afferent (SVA) represents visceral sensations of smell (olfaction) and taste (gustatory).

General somatic afferent (GSA)—General sensation in function. For example, the trigeminal nerve serves much of the skin and the mucous membranes of the face, whereas the facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves serve the area of the ear with general sensation.

General somatic efferent (GSE)—General motor in function to skeletal muscles. This grouping is carried by the oculomotor, trochlear, abducent, and hypoglossal nerves innervating musculature derived from somites.

General visceral afferent (GVA)—General sensation from the viscera included in the facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves.

General visceral efferent (GVE)—Visceral motor (parasympathetic) to the viscera. Only four cranial nerves transmit parasympathetic fibers: the oculomotor, facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves.

Special somatic afferent (SSA)—Special sensory in function from the eye and ear. The cranial nerves carrying this component are the optic and vestibulocochlear nerves.

Special visceral afferent (SVA)—Special sensory in function from the viscera. These fibers are associated with the special senses of smell, carried in the olfactory nerve; and taste, transmitted in the facial, glossopharyngeal, and vagus nerves. An easy way to remember the difference between SSA and SVA fibers is that for SVA fibers to be activated, the material has to be dissolved in a fluid (saliva or mucus).

Special visceral efferent (SVE)—Special motor to the branchiomeric musculatures. This component is carried to the muscles derived from the pharyngeal arches and is transmitted by the nerves of those arches: the trigeminal, facial, glossopharyngeal, accessory (contributions to the pharyngeal plexus), and vagus nerves.

As with the typical spinal nerve, cell bodies of afferent nerve fibers of cranial nerves are located in sensory ganglia outside the central nervous system, that is, outside the brain. Central processes of these
fibers pass via the cranial nerves into the brain to terminate on neurons that relay impulses for processing, sorting out, and coordinating the information before initiation of a motor response that may or may not be at a conscious level.

All of the interconnections and workings of the brain are extremely complicated and beyond the scope of this text. Readers who want more information about this subject are referred to standard textbooks of neuroanatomy.

Each of the 12 cranial nerves is described in the following sections, including information on the location of the cell bodies, the components carried, connections with other nerves, and finally the distribution and function. A summary of this information is presented in tabular form in Table 18-1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nerve</th>
<th>Components</th>
<th>Cell Bodies</th>
<th>Peripheral Distribution</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I Olfactory</td>
<td>SVA</td>
<td>Olfactory epithelial cells</td>
<td>Olfactory nerves</td>
<td>Smell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II Optic</td>
<td>SSA</td>
<td>Ganglion cells of retina</td>
<td>Rods and cones</td>
<td>Vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III Oculomotor</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Nucleus III</td>
<td>Levator palpebrae; recti: superior, medial, inferior; and inferior oblique</td>
<td>Eye movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVE</td>
<td>Edinger-Westphal nucleus</td>
<td>Ciliary ganglion—Ciliary body—Sphincter pupillae</td>
<td>Contraction of pupil and accomodation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GP</td>
<td>Mesencephalic nucleus V</td>
<td>Ocular muscles</td>
<td>Kinesthetic sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV Trochlear</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Nucleus IV</td>
<td>Superior oblique</td>
<td>Ocular movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GP</td>
<td>Mesencephalic nucleus V</td>
<td>Superior oblique</td>
<td>Kinesthetic sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V Trigeminal</td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Trigeminal ganglion</td>
<td>Ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions to mucous membranes and skin of face</td>
<td>General sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Motor nucleus V</td>
<td>Temporalis, maseter, pterygoids, anterior belly of digastac, mylohyoid, tensors palatini and tympani</td>
<td>Mastication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GP</td>
<td>Mesencephalic nucleus V</td>
<td>Muscles of mastication</td>
<td>Kinesthetic sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI Abducens</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Nucleus VI</td>
<td>Lateral rectus</td>
<td>Eye movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GP</td>
<td>Mesencephalic nucleus V</td>
<td>Lateral rectus</td>
<td>Kinesthetic sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII Facial</td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Motor nucleus VII</td>
<td>Muscles of facial expression, stapedius, stylohyoid, post, belly of digastac</td>
<td>Facial expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVE</td>
<td>Salivatory nucleus</td>
<td>Greater petrosal—pterygopatine ganglion—nasal mucosa, lacrimal gland; chorda tympani—lingual nerve, submandibular ganglion—submandibular, sublingual glands</td>
<td>Secretomotor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVA</td>
<td>Geniculate ganglion</td>
<td>Chorda tympani—lingual nerve—taste buds anterior two-thirds tongue</td>
<td>Taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVA</td>
<td>Geniculate ganglion</td>
<td>Greater petrosal, chorda tympani</td>
<td>Visceral sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Geniculate ganglion</td>
<td>Auricular branch—ear and mastoid</td>
<td>Cutaneous sensation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
Table 18-1 Cranial Nerves

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nerve</th>
<th>Components</th>
<th>Cell Bodies</th>
<th>Peripheral Distribution</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VIII Vestibulocochlear</td>
<td>SSA</td>
<td>Spiral ganglion</td>
<td>Organ of Corti</td>
<td>Hearing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SP</td>
<td>Vestibular ganglion</td>
<td>Vestibular mechanism</td>
<td>Balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX Glosso-pharyngeal</td>
<td>SVA</td>
<td>Inferior ganglion IX</td>
<td>Lingual br.—taste buds posterior one-third tongue, circumvallate papillae</td>
<td>Taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVA</td>
<td>Inferior ganglion IX</td>
<td>Tympanic nerve—middle ear, pharynx, tongue, carotid sinus</td>
<td>Visceral sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVE</td>
<td>Salivatory nucleus</td>
<td>Tympanic—lesser petrosal—otic ganglion auriculotemporal to parotid gland</td>
<td>Secretomotor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Inferior ganglion IX</td>
<td>External ear</td>
<td>Cutaneous sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Nucleus ambiguus</td>
<td>Stylopharyngeus</td>
<td>Swallowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X Vagus</td>
<td>GVE</td>
<td>Dorsal motor nucleus X</td>
<td>Cardiac nerves and plexus, ganglia on heart; pulmonary plexus, ganglia respiratory tract; esophageal, gastric, celiac plexus; myenteric and submucous plexus—to transverse colon</td>
<td>Smooth muscle and glands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Nucleus ambiguus</td>
<td>Pharyngeal br., superior, inferior laryngeal nerves</td>
<td>Swallowing, speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVA</td>
<td>Inferior ganglion X</td>
<td>All fibers in all branches</td>
<td>Visceral sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVA</td>
<td>Inferior ganglion X</td>
<td>Br. to epiglottis, base of tongue, taste buds</td>
<td>Taste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Superior ganglion X</td>
<td>Auricular br.—ear, meatus</td>
<td>Cutaneous sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI Accessory</td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Nucleus ambiguus</td>
<td>Communication to vagus—muscles of pharynx and larynx</td>
<td>Swallowing, speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Upper spinal cord—lat. column</td>
<td>Spinal portion—sternocleidomastoid, trapezius</td>
<td>Movement, head and shoulder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII Hypoglossal</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Nucleus XII</td>
<td>Brs. intrinsic, extrinsic muscles of tongue</td>
<td>Tongue movement</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary Bite. SSA is the only modality carried by the optic nerve.

Summary Bite. SVA is the only modality carried by the olfactory nerve.

Cell bodies of the olfactory nerve, the nerve of smell, are found in the olfactory mucosa situated over the superior nasal concha. Axons of the olfactory nerve pass through the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone to terminate in the olfactory bulb, which is connected to the brain by the olfactory tract, technically a part of the brain (Fig. 18-1 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5).
III. OCULOMOTOR NERVE

Summary Bite. GSE, GVE, and GP (general proprioception to the extraocular muscles for kinesthetic sense) are the modalities carried by the oculomotor nerve.

The oculomotor nerve serves all of the extrinsic muscles of the eye, excluding the superior oblique and the lateral rectus muscles, with general somatic efferent innervation. A specialized group of autonomic motor cells in the oculomotor nucleus within the brain is termed the Edinger–Westphal nucleus. These are preganglionic parasympathetic neurons whose fibers are destined for the ciliary ganglion within the orbit. Postganglionic fibers from the ciliary ganglion pass to the orbit via short ciliary nerves and on to the ciliary body and sphincter pupillae muscles of the eye (see Table 18-2).

The oculomotor nerve exits the brain near the medial side of the cerebral peduncle, passes through the free and attached borders of the tentorium cerebelli, and then passes through the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus to enter the superior orbital fissure for distribution. While in the cavernous sinus, contributions from the carotid plexus are communicated to the oculomotor nerve. These communications are the postganglionic sympathetic fibers from the superior cervical ganglion destined for the dilator pupillae muscle of the eye.

Once in the orbit, the oculomotor nerve divides into superior and inferior divisions, facilitating innervation of the extraocular muscles. The ciliary ganglion...
Changes in the longitudinal dimension of the optical axis will cause images to be focused either anterior (myopia) or posterior (hyperopia) to the retina. This is usually the result of changes in the refractive elements of the eye, notably the cornea, which experiences a slight change in shape. There may also occur an alteration in the dimension of the orb. Often, both processes occur as a function of aging. These conditions can be diagnosed and treated with prescription-ground glasses that can optically correct for the alteration in the longitudinal dimension of the optical axis.

Multiple Sclerosis (MS)

Multiple sclerosis is one of the demyelinating diseases that affects the optic nerve but not the other cranial nerves. This is because the myelin surrounding the optic nerves is produced by glial cells rather than by Schwann cells, as in other cranial nerves.

Detached Retina

The 10-layered retina is loosely attached to the choroid layer of the orb and is retained in that position by the vitreous body. Sudden jolts absorbed in the orbit may detach the retina, causing a medical emergency. The detached retina is sightless but sight can usually be restored by surgical reattachment of the retina.

Cataract

Cataract is an age-related condition where the lens loses its transparency and becomes clouded, causing blurred vision. It is the major cause of poor vision and blindness throughout the world. Modern techniques now permit surgical placement of plastic lenses, resulting in restored vision.

Presbyopia

Presbyopia is associated with aging. It results from the inability of the eye to focus on close objects (accommodation), which is related to the lens becoming less elastic, thus light cannot be focused properly on the retina.
is suspended from the inferior division by the parasympathetic motor root of the ganglion. Additional communications to the ganglion are from the nasociliary nerve, a branch of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve. These communications are purely sensory, passing through the ganglion without synapsing there. Thus, these somatic sensory nerves reach their destination in the orb by way of the short ciliary nerves. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers may also communicate with the ganglion in a fashion similar to that of the nasociliary nerve; however, these sympathetic fibers are destined for the dilator pupillae muscle. The functions of these intrinsic muscles of the eye are detailed in Chapter 10.

Proprioceptive fibers of the extraocular muscles are carried in the oculomotor nerve, then transmitted to the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve to join it in the orbit, or via communications while it passes through the walls of the cavernous sinus. Terminations of these fibers are described in the section on the trigeminal nerve (Fig. 18-3 and Tables 18-1, 18-2, and 18-5).

### Clinical Considerations

**Oculomotor Nerve Injury**

Injury to the oculomotor nerve will result in palsy on the ipsilateral side with dilated pupil and ptosis. Additionally, the bulb of the eye will turn down and out with a concomitant inability to move the eye either up or down; moreover, the pupillary reflex will be lost.
IV. TROCHLEAR NERVE

Summary Bite. GSE and GP (general proprioception fibers to the extraocular muscle for kinesthetic sense) are the modalities carried by the trochlear nerve.

The trochlear nerve, the smallest of the cranial nerves, supplies the superior oblique muscle of the eye with motor innervation. This is the only cranial nerve originating on the dorsal surface of the brainstem. From there, it passes around the midbrain to pierce the tentorial dura, thus entering the cavernous sinus. While coursing through the wall of the cavernous sinus, the trochlear nerve communicates with the carotid plexus and the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve. Proprioceptive fibers from the superior oblique muscle are thought to communicate with the ophthalmic nerve at that point. On entering the orbit through the superior orbital fissure, the nerve terminates in the superior oblique muscle, which it provides with motor innervation (Fig. 18-3 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5).

Trochlear Nerve Injury

The trochlear nerve provides motor innervation only to the superior oblique muscle. When this cranial nerve is injured, the superior oblique muscle on the ipsilateral side will be paralyzed, causing the eyeball to rotate outward, resulting in double vision.

V. TRIGEMINAL NERVE

Summary Bite. GSA, SVE, and GP (general proprioception fibers to the muscles of mastication for kinesthetic sense) are the modalities carried by the trigeminal nerve.

The largest of the cranial nerves, the trigeminal nerve serves much of the face, the teeth and supporting structures, most of the anterior portion of the oral cavity, and the mucous membranes of the head with cutaneous sensation. Also, it provides motor innerva-
tion to the muscles of mastication. The nerve has two roots emanating from the pons. The larger, sensory root, which lies lateral to the motor root, contains the central processes of the neurons whose cell bodies are found in the trigeminal (semilunar) ganglion, the sensory ganglion of the trigeminal nerve. This ganglion is located under the cover of the dura in a pocket (the Meckel cave) on the trigeminal impression located near the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. Peripheral processes of the sensory neurons located in the flat, semilunar-shaped ganglion are gathered in three separate bundles. These bundles leave the ganglion as the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve. The motor root courses beneath the trigeminal ganglion, proceeds medial to the sensory root, and the two leave the skull via the foramen ovale and then join each other to form the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve. Thus, the mandibular division is mixed in function. The ophthalmic and maxillary divisions are purely sensory, and they leave the cranial vault via the superior orbital fissure and foramen rotundum, respectively.

The four parasympathetic ganglia of the head are in close association with the trigeminal nerve, although, functionally, these ganglia are not part of the trigeminal nerve. Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers arising in these ganglia are transmitted to the structures they serve by joining branches of the trigeminal nerve for distribution. The parasympathetic ganglia, the preganglionic motor root, and the associated divisions of the trigeminal nerve are listed in Table 18-2 (Figs. 18-4 through 18-7 and Tables 18-1 and 18-3 through 18-5).

**Summary Bite.** GSA is the only modality carried by the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve.

The ophthalmic nerve supplies the bulb and conjunctiva of the eye, the lacrimal gland, the skin of the forehead and nose, and the mucous membranes of the paranasal sinuses with sensory innervation. The ophthalmic nerve leaves the superior aspect of the trigeminal ganglion, then lies in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus as it courses to the orbit (Fig. 18-4 and Tables 18-3 and 18-5). Along the way, tentorial branches are supplied to the tentorium. Just before
Figure 18-5. V. Trigeminal nerve, maxillary division.

Figure 18-6. Pterygopalatine ganglion and connections.
entering the orbit through the superior orbital fissure, the nerve divides into three separate nerves: the lacrimal, frontal, and nasociliary nerves. In its course, the ophthalmic nerve communicates with the carotid plexus in the cavernous sinus and with other cranial nerves represented in the orbit. However, discussion of these communications is not warranted here.

**Lacrimal Nerve**

The lacrimal nerve, the smallest branch of the ophthalmic division, runs along the lateral rectus muscle distributing to the lacrimal gland and adjacent conjunctiva. It then exits the orbit to be distributed to the skin of the lateral aspect of the upper eyelid (Fig. 18-4). While in the orbit, it communicates with the zygomaticotemporal branch of the zygomatic nerve of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve, which is carrying postganglionic parasympathetic fibers communicated to it from the pterygopalatine ganglion. These parasympathetic fibers are then transmitted to the lacrimal gland via the lacrimal nerve, thus providing it with secretomotor innervation (see Table 18-2).

**Frontal Nerve**

The frontal nerve, the largest branch of the ophthalmic nerve, divides shortly after entering the superior aspect of the orbit into a smaller supratrochlear and a larger supraorbital nerve. The former passes medial to the latter as the nerves course anteriorly above the levator palpebrae superioris muscle (Fig. 18-4). The **supratrochlear nerve** tends to pass superior to the pulley of the superior oblique muscle. Here it provides sensory innervation to the conjunctiva and skin of the medial aspect of the upper eyelid before leaving the orbit to turn upward to supply the skin over the forehead. The **supraorbital nerve** continues forward to exit the orbit at the supraorbital notch. While passing the notch, it sends a filament
### Table 18-3  Trigeminal Nerve—Sensory Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Division of Trigeminal Nerve</th>
<th>Nerve Branch(es)</th>
<th>Foramen of Passage</th>
<th>Associated Parasympathetic Ganglion/Nerve</th>
<th>Sensory Region Served</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ophthalmic (V₁)</strong></td>
<td>Lacrimal</td>
<td>Exits Superior orbital fissure</td>
<td>Zygomaticotemporal of V₂, delivers post. para. from pterygo-palatine ganglion (VII) for lacrimal gland (GVE)</td>
<td>Lacrimal gland, adjacent conjunctiva, lateral aspect of skin of upper eyelid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Frontal</td>
<td>Exits Superior orbital fissure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supratrochlear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supraorbital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nasociliary</strong></td>
<td>Exits Superior orbital fissure</td>
<td>Ciliary ganglion (III) &amp; possibly post. sym. from carotid plexus (GVE) (Postganglionic sympathetic to dilator pupillae)</td>
<td>Orb, cornea &amp; possibly post. para. to: ethmoidal, sphenoidal, frontal sinuses; A.E. foramen—ethmoidal, sphenoidal, frontal sinuses; Mucous membranes; Ala and globus of nose; Conjunctiva, eyelid, caruncula, lacrimal sac, side of nose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long ciliary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ethmoidal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ethmoidal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Internal nasal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>External nasal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Infratrochlear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maxillary (V₂)</strong></td>
<td>Zygomatic</td>
<td>Exits Rotundum</td>
<td>Pterygopalatine ganglion (VII) delivers post. para. secretomotor fibers to zygomatico-temporal nerve for distribution to lacrimal nerve to lacrimal gland (GVE)</td>
<td>Skin of the cheek, skin of temporal region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zygomaticocanal</td>
<td></td>
<td>Delivers secretomotor fibers to lacrimal nerve for lacrimal gland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maxillary (V₂)</strong></td>
<td>Pterygopalatine</td>
<td></td>
<td>These nerves serve as a functional connection to the pterygopalatine ganglion permitting passage of post. para. to zygomatic nerve and sensory fibers from maxillary through ganglion to become other named branches of the maxillary nerve</td>
<td>Periorbita, ethmoid, and sphenoid sinuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orbital</td>
<td>Enters inferior orbital fissure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Division of Trigeminal Nerve</th>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Nerve Branch(es)</th>
<th>Foramen of Passage</th>
<th>Associated Parasympathetic Ganglion/Nerve</th>
<th>Sensory Region Served</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greater palatine</td>
<td>Exits Greater palatine</td>
<td>Pterygopalatine ganglion (VII) delivers post. para. secretomotor fibers to small glands of the nasal cavity, pharynx, and palate (GVE)</td>
<td>Adjacent soft palate, hard palate, gingiva, mucous membranes anteriorly to incisor teeth (communicates with nasopalatine)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesser palatine</td>
<td>Exits Lesser palatine</td>
<td>Delivers secretomotor fibers to glands of soft palate</td>
<td>Soft palate, tonsil, and uvula. (Many of the afferents were communicated from facial nerve)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior superior nasal branches</td>
<td>Exits Sphenopalatine</td>
<td>Delivers secretomotor fibers to glands of nasal cavity</td>
<td>Nasal cavity supplying mucous memb. of sup. and middle conchae, median nasal septum and ethmoid sinus. Major trunk is nasopalatine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasopalatine</td>
<td>Exits Incisive canal</td>
<td>Delivers secretomotor fibers to glands of nasal cavity</td>
<td>Between septum and mucous memb. to incisive canal. Serves anterior palate as far laterally as cuspid. (Communicates with greater palatine nerve)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharyngeal br.</td>
<td>Enters Pharyngeal canal</td>
<td>Delivers secretomotor fibers to glands of nasopharynx and sphenoid sinus</td>
<td>Enters pharyngeal canal. Serves m. memb. and nasopharynx to auditory tube</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior superior alveolar*</td>
<td>Enters Post or superior alveolar</td>
<td>Sometimes branched. Passes over max. tuberosity to serve m. memb. of cheek and adjacent gingiva. Enters P.S.A.F to distribute to max. sinus and to roots of 3 max. molars (except mesial buccal root of 1st molar)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Maxillary (V₂) GSA Infraorbital

Middle superior alveolar*

Anterior superior alveolar*

Inferior palpebral brs, External nasal brs. Exits Infraorbital

This nerve is a continuation of the maxillary nerve into the floor of the orbit via the inferior orbital fissure and exiting the skull at the infraorbital foramen

Lateral wall of max.sinus, enters mesial buccal root of 1st molar and all roots of premolars

Anterior max. sinus, and roots of anterior teeth, and twigs to floor of nasal cavity serving inferior meatus, and adjacent m. membrane

Skin and conjunctiva of the lower eyelid

Skin about the lateral aspect of the nose

(continued)
### Table 18-3 Trigeminal Nerve—Sensory Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Division of Trigeminal Nerve</th>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Nerve Branch(es)</th>
<th>Foramen of Passage</th>
<th>Associated Parasympathetic Ganglion/Nerve</th>
<th>Sensory Region Served</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superior Labial brs.</td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Exits Infraorbital</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Skin and mucous memb. of the upper lip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandibular (V₂)</td>
<td>Sensory root</td>
<td>Exits Ovale</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sensory and motor roots join outside the skull (F. ovale) to form a mixed nerve. Some branches are sensory, some motor, whereas some are mixed</td>
<td>Dura and mastoid air cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From trunk</td>
<td>Enters</td>
<td>Spinosum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Skin of cheek over buccinator muscle passes through buccinator muscle to serve buccal mucosa and adjacent gingiva. (May communicate with facial nerve for distribution purposes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TMJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meningeval</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From anterior division</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Articular br. to TMJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Joined by chorda tympani (VII) delivering taste fibers (SVA) to ant. 2/3 of tongue, and pre. para to submandibular ganglion (VII) delivers post.para from ganglion to sublingual and minor salivary glands of the floor of the mouth (GVE)</td>
<td>Anterior 2/3 of tongue with GSA and delivers SVA (taste) from facial nerve to taste buds in anterior 2/3 of tongue. Post.para from submandibular ganglion pass directly to submandibular gland. Those destined for sublingual gland and other minor glands reenter the lingual and get distributed to the glands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From posterior division</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mandibular teeth and supporting tissues via a dental plexus, two terminals—main trunk continues to incisor teeth, other terminal is mental nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lingual</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Skin of chin, lower lip including mucous membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior alveolar</td>
<td>Enters</td>
<td>Mandibular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental</td>
<td>Exits</td>
<td>Mental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auriculo-temporal</td>
<td>Otic ganglion (IX) delivers post. para fibers for distribution to the parotid gland (GVE)</td>
<td>Distribute superficial temporal nerves over skin of temple. Articular bra. to TMJ secretomotor fibers from otic ganglion to parotid gland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GSA indicates general somatic afferent; GVE, general visceral efferent; TMJ, temporomandibular joint.

*Posterior, middle, and anterior superior alveolar nerves communicate, forming a dental plexus before innervating the teeth.

*The masseteric nerve from the anterior division is a mixed nerve. Its sensory fibers are the articular branches to the TMJ.
Division of Trigeminal Nerve | Modality | Nerve Branch | Motor to Muscles
--- | --- | --- | ---
Mandibular (V₃) | SVE | Sensory and motor roots of the trigeminal nerve exit the foramen ovale and then join to form the trunk of the nerve, which then divides into anterior and posterior divisions. Some nerves are sensory, some motor, and some mixed. Only motor components are presented. | Medial pterygoid nerve | Tensor tympani nerve | Tensor veli palatini nerve
From Trunk
Nerve to medial pterygoid nerve | Medial pterygoid | Tensor tympani | Tensor veli palatini
Nerve to tensor tympani nerve | | |
Nerve to tensor veli palatini nerve | | |
From Anterior Division
Deep temporal nerves (anterior and posterior) | Temporals | |
Lateral pterygoid nerve | Lateral pterygoid | Masseter nerve | |
Masseteric nerve | |
From Posterior Division
Mylohyoid nerve | Mylohyoid | |
Nerve to anterior digastric nerve | Anterior digastric

SVE indicates special visceral efferent.

into the frontal sinus. The nerve supplies sensory innervation to the upper lid, forehead, and scalp as far posteriorly as the lambdoidal suture.

Nasociliary Nerve
The nasociliary nerve enters the orbit between the lateral rectus muscle and the oculomotor nerve. It then passes obliquely over the optic nerve to the medial wall of the orbit, where its terminal branch enters the anterior ethmoidal foramen (Fig. 18-4). Just before entering the foramen, the nasociliary nerve gives off an infratrochlear branch, which courses anteriorly along the medial wall of the orbit and exits at its medial margin. Along the way, the branch provides sensory innervation to the conjunctiva, eyelid, lacrimal sac, caruncula, and side of the nose. Anterior and posterior ethmoidal branches enter the same-named foramina to supply the ethmoidal, sphenoidal, and frontal sinuses. The anterior ethmoidal nerve continues through the ethmoid bone to enter the nasal cavity. Internal nasal branches arising from it innervate the mucous membranes of the nasal cavity. The anterior ethmoidal nerve continues anteriorly to exit the nasal cavity at the inferior border of the nasal bone as the external nasal branch, providing general sensation to the ala and globe of the nose.

While in the orbit, the nasociliary nerve sends long ciliary nerves to the eyeball as the nerve crosses the optic nerve. Other short filaments pass to the ciliary ganglion, establishing a close association with this parasympathetic ganglion. The long ciliary nerves and those filaments that pass to the ganglion and on to the eyeball, as part of the short ciliary nerves are purely sensory and are destined for the iris and cornea. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers communicate to the ophthalmic nerve from the carotid plexus while passing through the cavernous sinus, or they may accompany the long ciliary nerves or the short filaments to the ganglion and on to the eyeball via the short ciliary nerves. These postganglionic sympathetic fibers are destined for the dilator pupillae muscle within the iris.

Maxillary Nerve V₂

Summary Bite. GSA is the only modality carried by the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve.

The maxillary nerve, the second division of the trigeminal nerve, is purely sensory and serves the skin of the side of the nose; cheek; eyelids; mid-face; nasopharynx; tonsil; palate; maxillary sinus; and gingiva, teeth, and associated structures of the upper jaw. The nerve exits the cranial vault via the foramen rotundum after passing through the posterior portion of the cavernous sinus. From the foramen rotundum, the nerve courses through the pterygopalatine fossa to enter the floor of the orbit at the inferior orbital fissure. Here, the nerve becomes known as the infraorbital nerve, enters the infraorbital canal, and then
### Table 18-5 Cranial Nerves—Clinical Testing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cranial Nerve</th>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Assessment Technique</th>
<th>Perceived Dysfunction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I Olfactory</td>
<td>SVA</td>
<td>Patient is asked to differentiate distinct odors (coffee, vanilla) with eyes covered. Test each side independently.</td>
<td>Damage such as an ethmoid fracture may result in anosmia (loss of sense of smell).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II Optic</td>
<td>SSA</td>
<td>Eye charts are used to assess visual acuity. Visual fields are determined by examining when patient observes an object moving from lateral to medial. Ophthalmoscope used for observing retina, optic disc, and blood vessels.</td>
<td>Damage to the retina usually results in blindness to the affected eye. Damage beyond the optic chiasma will present partial visual losses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III Oculomotor</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Patient is asked to follow with his or her eyes the examiner’s finger as it moves up and down vertically and medially and laterally. Watch for crossing of eyes during convergence.</td>
<td>Damage to this modality may cause paralysis of all extraocular muscles except the superior oblique and lateral rectus. This produces lateral strabismus and inability to look vertically. Also ptosis (eyelid drooping). Damage to this modality will produce lack of pupillary reflex, dilated pupils, and lack of changes in pupil at close focus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVE</td>
<td>Examine patient for pupillary reflex with light shining on and off in each eye. Observe and compare contractions and dilations in affected and unaffected eyes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV Trochlear</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Analysis of function is performed during testing of the oculomotor nerve.</td>
<td>Damage to this nerve causes double vision and inability to rotate the eye interolaterally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V Trigeminal</td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Test for corneal reflex with whisp of cotton. Prick forehead with pin (pain), apply warm and cold objects (temperature).</td>
<td>Damage to this division will inhibit the corneal reflex and will reduce or inhibit sensation over the (V₁) zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ophthalmic division (V₁)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stroke sensory zone of (V₂) with eyes closed (light touch), prick with pin (pain), apply warm and cold objects (temperature).</td>
<td>Damage to this division will reduce or inhibit sensation over the (V₂) zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maxillary division (V₂)</td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Stroke sensory zone of (V₂) with eyes closed (light touch), prick with pin (pain), apply warm and cold objects (temperature).</td>
<td>Damage to this division will reduce or inhibit sensation over the (V₂) zone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandibular division (V₃)</td>
<td>GSA</td>
<td>Stroke sensory zone of (V₃) with eyes closed (light touch), prick with pin (pain), apply warm and cold objects (temperature).</td>
<td>Damage in this modality may cause paralysis of the muscles of mastication, thus causing the jaw to deviate same side as the lesion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mandibular division (V₃)</td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Ask patient to clench jaws, open, then move jaw side to side with resistance. Muscle strength in the temporalis and masseter should be compared from side to side by palpation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI Abducens</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Analysis of function is performed during testing of the oculomotor nerve.</td>
<td>Damage to this nerve causes double vision and paralysis of the lateral rectus muscle, thus the eye remains rotated medially on the affected side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII Facial</td>
<td>SVA</td>
<td>Test for taste for sweet and salty on anterior 2/3 of tongue.</td>
<td>Damage to this modality will reduce or inhibit the sensation of taste on the anterior 2/3 of the tongue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GVE</td>
<td>Observe tearing with pungent fumes (ammonia).</td>
<td>Damage to this modality will reduce or inhibit the ability to secrete tears from the affected side. Mucus production in the nasal cavity and salivary gland secretions from the submandibular and sublingual glands is more difficult to evaluate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 18-5 Cranial Nerves—Clinical Testing (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cranial Nerve</th>
<th>Modality</th>
<th>Assessment Technique</th>
<th>Perceived Dysfunction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Observe symmetry of face when asked to close eyes, frown, smile, whistle, raise eyebrows. Look for facial sagging of face.</td>
<td>Damage to this modality, such as in stroke, causes a paralysis of the muscles of facial expression, which causes the face to sag and an inability to make facial expressions on the affected side.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII Vestibulocochlear</td>
<td>SSA</td>
<td>Test with a tuning fork by air and bone conduction.</td>
<td>Loss of hearing by air conduction indicates a lesion or damage to the middle ear. Loss by bone conduction indicates nerve deafness. Damage to the vestibular division elicits dizziness, nausea, vomiting, and uncontrolled rapid eye movement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII Vestibular division</td>
<td>GSA (SP)</td>
<td>Test walking a straight line, dizziness. Watch for rapid eye movements.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX Glossopharyngeal</td>
<td>GVA</td>
<td>Test for gag reflex and swallowing and position of the uvula during this procedure. Test touch reception on the posterior 1/3 of the tongue.</td>
<td>Damage to this modality would reduce or inhibit the gag reflex and produce difficulty in swallowing. It would also reduce or inhibit general sensation on the posterior 1/3 of the tongue. Sensation to the carotid body and sinus would also be lost, thereby altering blood pressure and oxygen tension in the bloodstream.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVA</td>
<td>Test for bitter and sour taste on the posterior 1/3 of the tongue and on circumvallate papillae.</td>
<td>Damage to this modality would reduce or inhibit the sense of taste over the posterior 1/3 of the tongue and on the circumvallate papillae.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GVE</td>
<td>Observe saliva flow from the parotid duct.</td>
<td>Damage to this modality would reduce or inhibit saliva secretion from the parotid gland.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X Vagus</td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Have patient elevate the palate by saying “aahhhh,” swallow, and speak.</td>
<td>Damage to this component will prevent the palate from being elevated and will make swallowing and speech difficult.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI Accessory</td>
<td>SVE</td>
<td>Have patient shrug shoulders and rotate head against resistance.</td>
<td>Damage to this modality would reduce or inhibit the movement of the head and shoulders.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII Hypoglossal</td>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Have patient protrude and retract tongue.</td>
<td>Damage to this nerve will cause the tongue to deviate toward the affected side on protrusion, and that side will appear shrunken and wrinkled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GSA, general somatic afferent; GSE, general somatic efferent; GVE, general visceral efferent; SP, special proprioception; SSA, special somatic afferent; SVE, special visceral efferent.

*Note that some modalities associated with certain cranial nerves are not represented in this table because some areas of the head and neck receive overlapping innervation from several cranial nerves in addition to contributions from the cervical plexus, thereby making assessment extremely difficult.

*Because there is close association and intermingling of nerve fibers of the glossopharyngeal, vagus, and accessory nerves, it is difficult to distinguish the affected nerve in clinical testing procedures. However, the gag reflex is generally considered the definitive test for glossopharyngeal nerve damage.

*Although the vagus nerve serves visceral structures in the thorax and abdomen, the contents of the table are restricted to its functions in the head and neck.

*This assumes that the SVE component of the accessory nerve that serves the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles is from the cranial root of the accessory nerve. Remember that the SVE component of the vagus is also part of the cranial root of the accessory nerve. Therefore, damage to this root would affect both areas served by the vagus and the accessory nerves.
exits on the face through the infraorbital foramen (Figs. 18-5 and 18-6 and Tables 18-3 and 18-5).

Along its route, the maxillary nerve provides several branches in the cranial vault, pterygopalatine fossa, and orbit, as well as on the face. While in the cranial vault, its middle meningeal nerve supplies the dura. Several branches also arise from the nerve as it traverses the pterygopalatine fossa.

**Zygomatic Nerve**
The zygomatic nerve, the first branch to arise from the maxillary nerve within the pterygopalatine fossa, passes into the orbit and divides into the zygomaticofacial and zygomaticotemporal nerves. Both of these nerves enter the zygomatic bone and exit it through the like-named foramina on its external surface (Fig. 18-5). The zygomaticofacial nerve exits on the face, providing sensation for the cheek. The zygomaticotemporal nerve exits in the temporal fossa to distribute to the skin of the side of the forehead. Before leaving the orbit, the zygomaticotemporal nerve supplies a branch to the lacrimal nerve. This communication is a postganglionic parasympathetic fiber derived from cranial nerve VII, passed to the zygomatic nerve from the pterygopalatine ganglion (see Table 18-2). The pterygopalatine ganglion lies in close association with the maxillary nerve within the pterygopalatine fossa and is connected to it via two pterygopalatine nerves (Fig. 18-6).

**Pterygopalatine Nerves**
The pterygopalatine nerves are part of the maxillary nerve rather than part of the pterygopalatine ganglion, although they serve as functional communications to the ganglion by permitting the passage of postganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the ganglion to the nerve trunk for distribution to the lacrimal gland (Fig. 18-6 and Table 18-2).

Additional postganglionic parasympathetic fibers are communicated from the pterygopalatine ganglion to branches of the maxillary nerve destined for glands in the palate and nasal cavity, where these parasympathetic fibers serve secretomotor function.

There are several branches of the maxillary nerve that appear to originate from the ganglion but actually are branches of the two pterygopalatine nerves. These branches emerge after the pterygopalatine nerves have passed through the ganglion. They are the orbital, palatine, posterior superior nasal, and pharyngeal branches.

**Orbital Branches**
The orbital branches enter the orbit to supply the periorbita and the posterior ethmoidal and sphenoidal sinuses.

**Greater Palatine Nerve**
The greater palatine nerve leaves the ganglion to enter and descend in the pterygopalatine canal, finally to emerge on the palate through the greater palatine foramen (Fig. 18-6).

The greater palatine nerve serves the anterior border of the soft palate, hard palate, gingiva, and mucous membranes of this region as far anteriorly as the incisive teeth, where it communicates with the nasopalatine nerve.

In its descent in the pterygopalatine canal, posterior inferior nasal branches are given off, innervating the inferior concha and the middle and inferior meatuses.

The greater palatine nerve splits while in the canal to form a lesser palatine nerve, which exits on the palate through two or three like-named foramina serving the soft palate, tonsil, and uvula (Fig. 18-6). Many of the afferents to this region are from the facial nerve communicated to the lesser palatine nerve through the pterygopalatine ganglion by way of the greater petrosal nerve and the nerve of the pterygoid canal. These nerves are described with the facial nerve.

**Posterior Superior Nasal Branches**
Posterior superior nasal branches enter the nasal cavity from the sphenopalatine foramen to supply the mucous membrane over the middle and superior conchae, the median nasal septum, and the ethmoidal sinus (Fig. 18-6).

One of these branches, the nasopalatine nerve, is larger than the others and continues anteriorly between the median nasal septum and the mucous membrane to reach the incisive canal, through which it passes to communicate with its counterpart from the opposite side (Fig. 18-6). It serves the anterior palate as far posteriorly as the cuspid teeth, where it overlaps the distribution of the greater palatine nerve.

**Pharyngeal Branch**
A pharyngeal branch leaves the posterior aspect of the ganglion to enter the pharyngeal canal. It serves the mucous membrane and the nasopharynx as far as the auditory tube (Fig. 18-6).

**Posterior Superior Alveolar Nerve(s)**
Arising from the main trunk of the maxillary nerve, while still in the pterygopalatine fossa, is (are) the posterior superior alveolar nerve(s) (Fig. 18-5).

This nerve, which may display more than one terminal, passes down over the tuberosity of the maxilla providing branches to the mucous membrane of the cheek and the adjacent gingiva.
The posterior superior alveolar nerve then enters the same-named foramen to supply the maxillary sinus and the molar teeth, with the exception of the mesial buccal root of the first molar. Sensory innervation to this root is provided by the middle superior alveolar nerve, which is described in the next section.

**Infraorbital Nerve**

After traversing the pterygopalatine fossa, the maxillary nerve enters the floor of the orbit, thus becoming the infraorbital nerve (Fig. 18-5).

On entering the floor of the orbit, the infraorbital nerve sends a middle superior alveolar nerve over the lateral wall of the maxillary sinus, which it innervates. Branches of this nerve then enter the mesial buccal root of the first molar and all of the roots of the premolar teeth.

Continuing anteriorly, the infraorbital nerve provides an anterior superior alveolar nerve just before its exit from the infraorbital foramen. The anterior superior alveolar nerve supplies the anterior maxillary sinus and the roots of the anterior teeth. Also, small twigs of this nerve enter the nasal cavity to supply its floor, the inferior meatus, and adjacent mucous membrane.

The posterior, middle, and anterior superior alveolar nerves intermingle, forming a dental plexus before innervating the upper teeth.

As the infraorbital nerve exits the skull via the same-named foramen, it provides the following three major groups:

- **Inferior palpebral branches**, ascending to the lower eyelid.
- **External nasal branches**, serving the side of the nose.
- **Superior labial branches**, serving the upper lip.

**Mandibular Nerve V₃**

**Summary Bite.** GSA, SVE, and GP (general proprioception fibers to the muscles of mastication kinesthetic sense) are the modalities carried by the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve.

The mandibular nerve, the largest division of the trigeminal nerve, is the only division containing both motor and sensory components. The sensory fibers serve the skin about the lower face, cheek and lower lip, ear, external acoustic meatus, temporomandibular joint, and skin about the temporal region. This sensory component also supplies the mucous membranes of the cheek, the mucosa of the anterior two thirds of the tongue, the mandibular teeth, and supporting tissues and gingiva, mastoid air cells, the mandible, and portions of the dura.

The motor component supplies all of the musculature developed within the first pharyngeal arch: the muscles of mastication, including the temporalis, masseter, medial and lateral pterygoid muscles, as well as the tensors tympani and veli palatini, and the anterior belly of the digastric and the mylohyoid muscles (Fig. 18-7 and Tables 18-3 through 18-5).

As described earlier, the motor and sensory roots do not unite before exiting the skull. Rather, both roots pass through the foramen ovale and unite just outside the skull, forming the mandibular trunk. The latter is a mixed nerve that soon divides into a smaller, anterior division that is primarily motor and a larger posterior division that is mostly sensory in function.

Lying just outside the foramen ovale, immediately deep to the mandibular nerve trunk, is the otic ganglion. Although this parasympathetic ganglion (see Table 18-2) is in close association with the mandibular nerve via the nerve to the medial pterygoid muscle that passes through it, the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers synapsing within the ganglion are from the lesser petrosal nerve, a branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve.

Postganglionic fibers from the ganglion are secretomotor to the parotid gland and use the auriculotemporal nerve for distribution. The mandibular nerve possesses several branches: some from the nerve trunk, others from the anterior division, and still others from the posterior division; they are described in that order in the following sections.

**Branches from the Mandibular Trunk**

Two nerves branch from the trunk of the nerve: the recurrent meningeal nerve and the nerve to the medial pterygoid muscle.

The **recurrent meningeal nerve** leaves the mandibular trunk and ascends back into the skull through the foramen spinosum in company with the middle meningeal artery. This nerve supplies the dura, while some fibers supply the mastoid air cells.

The **medial pterygoid nerve** arises from the posterior aspect of the mandibular trunk, passes through the otic ganglion, and then enters the deep surface of the medial pterygoid muscle, supplying it with motor innervation (Fig. 18-7).

Two small branches arise from the medial pterygoid nerve: the **nerve to the tensor tympani muscle**, which penetrates the auditory tube cartilage to supply this muscle with motor innervation, and the **nerve to the tensor veli palatini muscle**, which enters that muscle near its origin, supplying it with motor innervation.
Branches from the Anterior Mandibular Division
The smaller anterior division, through its branches, supplies all of the remaining muscles of mastication with motor innervation (Fig. 18-7).

The buccal nerve is the only branch of the anterior division that is sensory in function. Arising from this division are the deep temporal, lateral pterygoid, masseteric, and buccal nerves.

The deep temporal nerves arise from the anterior division and ascend, usually as anterior and posterior branches, between the two heads of the lateral pterygoid muscle to enter the deep surface of the temporalis muscle, which they supply. Frequently, the anterior branch arises from the buccal nerve, whereas the posterior branch may arise in common with the masseteric nerve.

The lateral pterygoid nerve is very short and almost immediately enters the deep surface of the lateral pterygoid muscle, which it serves. This nerve may originate from the buccal nerve as that nerve passes between the two heads of the lateral pterygoid muscle.

The masseteric nerve passes above the lateral pterygoid muscle on its way to the mandibular notch, which it crosses to enter the masseter muscle in company with the same-named artery; it gives off a sensory twig to the temporomandibular joint before entering the muscle.

The origin of the buccal nerve (clinically sometimes referred to as the long buccal nerve) is not constant. Occasionally, it may arise from the trigeminal ganglion individually, reaching its destination via a separate foramen. Alternatively, it may arise from the inferior alveolar nerve of the posterior division. The description that follows assumes origin from the anterior division. The buccal nerve ascends, passing between the two heads of the lateral pterygoid muscle. Here it may give off branches to the temporalis and or the lateral pterygoid muscles. It then descends to ramify over the buccinator muscle, supplying sensory innervation to the skin of the cheek in the area. Other branches pierce the muscle to provide sensory fibers to the buccal mucosa and adjacent gingiva. The buccal nerve communicates with the facial nerve, forming a complex over the buccinator muscle, presumably facilitating distribution of both nerves. It should be remembered that the buccal nerve is purely sensory and does not innervate the buccinator muscle (see the VII. Facial Nerve section).

Branches from the Posterior Mandibular Division
The larger posterior division of the mandibular nerve is mainly sensory in function, with the mylohyoid nerve being the only motor nerve of the division. Nerves arising from this division of the mandibular nerve are the lingual, inferior alveolar, and auriculotemporal nerves (Fig. 18-7).

The lingual nerve descends deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle, then courses forward between the medial pterygoid muscle and the mandible, where it is joined by the chorda tympani nerve, a branch of the facial nerve. The lingual nerve then descends over the superior pharyngeal constrictor and styloglossus muscles to reach the lateral aspect of the tongue adjacent to the hyoglossus muscle. Here it lies between that muscle and the submandibular gland.

The nerve proceeds anteriorly to the tip of the tongue, lying alongside the submandibular duct just beneath the mucosa.

Fibers of the lingual nerve, derived from the trigeminal nerve, provide sensory innervation to the mucous membranes of the anterior two thirds of the tongue, the lingual gingiva, and other structures adjacent to the tongue.

Fibers communicated to the lingual nerve from the facial nerve, via the chorda tympani, serve two functions:

- One group provides special sensory fibers for taste to the taste buds of the anterior two thirds of the tongue; these fibers are distributed by the lingual nerve.
- The other group supplies preganglionic parasympathetic fibers destined for the submandibular ganglion (see Table 18-2). The ganglion is suspended from the lingual nerve as that nerve lies between the hyoglossus muscle and the submandibular gland. Preganglionic fibers (contributed by the chorda tympani nerve) leave the lingual nerve to synapse on postganglionic cell bodies within the ganglion.

Postganglionic fibers pass directly to the submandibular gland or reenter the lingual nerve for distribution (as secretomotor fibers) to the sublingual gland and other minor salivary glands in the floor of the mouth.

The inferior alveolar nerve descends along with, but lateral to, the lingual nerve in company with the inferior alveolar artery on its way to the mandibular foramen.

The mylohyoid nerve arises from the inferior alveolar nerve just before the latter enters the mandibular foramen. The mylohyoid nerve descends in the mylohyoid groove on the mandible, then enters the mylohyoid muscle, which it provides with motor innervation. A portion of this nerve continues on the superficial surface of the muscle to the anterior belly of the digastric muscle, supplying it with motor innervation.
Upon entering the mandibular foramen, the inferior alveolar nerve proceeds in the bony mandibular canal, forming a dental plexus that provides sensory innervation to the mandibular teeth and supporting structures.

The nerve divides into two terminals: one, the mental nerve, exits the mental foramen to provide sensation to the skin of the lower lip and chin as well as to the mucous membrane of the lower lip; the other, the incisive nerve, continues to supply the anterior teeth and supporting tissues with sensory innervation.

The auriculotemporal nerve originates usually via two rootlets that arise from the trunk of the posterior division. One rootlet passes deep, whereas the other passes superficial to the middle meningeal artery, forming a loop around it, just prior to the artery entering the foramen spinosum. The two rootlets then unite, forming the auriculotemporal nerve, which courses deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle.

After emerging at the neck of the mandible, the nerve turns superiorly with the superficial temporal artery within the substance of the parotid gland. It continues to ascend between the auricula and temporomandibular joint, exiting the gland to pass over the zygomatic arch to distribute sensory fibers as superficial temporal nerves over the skin of the temporal region.

In its course, the auriculotemporal nerve sends articular branches to the temporomandibular joint, anterior auricular branches to the anterior portion of the external ear, branches to the external acoustic meatus, and branches to the parotid gland. Those branches to the parotid gland are postganglionic parasympathetic fibers whose cell bodies are located in the otic ganglion. These fibers, which supply secretomotor innervation to the gland, are communicated to the rootlets of the auriculotemporal nerve from the otic ganglion for distribution to the parotid gland (see Table 18-2).

Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the ganglion are supplied by the lesser petrosal branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve.

Although the auriculotemporal nerve is strictly sensory, it and the facial nerve communicate freely about the parotid gland, each facilitating distribution.

VI. ABDUCENS NERVE

Summary Bite. GSE and GP (general proprioception fibers to an extraocular muscle for kinesthetic sense) are the modalities carried by the abducens nerve.

The abducens nerve arises from the brain between the pons and the medulla. On its course to the orbit, the nerve pierces the dura covering the dorsum sel-
The abducens nerve provides motor innervation to the lateral rectus muscle. When affected, the muscle on the ipsilateral side will be paralyzed, causing the eyeball to deviate medially, resulting in double vision.

### VII. FACIAL NERVE

**Summary Bite.** SVE, GVE, SVA, GVA, and GSA are the modalities carried by the facial nerve.

The facial nerve exhibits several modalities because its branches serve structures within the temporal bone, deep face, oral cavity, and the superficial face. The modalities carried by the facial nerve include: special visceral efferent, general visceral efferent, special visceral afferent, general visceral afferent, and general somatic afferent (Figs. 18-8 and 18-9 and Tables 18-1, 18-2, and 18-5).

The components of the facial nerve and their functions are as follows (see Fig. 18-8 and Tables 18-1, 18-2, and 18-5):

- **Special Visceral Motor component** serves all of the muscles derived from the second pharyngeal arch, including the muscles of facial expression, the buccinator, platysma, and those of the scalp and external ear, the stapedius, posterior belly of the digastric, and stylohyoid muscles.
- **General sensory component** supplies the external acoustic meatus.
- **Visceral sensory component** supplies the soft palate and some of the pharynx.
- **Special sensory component** is for taste to the anterior two thirds of the tongue.
- **Parasympathetic component** effecting secretomotor function is supplied to the lacrimal, nasal, palatine, submandibular, and sublingual glands (see Table 18-2).

The nerve possesses two roots, a large motor root and a smaller root, termed the **nervus intermedius**, containing the special sensory fibers for taste, parasympathetic fibers, and general sensory fibers. The two roots emerge from the brain between the pons and the inferior cerebellar peduncle.

These roots enter the internal acoustic meatus along with the vestibulocochlear nerve, but separate from it as the two roots enter the petrous portion of the temporal bone in a chamber of its own, the **facial canal** (Fig. 18-9).

Near the tympanic cavity, the facial nerve takes an abrupt turn inferiorly to exit the skull through the stylomastoid foramen. Located at this turn where the two roots fuse is the **geniculate ganglion**, the sensory ganglion of the facial nerve (Fig. 18-8 and Table 18-1).

Several branches arise from the nerve as it courses through the temporal bone, including the greater petrosal nerve from the geniculate ganglion, the nerve to the stapedius muscle, and the chorda tympani nerve.

**Greater Petrosal Nerve**

Arising from the geniculate ganglion is the greater petrosal nerve, which carries preganglionic parasympathetic fibers destined for the pterygopalatine ganglion along with sensory fibers for the soft palate and pharynx (Tables 18-1 and 18-2). The facial nerve leaves the petrous portion of the temporal bone via the **hiatus of the facial canal** near the foramen lacerum and then enters the pterygopalatine ganglion (vidian canal) of the sphenoid bone. Here it is joined by the **deep petrosal nerve**, a postganglionic sympathetic nerve arising from the carotid plexus whose cell bodies are located in the superior cervical ganglion. The combined nerve, known as the **nerve of the pterygoid canal** (vidian nerve), passes through the same-named canal in the sphenoid bone to gain access to the...
pterigopalatine fossa, where it joins the pterygopalatine ganglion.

Preganglionic parasympathetic fibers synapse on postganglionic parasympathetic cell bodies housed within the pterygopalatine ganglion.

Fibers of these postganglionic parasympathetic neurons are communicated to nerves branching from the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve for distribution to the lacrimal gland, as well as to small glands of the nasal cavity, pharynx, and palate.

The sympathetic component of the vidian nerve does not synapse in the pterygopalatine ganglion; instead, these postganglionic fibers are distributed in the same fashion as the postganglionic parasympathetic fibers.

The parasympathetic fibers are secretomotor in function, whereas the sympathetic fibers function mainly in vasoconstriction.

Some visceral sensory fibers from the geniculate ganglion travel along with the greater petrosal nerve to be distributed ultimately by branches of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve to the area of the soft palate via the lesser palatine nerve.

**Nerve to the Stapedius Muscle**

The nerve to the stapedius muscle, arising from the facial nerve as it descends across the tympanum, provides motor fibers to that muscle.

**Chorda Tympani Nerve**

The chorda tympani nerve arises from the facial nerve trunk just before the trunk's exit from the stylomastoid foramen. The chorda tympani courses cranialward in a canal of its own, diverging away from
the main nerve, bending to pass over the tympanic membrane and across the manubrium of the malleus. It leaves the tympanic cavity to enter a canal in the petrotympanic fissure, then exits the skull at the spine of the sphenoid bone. The chorda tympani nerve, which may receive a communication from the otic ganglion, joins the lingual branch of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve for distribution. It contains special sensory fibers destined for taste buds on the anterior two thirds of the tongue and preganglionic parasympathetic fibers destined for the submandibular ganglion (see Figs. 18-7 and 18-8 and Tables 18-1 and 18-2).

The submandibular ganglion, suspended by short nerve filaments from the lingual nerve as it passes the hyoglossus muscle, receives the preganglionic parasympathetic fibers of the chorda tympani nerve via the parasympathetic root (Fig. 18-7). Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the submandibular ganglion pass to the submandibular gland or reenter the lingual nerve to be distributed to the sublingual gland and minor salivary glands in the floor of the mouth, providing them with secretomotor innervation. Sympathetic stimulation of the salivary glands is accomplished by postganglionic sympathetic fibers accompanying the arteries serving the glands. The function of this stimulation is generally to elicit vasoconstriction.

Beyond the origin of the chorda tympani nerve, the facial nerve exits the skull through the stylomastoid foramen. There, it gives rise to the posterior auricular nerve and the nerves to the posterior digastric and stylohyoid muscles. It then passes into the retro-mandibular fossa to enter the substance of the parotid gland to form the parotid plexus.

**Posterior Auricular Nerve**

As the facial nerve exits the stylomastoid foramen, the posterior auricular nerve arises from it to pass superiorly between the auricle and the mastoid process. It divides into occipital and auricular branches after communicating with the auricular branch of the vagus nerve and great auricular and lesser occipital nerves of the cervical plexus. The auricular branch supplies motor innervation to the posterior auricular muscle of the ear and to some of its intrinsic muscles. The occipital branch courses posteriorly to supply the occipitalis muscle with motor innervation (Fig. 18-8).
Nerve to the Posterior Belly of the Digastric Muscle

The nerve to the posterior belly of the digastric muscle arises from the trunk of the facial nerve near the stylomastoid foramen and enters the muscle near its midbelly, providing it with motor innervation (Fig. 18-8).

Nerve to Stylohyoid Muscle

The nerve to the stylohyoid muscle arises from the facial nerve in a similar fashion to or in common with the nerve to the posterior digastric. The nerve to the stylohyoid muscle then enters the muscle at midbelly, providing it with motor innervation (Fig. 18-8).

Parotid Plexus

After entering the parotid gland, the facial nerve divides into temporofacial and cervicofacial divisions, which form the parotid plexus. From there emerge the branches supplying motor innervation to the muscles of facial expression. These terminal branches are named for the regions they supply, usually dividing into five major branches from the plexus: temporal, zygomatic, buccal, mandibular, and cervical branches (Fig. 18-8). Space does not permit a repeat of the complete descriptions of each branch’s distribution or of the muscles served by each branch, other than to state that, generally, the branch serves facial muscles originating in the area of the nerve branch. The interested reader is referred back to Chapter 8 for a discussion of the distribution of the branches of the parotid plexus.

Clinical Considerations

Bell Palsy

Damage to the facial nerve (or its accidental analgesia during dental procedures) results in paralysis of the muscles of the affected side. Damage may occur during surgical involvement of the parotid gland, infection of the middle ear, knife wounds, or at birth during forceps delivery. Paralysis of the facial muscles results in ptosis of the eye (upper eyelid drooping); depression of the corner of the mouth with accompanying oozing of saliva; speech disorder (especially involving labial sounds); lack of muscle tone; and a sagging, distorted face. Bell palsy affects all of the ipsilateral muscles about the face as well as other muscles that developed from the second pharyngeal arch. Because of this fact, patients affected with Bell palsy have hyperacusis (loss of corneal blink) as well as loss of taste from the ipsilateral side of the anterior tongue.

VIII. VESTIBULOCOCHLEAR NERVE

Summary Bite. SSA and SP (special proprioception within the vestibular mechanism for body balance) are the modalities carried in the vestibulocochlear nerve.

The nerve of hearing and balance, the vestibulocochlear nerve, is composed of two separate sets of fibers. The vestibular nerve for balance and the cochlear nerve for hearing are joined as a common nerve entering the internal acoustic meatus with the facial nerve (Fig. 18-9).

These two cranial nerves separate after entering the meatus as the vestibulocochlear nerve approaches the area of its destination within the inner ear. The vestibulocochlear nerve divides, sending the cochlear nerve into the laterally oriented cochlear apparatus and the vestibular nerve medially into the vestibular apparatus.

Cochlear Nerve

The cochlear nerve has its peripheral processes in the organ of Corti, located in the membranous labyrinth,
and its cell bodies are located in the spiral ganglion of the cochlea, which is housed in the modiolus of the cochlea (Fig. 18-9 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5). Central processes of the spiral ganglion become the cochlear division of the nerve responsible for the sense of hearing.

Vestibular Nerve

The vestibular nerve cell bodies are located in the vestibular ganglion within the internal auditory meatus of the temporal bone. Peripheral processes of these neurons divide to enter the vestibular mechanism, including the three semicircular canals.

Central processes of these neurons become the vestibular division of the vestibulocochlear nerve responsible for the sense of balance (Fig. 18-9 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5).

Clinical Considerations

Conductive Hearing Loss

Conductive hearing loss results from a defect in the conduction of sound waves from the tympanic membrane through the bony ossicles to the oval window of the cochlea. Conditions that may contribute to conductive deafness include buildup of cerumen (ear wax), perforation of the tympanic membrane, otitis media (middle ear cavity infection), and otosclerosis, excessive growth of bone around the oval window causing impaired movement of the stapes.

Nerve Deafness

Nerve deafness results from a lesion within the nerves transmitting impulses to the brain from the spiral organ of Corti. Other causes include certain diseases, drug abuse, and prolonged exposure to loud noises.

Ménière Disease

Ménière disease is related to excess fluid in the endolymphatic duct affecting the vestibular mechanism of the vestibulocochlear nerve. This disease is characterized by hearing loss, vertigo, nausea, tinnitus, and vomiting. Drugs can be used for treatment, but in severe cases surgery is required.

Otitis Media

The auditory tube permits the spread of infection from the nasal cavity into the middle ear cavity. This condition (otitis media), resulting from acute infection, may result in the rupture of the eardrum and/or the infection may pass into the mastoid air cells. Antibiotics are used to treat this condition. Auditory tube obstructions often lead to middle-ear infections, especially in children.

Otosclerosis

Occasionally, the stapes becomes immobilized as a result of bony deposits around the oval window. This condition, known as otosclerosis, is a major cause of hearing loss, especially in older adults. It is usually correctable by surgical procedures. Both otitis media and otosclerosis, if left untreated, will result in deafness.

and its cell bodies are located in the spiral ganglion of the cochlea, which is housed in the modiolus of the cochlea (Fig. 18-9 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5). Central processes of the spiral ganglion become the cochlear division of the nerve responsible for the sense of hearing.

Vestibular Nerve

The vestibular nerve cell bodies are located in the vestibular ganglion within the internal auditory meatus of the temporal bone. Peripheral processes of these neurons divide to enter the vestibular mechanism, including the three semicircular canals.

Central processes of these neurons become the vestibular division of the vestibulocochlear nerve responsible for the sense of balance (Fig. 18-9 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5).

IX. GLOSSOPHARYNGEAL NERVE

Summary Bite. SVA, GVA, GVE, GSA, and SVE are the modalities carried in the glossopharyngeal nerve.

The modalities within the glossopharyngeal nerve include: special visceral efferent, general visceral efferent, special visceral afferent, general visceral afferent, and general somatic afferent (see Fig. 18-10 and Tables 18-1, 18-2, and 18-5).

Special visceral efferent. Because the glossopharyngeal nerve is the nerve of the third pharyngeal arch, it serves the only muscle derived from this arch, the stylopharyngeus muscle.
General visceral efferents (parasympathetic) supply the parotid gland and other minor salivary glands in the mucous membrane in and about the posterior tongue and adjacent pharynx.

Special visceral afferents are distributed to the taste buds located on the posterior one third of the tongue, as well as to those located in the circumvallate papillae.

General visceral afferents supply the posterior one third of the tongue, the fauces, the palatine tonsils, and the pharynx. Other general visceral sensory fibers supply the carotid sinus with blood pressure receptors as well as to chemoreceptors located within the carotid body. The latter is a sensory function performed in conjunction with the vagus nerve.

General somatic afferents supply cutaneous sensation about the ear.

While passing through the jugular foramen, this nerve communicates with the facial nerve, the auricular branch and superior ganglion of the vagus nerve, and the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion.

Tympanic Nerve

The tympanic nerve arises from the inferior ganglion of the glossopharyngeal nerve (Fig. 18-10) and enters the petrous portion of the temporal bone, traveling to the tympanic cavity. Here it forms the tympanic plexus with fibers from the carotid plexus and the greater petrosal nerve. Branches from the tympanic plexus serve sensory functions to the mucous membranes of the eardrum, oval and round windows, mastoid air cells, and auditory tube.

The tympanic nerve emerges from the tympanic plexus as the lesser petrosal nerve, providing preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the otic ganglion (see Tables 18-1 and 18-2), which it reaches by leaving the skull at the fissure between the petrous portion of the temporal bone and the greater wing of the sphenoid bone.

The otic ganglion, described in the section on the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve, lies just outside the foramen ovale, immediately behind the mandibular nerve. This ganglion receives preganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the lesser petrosal
nerve and possibly some fibers from the greater petrosal nerve communicated through the tympanic plexus. Postganglionic parasympathetic fibers leave the otic ganglion and are communicated to the auriculotemporal nerve for distribution to the parotid gland, providing it with secretomotor innervation.

**Carotid Sinus Nerve**

The nerve to the carotid sinus arises as a small filament from the glossopharyngeal nerve subsequent to nerve communications at the jugular foramen. This branch descends along the internal carotid artery, ending in the bifurcation of the common carotid artery (Fig. 18-10). This nerve functions as a baroreceptor within the carotid sinus. On its way to the carotid sinus, the nerve communicates with pharyngeal branch(es) of the vagus and branches from the superior cervical ganglion (postganglionic sympathetic fibers). Glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves transmit afferent fibers from the chemoreceptors within the carotid body.

**Nerve to the Stylopharyngeus Muscle**

As the glossopharyngeal nerve courses to the posterior pharyngeal wall, a nerve to the stylopharyngeus muscle arises to supply that muscle (Fig. 18-10).

**Pharyngeal Branches**

The main trunk of the glossopharyngeal nerve terminates as several pharyngeal branches to enter the posterior pharyngeal wall (Fig. 18-10). Some of these branches continue to the tongue as lingual branches, providing general sensation to the posterior one third of the tongue and special sensory fibers to the taste buds on that portion of the tongue as well as to those of the circumvallate papillae. Other branches penetrate the pharyngeal wall as tonsillar branches, communicating with the lesser palatine nerve of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve, to supply the soft palate, pharynx, and fauces with general sensation.

**Pharyngeal Plexus**

Other fibers of the glossopharyngeal nerve join with pharyngeal branches of the vagus nerve and branches from the superior cervical ganglion to form the pharyngeal plexus, located on the wall of the middle pharyngeal constrictor muscle (Fig 18-10). Branches from this plexus penetrate the wall of the pharynx and supply all of the muscles of the pharynx (except the stylopharyngeus) and soft palate (except the tensor veli palatini) with motor innervation and adjacent mucous membranes with sensory innervation.

Although the following information was presented in Chapter 16, it is appropriate to present it again because there is confusion related to the function of the individual nerves making up the pharyngeal plexus. Glossopharyngeal contributions to the pharyngeal plexus are sensory, whereas the vagal branches are motor. However, these motor branches are believed to consist mainly of fibers from the cranial portion of the accessory nerve (cranial nerve XI), which are contributed to the vagus nerve before it exits the skull. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers contributed from the superior cervical ganglion to the pharyngeal plexus are vasomotor in function.
into the abdomen to supply most of the abdominal viscera (Figs. 18-10 and 18-11 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5).

The vagus nerve possesses five modalities, namely, special visceral efferent, general somatic afferent, general visceral afferent, special visceral afferent, general visceral efferent.

■ **Special visceral efferent.** The vagus is the nerve of the fourth pharyngeal arch, and its recurrent laryngeal branch is the nerve of the sixth pharyngeal arch. Consequently, the vagus nerve supplies muscles developed from those arches. Muscles developing from the fourth arch include the pharyngeal constrictors and the cricothyroid muscles. Muscles developed from the sixth arch include the intrinsic muscles of the larynx.

■ **General somatic afferent** fibers are provided to the skin about the ear and external acoustic meatus.

■ **General visceral afferent** supplies the mucous membranes of the pharynx, larynx, esophagus, bronchi, lungs, heart, and much of the abdominal viscera.

■ **General visceral efferent** supplies the smooth muscles and glands of the digestive tract from the esophagus to (and including) most of the intestines, plus the bronchi and trachea.

■ **Special visceral afferent** is supplied to the base of the tongue, aryepiglottic fold, and larynx.

The vagus nerve exits the brain at the medulla, between the olive and the inferior cerebellar peduncle just posterior to the glossopharyngeal nerve, via a cluster of 8 to 10 rootlets that unite to exit the skull.

![Figure 18-11.](image-url)
through the jugular foramen along with the glossopharyngeal and accessory nerves.

This nerve possesses two sensory ganglia: the superior ganglion, housed in the jugular fossa, and the inferior (nodose) ganglion, appearing as a swelling on the nerve just after it exits the jugular foramen (Figs. 18-10 and 18-11).

Peripheral processes of the neurons in these ganglia are distributed with the vagus nerve as the sensory component. These ganglia receive communications from the glossopharyngeal, facial, accessory, and hypoglossal nerves. The sympathetic nervous system communicates via a filament from the superior cervical ganglion, and a communication also exists between the vagal ganglia and the first and second cervical nerves.

The cranial root of the accessory nerve joins the vagus nerve just proximal to the inferior ganglion. Thus, the motor component to the muscles arising from the fourth and fifth pharyngeal arches, generally described as arising from the vagus nerve, are actually from this contribution to the vagus nerve by the accessory nerve. However, autonomic motor innervation to the esophagus and the structures within the thorax and abdomen attributed to the vagus arise from the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus nerve.

Before its exit from the jugular fossa the vagus nerve gives off two branches: the meningeal and auricular branches.

**Meningeal Branch**

The meningeal branch of the vagus nerve returns to the cranial vault to supply the dura in the posterior cranial fossa (Fig. 18-11).

**Auricular Branch**

An auricular branch arises from the superior vagal ganglion, communicates with the glossopharyngeal nerve, and then enters the mastoid canal coursing to the facial canal. Here it communicates with the facial nerve, then exits through the tympanomastoid suture to communicate with the posterior auricular nerve before distributing to the skin of the posterior aspect of the ear and the external acoustic meatus.

**Vagal Branches in the Neck**

The following sections describe the branches and distributions of the vagus nerve as it courses through the neck. Branches arising from the vagus in the neck include the pharyngeal, superior laryngeal, and superior cardiac nerves. Also located in the neck is the recurrent laryngeal nerve that arises from the vagus nerve at the thoracic inlet to recur back into the neck.

**Pharyngeal Branches**

Pharyngeal branches of the vagus arise from the inferior vagal ganglion and pass over the internal carotid artery to the pharyngeal constrictor muscles, providing input to the pharyngeal plexus (Fig. 18-11). From this plexus, motor innervation is supplied to the pharynx but not the stylopharyngeus, as well as to all muscles of the soft palate except the tensor veli palatini. Mucous membranes of the pharynx are also supplied by the pharyngeal plexus.

Usually, the **nerve to the carotid body** originates from the pharyngeal branches. This nerve descends along the internal carotid artery to terminate in the carotid body housed in the bifurcation of the common carotid artery (Fig. 18-11). Chemoreceptors detect changes in oxygen and carbon dioxide tension as well as hydrogen ion concentration in the blood at this site.

As previously described, sensory fibers from the carotid body are also transmitted in the glossopharyngeal nerve.

**Superior Laryngeal Nerve**

The superior laryngeal nerve arises from the vagus at the inferior end of the inferior ganglion and passes deep to the internal carotid artery, descending to the thyroid cartilage, where it divides into external and internal branches (Fig. 18-11).

The smaller **external branch** continues to descend beneath the sternothyroid muscle to enter the cricothyroid and inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscles, which it supplies with motor innervation.

The larger **internal branch** courses over and pierces the thyrohyoid membrane. This branch supplies sensory innervation to the mucous membranes superiorly, to the base of the tongue, and to the epiglottis and the larynx as far inferiorly as the vocal folds. It is with this branch that the sensation of taste is transmitted to the brain from the base of the tongue, epiglottis, and larynx.

The internal laryngeal branch also contains parasympathetic fibers to the glands associated with the mucous membranes of the regions just described. Preganglionic fibers synapse on ganglionic plexuses within the walls of the viscera served, and from there the postganglionic fibers distribute secretomotor fibers to the glands.

**Superior Cardiac Branches**

As the trunk of the vagus nerve descends in the neck within the carotid sheath, between and posterior to the internal jugular vein and the internal carotid artery, superior cardiac branches are given off and descend...
into the thorax (Fig. 18-11). Their function is not described here because it is outside the realm of this text.

**Recurrent Laryngeal Nerve**

At the root of the neck, the recurrent laryngeal nerve arises from the vagus and ascends back into the neck. On the right side, the nerve recurs around the subclavian artery, whereas on the left side the nerve recurs around the arch of the aorta (Fig. 18-11). Upon reentering the neck, each recurrent laryngeal nerve follows a similar course deep to the carotid artery, along a groove between the trachea and the esophagus, to enter the larynx as inferior laryngeal nerves, piercing the cricothyroid membrane to supply all of the intrinsic muscles of the larynx, except the cricothyroid muscle, with motor innervation.

In the recurrent laryngeal nerve’s path to the larynx, branches to the trachea and the esophagus supply those structures with sensory and parasympathetic innervation in much the same manner as the fibers of the internal branch of the superior laryngeal nerve but more distally. In addition, pharyngeal branches are supplied to the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle. Although they serve a minor role, sensory branches of the inferior laryngeal nerve provide sensory fibers to the larynx and overlap sensory fibers of the external laryngeal nerve.

The remaining branches and distributions of the vagus nerve within the thorax and abdomen are not described here. Those interested in this subject are referred to general textbooks in gross anatomy and neuroanatomy, as suggested in the Selected Readings.

**XI. ACCESSORY NERVE**

**Summary Bite.** SVE (communicated to the vagus nerve for the muscles of the pharynx and larynx) and SVE (assuming branchomeric origins for the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles) are the modalities carried by the accessory nerve.

The accessory nerve arises from two sources: the brain and the spinal cord. This nerve is described as a motor nerve, serving the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles, and its cranial root is regarded as the motor portion of the vagus nerve within the head and neck, including the contribution that the vagus nerve makes to the pharyngeal plexus. The spinal portion arises from motor neurons in the first five (or more) spinal cord segments. This portion of the nerve emerges on the surface of the

---

**Clinical Considerations**

**Unilateral Lesion of the Vagus after Leaving Brainstem**

**Pharynx**

Such a lesion results in flaccid paralysis or weakness in the muscles of the pharynx that bring about dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing); paralysis or weakness of the muscles of the larynx, resulting in dysphonia (hoarseness); paralysis or weakness in the soft palate; loss of sensation from pharynx and larynx, and the loss of the gag reflex. **Bilateral lesion of the vagus nerve** is not compatible with life.

**Larynx**

The intrinsic laryngeal musculature is served by two branches of the vagus nerve, the inferior laryngeal branch of the recurrent laryngeal nerve and the external branch of the superior laryngeal nerve. Because these two nerves are prone to damage, it is essential that they be protected from injury during surgical procedures. The external laryngeal nerve, passing deep to the superior thyroid artery, supplies only a single muscle, the cricothyroid. Its section does not cause excessive damage to phonation. It will, however, affect the ability to tense the vocal cords and the ability of the patient to produce high-pitched sounds. In addition, damage to it causes some hoarseness and easy tiring of the voice.

Damage to the recurrent laryngeal or the inferior laryngeal nerves will result in serious complications, whose severity depends on the degree of damage and whether the injury is bilateral. Involvement may range from slight hoarseness to complete inability to vocalize and breathe, necessitating performance of a tracheotomy.
spinal cord to ascend into the skull via the foramen magnum to join or communicate with the cranial portion of the nerve before exiting the jugular foramen along with the vagus and glossopharyngeal nerves (Figs. 18-10 and 18-12 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5). The cranial portion leaves the brain very close to the vagus nerve and travels along with it to the jugular foramen. After communicating with the spinal portion, the cranial portion joins the vagus, and the spinal portion continues on to descend through the foramen.

The spinal portion descends posterior to the stylohyoid and digastric muscles to enter the sternocleidomastoid muscle, which it pierces and serves before passing obliquely over the posterior triangle to terminate in and supply the trapezius muscle. Along its way, the nerve communicates with the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves.

XII. HYPOGLOSSAL NERVE

Summary Bite. GSE is the modality carried by the hypoglossal nerve.

Clinical Considerations

Accessory Nerve Injury

The accessory nerve, as it progresses subcutaneously through the neck, is subject to injury (e.g., during lymph node biopsy, carotid artery and/or internal jugular vein surgical procedures). Injury produces weakness in the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles, impairing neck movement and resulting in a drooping of the shoulder.
The most caudal and the last of the cranial nerves is the hypoglossal nerve. This nerve is the motor nerve of the tongue.

It arises as several rootlets from the medulla between the olive and the pyramid and, passing through the hypoglossal canal, the rootlets unite to form a single nerve. It descends deep to the internal jugular vein and internal carotid artery, and then becomes superficial to them as it crosses them at the mandible.

The hypoglossal nerve then courses over the external carotid and lingual arteries deep to the digastric and stylohyoid muscles. It enters the muscles of the tongue, which it supplies, proceeding to the ventral tip of the tongue.

With the exception of the palatoglossus (innervated by the vagus via the pharyngeal plexus), the hypoglossal nerve innervates the hyoglossus, styloglossus, genioglossus, and intrinsic muscles of the tongue (Fig. 18-13 and Tables 18-1 and 18-5).

The hypoglossal nerve communicates with several nerves in its route, including the pharyngeal plexus, the lingual, and the first and second cervical spinal nerves. Branches from the first and second ventral cervical spinal nerves join the hypoglossal later to exit, forming the descending loop (superior root) of the ansa cervicalis, which innervates the infrahyoid muscles.

Some of the fibers from the first cervical nerve continue on to exit from the hypoglossal nerve near the posterior border of the hyoglossus muscle and enter the thyrohyoid and geniohyoid muscles, supplying them with motor innervation.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Hypoglossal Nerve Injury**

Difficult third molar extractions and/or fractures of the mandible may damage the hypoglossal nerve (cranial nerve XII), causing paralysis of the tongue on the affected side. When the mouth is opened and the tongue is protruded, the genioglossus of the unaffected side will cause the tongue to deviate to the affected side. If the damage is prolonged, the tongue muscles will atrophy.
Anatomic Basis for Local Anesthesia

Chapter Outline

Anesthesia
Clinical Considerations

Plexus Anesthesia
Clinical Considerations
Maxillary Plexus Anesthesia
Clinical Considerations
Mandibular Plexus Anesthesia

Trunk Anesthesia
Maxillary Teeth
Posterior Superior Alveolar Nerve Block

Clinical Considerations
Infraorbital Trunk Block
Clinical Considerations
Greater Palatine Nerve Block
Clinical Considerations
Nasopalatine Nerve Block
Clinical Considerations
Mandibular Teeth
Inferior Alveolar and Lingual Nerve Blocks
Clinical Considerations

Key Terms

Aspiration minimizes the possibility of injecting anesthetic solution into a blood vessel; it must be carried out by the operator prior to injecting anesthetic solution into any target area. Aspiration is accomplished by developing a negative pressure at the needle tip of the syringe. If the needle tip has punctured the vascular wall, blood will be forced back into the syringe and become visible to the operator. Any blood returned is termed a positive aspiration and anesthetic solution should not be deposited. The syringe should be removed and a new site is to be selected. Anesthetic solution inadvertently injected into a blood vessel may have an immediate toxic effect that involves the cardiovascular system, nervous system, and/or the tissue in the immediate vicinity of the injection. In fact, it has been shown that almost half of the mortality in dental offices is due to the administration of local anesthesia to sensitive patients or injection into a blood vessel. If the needle penetrates a blood vessel, the lesion may cause a localized edema swelling of hemorrhaging blood within a few minutes. It may also spread into the neck before it can be brought under control.

Plexus Anesthesia is the technique of delivering anesthetic solution to the connective tissues overlying the periosteum to produce anesthesia in and about a limited number of teeth. Plexus anesthesia may be used to advantage in regions of the oral cavity where bony tissues surrounding the roots of the teeth are thin enough to permit adequate diffusion of the anesthetic agent. Thus, this method of delivery is commonly used for
anesthetizing certain teeth in the maxillary arch and their supporting tissues. Even the maxillary buccal cortical plate is sufficiently thin (with the exception of the first molar region) so that plexus anesthesia in this area is advantageous.

Subperiosteal Injections may occur in maxillary plexus anesthesia. This can happen when the anesthetic solution is incorrectly delivered deep to the periosteum. Extreme care should be exercised to avoid subperiosteal injections because such injections can cause the fluid to tear the periosteum and its blood vessels from the bone, resulting in subperiosteal hematomas and considerable pain.

Subperiosteal Injections may occur in maxillary plexus anesthesia. This can happen when the anesthetic solution is incorrectly delivered deep to the periosteum. Extreme care should be exercised to avoid subperiosteal injections because such injections can cause the fluid to tear the periosteum and its blood vessels from the bone, resulting in subperiosteal hematomas and considerable pain.

Trunk anesthesia, also known as nerve block anesthesia, is the technique of delivering anesthetic solution close to the nerve trunk so that structures distal to the injections site are anesthetized. Most of the mandibular cortical plate is too thick for plexus anesthesia. Hence, for mandibular procedures, trunk anesthesia is the method of choice.

Anesthesia is the loss of sensation due to injury, disease, or drug administration. Local anesthetics may be applied topically or injected either in the vicinity of the area to be anesthetized or into a conveniently accessible region in the proximity of the nerve or nerves supplying the area of interest.

These anesthetic substances are pharmacologic agents that stabilize cell membranes, thereby blocking or reducing the excitability of the membrane. When a region of a nerve fiber is exposed to an anesthetic solution, that fiber cannot relay impulses through the affected region; hence, nerve conduction is blocked.

Small, unmyelinated fibers (i.e., most pain fibers) are affected first, whereas larger, myelinated fibers (i.e., proprioception, touch, and motor) are blocked last.

Because the effects of local anesthetics are temporary, recovery of excitability occurs in the reverse order, that is, large, myelinated fibers become conductive first and small, unmyelinated fibers become conductive last. Because pain and temperature fibers are usually small, the anesthetic can be applied in quantities that interfere mostly with these sensations while only minimally affecting proprioception, sensation of touch, or motor functions.

Anesthetic agents may be introduced to anesthetize nerve endings, a process known as infiltration. Another process, known as a nerve block, can be employed to interfere with nerve conduction at a distance from the nerve ending. Infiltration is usually restricted to mucous membranes and is of limited use in the oral cavity. Nerve blocks, however, are important and are considered in two separate anesthesia categories: plexus anesthesia, restricted to a single tooth or a few teeth, and trunk anesthesia, involving blocking of pain sensation over a relatively large area. This chapter addresses anesthesia of the teeth and their adnexa (see Tables 19-1 and 19-2).

Trunk anesthesia, also known as nerve block anesthesia, is the technique of delivering anesthetic solution close to the nerve trunk so that structures distal to the injections site are anesthetized. Most of the mandibular cortical plate is too thick for plexus anesthesia. Hence, for mandibular procedures, trunk anesthesia is the method of choice.

Anesthesia is the loss of sensation due to injury, disease, or drug administration. Local anesthetics may be applied topically or injected either in the vicinity of the area to be anesthetized or into a conveniently accessible region in the proximity of the nerve or nerves supplying the area of interest.

These anesthetic substances are pharmacologic agents that stabilize cell membranes, thereby blocking or reducing the excitability of the membrane. When a region of a nerve fiber is exposed to an anesthetic solution, that fiber cannot relay impulses through the affected region; hence, nerve conduction is blocked.

Small, unmyelinated fibers (i.e., most pain fibers) are affected first, whereas larger, myelinated fibers (i.e., proprioception, touch, and motor) are blocked last.

Because the effects of local anesthetics are temporary, recovery of excitability occurs in the reverse order, that is, large, myelinated fibers become conductive first and small, unmyelinated fibers become conductive last. Because pain and temperature fibers are usually small, the anesthetic can be applied in quantities that interfere mostly with these sensations while only minimally affecting proprioception, sensation of touch, or motor functions.

Anesthetic agents may be introduced to anesthetize nerve endings, a process known as infiltration. Another process, known as a nerve block, can be employed to interfere with nerve conduction at a distance from the nerve ending. Infiltration is usually restricted to mucous membranes and is of limited use in the oral cavity. Nerve blocks, however, are important and are considered in two separate anesthesia categories: plexus anesthesia, restricted to a single tooth or a few teeth, and trunk anesthesia, involving blocking of pain sensation over a relatively large area. This chapter addresses anesthesia of the teeth and their adnexa (see Tables 19-1 and 19-2).
### Table 19-1 Anesthesia of the Teeth and Supporting Tissues in the Maxillary Arch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anesthetic Technique</th>
<th>Central Incisor</th>
<th>Lateral Incisor</th>
<th>Canine</th>
<th>First Premolar</th>
<th>Second Premolar</th>
<th>First Molar</th>
<th>Second Molar</th>
<th>Third Molar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anterior</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alveolar</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alveolar</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P X*</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alveolar</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater Palatine</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasopalatine</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infraorbital</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>PL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B, buccal; F, facial; P, pulp; PL, palatal.

* In about 27% of the population, the mesiabuccal root of the first molar is not innervated by the posterior superior alveolar nerve, but by the middle superior alveolar nerve. Thus, for complete anesthesia of the first molar, it is suggested that both the PSA and MSA nerves be anesthetized.

### Table 19-2 Anesthesia of the Teeth and Supporting Tissues in the Mandibular Arch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anesthetic Technique</th>
<th>Central Incisor</th>
<th>Lateral Incisor</th>
<th>Canine</th>
<th>First Premolar</th>
<th>Second Premolar</th>
<th>First Molar</th>
<th>Second Molar</th>
<th>Third Molar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inferior</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alveolar</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve Block *</td>
<td>L X</td>
<td>L X</td>
<td>L X</td>
<td>L X</td>
<td>L X</td>
<td>L X</td>
<td>L X</td>
<td>L X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buccal</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve Block</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve Block</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incisive</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P X</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
<td>P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nerve Block</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>F X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B X</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B, buccal; F, facial; L, lingual; P, pulp.

* Although the inferior alveolar (mandibular) nerve block is described to anesthetize the lingual supporting tissues of the mandibular teeth, clinical dental procedures affecting the lingual gingiva (especially in the molar region) may require anesthetizing the lingual nerve, which may be accomplished at the conclusion of administering the inferior alveolar nerve block.
Anesthesia in most regions of the maxilla can be achieved by plexus anesthesia. This method places the anesthetic solution into the connective tissue overlying the periosteum. It is important to avoid subperiosteal injections because such injections cause tearing of blood vessels as the fluid detaches the periosteum from the bone, resulting in subperiosteal hematomas and considerable pain on recovery.

Anesthesia of the canine as well as the lateral and central incisors may be accomplished by one of two procedures. One technique involves an anterior superior alveolar nerve block, a plexus anesthesia, accomplished by depositing anesthetic solution above the roots of the anterior teeth (Fig. 19-2).

Another technique involves an infraorbital nerve block, discussed in the next section, known as trunk anesthesia.

Anesthetizing the nasopalatine nerve in the vicinity of the incisive papilla (a particularly painful injection) will result in complete anesthesia on both sides of the anterior palatal region.

Clinical Considerations

Aspiration

Aspiration must always be carried out by the operator prior to injecting anesthetic solution into any target area. The aspiration procedure minimizes the possibility of injecting anesthetic solution into a blood vessel. Aspiration is accomplished by developing a negative pressure at the needle tip by simply pulling back slightly on the thumb ring of the syringe (only 1 to 2 mm). If the needle tip has punctured the vascular wall, blood will be forced back into the syringe and become visible to the operator. Some clinicians aspirate several times during a slow injection because a single aspiration does not preclude penetration of the vessel by the bevel of the needle. Any blood returned is termed a positive aspiration and anesthetic solution should not be deposited. The syringe should be removed and a new site is to be selected.

Anesthetic solution inadvertently injected into a blood vessel may have an immediate toxic effect that involves the cardiovascular system, nervous system, and/or the tissue in the immediate vicinity of the injection. In fact, it has been shown that almost half of the mortality in dental offices is due to the administration of local anesthesia to sensitive patients or injection into a blood vessel. If the needle penetrates a blood vessel, the lesion may cause a localized extraoral swelling of hemorrhaging blood within a few minutes. It may also spread into the neck before it can be brought under control.

Solution. Therefore, the anesthetic agent is to be deposited at or coronal to the apex of the tooth, permitting the drug to penetrate the periosteum and thin cortical plate.

Anesthesia of the two premolars and the mesial buccal root of the first molar is achieved by depositing the anesthetic agent in the area just below the apex of the second premolar (this procedure anesthetizes the middle superior alveolar nerve, when present, and/or the dental plexus) (Fig. 19-1).

When the palatal mucosa is involved in the operative procedures, the greater palatine nerve must also be blocked as it emerges from the greater palatine foramen.

Clinical Considerations

Subperiosteal Injections

Anesthesia in most regions of the maxilla can be achieved by plexus anesthesia. This method places the anesthetic solution into the connective tissue overlying the periosteum. It is important to avoid subperiosteal injections because such injections cause tearing of blood vessels as the fluid detaches the periosteum from the bone, resulting in subperiosteal hematomas and considerable pain on recovery.
Clinical Considerations

Middle Superior Alveolar Nerve Block

Although the middle superior alveolar nerve is reported to be present in only about 28% of the population, when present it innervates the premolar teeth of the upper arch and assists in the sensory innervation of the first maxillary molar.

Anesthesia of the three molars is achieved by injection in the region of the second molar and the second premolar. The latter site is essential only if anesthesia of the mesial buccal root of the first molar is desired, because this particular root is served by the middle superior alveolar nerve.

When the middle superior alveolar nerve is not present, its function is carried out by the dental plexus, a communicating plexus of nerves bridging the gap between the posterior superior and anterior superior alveolar nerves.

Figure 19-1. (A) Illustrates needle placement of anesthesia of the middle superior alveolar nerve. (B) Illustrates the area anesthetized.
Mandibular Plexus Anesthesia

Summary Bite. Plexus anesthesia for the mandibular dentition is restricted to the region of the incisors. This is necessary because the cortical bone of much of the mandible is thick, thus prohibiting diffusion of the anesthetic agent.

Plexus anesthesia of mandibular teeth is usually accomplished only in the region of the incisors. However, most of the mandibular cortical plate is too thick for plexus anesthesia. Hence, for mandibular procedures, trunk anesthesia is the method of choice.

Plexus anesthesia of the mandibular incisors is accomplished by delivering anesthetic solution into the vestibular mucosa inferior to the root of the incisors. When manipulation of the lingual gingiva is planned, block anesthesia of the lingual nerve is necessary.

Figure 19-2. (A) Illustrates needle placement of anesthesia of the anterior superior alveolar nerve. (B) Illustrates the area anesthetized.

Trunk Anesthesia

Summary Bite. Trunk anesthesia (nerve block) is a mode of anesthesia where the anesthetic solution is deposited in the immediate vicinity the nerve or nerve trunk proximal to the area to be treated.
Maxillary Teeth

Summary Bite. Several nerves serving the teeth and/or their supporting tissues within the maxillary arch are accessible for nerve blocks via trunk anesthesia.

Posterior Superior Alveolar Nerve Block

The posterior superior alveolar nerve (PSA) is accessible on the maxillary tuberosity as the nerve enters the small posterior superior alveolar foramen.

A block of the posterior superior alveolar nerve will anesthetize the three molars. However, during a posterior superior alveolar nerve block, anesthesia of the mesial buccal root of the first molar fails in about 28% of the patient population. Therefore, if profound dental procedures are to be performed on the maxillary first molar, the middle superior alveolar nerve should also be anesthetized.

It must be kept in mind that the posterior superior alveolar nerve block will not anesthetize the labial gingival (Fig. 19-3).

Figure 19-3. (A) Illustrates needle placement of anesthesia of the posterior superior alveolar nerve. (B) Illustrates the area anesthetized.
Anesthetic solution for a posterior superior alveolar nerve block should be delivered through the mucosa of the fornix at the level of the second molar, following the maxilla very closely to circumvent penetration of the pterygoid plexus of veins. Although the veins are easily avoided, the posterior superior alveolar artery is not. If the artery is accidentally penetrated, a large hematoma will quickly result. The bleeding may be controlled by exerting pressure on the maxilla at the anterior border of the masseter muscle, just inferior to the zygomatic arch.

Even with following the rules of aspiration, this is one area where extreme care is important in preventing an anesthetic needle from penetrating the posterior superior alveolar artery just before it enters the bone.

Infraorbital Trunk Block

Although the infraorbital nerve block (sometimes called an IO nerve block) is less popular than the PSA nerve block, it provides profound anesthesia from the central incisor through the canine in every patient, and through the second premolar in about 72% of the patient population. Thus, this procedure is advantageous when two or more of those teeth are to be treated.

The infraorbital nerve may be reached in the infraorbital canal, where it gives rise to the anterior (and, sometimes, middle) superior alveolar nerves. The canal is accessible via the infraorbital foramen. The position of the foramen may be located by palpation of the orbital rim, where the zygomaticomaxillary suture is evident through the thin skin. Inferior to this suture, the bony ledge is felt to curve under, indicating the infraorbital foramen (Fig. 19-4).

Greater Palatine Nerve Block

The greater palatine nerve exits the same-named foramen to innervate the hard palate as far anteriorly as the canine region, where it communicates with the nasopalatine nerve. Anesthesia may be accomplished by piercing the palatal mucosa midway between the roof of the mouth and the gingival margin of the third molar. Should the first premolar be involved, a nasopalatine block also must be performed (Fig. 19-5).

Mandibular Teeth

Nasopalatine Nerve Block

The nasopalatine nerve supplies the anterior portion of the hard palate, lingual alveolar bone of the six anterior teeth, as well as the entire anterior palatal mucosa, and gingiva.

The nasopalatine nerve exits the incisive foramen just posterior to the interdental papilla between the two central incisors.

Access is simple because the site of injection is just deep to the incisive papilla. When the premolars are involved, a greater palatine block should also be performed (Fig. 19-6).
Figure 19-4.  (A) Illustrates needle placement of anesthesia of the infraorbital nerve.  (B) Illustrates the area anesthetized.
Care must be exercised in delivering a greater palatine nerve block. The anesthetic solution must not be injected into the greater palatine foramen or even close to it, because the lesser palatine nerves overlap the region. In the case where the anesthesia affects both the greater and lesser palatine nerves, both the soft and hard palates will be anesthetized, causing the patient to gag.
Figure 19-6. (A) Illustrates needle placement of anesthesia of the nasopalatine nerve. (B) Illustrates the area anesthetized.

Clinical Considerations

Nasopalatine Nerve Block

Both right and left nasopalatine nerves are anesthetized by this block; thus, the entire anterior palate from the right first premolar to left first premolar is anesthetized. Because the palatal mucosa is tightly bound to the maxillary bone, the nasopalatine nerve block is painful; therefore, the solution should be delivered slowly, in advance of the needle, and in small quantities.

Numbness to the anterior palate is somewhat discomforting to the patient.
Inferior Alveolar and Lingual Nerve Blocks

Block of the inferior alveolar nerve, also known as a mandibular block, occurs at the mandibular foramen just before the inferior alveolar nerve enters it.

The mandibular foramen is situated on the medial aspect of the ramus of the mandible, in close association with the lingula and the sphenomandibular ligament.

The anesthetic agent should be delivered to this point by piercing the mucosa between the retromolar pad and the pterygomandibular fold, at the level of the occlusal plane of the three mandibular molars. Most of the anesthetic solution should be deposited here.

To anesthetize the lingual nerve, which lies close by, it is necessary to deposit solution just anterior and medial to the bony landmark. Anesthesia of the inferior alveolar and lingual nerves desensitizes the mandibular teeth and gingiva on that side.

Occasionally, the buccal nerve must also be blocked to provide anesthesia of the mandibular buccal mucosa and gingiva (Fig. 19-7).

Figure 19-7. (A) Illustrates needle placement of anesthesia of the inferior alveolar or mandibular nerve. (B) Illustrates the area anesthetized.
Buccal Nerve Block (Long Buccal Nerve Block)
The buccal nerve crosses the anterior border of the ramus of the mandible at the level of the occlusal plane of the maxillary molars. Hence, this nerve may be anesthetized just lateral to the mandibular ramus. It is not necessary to anesthetize the buccal nerve unless anesthesia of the molar buccal gingiva is desired (Fig. 19-8).

Mental Nerve Block
The mental nerve exits the mandibular canal via the mental foramen, located on the lateral aspect of the mandibular body. The foramen is located just below the second premolar, halfway between the gingival margin and the inferior border of the mandible.

Anesthetic solution should be introduced deep to the mucosa at the level of the second mandibular premolar, approximately at the fornx. Successful block of the mental nerve will anesthetize the facial periodontium of the mandibular premolars, canine, and incisors on one side, including adjacent gingival and alveolar tissues and the periodontal ligament. It should be remembered that if pulpal tissue is to be anesthetized, it will be necessary to block the incisive nerve at the mental foramen (Fig. 19-9).

Mandibular Incisive Nerve Block
The mandibular incisive nerve block is not frequently used because, when the inferior alveolar or mandibular block is performed, the anterior mandibular teeth are anesthetized. Also, when a mental nerve block is performed, the incisive nerve (the other terminal of the inferior alveolar nerve) may also be anesthetized. The technique for administering the incisive block is very similar to that of a mental block, with the target area being the same. The major difference is that slightly more anesthesia is deposited at the mental foramen and, after retracting the needle, finger pressure is applied to force the anesthetic solution into the mental foramen (see Fig 19-9 for placement of the anesthetic).

Clinical Considerations

Buccal Nerve Block
The success rate for buccal nerve anesthesia is nearly 100%; however, it can be uncomfortable if the needle penetrates the peristeum.

Because the tendon of the temporalis muscle may be penetrated, care must be exercised in depositing the anesthetic agent. Block anesthesia of the buccal nerve will anesthetize the buccal gingiva and mucosa of the mandibular molars.
Figure 19-8. (A) Illustrates needle placement of anesthesia of the buccal nerve. (B) Illustrates the area anesthetized.
The mental nerve and the incisive nerve are the terminals of the inferior alveolar nerve. The mental nerve serves the buccal mucosa anterior to the buccal foramen to the midline, and also the skin on the lower lip and chin. Hence, it is used most often when buccal soft tissue requires anesthesia for a dental procedure. As such, the mental nerve block is infrequently utilized in dental procedures.
The incisive block in the mandible is not often utilized because an inferior alveolar (mandibular) block will anesthetize the anterior teeth in the mandibular arch. However, the mandibular incisive block will permit the oral professional to work on multiple anterior teeth at one appointment. It must be remembered that only the pulp of these anterior teeth will be anesthetized and, if lingual gingiva is to be involved, that region should also be anesthetized.

Clinical Considerations

Mandibular Incisive Block
Lymphatics of the Head and Neck

Chapter Outline

- Lymph Nodes of the Head and Neck
  - Lymph Nodes of the Head
  - Lymph Nodes of the Face
  - Lymph Nodes of the Neck
  - Clinical Considerations

- Lymphatic Drainage of the Head and Neck
  - Superficial Tissues
  - Deep Tissues
  - Clinical Considerations

Key Terms

**Lymph** is the term applied to the extracellular fluid that bathes the cells of the interstitial spaces. This fluid exits the capillary beds and the venules of the circulatory system and, because its pressure within the tissue is less than the venous pressure of the blood, it is unable to enter the venous system. Lymph contains proteins, fats, large particulate matter, and cells that find their way to lymphatic vessels, which deliver their contents to lymph nodes located along their course.

Lymph eventually returns to the circulatory system as it is collected first by small lymphatic vessels passing to larger and larger vessels, finally to enter the right lymphatic duct, or its counterpart on the left side, the thoracic duct. Lymph from these two ducts is emptied into the corresponding right and left subclavian veins.

**Lymph Nodes** are fairly constant in their location and the regional lymph that they filter. Lymph flows through at least one lymph node (but usually several) before returning to the circulatory system. In the lymph nodes foreign substances are phagocytosed and lymph is filtered. Lymph nodes are constant structures and their positions should be clearly understood by health professionals because these structures become swollen during infections and inflammations.

By understanding these facts, a health professional can sometimes pinpoint the region of a disease process simply by knowing the route of lymph flow through the node field when one or more nodes are involved.

For these reasons, the jugulodigastric and the omoclavicular lymph nodes are especially important to oral health professionals.
Extracellular fluid is constantly being produced in excess by the circulatory system. Consequently, the interstitial spaces of the body receive more fluid from the arterial end of a capillary network than that which returns at the venous end. The excess extracellular fluid, as well as proteins, fats, large particulate matter, and cells, find their way to lymphatic vessels, which deliver their contents to lymph nodes located along their course. Here, foreign substances are phagocytosed and lymph is filtered. Lymph nodes are constant structures and their positions should be clearly understood by health professionals because these structures become swollen during infections and inflammations. Because specific nodes receive lymph from relatively specific areas of the body, the clinician should be able to deduce the general location of the infection by knowledge of lymphatic drainage. This chapter includes the names and locations of the principal lymph nodes of the head and neck, and the areas they drain.

**Lymph Nodes of the Face**

**Summary Bite.** Lymph nodes of the face are subdivided into those of the parotid, superficial face, and the deep face.

- **Parotid lymph nodes** (10 to 15 in number) form two groups: those lying embedded within the substance of the gland and those lying deep to the gland adjacent the pharyngeal wall.
- **Superfacial facial lymph nodes** (up to 12 in number), disposed along the course of the facial artery and vein, are the:
  - Maxillary (infraorbital) lymph nodes in the vicinity of the infraorbital foramen;
  - Buccal lymph node(s) on/in the buccal fat pad over the buccinator muscle; and
  - Mandibular lymph nodes (two to three in number) along the facial artery and vein adjacent the masseter muscle.
- **Deep facial lymph nodes** follow the course of the maxillary artery in the infratemporal fossa superficial to the lateral pterygoid muscle. Two additional groups of deep nodes are important:
  - Lingual lymph nodes (numbering two to three) lying on the superficial aspect of the hyoglossus muscle; and
  - Retropharyngeal lymph nodes (two to three in number) located in the buccopharyngeal fascia behind the pharynx at the level of the atlas.

**Lymph Nodes of the Neck**

**Summary Bite.** Lymph nodes of the neck are disposed in several groups: the anterior cervical, submental, submandibular, superficial cervical, and deep cervical lymph nodes.

- **Anterior cervical lymph nodes** are inconsistent and are located in two groups, superficial and deep, in front of the viscera of the neck.
  - The superficial group is located in an irregular row along the course of the anterior jugular vein.
  - The deep group is subdivided into four small chains: the paratracheal lymph nodes of the tracheoesophageal groove; the infrahyoid lymph nodes, lying superficial to the thyrohyoid membrane; the pretracheal nodes, situated between the investing layer of the deep cervical fascia and the trachea; and the prelaryngeal nodes, which lie on the cricothyroid ligament.
- **Submental lymph nodes** are located between the anterior bellies of the right and left digastric muscles.

**LYMPH NODES OF THE HEAD AND NECK**

**Lymph Nodes of the Head**

**Summary Bite.** Because the central nervous system possesses no lymph vessels, the lymph nodes of the head are extracranial and regionalized into several groups about the scalp.

Lymph nodes of the head are all extracranial because the central nervous system possesses no lymph vessels or lymph nodes. The general pattern of lymph nodes about the head is that they are regionalized into several groups to drain the posterior and anterolateral scalp as well as the superficial and deep aspects of the face (Fig. 20-1 and Table 20-1).

- **Occipital lymph nodes** (two to four in number) are located on the back of the head, lying on the semispinalis capitis muscle just inferior to the attachment of the trapezius muscle.
- **Mastoid (postauricular) lymph nodes** (one to three in number) are located behind the ear on the mastoid process, superficial to the insertion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.
- **Preauricular (superficial parotid) lymph nodes** (two to three in number) lie anterior to the ear, superficial to and sometimes deep to the capsule of the parotid gland. Those located deep to the capsule are sometimes grouped with the deep parotid lymph nodes described with those of the face.
Submandibular lymph nodes are located in the same-named triangle in close proximity to the submandibular gland. Although these constitute a chain of three to six lymph nodes, the only constant node is the one at the facial groove of the mandible in close association with the facial artery.

Superficial cervical lymph nodes may be found lying adjacent the external jugular vein as it passes superficial to the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

Deep cervical lymph nodes are numerous and form a chain along the carotid sheath. These nodes are most important because, ultimately, they receive all of the lymph from the head and neck. Their efferent vessels form the jugular trunk, which delivers the collected lymph to the right lymphatic duct (or to the thoracic duct on the left side) to be returned to the circulatory system. These deep cervical lymph nodes parallel the carotid sheath along its entire length. The lymph nodes of this group may conveniently be organized into two subgroups: the superior and inferior deep cervical lymph nodes.

Superior deep cervical lymph nodes, some of which are large, form a chain, surrounding the internal jugular vein, extending from the mastoid process to the superior border of the subclavian triangle. The most superior node of this group is the large jugulodigastric (tonsillar) lymph node, located between the posterior belly of the digastric muscle and the internal jugular vein. This node is of particular importance in physical diagnosis.

Inferior deep cervical lymph nodes reside in the subclavian triangle. Nodes of this group are in close association with the brachial plexus, the subclavian artery and vein, and the omohyoid muscle. A large, constant node of this group, located in the vicinity of the intermediate tendon of the omohyoid muscle, is the jugulo-omohyoid lymph node. (This node is located in a border zone between the superior and inferior deep cervical nodes; therefore, reference to its group association varies.)

Accompanying the deep chain in the posterior cervical triangle are the accessory lymph nodes (numbering two to six) lying alongside the accessory nerve, and the transverse cervical lymph nodes (1 to 10 in number) accompanying the transverse cervical vessels.
### Table 20-1  Lymph Nodes of the Head and Neck

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Node</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Afferent</th>
<th>Efferent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Superficial Lymph Nodes of the Head</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occipital (2–4)</td>
<td>Superior nuchal line between sternocleidomastoid and trapezius</td>
<td>Occipital part of scalp</td>
<td>Superficial cervical lymph nodes Accessory lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastoid (1–3)</td>
<td>Superficial to sternocleidomastoid insertion</td>
<td>Posterior parietal scalp Skin of ear, posterior external acoustic meatus</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical nodes Accessory lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preauricular (2–3)</td>
<td>Anterior to ear over parotid fascia</td>
<td>Drains areas supplied by superficial temporal artery Anterior parietal scalp Anterior surface of ear</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parotid (up to 10 or more)</td>
<td>About parotid gland and under parotid fascia Deep to parotid gland</td>
<td>External acoustic meatus Skin of frontal and temporal regions Eyelids, tympanic cavity Cheek, nose (posterior palate)</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Superficial</strong> up to 12</td>
<td>Distributed along course of facial artery and vein</td>
<td>Skin and mucous membranes of eyelids, nose, cheek</td>
<td>Submandibular nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Maxillary</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Buccal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mandibular</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep</td>
<td>Distributed along course of maxillary artery lateral to lateral pterygoid muscle</td>
<td>Temporal and infratemporal fossa Nasal pharynx</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Superficial Cervical Lymph Nodes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior cervical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Superficial</strong></td>
<td>Anterior jugular vein between superficial cervical fascia and infrahyoid region of neck</td>
<td>Skin, muscles, and viscera of infrahyoid region of neck</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deep</td>
<td>Between viscera of neck and investing layer of deep cervical fascia</td>
<td>Adjoining parts of trachea, larynx, thyroid gland</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submental (2–3)</td>
<td>Submental triangle</td>
<td>Chin Medial part of lower lip Lower incisor teeth and gingiva Tip of tongue Cheeks</td>
<td>Submandibular lymph node to jugulo-omohyoid lymph node and superior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submandibular (3–6)</td>
<td>Submandibular triangle adjacent submandibular gland</td>
<td>Facial nodes Chin Lateral upper and lower lips Submental nodes Cheeks and nose, anterior nasal cavity Maxillary and mandibular teeth and gingiva Oral palate Lateral parts of anterior 2/3 of tongue</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical lymph nodes and jugulo-omohyoid lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
### Table 20-1 Lymph Nodes of the Head and Neck

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Node</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Afferent</th>
<th>Efferent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Superficial cervical (1–2)</td>
<td>Along external jugular vein superficial to sternocleidomastoid muscle</td>
<td>Lower part of ear and parotid region</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior deep cervical</td>
<td>Surrounding internal jugular vein deep to sternocleidomastoid and superior to omohyoid muscle</td>
<td>Occipital nodes</td>
<td>Inferior deep cervical nodes or separate channel to jugulo-subclavian junction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugulodigastric</td>
<td>Junction of internal jugular vein and posterior digastric muscle</td>
<td>Palatine and lingual tonsils</td>
<td>Inferior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jugulo-omohyoid</td>
<td>Above junction of internal jugular vein and omohyoid muscle</td>
<td>Posterior 1/3 of tongue</td>
<td>Inferior deep cervical lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior deep cervical</td>
<td>Along internal jugular vein below omohyoid muscle deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscle</td>
<td>Transverse cervical nodes</td>
<td>Jugular trunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retropharyngeal (1–3)</td>
<td>Retropharyngeal space</td>
<td>Posterior nasal cavity</td>
<td>Superior deep cervical nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessory (2–6)</td>
<td>Along accessory nerve in posterior triangle</td>
<td>Occipital nodes</td>
<td>Transverse cervical nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse cervical (1–10)</td>
<td>Along transverse cervical blood vessels at level of clavicle</td>
<td>Accessory nodes, Apical axillary nodes, Lateral neck, Anterior thoracic wall</td>
<td>Jugular trunk or directly into thoracic duct or right lymphatic duct or independently into junction of internal jugular vein and subclavian vein</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Summary Bite

Lymph within the superficial and deep regions of the head and neck passes through one to several lymph nodes via minor lymph vessels, and from there into major lymph vessels. The lymph is eventually emptied into either the right or left subclavian veins to be returned to the cardiovascular system.

### Superficial Tissues

The back of the scalp is drained by the occipital lymph nodes, whose efferent vessels empty into the superficial cervical lymph nodes. The lymph vessels of the medial surface of the ear, the lateral aspects of the eyelids, the temporal region, and most of the forehead drain into the mastoid, preauricular, and parotid lymph nodes. Efferents from these nodes then pass into the superior deep cervical lymph nodes. The remainder of the eye and middle ear are drained by...
the preauricular (parotid lymph nodes), which then drain into the superior deep cervical lymph nodes.

Submandibular lymph nodes receive lymph from the nose, cheek, and lip, either directly or via the buccal lymph nodes. The lateral aspect of the cheek and the skin over the bridge of the nose are partially drained also by the parotid lymph nodes.

Lymph from the mucosa over the floor of the mouth, the tip of the tongue, and the central portion of the lower lip is drained into the submental lymph nodes, whence it empties into the jugulo-omohyoid lymph node of the inferior deep cervical chain.

Superficial tissues of the neck are drained by the deep cervical lymph nodes directly or indirectly. Lymph from the posterior cervical triangle may first enter the superficial cervical and occipital nodes, from which the lymph flows to the deep cervical lymph nodes. Lymph from the anterior cervical triangle, above the hyoid bone, is drained into the submental and submandibular lymph nodes, whereas lymph collected from the region inferior to the hyoid bone drains into the anterior cervical lymph nodes, whose efferents deliver it to the inferior deep cervical lymph nodes.

**Deep Tissues**

Most of the lymph of the nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses, and nasopharynx drains into the retropharyngeal lymph nodes or passes directly to the inferior deep cervical lymph chain. The thyroid gland is drained by the pretracheal, prelymph node, and parapharyngeal lymph nodes, whence lymph flows to the deep cervical lymph nodes.

Frequently, some of the lymph from this endocrine gland passes directly into the deep cervical lymph nodes. The tracheal, esophageal, and laryngeal lymph in the region of the neck also passes either directly or indirectly, via the prelymph node or parapharyngeal lymph nodes, into the deep cervical chain. Tonsillar lymph is drained into the jugulodigastric lymph node of the superior deep cervical chain.

Lymph drainage from the gingiva, teeth, and tongue deserves special attention. Gingival lymph is gathered on the lingual and vestibular surfaces by submucosal plexuses of lymph vessels, which are consolidated into a series of vessels behind the molars. From here the lymph passes either to the submandibular lymph nodes or, occasionally, into the deep cervical lymph nodes.

Lymph vessels of the pulp and those of the periodontal ligament of the same tooth are drained by a common vessel. Lack of agreement exists concerning the precise path of lymph drainage of teeth, but a reasonable case may be made for the following description. The mandibular incisors are drained by the submental lymph nodes, and the remaining teeth (both maxillary and mandibular) are drained by the submandibular lymph nodes. Generally, lymphatic drainage is ipsilateral, although for structures near the midline it is both ipsilateral and contralateral.

Lymphatic drainage of the tongue is complex because the tongue has a rich lymphatic plexus of vessels that is drained by three vessel groups: the marginal, dorsal, and central vessels. In addition, drainage from the two sides is intermingled to a
large extent, and the base of the tongue is drained by lymph nodes situated more cranially than those that receive lymph from the tip of the tongue. Vessels from the tip of the tongue pass to the submental nodes along with those of the region of the lingual frenulum.

The lateral aspect of the anterior two thirds of the tongue is also drained by marginal vessels, into the jugulodigastric lymph nodes. The central vessels drain the medial region of the anterior two thirds of the tongue, delivering the lymph to the jugulo-omohyoid lymph nodes. In addition, dorsal vessels drain the region of the sulcus terminalis and the posterior one third of the tongue, delivering lymph to the marginal lymph vessels that are drained by the jugulo-omohyoid lymph nodes.

Accessory lymph nodes located about the accessory nerve in the posterior cervical triangle may drain occipital and mastoid nodes in addition to areas of the lateral neck and shoulder. The transverse cervical nodes, located in the posterior cervical triangle, drain the accessory chain of nodes, the lateral neck, the anterior thoracic wall, the mammary gland, and, occasionally, the upper limb. Efferents from this group may pass into the jugular lymphatic trunk, the thoracic duct, or the right lymphatic duct, or they may enter the internal jugular or subclavian veins independently.

Lymph nodes of a healthy individual are soft, nonpalpable structures. However, infection, inflammation, and carcinomatous involvement of areas drained by lymph nodes cause these structures to become palpable, swollen, hard, and maybe even painful.

**Implications of the Disease State from Lymph Node Examinations**

The health professional dealing with the oral cavity should examine patients for swollen, painful lymph nodes, especially the submental, submandibular, and superficial and deep cervical chains. The last group may be palpated with relative ease by manipulation of the relaxed sternocleidomastoid muscle.

Diseased states of the oral cavity will most probably be reflected in the submental and submandibular lymph nodes. Remembering that, in the process of lymph drainage, the fluid passes through a series of lymph nodes before emptying into the thoracic or right lymphatic ducts, it becomes evident that each lymph node group is a “barrier” where the disease agent is being combated. The first such site is known as the primary node, which drains into a secondary node that may be drained by a tertiary node. The more nodes that are interposed in the disease agent’s route of spread before reaching the major lymphatic channels, the better the chance of successfully combating the disease. Hence, a knowledge of lymphatic drainage of the head and neck assists the health professional dealing with this region in determining the site of disease manifestation.

Treatment of cervical metastases may involve a radical surgery, that is, a “block resection” of the cervical lymph nodes. It is essential that all lymph nodes of the particular side of the neck be removed. To ensure that this is the case, connective tissues, muscles, glands, and even nerves of the area are frequently sacrificed.
Arterial Supply to the head and neck arises primarily from branches originating from three sources: the subclavian artery and the external and internal carotid arteries.

Common Carotid Artery, similar to the subclavian artery origins, differs between the left and right sides. The right common carotid artery originates from the brachiocephalic trunk, whereas the left common carotid artery originates from the arch of the aorta. The common carotid arteries possess no branches in the neck; rather, each common carotid artery bifurcates at the level of the thyroid cartilage into the internal and external carotid arteries.

External Carotid Artery is the other terminal of the common carotid artery arising at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery. The external carotid artery has six collateral and two terminal branches. The branches serve structures in the neck and the head, including the face, oral cavity, and nasal cavity. The two terminal arteries serve the oral cavity, deep face and the structures about it, and the side of the head.

External Jugular Vein drains the face and the neck. Veins draining the face are divided into superficial and deep veins. Small veins drain a particular area and then these veins drain into larger veins, and still larger named veins become regional veins receiving contributions from many areas. There are many direct communications between veins of areas and regions. These form venous plexuses in many regions within the head and neck as well as within the cranium. Thus, these plexuses are possible avenues for the spread of infection.

Internal Carotid Artery possesses no branches in the neck. Instead, it enters into the cranial vault via the carotid canal to serve the structures within the cranium.

Internal Jugular Vein drains the cranium before exiting the cranial cavity via the jugular foramen. Most of the veins draining the cranium are detailed in Chapter 17.
Chapter 21  Vascular Supply of the Head and Neck

The head and neck receive most of their vascular supply from branches of the external and internal carotid arteries, as well as from certain branches of the subclavian artery. Most of the blood within the internal carotid artery and the vertebral branch of the subclavian artery is destined for the brain, whereas all of the blood carried by the external carotid artery and some branches of the subclavian artery supplies the remainder of the region. Drainage of this area is accomplished by the tributaries of the internal and external jugular veins, as well as those of the vertebral vein. This chapter discusses the branches and tributaries of these major vessels and their locations, sources, and destinations in a systemic fashion. However, vessels whose primary concerns are the brain and the internal base of the skull will not be detailed here; instead, that material may be found in Chapter 17.

**COMMON CAROTID ARTERY**

The common carotid arteries of the two sides have different origins. The right common carotid artery is a branch of the brachiocephalic trunk, whereas the left arises directly from the arch of the aorta. Consequently, the right common carotid artery is contained wholly within the neck, whereas the left common carotid artery begins in the upper thorax and enters the neck in the vicinity of the sternoclavicular joint. Once in the neck, both vessels are enclosed in their own compartment of the carotid sheath and ascend approximately to the level of the thyroid cartilage (although this is variable), where each bifurcates into an external and an internal carotid artery (Figs. 21-1 and 21-2). Because these vessels are considered terminal branches, the common carotid artery is said to have no branches in the neck. The common carotid artery presents a slight dilation at its bifurcation, the carotid sinus, a modified region of the vessel. It is innervated by the glossopharyngeal nerve, whose function is to monitor blood pressure. An additional structure, the carotid body, is also associated with the region of bifurcation. This small, oval, reddish-brown structure, lying within the wall of the carotid artery and innervated by branches of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves, is a chemoreceptor, monitoring oxygen and carbon dioxide tensions as well as hydrogen ion concentration.

**Subclavian Artery** origins differ on the left and right sides of the body. The right subclavian artery is the terminal of the brachiocephalic trunk, whereas the left subclavian artery arises from the arch of the aorta. Both of the subclavian arteries ascend into the neck deep to and in a specific relationship with the anterior scalene muscle. Thus, the first part of the subclavian artery lies medial to the anterior scalene muscle; the second part of the subclavian artery lies behind the anterior scalene muscle; whereas and the third part of the artery lies lateral to the anterior scalene muscle. The several branches arising from the subclavian artery are described as arising from one of these three parts. Most of the neck structures are vascularized by branches of the subclavian arteries.

**Venous Drainage** from the head and neck is collected into two major venous trunks: the internal and external jugular veins.

**Clinical Considerations**

**Carotid Sinus Syndrome**

Carotid sinus syndrome may result in loss of consciousness due to simple head movements. The syndrome relates to the hypersensitivity of the carotid sinus due to an unknown etiology. Sudden slight pressure changes, such as that occasioned by movement of the head, may result in stimulation of the carotid sinus. Impulses relayed by the sinus reduce blood pressure and slow the pumping action of the heart, thus decreasing blood supply to the brain and resulting in sudden loss of consciousness.
External Carotid Artery

The **external carotid artery** has six collateral and two terminal branches. They are described in the order of their origins from inferior to superior.

### Superior Thyroid Artery

The **superior thyroid artery** is the first branch of the external carotid artery, arising from its ventral aspect, just superior to the bifurcation of the common carotid artery (Figs. 21-1 and 21-2). The superior thyroid artery descends in the neck, accompanied by the same-named vein and the external laryngeal nerve, reaches the superior pole of the thyroid gland, and divides into its terminal branches, some of which anastomose with their counterparts of the other side and with branches of the inferior thyroid artery. The superior thyroid artery has four named branches—the infrahyoid, sternocleidomastoid, superior laryngeal, and cricothyroid arteries—as well as its terminal anterior, posterior, and occasionally lateral glandular branches serving the thyroid gland.

- The **infrahyoid artery (branch)** is a small vessel, passing, as its name implies, inferior to the hyoid bone to anastomose with its counterpart on the other side. Along its path, it supplies muscular branches to the infrahyoid muscles in its vicinity.
- The **sternocleidomastoid artery (branch)** passes ventral to the carotid sheath, supplying the same-named muscle on its deep surface and sends small twigs to structures in its vicinity.
- To distribute to the larynx, the **superior laryngeal artery** passes superficial to the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle and pierces the thyrohyoid membrane, accompanied by the internal laryngeal nerve. Within the larynx, it serves its muscles, glands, and mucosa.
The small cricothyroid artery courses along the cricothyroid ligament, supplying the muscle of the same name and additional structures in its vicinity.

The glandular branches of the superior thyroid artery are the anterior, posterior, and, occasionally, lateral branches. The anterior branch follows the superior border of the lateral lobe, distributes to its anterior surface, and forms an anastomosis with its opposite across the isthmus. The posterior branch follows a similar course on the deep aspect of the lateral lobe, ramifies on that surface, and forms an anastomosis with the inferior thyroid artery, also supplying the parathyroid gland. Occasionally a lateral branch is present, which supplies the lateral aspect of the lateral lobe.

Ascending Pharyngeal Artery
The ascending pharyngeal artery, the smallest branch of the external carotid artery, arises on the medial aspect of that artery, shortly after the bifurcation of the common carotid artery (Fig. 21-2). Along its ascent, between the pharynx and the internal carotid artery, it provides unnamed muscular branches to the prevertebral muscles, as well as branches to structures in the vicinity of its path. This artery has four named branches: pharyngeal, meningeal, inferior tympanic, and palatine.

The pharyngeal branches are variable in number (two to four) and supply the stylopharyngeus and middle pharyngeal constrictor muscles as well as the region of the pharyngeal mucosa in its vicinity.
The meningeal arteries enter the cranial cavity via the jugular foramen (posterior meningeal branch), hypoglossal canal, and foramen lacerum to serve the dura mater.

The inferior tympanic artery gains access to the tympanic cavity via the petrous portion of the temporal bone, to vascularize that cavity’s medial wall. It is accompanied by the tympanic branch of the accessory nerve.

The palatine artery courses along the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle and supplies branches to the tonsils, auditory tube, and soft palate, anastomosing with other arteries of this region.

Lingual Artery
The lingual artery often arises in common with the facial artery, then becoming the linguofacial trunk. The lingual artery originates near the posterior extent of the greater cornu of the hyoid bone, passes deep to the hypoglossal nerve, then between the middle pharyngeal constrictor and hyoglossus muscles (Figs. 21-1 through 21-3). The artery enters the deep surface of the tongue and extends as far anteriorly as its apex. The lingual artery has four named branches: the suprhyoid, dorsal lingual, sublingual, and deep lingual arteries.

The slender suprhyoid artery courses along the superior border of the hyoid bone, serving the muscles in its vicinity, and anastomosing with its counterpart on the other side.

The dorsal lingual artery arises deep to the hyoglossus muscle. It ascends to the posterior dorsum of the tongue to supply the palatoglossal arch, mucous membrane of the tongue, palatine tonsil, and some of the soft palate, freely anastomosing with other arteries in its vicinity.

The sublingual artery arises at the border of the hyoglossus muscle to course between the genioglossus and mylohyoid muscles on its way to the sublingual gland, which it supplies along with adjacent muscles in addition to the mucous membrane of the

Clinical Considerations

Sublingual Artery Damage
The sublingual artery, occasionally injured during dental procedures, may present problems to the surgeon attempting to ligate its source because it may arise from the submental branch of the facial artery rather than from the lingual artery.
floor of the mouth and gingiva. Branches of this artery anastomose with the submental branch of the facial artery.

- The terminus of the lingual artery, known as the **deep lingual artery**, passes along the ventral aspect of the tongue, immediately deep to the mucous membrane, accompanied by the lingual nerve, to its apex, where it will anastomose with its counterpart of the other side.

**Facial Artery**

The **facial artery** arises just above (or in common with) the lingual artery and ascends, deep to the stylohyoid and posterior belly of the digastric muscles, to lie in a groove on the posterior aspect of the submandibular gland. The vessel enters the face by crossing the base of the mandible, just anterior to the masseter muscle, in the groove for the facial artery (Figs. 21-1, 21-2, and 21-4). In the face, the facial artery travels superficially, just under the cover of the platysma muscle. It passes, via a tortuous path, deep to the zygomaticus major, risorius, and levator anguli oris muscles, to the corner of the mouth. Here, it ascends lateral to the nose to terminate as the angular artery at the medial corner of the eye. The branches of the facial artery are the ascending palatine, tonsillar, glandular, and submental arteries in the neck and the inferior labial, superior labial, lateral nasal, and angular arteries in the face.

- The **ascending palatine artery** originates near the tip of the styloid process. It ascends between
that process and the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle, then between the stylopharyngeus and styloglossus muscles, to supply the levator veli palatini, superior pharyngeal constrictor and neighboring muscles, soft palate, tonsils, and auditory tube, finally anastomosing with other arteries in its vicinity.

- The **tonsillar artery** passes between the styloglossus and medial pterygoid muscles and pierces the superior pharyngeal constrictor muscle to supply the palatine tonsil and the posterior tongue.

- The **glandular arteries** distribute as three or four vessels to the submandibular gland to supply it and the adjacent area.

- The **submental artery** arises from the facial artery near the anterior border of the masseter muscle. It follows the base of the mandible in an anterior direction and turns onto the chin at the anterior border of the depressor anguli oris muscle. The submental artery supplies the muscles it encounters along its passage and forms anastomoses with several arteries in its vicinity, including the mental and sublingual arteries.

- The **inferior labial artery** originates near the corner of the mouth, passes deep to the depressor anguli oris muscle, and pierces the orbicularis oris muscle. The artery courses superficial to that muscle, supplying it as well as the substance of the lip. It forms an anastomosis with its counterpart of the other side and with branches of the mental and submental arteries.

- The **superior labial artery** arises just above and follows the same pattern as the inferior labial artery. It passes superficial to the orbicularis oris muscle in the upper lip to serve that muscle as well as the substance of the upper lip. It sends a small twig, the septal branch into the nasal septum, and another one, the alar branch, into the wing of the nose. The terminus of the vessel will anastomose with its counterpart of the opposite side.

- The **lateral nasal artery** is a small branch arising at and passing into the wing and bridge of the nose, which it supplies. This vessel will anastomose with various other arteries in its vicinity.

- The **angular artery** is the terminal continuation of the facial artery, supplying the tissues in the vicinity of the medial corner of the eye and anastomosing with arteries of that region.

**Occipital Artery**

The **occipital artery** originates on the posterior aspect of the external carotid artery, approximately at the same level as the origin of the facial artery. It passes superficial to the hypoglossal nerve, the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the posterior belly of the digastric muscle and lodges in the groove for the occipital artery on the medial aspect of the mastoid process (Figs. 21-1 and 21-2). It passes between the splenius capitis and semispinalis capitis muscles and pierces the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia at the region of attachment of the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid muscles, just inferior to the superior nuchal line. The artery ramifies in the superficial fascia of the scalp, serving the back of the head. The occipital artery has the following branches: sternocleidomastoid, mastoid, auricular, muscular, descending, meningeal, and occipital arteries.

The **sternocleidomastoid artery** originates near or at the origin of the occipital artery, or occasionally directly from the external carotid artery. It courses across the hypoglossal nerve and enters the deep aspect of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, which it serves. Frequently, this artery exists as two separate...
upper and lower branches, where the latter accompanies the accessory nerve into the muscle.

- The **mastoid artery** is a small branch that gains access to the cranial cavity via the mastoid foramen. Along its path, it supplies the mastoid air cells, dura mater, and additional structures in its vicinity.

- The **auricular branch** passes superficial to the mastoid process to reach and supply the back of the auricle.

- The several unnamed **muscular branches** of the occipital artery distribute to the digastric, stylohyoid, longissimus, and splenius capitis muscles.

- The **descending artery**, the longest of all the branches, originates while the occipital artery is still deep to the splenius capitis muscle. Shortly after its origin, the descending artery bifurcates into a superficial and a deep branch, serving the trapezius muscle and the deep muscles of the back of the head and neck, respectively. The superficial branch anastomoses with the transverse cervical artery, whereas the deep portion will anastomose with the vertebral and deep cervical arteries, providing a collateral circulation between the subclavian and external carotid systems of arteries.

- The **meningeal artery branches** gain access to the cranial vault via the condylar canal and jugular foramen to vascularize the dura mater and the bones of the posterior cranial fossa.

- **Occipital branches**, which are usually two in number (medial and lateral), follow the course of the greater occipital nerve to serve the muscles and tissues of the scalp. Small branches may traverse the parietal foramen to supply the parietal meninges.

**Posterior Auricular Artery**

The **posterior auricular artery** arises from the posterior aspect of the external carotid artery near the level of the distal end of the styloid process. In passing through the substance of the parotid gland, it provides glandular and muscular branches to several muscles along its course. Its three named branches are the stylomastoid, auricular, and occipital arteries.

- The **stylomastoid artery** ascends to enter the stylohyoid foramen, accompanying the facial nerve, where it provides a twig, the **posterior tympanic artery**, that will follow the chorda tympani nerve to vascularize the tympanic membrane. The stylomastoid artery serves the mastoid air cells, stapedius muscle, and structures in its vicinity.

- The **auricular branch** reaches the back of the auricle to supply it and its anterior aspect either by piercing the cartilage or by coursing around its free edge.

- The **occipital artery** crosses superficial to the insertion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle to supply it and the scalp in the vicinity. Its branches anastomose with branches of the superficial temporal and occipital arteries.

**Superficial Temporal Artery**

The **superficial temporal artery**, one of the terminal branches of the external carotid artery, arises near the level of the earlobe within the substance of the parotid gland, which it supplies. The vessel branches profusely in its cranial-most aspect to supply the region superficial to the zygomatic arch as far medially as the lateral corner of the eye, as well as the temple and the lateral aspect of the scalp (Figs. 21-1, 21-4 through 21-6). The branches of the superficial temporal artery include the transverse facial, middle temporal, zygomatico-orbital, anterior auricular, frontal, and parietal arteries.

- The **transverse facial artery** arises near the level of the mandibular condyle within the substance of the parotid gland. It accompanies and supplies the parotid duct in its path across the masseter muscle. In addition, it sends branches to the parotid gland, masseter muscle, and other tissues in its vicinity.

- The **middle temporal artery** pierces the temporalis fascia near its origin to supply the temporalis muscle and anastomoses with branches of the deep temporal arteries.

- The **zygomatico-orbital artery**, occasionally a branch of the middle temporal artery, follows the zygomatic arch to the lateral corner of the eye. Subsequent to supplying the orbicularis oculi muscle, it will anastomose with branches of the ophthalmic artery.

- The **anterior auricular branches** serve the anterior aspect of the ear, the ear lobe, and the proximal region of the ear canal. This vessel will anastomose with branches of the posterior auricular artery.

- The **frontal branch** follows a tortuous path deep to the integument of the forehead, where it ramifies, supplying the frontalis and orbicularis oculi muscles as well as additional tissues of the region. It will anastomose with branches of the supraorbital and supratrochlear arteries.

- The **parietal branch** passes posterosuperiorly behind the auricle, supplying it and the side and back of the scalp. It will anastomose with branches of the occipital and posterior auricular arteries and its counterpart of the other side.

**Maxillary Artery**

The **maxillary artery**, the large terminal branch of the external carotid artery, originates deep within the body of the parotid gland. It courses anteriorly,
medial to the ramus of the mandible near the level of the condylar process but superficial to the sphenomandibular ligament (Figs. 21-1, 21-6, and 21-7). Passing along the superficial or deep surface of the lateral pterygoid muscle, the maxillary artery reaches and enters the pterygopalatine fossa, where it divides into its terminal branches. The maxillary artery is described as consisting of three portions as it courses through the mandibular, pterygoid, and pterygopalatine regions. The first or **mandibular portion** courses deep to the mandible between the ramus and the sphenomandibular ligament. Its branches are the deep auricular, anterior tympanic, inferior alveolar, middle meningeal, and accessory meningeal arteries. The course of the second or **pterygoid portion** of the maxillary artery is inconsistent because it may be either superficial or deep to the lateral pterygoid muscle, and the artery enters the pterygopalatine fossa by passing between the two heads of this muscle. Branches of the pterygoid portion are the deep temporal, pterygoid, masseteric, and buccal arteries. The third or **pterygopalatine portion** of the maxillary artery gains access to the pterygopalatine fossa via the pterygomaxillary fissure. Branches of the pterygopalatine portion are the posterosuperior alveolar, infraorbital, greater palatine, artery of the pterygoid canal, pharyngeal, and sphenopalatine arteries.

**Branches of the Mandibular Portion**

- The small **deep auricular artery** passes medial to the temporomandibular joint, which it supplies to penetrate the wall of the external acoustic meatus, serving its lining and the tympanic membrane.
- The **anterior tympanic artery** is also small and may arise as a common trunk with the deep auricular artery. It ascends to enter the petrotympanic fissure to reach the tympanic cavity, where it serves the tympanic membrane and associated structures.
- The **inferior alveolar artery** arises from a point between the condylar process of the mandible and the sphenomandibular ligament. It passes inferiorly to enter, along the inferior alveolar nerve and vein, the mandibular foramen. Within the mandibular canal, in the vicinity of the first premolar tooth, it bifurcates to form the **incisive** and **mental arteries**. Additional branches of the inferior alveolar artery are the mylohyoid and dental arteries. The **mylohyoid artery** arises from its parent vessel before that artery enters the mandibular foramen. It passes along the mylohyoid groove, accompanied by the mylohyoid nerve, to serve the muscle of the same name. **Dental branches** enter the alveolus, periodontal ligaments, and roots of the molar and premolar teeth. The **incisive branch** continues anteriorly within the mandible to serve

![Arteries and nerves deep to the parotid bed.](image)
Figure 21-6. Arteries of the deep face.
Figure 21-7. Arteries of the deep face. Note the maxillary artery diving beneath the lateral pterygoid muscle.
the canine, lateral, and central incisor teeth and to anastomose with its counterpart of the other side. The mental artery, accompanied by the mental nerve and veins, exits the mandibular canal via the mental foramen to vascularize the chin and lower lip. Its branches anastomose with those of the inferior labial and submental arteries.

- The accessory and middle meningeal arteries arise from the superior aspect of the maxillary artery or by a common trunk from the same artery. As the middle meningeal artery ascends to enter the foramen spinosum, it is engirdled by the two roots of the auriculotemporal nerve. The accessory meningeal artery traverses the foramen ovale. The distribution of these arteries is detailed in Chapter 17.

Branches of the Pterygoid Portion

- The anterior and posterior deep temporal arteries pass superiorly, deep to the temporalis muscle that they supply. They anastomose with the middle temporal and lacrimal arteries.

- The short pterygoid arteries arise from this portion to vascularize the medial and lateral pterygoid muscles.

- The masseteric artery, accompanied by the same-named nerve, passes through the mandibular notch to serve the masseter muscle. Some of its branches anastomose with branches of the transverse facial and facial arteries.

- The buccal artery accompanies the buccal nerve and passes in close association to the tendon of the temporalis muscle. It arborizes on the buccinator muscle to supply it and the mucous membrane of the mouth. Branches of the buccal artery anastomose with those of the infraorbital and facial arteries.

Branches of the Pterygopalatine Portion

- The posterior superior alveolar artery branches from the maxillary artery as that vessel enters the pterygomaxillary fissure. It travels along the maxillary tuberosity and enters the posterior superior alveolar foramen in conjunction with the like-named nerve. The vessel ramifies within the maxilla to serve the maxillary sinus, molar and premolar teeth, and neighboring gingiva.

- The infraorbital artery appears as the continuation of the maxillary artery; however, it may originate in common with the posterior superior alveolar artery. It enters the floor of the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure, lies in the infraorbital groove, then leaves the orbit via the infraorbital canal to enter the face by way of the infraorbital foramen. Branches of the infraorbital artery are the orbital branches, serving the inferior oblique and inferior rectus muscles, as well as the lacrimal gland. The anterior superior alveolar branches vascularize the maxillary sinus, maxillary canine, and incisor teeth as well as their respective gingiva. The facial branches enter the face via the infraorbital foramen deep to the levator labii superioris muscle, where they provide labial, nasal, and palpebral branches to serve the lacrimal sac, nose, and upper lip. The various branches anastomose with branches of the angular, dorsal nasal, buccal, transverse facial, and facial arteries.

- The descending palatine artery descends in the pterygopalatine canal then gives rise to the greater palatine artery and its branch, the lesser palatine artery, which gain entrance to the palate via the greater palatine and lesser palatine foramina, respectively (Fig. 21-8). The greater palatine artery courses in an anterior direction on the lateral aspect of the hard palate to supply the palatal mucosa, gingiva, and glands and then proceeds to anastomose with the nasopalatine artery in the incisive canal. The lesser palatine artery vascularizes the soft palate and tonsil. It will anastomose with the ascending palatine branch of the facial artery as well as the tonsillar branches of the facial, lingual, and ascending pharyngeal arteries.

- The small artery of the pterygoid canal passes through the posterior wall of the pterygopalatine fossa by way of the pterygoid canal to supply part of the auditory tube, pharynx, middle ear, and sphenoidal sinus.

- The small pharyngeal branch passes dorsally, through the pharyngeal canal, to vascularize the auditory tube, sphenoidal sinus, and portions of the pharynx.

- The sphenopalatine artery leaves the pterygopalatine fossa via the sphenopalatine foramen on its medial wall to enter the nasal fossa, where it vascularizes portions of the nasal conchae and meatuses by its posterior lateral nasal branches as well as the posterior segment of the median nasal septum by its posterior septal branches. The longest branch of this vessel is the nasopalatine artery, which descends along the vomer bone to enter the incisive canal. It is here that it will anastomose with branches of the greater palatine artery.

Internal Carotid Artery

The internal carotid artery has no branches in the neck. It ascends deep to the parotid gland, digastric muscle, and muscles attached to the styloid process in its own compartment of the carotid sheath (Fig. 21-2). The internal carotid artery gains access to the cranial cavity via the carotid canal of the petrous
Bleeding from the nose subsequent to injury of the nose is a common occurrence and is usually relatively easy to control. Normally, the source of blood flow is the **Kiesselebach area**, the mucosa of the anteroinferior region of the nasal septum, where the septal branch of the superior labial, anterior ethmoidal, nasopalatine, and greater palatine arteries anastomose.

The bleeding is controlled by pressure or by packing the nose with cotton. Occasionally bleeding is from higher up in the nose, where control may require more heroic action. When the injury is from a direct blow, the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone may be fractured.
temporal bone to vascularize regions of the brain, orbit, portions of the nasal cavity, and forehead. Associated with the artery is the carotid plexus of nerves, composed of postganglionic sympathetic nerve fibers derived from the superior cervical sympathetic ganglion. The internal carotid artery is described as having four portions: cervical, petrous, cavernous, and cerebral, referring to its termination in the vicinity of the lateral cerebral fissure. The **cervical portion** of the artery has no branches. The **petrous portion**, located entirely within the carotid canal of the petrous temporal bone, has four branches: the caroticotympanic, artery of the pterygoid canal, cavernous, and hypophyseal arteries. The **cavernous portion**, located within the cavernous sinus (but isolated from the cavernous blood by the endothelially lined fibrous sheaths), gives rise to the ganglionic, anterior meningeal, ophthalmic, and anterior and middle cerebral arteries. The **cerebral portion** gives rise to the ophthalmic and anterior and middle cerebral arteries. Its terminal branches are the posterior communicating and anterior choroidal arteries.

**Petrus Portion**

Because the arteries of the petrus portion are small, they will be treated as a single unit. The **caroticotympanic branch** leaves the carotid canal to gain access to the tympanic cavity, part of which it vascularizes. The **artery of the pterygoid canal** is not always present; when it is, it will anastomose with the same-named nerve. The artery of the pterygoid canal is larger than the previous vessel. It leaves the orbit by way of the anterior ethmoidal foramen, accompanying the same-named nerve. It vascularizes the frontal sinus, all of the ethmoidal air cells (except for the posterior), and a region of the dura mater of the anterior cranial fossa. Its large **nasal branch** enters the nasal cavity along a hiatus by the crista galli to serve the walls of the nasal cavity. A cutaneous twig of the nasal branch serves the bridge of the nose.

**Cavernous Portion**

The small **ganglionic** and **anterior meningeal branches** supply the trigeminal ganglion and the dura mater of the anterior cranial fossa, respectively.

**Cerebral Portion**

**Ophthalmic Artery**

The **ophthalmic artery** originates a few millimeters dorsal to the optic foramen (canal) through which it gains access to the orbit accompanied by the optic nerve, which is superior and medial to it. Within the orbit, the artery crosses superior to the nerve, but inferior to the superior rectus muscle, to reach the medial wall of the orbit. The ophthalmic artery serves the orbit as well as the eyeball, and its muscles and its branches are described accordingly. The **orbital group** consists of the lacrimal, supraorbital, posterior and anterior ethmoidal, medial palpebral, supratrochlear, and dorsal nasal arteries. The **oculomotor group** is composed of the central artery of the retina, short and long posterior ciliary, anterior ciliary, and muscular arteries.

- The **lacral artery** arises on the lateral aspect of the ophthalmic artery and passes, accompanied by the lacral nerve, to the lacral gland, which it supplies. The later palpebral branches of the lacral artery serve the upper and lower eyelids. Additional named branches include the zygomatic and recurrent branches. The former, passing through the zygomaticotemporal and zygomatico-facial foramina, serves the contents of the temporal fossa and the substance of the cheek, whereas the latter supplies the dura mater, reaching it via the superior orbital fissure.

- The **supraorbital artery** courses forward in the orbit on the medial margin of the superior rectus muscle and then travels with the frontal nerve, superficial to the levator palpebrae superioris muscle (serving both muscles), to reach and enter the supraorbital foramen. The artery distributes on the forehead and will anastomose with branches of the superficial temporal and supratrochlear arteries, as well as with its counterpart of the other side.

- The small **posterior ethmoidal artery** leaves the orbit via the same-named foramen, accompanying the same-named nerve, supplies the posterior ethmoidal air cells, the dura mater of the cribiform plate, and regions of the nasal cavity.

- The **anterior ethmoidal artery** is larger than the previous vessel. It leaves the orbit by way of the anterior ethmoidal foramen, accompanying the same-named nerve. It vascularizes the frontal sinus, all of the ethmoidal air cells (except for the posterior), and a region of the dura mater of the anterior cranial fossa. Its large **nasal branch** enters the nasal cavity along a hiatus by the crista galli to serve the walls of the nasal cavity. A cutaneous twig of the nasal branch serves the bridge of the nose.

- The **superior and inferior medial palpebral arteries** each form an arch in the upper and lower eyelids, respectively. The inferior palpebral artery also sends a twig to the nasolacrimal sac and duct. These vessels form extensive anastomoses with other arteries of the region and with each other.

- The **supratrochlear artery**, a terminal branch of the ophthalmic artery, leaves the orbit medial to the supraorbital foramen. It serves the forehead and will anastomose with the supraorbital artery and its counterpart of the other side.

- The **dorsal nasal artery**, the inferiorly positioned terminal branch of the ophthalmic artery, leaves the orbit at its medial angle to serve the bridge and side of the nose. Its lacral branch supplies the nasolacrimal sac and duct.

- The small **central artery of the retina** passes within the optic nerve to supply it as well as the retina of the bulb.
The several short posterior ciliary arteries pass to the eyeball around the periphery of the optic nerve. They pierce the sclera to serve it and the ciliary processes.

The two long posterior ciliary arteries pass lateral and medial to the optic nerve to supply the ciliary muscle and iris, subsequent to piercing the sclera.

The anterior ciliary arteries pass deep to the conjunctiva and penetrate the sclera just posterior to the corneoscleral junction to serve the ciliary muscles.

The superior and inferior muscular branches serve all of the extrinsic muscles of the eyeball, as well as the levator palpebrae superioris.

Because branches of the central artery of the retina are very small, obstructions such as small emboli may cause instant and total blindness. This condition is usually unilateral and occurs mostly in older individuals.

The superior cerebral, middle cerebral, posterior communicating, and anterior choroidal arteries are discussed in Chapter 17.

The subclavian artery is a short vessel extending as far laterally as the outer border of the first rib. The origins of the right and left subclavian arteries differ in that the left one arises directly from the arch of the aorta, whereas the right is one of the terminal branches of the brachiocephalic trunk (Figs. 21-1, 21-2, and 21-9).
The right subclavian artery originates deep to the sternoclavicular joint, and the left originates behind the common carotid artery around the third or fourth thoracic vertebra. Both right and left subclavian arteries travel superiorly to the root of the neck and posterior to the anterior scalene muscle, emerging into the posterior triangle through the interval between the anterior and middle scalene muscles on their way to the lateral border of the first rib, where each artery becomes known as the axillary artery. This passage, deep to the anterior scalene muscle, permits a convenient division of the subclavian artery into three parts. The first part is from the origin of the vessel to the medial border of the anterior scalene muscle; the second part lies deep to this muscle; and the third part extends from the lateral border of the anterior scalene to the lateral border of the first rib. The branches of the subclavian artery are the vertebral artery, internal thoracic artery, and thyrocervical trunk from the first part, the costocervical trunk from the second part, and the dorsal scapular artery from the third part.

First Part of the Subclavian Artery
Vertebral Artery
The vertebral artery takes its origin from the posterior superior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery. It ascends behind the anterior scalene muscle, along the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra, and enters the foramen transversarium of the sixth cervical vertebra (Fig. 21-9). The artery travels through the foramina transversaria of the upper six cervical vertebrae and enters the suboccipital triangle, from where it traverses the foramen magnum. Branches of the vertebral artery are described according to the region occupied by the vessel, namely, cervical and cranial branches. The cervical branches are the spinal and muscular arteries, whereas the cranial branches are five in number: the meningeal, posterior spinal, anterior spinal, postero-inferior cerebellar, and medullary arteries. Only the cervical branches will be discussed here because the cranial branches were treated in Chapter 17.

The numerous spinal arteries gain access to the vertebral canal via the intervertebral foramina to serve the spinal meninges, spinal cord, and bony vertebral column. The unnamed muscular branches provide numerous twigs to supply the deep muscles of the neck. Branches of these vessels anastomose with other vessels in their vicinity.

Internal Thoracic Artery
The internal thoracic artery originates from the inferior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery. This artery passes directly inferiorly on the internal anterior thoracic wall just lateral to the margin of the sternum to the sixth or seventh rib, where it bifurcates to form the medially placed superior epigastric and laterally positioned musculophrenic arteries. Because the internal thoracic artery is a vessel whose distribution is limited to the thorax and abdomen, its branches will not be discussed.

Thyrocervical Trunk
The thyrocervical trunk is a short vessel arising from the superior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery. This trunk lies just medial to the anterior scalene muscle, where it trifurcates to form three major branches: the suprascapular, transverse cervical, and inferior thyroid arteries.

- The suprascapular artery travels obliquely across the anterior surface of the anterior scalene muscle and deep to the sternocleidomastoid muscles, which it supplies. It passes deep to the inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle to reach the scapular notch. Occasionally, the suprascapular artery is a branch of the third part of the subclavian artery.
- The transverse cervical artery crosses the neck in a fashion similar to but above the suprascapular artery. It crosses the floor of the subclavian triangle, accompanied by the spinal accessory nerve, to burrow under the anterior border of the trapezius muscle, supplying it and other muscles in the vicinity.
- The inferior thyroid artery travels superiorly in front of the medial border of the anterior scalene muscle. It then passes deep to the carotid sheath and approaches the inferior aspect of the thyroid gland, which it supplies. The inferior thyroid artery has several small branches, including the ascending and descending branches ending in the body of the thyroid gland, as well as muscular branches and the ascending cervical artery supplying anterior vertebral muscles of the neck. In addition, branches are also distributed to the larynx (the inferior laryngeal artery), trachea (tracheal artery), and esophagus.

Second Part of the Subclavian Artery
Costocervical Trunk
The costocervical trunk has different origins on the two sides of the body. On the left, it springs from the posterior aspect of the first part of the subclavian artery, whereas on the right it springs from the posterior
aspect of the second part of that artery. This trunk has two terminal branches: the superior intercostal and deep cervical arteries.

- The **superior intercostal artery** serves the first and second intercostal spaces.
- The **deep cervical artery** is interposed between the first rib and the transverse process of the seventh cervical vertebra. It passes between the semi-spinalis cervicis and semispinalis capitis muscles, supplying these as well as adjacent muscles, finally anastomosing with the occipital and vertebral arteries.

### Third Part of the Subclavian Artery

#### Dorsal Scapular Artery

The **dorsal scapular artery** is the only branch arising from the third part of the subclavian artery, although frequently it is a branch of the second part. The dorsal scapular artery passes among the trunks of the brachial plexus, anterior to the middle scalene muscle, to reach the superior angle of the scapula, where it supplies muscles in the vicinity.

### VEINS OF THE HEAD AND NECK

The veins serving the region of the head and neck are subdivided, for descriptive purposes, into three major groups: the veins of the face, cranium, and neck. Most of the veins of the cranium are detailed in Chapter 17 and will not be discussed at this point.

### Clinical Considerations

#### Thrombophlebitis of the Facial Vein

The facial vein does not contain valves; thus, blood flow may pass in either direction and into other venous vessels that may be connected to the cavernous sinus located in the dural venous sinus deep within the cranium. These connections include the superior ophthalmic vein, pterygoid venous plexus, inferior ophthalmic vein, and/or the deep facial vein. Infections in the face, especially in the "triangular danger zone of the face" bordered by the upper lip, lateral aspect of the nose, and lateral corners of the eyes above the supraorbital ridge, may cause inflammation of the facial vein and development of thrombophlebitis (clot formation) of the facial vein. Pieces of the infected clot may become free to eventually pass into the cavernous sinus, giving rise to thrombophlebitis of the cavernous sinus—a life-threatening situation if left untreated.

#### Veins of the Face

The veins of the face are subdivided into two categories, namely, superficial and deep veins. The named superficial veins are the facial, superficial temporal, posterior auricular, occipital, and retro-mandibular veins (Fig. 21-4), and the named deep veins are the maxillary and pterygoid plexus of veins.

**Facial Vein**

The **facial vein** serves as the principal venous vessel of the superficial face. It begins in the medial corner of the eye as the **angular vein**, by the confluence of the supratrochlear and supraorbital veins, and passes inferiorly, following the course of the facial artery deep to the zygomaticus major and zygomaticus minor muscles, where it parts company with the artery to empty into the internal jugular vein. The facial vein communicates with the pterygoid plexus of veins and with the ophthalmic veins, both of which present possible passageways to the cavernous sinus due to lack of directional valves. Tributaries of the facial vein include the **deep facial vein**, which connects it to the pterygoid plexus of veins; the **frontal vein**, which drains a region of the forehead; and the **supraorbital** and **supratrochlear veins**. In addition, the superior palpebral, external nasal, masseteric, anterior parotid, superior and inferior labial, and submental veins also join the facial vein.

**Superficial Temporal Vein**

The **superficial temporal vein** follows the course of the same-named artery to drain the scalp, temple, and part of the forehead and ear. This vessel begins
as a plexus of small veins on the side and top of the head. Among the tributaries of the superficial temporal vein are the transverse facial vein, middle temporal vein, and anterior auricular veins.

**Posterior Auricular Vein**

The posterior auricular vein, one of the two veins participating in the formation of the external jugular vein, begins as a plexus of small veins behind the ear and courses in an anteroinferior direction, passing superficial to mastoid attachment of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Its tributaries include the stylomastoid vein.

**Occipital Vein**

The occipital vein enters the suboccipital triangle to join a plexus of veins drained by the vertebral vein. Tributaries of the occipital vein include the mastoid, emissary vein. Occasionally, the occipital vein joins either the internal jugular or the posterior auricular veins.

**Retromandibular Vein**

The retromandibular vein, one of the two veins participating in formation of the external jugular vein, is frequently formed within the substance of the parotid gland. It is formed when the maxillary vein joins the superficial temporal vein. Tributaries of this short vessel include the common facial, middle temporal, and anterior auricular veins.

**Maxillary Vein**

The relatively short maxillary vein follows the mandibular portion of the same-named artery deep to the mandibular ramus to participate in conjunction with the superficial temporal vein, in the formation of the retromandibular vein. The maxillary vein arises from the pterygoid plexus of veins.

**Pterygoid Plexus of Veins**

The pterygoid plexus of veins is a massive network of venous channels lying on or about the surfaces of the lateral and medial pterygoid muscles and extending into the spaces of the deep face within the infratemporal fossa (Fig. 21-10). This plexus is in direct or indirect communication with a vast area, including the cranial cavity and cavernous sinus, the nasal cavity, orbit, paranasal sinuses, and superficial face. Some of its tributaries include the middle meningeal veins, posterior superior and inferior alveolar veins, veins that serve the muscles of mastication, as well as the infraorbital vein, buccal veins, and sphenopalatine

---

**Figure 21-10.** Venous sinuses of the dura mater and their communications.
Vein. In addition, it receives emissary veins and a communication from the inferior ophthalmic vein. Moreover, numerous smaller named and unnamed veins join the pterygoid plexus of veins.

Veins of the Cranium

Although most of the veins of the cranium were detailed in Chapter 17, the superior and inferior ophthalmic veins of the orbit will be treated in this section.

Superior Ophthalmic Vein
The superior ophthalmic vein is formed by the nasofrontal vein, which communicates with the angular (derived from the supraorbital and supratrochlear) veins. It enters the cranial cavity via the superior orbital fissure and empties its contents into the cavernous sinus. Its tributaries include the posterior and anterior ethmoidal, lacrimal, ciliary, and a branch of the inferior ophthalmic veins. In addition, numerous smaller named and unnamed veins join the superior ophthalmic vein.

Inferior Ophthalmic Vein
The inferior ophthalmic vein is formed by the confluence of several small veins in the anterior floor of the orbit, among which are unnamed inferior muscular branches and the anterior ciliary vein. The inferior ophthalmic vein bifurcates into a superior portion that usually joins the superior ophthalmic vein (or drains directly into the cavernous sinus), and an inferior portion that becomes a tributary of the pterygoid plexus of veins, which it reaches by way of the inferior orbital fissure.

Veins of the Neck
The veins of the neck include the external jugular, internal jugular, vertebral, and subclavian veins (Figs. 21-10 and 21-11).

Clinical Considerations

Improper Administration of Anesthesia

Improper administration of anesthesia for a maxillary molar tooth may cause the needle to puncture the pterygoid venous plexus, resulting in a hematoma with noticeable swelling. The needle tract may permit the spread of a possibly fatal infection to the cavernous sinus.

External Jugular Vein
The external jugular vein is formed by the union of the posterior auricular and retromandibular veins just posterior to the angle of the mandible, sometimes within the body of the parotid gland. It passes straight down the neck, under the cover of the platysma muscle and associated superficial fascia, superficial to the fleshy belly of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Along its path it crosses this muscle at an oblique angle. Once it reaches the subclavian triangle, the external jugular vein pierces the investing fascia, parallels the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and dives deep to the clavicle to deliver its blood into the subclavian vein, which it joins (Figs. 21-10 and 21-11). The external jugular vein has two pairs of incompetent valves just before it empties into the subclavian vein. Several tributaries join the external jugular vein, namely, the posterior external jugular vein, which drains the superficial aspect of the back of the neck, and two others, the transverse cervical and suprascapular veins. The last two veins drain the region of the shoulder. Another superficial vessel, the anterior jugular vein, occasionally empties into the external jugular vein, but usually it joins the subclavian vein directly. The anterior jugular vein is variable, but normally it begins at the level of the body of the hyoid bone and descends parallel to the anterior midline of the neck. Inferiorly, near the origin of the medial head of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the anterior jugular vein pierces the superficial lamina of the investing layer and turns laterally, pierces the posterior lamina, and joins the subclavian (or occasionally, the external jugular) vein. While it is between the two laminae of the investing facia, the anterior jugular vein communicates with its corresponding vein of the other side via a venous connection, the jugular arch, which occupies the suprasternal space.

The external jugular, posterior external jugular, and anterior external jugular veins have numerous smaller named and unnamed tributaries, which drain the areas in their immediate vicinity.
The external jugular vein may be used as a venous manometer because in a supine patient the venous blood pressure is not high enough to engorge this vessel much above the clavicle. During failure of the right side of the heart, constriction of the superior venae cavae and increased pressure in the thorax induces a pressure buildup in the venous side of the circulatory system, and this is evidenced by engorgement of the external jugular vein. Under severe conditions, the vessel may be filled as high as the base of the mandible. This extremely important sign should be recognized by dental professionals using reclining chairs in their practice; the patient should be referred immediately for possible cardiac care.
Internal Jugular Vein
The **internal jugular vein** is the principal vessel responsible for collecting blood from the brain, superficial aspects of the face, and neck. The vessel extends from its dilated origin, the **superior jugular bulb** housed in the jugular foramen, to its inferior dilation, the **inferior jugular bulb** terminating in the brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 21-9). The internal jugular vein is enclosed in the carotid sheath as it travels the length of the neck, and its tributaries pierce this fascia to deliver their blood to the vessel. The internal jugular vein receives blood from the following tributaries: dural venous sinus drainage from the cranium; the facial vein from the superficial face; the lingual vein from the tongue and floor of the mouth; and pharyngeal, superior and middle thyroid, and, occasionally the occipital veins from the neck. The dural venous sinuses and their drainage into the superior bulb of the internal jugular vein are described in Chapter 17. The facial and occipital veins are detailed in this chapter under the heading "Veins of the Face"; therefore, only the lingual, pharyngeal, and superior and middle thyroid veins are discussed here.

The **lingual vein** receives several tributaries that drain the tongue and floor of the mouth—the **sublingual, dorsal lingual, and deep lingual veins**, which follow the paths of their corresponding arteries. The small **pharyngeal veins** communicate with the pharyngeal plexus of veins and sometimes deliver their blood to the superior thyroid, lingual, or facial veins instead of to the internal jugular vein. The **superior and middle thyroid veins** both drain the thyroid gland and join the internal jugular vein at its superior and inferior aspects, respectively. Both vessels receive smaller named and unnamed tributaries. The inferior thyroid vein usually delivers its blood into the brachiocephalic trunk.

Vertebral Veins
Unlike their arterial counterpart, the **vertebral veins** do not traverse the foramen magnum; instead, they are formed from the confluence of many small tributaries within the suboccipital triangle. The vertebral veins enter the foramen transversarium of the axis and form a plexus of veins surrounding the vertebral artery, and descend with it within the foramina transversaria of the remaining cervical vertebrae except the last. They end in the brachiocephalic vein or occasionally in the subclavian vein. Tributaries of the vertebral veins include the **anterior and accessory vertebral veins** and the **deep cervical vein**.

Subclavian Vein
The **subclavian vein** is short because it is the continuation of the axillary vein, and it joins the internal jugular vein to form the large brachiocephalic vein (Fig. 21-9). Thus, the subclavian vein extends from the external border of the first rib to the junction with the internal jugular vein, passing anterior to the anterior scalene muscle, which separates it from the subclavian artery. Here it lies in front of the subclavius muscle, which acts as a cushion, protecting the underlying vessels and nerves.

The main tributary of the subclavian vein is the **external jugular vein**, although frequently the subclavian may receive the **dorsal scapular and anterior jugular veins**. The left subclavian vein receives lymph from most of the body via the **thoracic duct**, whereas lymph from the right upper quadrant of the body is delivered to the right subclavian vein by the **right lymphatic duct**. These ducts pierce the superior aspects of the subclavian veins, just before these are joined by the internal jugular veins.
Fasciae of the Head and Neck

Chapter Outline

Cervical Fascia
- Superficial Cervical Fascia
- Deep Cervical Fascia

Cervical Fascial Spaces
- Visceral Compartment
- Clinical Considerations

Fasciae of the Face and Deep Face
- Superficial Fascia
- Clinical Considerations
- Deep Fascia
- Clinical Considerations

Submandibular Space
Peripharyngeal Spaces

Key Terms

Cervical Fascia (fascia of the neck) is divided into superficial and deep cervical fascia. Superficial cervical fascia is simple, whereas deep cervical fascia is generally divided into investing, pretracheal, and prevertebral fasciae. It’s interesting to note that some specialized areas of the deep cervical fascia assist in forming subcomponents of the deep fascia. Cervical fascial clefts are those spaces between fascial layers that may permit the invasion of infection even into the thoracic cavity, leading to grave results.

Fascia represents thickened condensations of fibroelastic connective tissue that surround and separate movable structures of the body from each other. This would include certain bony joints, individual muscles, muscle masses, and certain neurovascular components. Spaces between layers of the fascia are occupied with loose connective tissue that may permit the quick and easy spread of infection from one area to another. Thus, it is important for the clinician to be familiar with the locations and connections between fascia, and the intercommunications between facial spaces. With this knowledge, the clinician may be able to prevent the spread of infection and develop a sound therapeutic program of treatment.

Fasciae of the Face and Deep Face are continuations of the cervical fascia as it proceeds over the mandible and on to the scalp. The fascia of the face possesses superficial and deep components with many subdivisions. The many fascial layers and subdivisions of the fascia share fascial spaces and clefts, which makes the face and deep face an easy target for the spread of infection from one area to another and, if improperly treated, perhaps eventually into the thorax. Clinicians must be fully aware of how infection may be spread in and about the face, deep face, and oral cavity.

Fascial Names are frequently controversial because of their varied thicknesses, described limits, attachments, and interrelationships. Moreover, various authors are in disagreement and may assign different names to the same fascial layer. The student has to learn to live with this and, with some extra study, may be able to distinguish one name from another. Fascia and fascial spaces presented in this chapter are categorized based on boundaries and communications so that names will be less confusing to the clinician.
Fasciae are thickened condensations of fibroelastic connective tissue that separate various movable structures from one another. Spaces between layers of fascia are filled with a loose type of connective tissue that permits infection to spread from one locale to another with relative ease.

Because infection may travel along these fascial sheets, the clinician should possess a working knowledge of their locations, extent, and intercommunications. Armed with this knowledge, one can anticipate possible complications that may arise from the various procedures that were performed and develop a sound therapeutic program for their prevention and treatment.

Because fasciae are merely sheets of connective tissue of various thicknesses, considerable controversy surrounds their limits, attachments, and interrelationships. Compounding these problems is that different authors frequently assign different names for the same fascial layer or suggest that some of the flimsier connective tissue sheets do not deserve to be classified as fascia.

The goal of this chapter is to present fascia and fascial spaces from a standpoint of boundaries and communications so that varying terminologies will be less confusing to the clinician.

Spaces between layers of fascia are filled with a loose type of connective tissue that permits infection to spread from one locale to another with relative ease.

Because infection may travel along these fascial sheets, the clinician should possess a working knowledge of their locations, extent, and intercommunications. Armed with this knowledge, one can anticipate possible complications that may arise from the various procedures that were performed and develop a sound therapeutic program for their prevention and treatment.

Because fasciae are merely sheets of connective tissue of various thicknesses, considerable controversy surrounds their limits, attachments, and interrelationships. Compounding these problems is that different authors frequently assign different names for the same fascial layer or suggest that some of the flimsier connective tissue sheets do not deserve to be classified as fascia.

The goal of this chapter is to present fascia and fascial spaces from a standpoint of boundaries and communications so that varying terminologies will be less confusing to the clinician.

Because infection may travel along these fascial sheets, the clinician should possess a working knowledge of their locations, extent, and intercommunications. Armed with this knowledge, one can anticipate possible complications that may arise from the various procedures that were performed and develop a sound therapeutic program for their prevention and treatment.

Because fasciae are merely sheets of connective tissue of various thicknesses, considerable controversy surrounds their limits, attachments, and interrelationships. Compounding these problems is that different authors frequently assign different names for the same fascial layer or suggest that some of the flimsier connective tissue sheets do not deserve to be classified as fascia.

The goal of this chapter is to present fascia and fascial spaces from a standpoint of boundaries and communications so that varying terminologies will be less confusing to the clinician.
facilitating movement unlike that in its thick, attached posterior region.

Superiorly, the superficial cervical fascia passes into the head posteriorly, and over the mandible and parotid gland anteriorly to cover the face and skull. The muscles of facial expression as well as nerves and vessels that serve these structures are located in this fascial layer.

The superficial fascia is separated from the deep fascia by a fascial plane permitting free movement of the skin in this region.

**Deep Cervical Fascia**

**Summary Bite.** Deep cervical fascia is generally described as composed of three layers: investing, pretracheal, and prevertebral.

The deep cervical fascia, for descriptive purposes, usually divided into three layers: investing, pretracheal, and prevertebral, although this is not a completely accurate division. Actually, several other named fascial layers are of anatomic and clinical importance in the cervical region.

**Investing Fascia**

**Investing fascia**, known also as the superficial or anterior cervical layer of the deep fascia, surrounds the neck as a cylinder covering the anterior and posterior cervical triangles and investing the muscles forming the boundaries of these triangles (see Chapter 7 and Figs. 22-1 and 22-2).

This fascia arises from the spinous processes of the cervical vertebral column and ligamentum nuchae, and then encircles the neck. As it passes anteriorly, it divides into two laminae enveloping the trapezius muscle. The two layers unite before crossing over the posterior cervical triangle to form a single, thickened sheet. While there, it splits to surround the inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle and forms a ligament that fixes the intermediate tendon of that muscle in a constant position relative to the clavicle.

At the posterior border of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the investing fascia divides once more to encompass that muscle. The two layers fuse again at the anterior border of the sternocleidomastoid before passing superficial to the anterior triangle as a single layer. As this fascia encounters the suprathyroid muscles, it envelopes each muscle with a thin fascial covering that is attached to the mandible superiorly and the hyoid bone inferiorly.

As the investing fascia leaves the hyoid bone, it envelopes the infrathyroid muscles, surrounding each muscle with a thin fascial covering. Inferiorly, the fascia is attached to the acromion of the scapula and
the clavicle. Subsequently, the investing fascia di-
vides to become attached to the anterior and pos-
terior surfaces of the manubrium, creating a space
between the two layers known as the suprasternal
space. This space usually contains the jugular arch, a
venous connection between the two anterior jugular
veins, and an occasional lymph node embedded in
adipose tissue.

The superior extent of the investing layer of the
deep cervical fascia attaches to the external occipital
protuberance, the superior nuchal line, and the mast-
toid process of the temporal bone. Here it splits to
enclose the adjacent parotid gland and continues
superiorly as the parotid fascia.

The superficial lamina of the fascia attaches to
the inferior margin of the zygomatic arch, and the
depth continues along the temporal bone to the
parotid canal. It is from this deep lamina that the
stylomandibular ligament is formed, coursing from
the styloid process to the inferior border of the angle
of the mandible. Thus, this ligament effectively sep-
rates the parotid from the submandibular gland.

Although the anterior and external jugular veins
appear to course between the superficial and deep
cervical fasciae, they actually course within the
superficial layer of the investing fascia.

Pretracheal Fascia
Pretracheal fascia, or middle layer of the deep cervi-
cal fascia, encases the trachea, esophagus, pharynx,
larynx, and thyroid gland.

Because most of the viscera of the neck is encased
by this layer, it is sometimes referred to as the visceral
fascia. The thin, filmy anterior lamina of this fascia
lies deep to, but makes contact and blends with, the
depth layer of the investing fascia covering the infrathy-
roid muscles. Because of this intimate relationship,
the pretracheal fascia is sometimes described as being
derived from the deep layer of the investing fascia.

The remainder of the pretracheal fascia com-
pletely invests the thyroid gland, and its deeper layer
circles the larynx and trachea as a tubular struc-
ture while being well developed on the pharynx and
lateral aspects of the esophagus as the bucchophary-
geal fascia, thus separating the esophagus from the
prevertebral fascia (Fig. 22-2).

On covering the superior pharyngeal constrictor
muscle, the bucchopharyngeal fascia continues lat-
erally over the buccinator muscle and attaches to the
pterygoid hamulus and pterygomandibular raphe and
is attached superiorly to the pharyngeal tubercle of
the occipital bone.

The portion blanketing the medial pharyngeal
constrictor muscle continues anteriorly, with the
pretracheal fascia covering the hyoglossus and
genioglossus muscles. Additional superior attachments
include the hyoid bone and the stylohyoid ligament.

Inferiorly, the pretracheal fascia begins with the
oblique line of the thyroid cartilage and descends to
merge with the fascia covering the aorta and the
fibrous pericardium and to the fascia of the posterior
thoracic wall.

Prevertebral Fascia
Prevertebral fascia, the third major layer of the deep
cervical fascia, encases the layers of musculature
about the vertebral column. This fascia is described as
originating from the ligamentum nuchae and the spinous
processes of the cervical vertebrae. It covers
those muscles of the back that extend the neck and,
therefore, lies deep to the trapezius muscle and the
investing fascia. Laterally, it blankets the scalene
muscles and then turns medially to attach to the
transverse processes, where it splits, forming a dou-
ble lamina that fuses with its two layered counter-
parts of the opposite side. In its position, it forms the
floor of the posterior cervical triangle (Fig. 22-3).

Superiorly, it is in contact with the investing fas-
cia covering the trapezius muscle. Inferiorly, this fas-
cia continues into the thorax to cover the muscles of
the neck as they insert into the rim of the superior
thoracic aperture.

A fascial space is evident in the posterior triangle
housing the accessory nerve and a few lymph nodes.
Near the base of the posterior triangle, the fascial
space is enlarged as the prevertebral fascia passes
over the scalene muscles. This permits passage of
parts of the subclavian and external jugular veins, the
transverse cervical and suprascapular vessels, supra-
clavicular and suprascapular nerves, and the inferior
groove of the omohyoid muscle.

As the roots of the brachial plexus emerge from
between the anterior and middle scalene muscles,
the prevertebral fascia is reflected onto them, which
blends with the axillary sheath. In covering the an-
terior scalene muscle, the fascia also overlies the
phrenic nerve as it courses superficial to that muscle
on its way to the thoracic cavity.

In addition, as the prevertebral fascia approaches
the anterior tubercles of the vertebrae where it at-
taches, it also contributes to the formation of the pos-
terior portion of the carotid sheath and covers the
cervical sympathetic trunk. In continuing on its me-
dial course from the anterior tubercle, the fascia
splits into two laminae as it crosses the midline im-
mediately deep to the bucchopharyngeal fascia of the
posterior visceral wall. The anterior lamina is called
the alar fascia, which blends laterally with the carotid
sheath and is loosely attached in the midline to the
bucchopharyngeal fascia. The alar fascia fuses with the
buccopharyngeal fascia at about the level of the seventh cervical vertebra, or it may continue into the thorax before fusing with the visceral fascia. The posterior lamina, lying against the body of the vertebrae, remains known as the prevertebral fascia. Thus, the space formed between these two laminae is referred to as the "danger space" or "Space 4," not to be confused with the retropharyngeal space, which is discussed later. The danger space is continuous from the base of the skull through the neck into the thorax, to end at the diaphragm.

**Carotid Sheath**

**Summary Bite.** The carotid sheath surrounds the common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, vagus nerve, and internal carotid artery. The sheath is composed of contributions from the investing and pretracheal fasciae. Its posterior wall receives contributions from the investing fascia, thus completing the cylindrical sheath.

The fascial covering that surrounds the common carotid artery, internal jugular vein, vagus nerve, and internal carotid artery is the carotid sheath (Fig. 22-1).

This cylindrical structure lies between the investing and pretracheal fasciae anteromedially and between the investing and prevertebral fasciae posteromedially. The anterolateral portion of the sheath is formed by the investing fascia, with some contribution from the pretracheal fascia. The posterior wall is derived from a medial lamina of the investing fascia; thus, the medial wall of the sheath is formed as the two leaves of the forming sheath unite. In addition, the medial wall of the carotid sheath is attached to the prevertebral fascia. Superiorly, this sheath is attached to the skull around the jugular foramen, and inferiorly it is continuous with the fasciae of the great vessels and heart. The interior of the carotid sheath is compartmentalized to separate the arteries, vein, and nerve.
CERVICAL FASCIAL SPACES

Summary Bite. Fascial spaces and clefts in the cervical fascia are important to the clinician because they can provide passageways for the spread of infections.

Potential spaces, spaces, and fascial clefts between fascial layers and the structures they cover are of clinical importance because they may afford passageways for the spread of infection. Although many of these spaces are inconsequential, several are worthy of description.

Visceral Compartment

Summary Bite. The visceral compartment of the neck, as the word implies, refers to the viscera of the anterior neck, which includes the thyroid gland, trachea, esophagus, the pharyngeal constrictor muscles, bounded anteriorly by the deep layer of the infrahyoid and pretracheal fascia, part of the carotid sheath, and posteriorly by the buccopharyngeal fascia.

The visceral compartment of the neck includes the area bounded anteriorly by the deep layer of the infrahyoid fascia and the pretracheal fascia surrounding the thyroid gland, trachea, esophagus, and pharyngeal constrictor muscles; laterally by the medial portion of the carotid sheath; and posteriorly by the buccopharyngeal fascia superiorly, blending with the visceral fascia inferiorly.

The anterior portion of this compartment surrounding and anterior to the trachea has been termed the pretracheal space, whereas that posterior to the trachea and surrounding the esophagus posteriorly is termed the retrovisceral space, often referred to as the retropharyngeal space. The retropharyngeal space is continuous inferiorly (caudal to the pharyngeal constrictors) with the retroesophageal space; thus, the term retrovisceral space is the more accurate and inclusive term.

Pretracheal Space

The pretracheal space located in the visceral compartment of the neck surrounds the trachea as it lies against the esophagus. It is limited superiorly by the infrahyoid attachments to the thyroid cartilage and hyoid bone, and inferiorly it continues into the mediastinum.

Retropharyngeal Space (Retrovisceral Space)

The retropharyngeal space lies in the posterior portion of the visceral compartment between the buccopharyngeal fascia covering the pharynx/esophagus and the alar fascia. It may not be restricted to the neck, however, because it extends superiorly to the base of the skull and inferiorly, depending on where it fuses with the visceral fascia. Infections of and about the oral cavity may dissect into this space and, if left untreated, may breach the rather flimsy alar fascia and enter the “danger space.”

Danger Space (Space 4)

The danger space is often described as being synonymous with that of the retropharyngeal (retrovisceral) space when, in fact, it is not. The retropharyngeal space is bounded anteriorly by the buccopharyngeal fascia and posteriorly by the alar fascia. The danger space lies behind the alar fascia in the pocket formed between the alar fascia and the anterior leaf of the prevertebral fascia passing just anterior to the vertebral bodies from one transverse process across the midline to the other transverse process.

Clinical Considerations

Danger Space

The “danger space,” extends from the base of the skull to the diaphragm and is a closed space. It appears, therefore, that infections located in the danger space result from infectious dissections through the alar fascia from the retropharyngeal (retrovisceral) space. Therefore, this space is of particular importance to the clinician because it is the pathway for the transmission of infections from the head and neck into the mediastinum. Spread of infection via this route can be life-threatening.
**Chapter 22** Fasciae of the Head and Neck

### FASCIAE OF THE FACE AND DEEP FACE

**Summary Bite.** The cervical fascia continues up over the mandible and to the remainder of the head, where it is specialized as the superficial and deep fascia.

The fasciae about the face, the deep face, and the remainder of the head are continuations of the fasciae of the neck, and in some areas are further specializations of the deep fasciae covering certain regions and structures of the deep face.

**Superficial Fascia**

**Summary Bite.** Lying just deep to the skin of the face and scalp is the superficial fascia. This fascia contains the muscles of facial expression and their nerves, arteries, and veins.

The superficial fascia (tela subcutanea) of the face and scalp lies immediately deep to the skin and contains the muscles of facial expression, along with their nerves, arteries, and veins. This layer of fascia is closely applied to the skin except around the eyelids, about the buccal fat pad, and near the galea aponeurotica of the scalp. Except for a danger space, this fascia is without spaces.

**Deep Fascia**

**Summary Bite.** The investing layer of the deep fascia extends from the hyoid bone and, as it reaches the mandible, it splits into medial and lateral leaflets to encase the bone. It then passes to the zygomatic area. The fascia covers the muscles of the floor of the mouth and also encapsulates the submandibular gland and encloses the masseter and medial pterygoid muscles as they insert into the mandible. Moreover, the fascia forms a capsule around the parotid gland and is known as the parotideomasseteric fascia.

The superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia (investing fascia) extends superiorly over the mandible from its attachment to the hyoid bone anteriorly, and from the vicinity of the sternocleidomastoid laterally, to reach the zygomatic area. In coursing across this region, the fascia covers the muscles forming the floor of the mouth, namely, the mylohyoid and anterior belly of the digastric muscles. As the fascia reaches the mandible, it forms two leaflets to attach to the medial and lateral aspects of this bone. Along its way, the fascia also splits and fuses to encapsulate the submandibular gland and to enclose the insertions of the masseter and the medial pterygoid muscles. Laterally, that portion of the fascia covering the masseter muscle also blankets the angle and ramus of the mandible before inserting on the zygomatic arch (Fig. 22-4). The other leaf of this fascia covers the inferior surface of the face. Squeezing pimples and tampering with boils in this region should be avoided because blood from this area may enter directly (or indirectly via the ophthalmic vein) into the cavernous sinus of the cranial fossa. Infection entering the cavernous sinus via this route may result in thrombosis, cerebral edema, and possibly death.

### Clinical Considerations

**Thrombophlebitis of the Facial Vein**

The facial vein does not contain valves; thus, blood flow may pass in either direction and enter other venous vessels that lead to the cavernous sinus located in the dural venous sinus deep within the cranium. These connections include the superior ophthalmic vein, pterygoid venous plexus, inferior ophthalmic vein, and/or the deep facial vein.

**Face**

**Danger Area of the Face**

The area bordered by the upper lip, the lateral aspect of the nose, and the lateral corner of the eye superior to the supraorbital ridge represents the danger area of the face. Squeezing pimples and tampering with boils in this region should be avoided because blood from this area may enter directly (or indirectly via the ophthalmic vein) into the cavernous sinus of the cranial fossa. Infection entering the cavernous sinus via this route may result in thrombosis, cerebral edema, and possibly death.

**Lacerations and Facial Incisions**

Because the skin of the face does not possess typical deep fascia, lacerations and facial incisions tend to gape open. Therefore, they must be carefully sutured to minimize scarring.
the medial pterygoid muscle and then inserts on the medial surface of the lateral pterygoid plate. Further posteriorly, that portion of the investing fascia surrounding the insertion of the sternocleidomastoid muscle separates to pass to the zygomatic arch, and in so doing forms a capsule (parotid fascia, parotidomasticeteric fascia) surrounding the parotid gland.

This splitting of the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia (investing fascia) as it passes superiorly from its attachment to the hyoid bone forms numerous potential spaces; however, because most are closed, they do not communicate with each other. As the fascia encompasses the submandibular gland it becomes the capsule of the gland. This fascia is thicker on the lateral than on the medial aspect; thus, dissecting infections in this area usually progress in a medial direction.

Masticator Space

Summary Bite. The masticator space contains the muscles of mastication, the maxillary artery and its branches, the mandibular nerve and its branches, connective tissue, and much of the buccal fat pad. The space is the result of the splitting of the investing fascia at the inferior border of the mandible to enclose the medial and lateral pterygoid and masseter muscles as well as the inferior border of the temporalis muscle.

The masticator space is formed as the investing fascia splits at the inferior border of the mandible to cover the medial and lateral pterygoid and masseter muscles as they attach to the inferior border of the mandibular ramus (Fig. 22-4). Further superiorly, the fascia covers the inferior border of the temporalis muscle blending with its fascial covering. The space is closed posteriorly as the two laminae of the fasciae fuse with each other. Anteriorly, the investing fascia fuses to the mandible in front of the masseter and temporalis muscles and then passes medially across the buccal fat pad to attach to the maxilla and to blend with the fascia covering the buccinator muscle.

The masticator space contains the muscles of mastication, the maxillary artery and its branches, the mandibular nerve and its branches, connective tissue, and much of the buccal fat pad. The fascial space of the parotid gland contains that gland, several lymph nodes, the facial nerve, and several of its branches that will exit the space to supply the muscles of facial expression.
Chapter 22  Fasciae of the Head and Neck

Submandibular Space

**Summary Bite.** The submandibular space is bounded by the tongue and the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth. The mylohyoid muscle divides the submandibular space into the sublingual and the submaxillary spaces that communicate at the inferior border of the mylohyoid muscle. Housed within the submandibular space are the submandibular gland and part of its duct; structures in the floor of the oral cavity, including the sublingual gland, the geniohyoid and genioglossus muscles; the lingual and hypoglossal nerves; and the lingual artery and some of its branches.

Although the submandibular space is described as being bilateral, because of its position in the vicinity of the midline and its relations to the mylohyoid muscle, communication normally occurs between the two sides. In addition, the submandibular space communicates with the lateral pharyngeal space via its subdivision, the sublingual space.

**Peripharyngeal Spaces**

**Summary Bite.** The peripharyngeal spaces are common space surrounding the pharyngeal wall and communicating with the submandibular space. These spaces freely communicate with several other spaces, including the masticator space; thus, the peripharyngeal spaces are readily available avenues for the spread of infection from such areas as the teeth, throat, nose, as well as from the mandible and maxillae.

Surrounding the pharyngeal wall posteriorly and laterally and communicating anteriorly with the submandibular space is a common space that is further subdivided into the peripharyngeal spaces. This space, encircling the perimeter of the pharynx, lies deep to all laminae of the superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia (investing fascia) covering the anterior belly of the digastic muscle, as well as the mylohyoid muscle and its attachment at the hyoid bone.

The mylohyoid muscle divides the submandibular space into the sublingual space superiorly and the submandibular space inferiorly. These two spaces communicate with each other at the posterior margin of the mylohyoid muscle.

The submandibular space contains the submandibular gland and part of its duct, as well as structures housed in the floor of the oral cavity, including the sublingual gland, the geniohyoid and genioglossus muscles, the lingual and hypoglossal nerves, and the lingual artery and some of its branches.

Clinical Considerations

**Masticator Space Infection**

The deep fascia splits at the mandible, forming two laminae around its inferior border. As a consequence, the muscles of mastication (the temporalis, masseter, medial and lateral pterygoid muscles) are thus enclosed by a compartment termed the masticator space (see Fig. 22-4). The two laminae of the deep fascia fuse again at the superior border of temporalis muscle where it originates from the skull. In addition to containing the muscles of mastication, this large space also contains the maxillary artery and many of its branches, and the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve and many of its branches, as well as much of the buccal fat pad. The masticator space also communicates with many other spaces within the head and neck, which may contribute to the spread of infections and or neoplasms from the oral cavity.

Salivary gland tumors, abscesses, hemangiomas, and metastatic extensions of squamous cell carcinoma, especially from the floor of the mouth, tonsillar fossa, and nasopharynx, can extend into the masticator space. Persons suspected of having masticator space infections are very ill and need immediate medical attention.
Retropharyngeal Space

The retropharyngeal space was described during the discussion of fascial spaces in the neck. The reader should recall that the retropharyngeal space lies behind the pharynx/esophagus covered by the buccopharyngeal fascia.

The retropharyngeal space extends from the base of the skull and, depending on where the buccopharyngeal and alar fasciae fuse, perhaps into the mediastinum. It is bounded posteriorly by the alar fascia, anteriorly by the buccopharyngeal fascia, and laterally by loose connective tissue separating it rather incompletely from the lateral pharyngeal space.

The retropharyngeal space is regarded as the primary route of the spread of infection from lesions in the head and neck into the danger space, and from there into the thorax because it is accessible to dissecting or perforating infections originating from numerous neighboring fascial spaces.

Lateral Pharyngeal Space

The retropharyngeal space extends laterally around the pharynx, with only loose connective tissue intervening between it and the space lateral to it, the lateral pharyngeal space (known also by various other names, including parapharyngeal, periphrayngeal, pharyngomaxillary, pterygomandibular, and pterygopharyngeal).

The lateral pharyngeal space is bounded medially by the buccopharyngeal fascia and laterally by the pterygoid muscles and the capsule of the parotid gland. Its superior extent is similar to that of the retropharyngeal space in that it reaches the base of the skull; however, inferiorly it extends only as far as the hyoid bone, being limited by the fascia of the submandibular gland, stylohyoid muscle, and posterior belly of the digastric muscle. Coursing through this space are the two other muscles originating from the styloid process: the styloglossus and stylopharyngeus muscles. The lateral pharyngeal space extends to the pterygomandibular raphe and, above the submandibular gland, communicates with the floor of the oral cavity. Because of its extent and association about the structures of the oral region, it is the most frequently infected secondary area from the primary areas of the masticator space, teeth, tongue, salivary glands, and tonsillar region.

Infections perforating into this space readily gain access to the retropharyngeal space and, eroding the alar fascia, pass into the mediastinum. Thus, the lateral pharyngeal space is of utmost importance to the clinician.
Abducens nerve. Sixth cranial nerve.
Abduction. A motion that moves a structure away from the body centerline.
Accessory bone. A bone formed when ossification centers fail to unite during development.
Accessory nerve. Eleventh cranial nerve.
Adam’s apple. Laryngeal prominence. A prominent protuberance of the thyroid cartilage in the anterior midline of the neck, especially in adult males.
Adduction. A motion that moves a structure closer to the body centerline.
Adenoids. Hypertrophy of the pharyngeal tonsil as a result of infection.
Aditus. An opening or inlet.
Afferent. Leading toward a specific area, as toward the central nervous system or a lymph node.
Agonists. Muscles whose contractions produce a desired motion.
Alveolar arch. Bony portions on the maxillae and mandible that surround the teeth.
Alveolus. A small cavity. The socket of a tooth.
Anastomosis. Direct communication between blood vessels and between nerves.
Anatomy. The science of the structure of the body.
Anesthesia. Loss of sensation as a result of injury, disease, or induction by drugs.
Ankyloglossia. “Tongue-tied.” The lingual frenulum is attached too far anteriorly on the tongue, impeding speech.
Anomaly. Deviation from the normal.
Ansa cervicalis. Nerve loop derived from C1, C2, and C3 to supply the infrahyoid muscles.
Ansa subclavia. Loop around the subclavian artery connecting the middle and inferior cervical sympathetic ganglia.
Antagonists. Muscles that act in opposition to agonists.
Anterior. Front of the body.
Anterior triangle. Triangular area of the neck bounded by the sternocleidomastoid muscle, the anterior midline of the neck, and the inferior border of the mandible.
Aponeurosis. A flat, sheetlike tendinous muscle attachment.
Appendicular skeleton. Bony skeleton composed of the bones comprising the superior and inferior extremities.
Arachnoid. Intermediate layer of the meninges covering the brain and spinal cord.
Arachnoid granulations. Modified elements of the arachnoid that filter cerebrospinal fluid from the subarachnoid space into the lacunae lateralis.
Arrector pili. Involuntary smooth muscles arising in the dermis and inserting into the hair follicle. Contractions produce “goose bumps.”
Articular disc. Meniscus. The disc intervening between the mandibular condyle and the temporal bone.
Atlas. First cervical vertebra. Articulates with the occipital bone of the skull.
Auditory tube. Eustachian tube. Opening of the middle ear cavity into the pharynx.
Autonomic nervous system. A functional system controlling cardiac and smooth muscles and glandular activity.
Axial skeleton. Bony skeleton composed of the skull, vertebral column, hyoid bone, ribs, and sternum.
Axis. The second cervical vertebra.
Basal ganglia. Subcortical nuclei associated with somatic motor functions.
Blind spot. Optic disc. The light-insensitive region of the retina where the optic nerve exits the bulb of the eye.
Blood–brain barrier. Pial-glial elements surrounding blood vessels of the central nervous system that control the entry of materials into the intercellular spaces of the central nervous system.
Bolus. A masticated (chewed) chunk of food ready for deglutition (swallowing).

Bony depressions. Intervals between bony elevations. Descriptions include pits, foveae, and fossae.

Bony elevations. Sites of attachment of structures to bone. Descriptions include lines, crests, ridges, processes, tubercles, tuberosities, and spines.

Brachial plexus. Plexus of nerves formed by the ventral primary rami of C5, C6, C7, C8, and T1, with contributions from C4 and T2.

Brainstem. The oldest part of the central nervous system, mainly responsible for vital functions.

Branchial arches. Pharyngeal arches.

Branchial grooves. Pharyngeal clefts.

Buccal glands. Minor salivary glands located in the mucosa of the buccal vestibule.

Buccopharyngeal fascia. Posterior lamina of the pretracheal fascia.

Bursae. Fluid-filled sacs overlying joints, functioning in lubrication.

Canal. A passageway or tunnel in bone.

Cardiac muscle. Heart muscle. A special striated involuntary muscle.

Carotid body. Structure located at the bifurcation of the common carotid artery to monitor oxygen tension and carbon dioxide in the bloodstream.

Carotid plexus. Postganglionic sympathetic fibers derived from the superior cervical ganglion, traveling on the internal carotid artery.

Carotid sheath. Fascial sheath, derived from the deep cervical fascia, enveloping the major neurovascular bundle of the neck.

Carotid sinus. Structure located in the wall of the internal carotid artery at its beginning, monitoring blood pressure.

Carotid triangle. One of the subdivisions of the anterior triangle of the neck, bounded by the posterior belly of the digastric, the superior belly of the omohyoid, and the sternocleidomastoid muscles.

Cartilaginous joint. A bony union or joint with cartilage interposed between the bones.

Caudal. Inferior. Toward the tail.

Cavernous sinus. A large, labyrinthine dural venous sinus located lateral to the sella turcica.

Central nervous system. CNS. Composed of the brain and spinal cord.

Cephalic. Rostral. Toward the rostral (head) end of the organism.

Cerebellum. Portion of the brain derived from the metencephalon. Responsible for balance and spatial orientation.

Cerebral arterial circle. Circle of Willis. Arterial anastomosis around the base of the brain.

Cerebral hemispheres. Largest portion of the brain, derived from the prosencephalon.

Cerebrospinal fluid. CFS. A clear, colorless, acellular fluid produced by the choroid plexus. Circulates in the ventricles of the brain, the central canal of the spinal cord, and the subarachnoid space.

Cervical plexus. Plexus of nerves formed by the ventral primary rami of C1, C2, C3, C4, and (sometimes) C5.


Chain ganglia. Sympathetic ganglia located along the vertebral column.

Choanae. Apertures of the nasal cavities opening into the nasopharynx.

Choroid plexus. Modified pial/ependymal elements located in the ventricles of the brain that function to elaborate cerebrospinal fluid.

Ciliary body. A portion of the middle coat of the eye, including the ciliary muscle and ciliary process.

Circle of Willis. Cerebral arterial circle.

Collateral ganglia. Sympathetic ganglia located away from the vertebral column, usually near the viscera, along major blood vessels.

Computed tomography. A radiographic procedure whereby cross-sectional images of the body are visualized.

Conchae. Turbinated bones. Three mucosa-covered, scroll-like bones on the lateral nasal wall that jut into the nasal fossa.

Condyle. The rounded articular end of a bone.

Cones. Light-sensitive cells of the retina specialized for color vision.

Confluence of sinuses. A region of dural sinuses, located at the internal occipital crest, receiving several major venous sinuses of the dura mater.

Cornea. Anteriorly placed, modified, transparent portion of the sclera of the eye.

Coronal plane. Frontal plane. A vertical plane at right angles to the sagittal plane.

Coronal suture. A skull suture located in the frontal plane, from temple to temple.

Cranial. Superior. In the direction of the head, cranial.
**Cranial fossa.** A deep depression in the internal base of the skull consisting of three regions: anterior, middle, and posterior.

**Cranial outflow.** Parasympathetic outflow from the brain in cranial nerves III, VII, IX, and X.

**Craniosacral outflow.** The combined parasympathetic outflow regions of origin for the entire body.

**Crenated tongue.** Indentations along the lateral margins of the tongue indicating impressions from the teeth.

**Cricothyrotomy.** A relatively safe emergency procedure for opening the airway by incising the cricothyroid membrane to relieve dyspnea.

**Deep.** Relative position from the surface of the body from any direction.

**Deep cervical lymph nodes.** Chain of lymph nodes following the carotid sheath. These ultimately receive all of the lymph from the head and neck.

**Deep fascia.** Connective tissue sheath surrounding and compartmentalizing many of the structures of the body, including the muscles.

**Deglutition.** The act of swallowing.

**Dendrite.** One of the cell processes of a neuron that conducts impulses toward the cell body.

**Depress.** To pull down or lower.

**Dermal papillae.** Projections of the dermis that interdigitate with epidermal pegs at the epidermis–dermis interface.

**Dermis.** Deep layer of the skin beneath the epidermis.

**Developmental anatomy.** The study of the growth and development of an organism from conception to birth.

**Diaphragmata sella.** An incomplete covering composed of meningeal dura that acts as a membranous lid over the sella turcica.

**Diencephalon.** Rostral-most portion of the brainstem.

**Diploic veins.** Veins traveling in and draining the diploe of the skull.

**Distal.** 1. Away from the origin. 2. Term used in describing relative positions of the teeth. Away from the midline anteriorly.

**Dorsal.** Equal to posterior but usually reserved for quadrupeds.

**Dorsal horn.** Gray matter of spinal cord containing cell bodies receiving sensory axons from the dorsal root.

**Dorsal root.** Sensory root carrying axons from dorsal root ganglion to the spinal cord.

**Dorsal root ganglion.** Sensory ganglion located on the dorsal root of each spinal nerve.

**Duct of Bartholin.** Large sublingual duct of the sublingual gland opening very near or with the submandibular duct at the sublingual caruncula.

**Ducts of Rivinus.** Small sublingual ducts of the sublingual gland opening along the surface of the plica sublingualis below the tongue.

**Dura mater.** The outer layer of the meninges covering the brain and spinal cord.

**Efferent.** Leading away from a specific area, as away from the central nervous system or a lymph node.

**Elastic cartilage.** Type of cartilage located in the external ear, auditory tube, epiglottis, and parts of the larynx.

**Elevate.** To lift up.

**Emissary veins.** Veins originating on the scalp, then emptying into the dural venous sinuses through like-named foramina in the skull.

**Endochondral bone formation.** Type of bone development on a cartilaginous template.

**Epidermal pegs.** Projections of the epidermis that interdigitate with the dermal papillae at the epidermis–dermis interface.

**Epidermis.** Surface layer of the skin.

**Epiglottis.** An unpaired, leaf-shaped piece of elastic cartilage of the larynx projecting above and anterior to the superior laryngeal aperture.

**Eustachian tube.** Auditory tube.

**Extension.** A motion that increases the joint angle.

**External.** Away from the center of the body.

**External acoustic meatus.** Opening in the temporal bone leading into the middle ear.

**Extrinsic muscles of the eye.** Muscles attached to and responsible for movement of the eyeball.

**Extrinsic muscles of the tongue.** Muscles that originate outside the tongue but inserting into it, thus making the tongue a highly moveable structure.

**Facial nerve.** Seventh cranial nerve.

**Falx cerebelli.** Meningeal reflection of the dura mater, on the caudal surface of the tentorium cerebelli, intervening between the two cerebellar hemispheres.

**Falx cerebri.** Sickle-shaped meningeal reflection of the dura mater intervening between the right and left cerebral hemispheres.

**Fascia.** Collagenous connective tissue that encloses structures and separates them into various groups.
Fibrocartilage. Type of cartilage in intervertebral discs, pubic symphysis, and mandibular symphysis, as well as on certain regions of the temporomandibular joint.

Fibrous joint. A bony joint connected by fibrous connective tissue.

Fissured tongue. Excessive fissures in the dorsum of the tongue.

Fixators. Muscles that act to stabilize a structure.

Flexion. A motion that reduces the joint angle.

Foramen. An opening or hole in bone, usually for passage of an artery, vein, and/or nerve.

Foramen cecum. Shallow, pitlike depression on tongue, just posterior to the sulcus terminalis, indicating the opening of the embryologic thyroglossal duct.

Fordyce granules. Ectopic sebaceous glands incorporated into the vestibular mucosa during development.

Frontal plane. Coronal plane. A vertical plane at right angles to the sagittal plane.

Ganglion. An accumulation of neuron cell bodies outside the central nervous system.

General somatic afferent. Sensation traveling to the central nervous system from the body.

General somatic efferent. Motor innervation from the central nervous system to the skeletal muscles.

General visceral afferent. Sensation traveling to the central nervous system from the viscera.

General visceral efferent. Motor innervation from the central nervous system to the smooth muscles of the viscera.

Gingiva. The gums. Specialized mucosa overlying the alveolar bone of each dental arch.

Glands of Blandin-Nuhn. Minor salivary glands located on either side of the lingual frenulum.

Glands of von Ebner. Minor serous salivary glands that empty into the vallate papillae.

Glaucoma. Condition of increased pressure in the anterior chamber of the eye.

Glossopharyngeal nerve. Ninth cranial nerve.

Gray matter. Region of the central nervous system consisting mainly of cell bodies.

Gray rami communicantes. Unmyelinated fibers (postganglionic) entering spinal nerve from a sympathetic ganglion.

Groove. A linear depression on a bone housing a structure.

Gross anatomy. Macroscopic anatomy. Study of the body with the unaided eye.

Gyrus. Convoluted elevation of the cerebral hemispheres, bounded by sulci.

Histology. The study of tissues. Used interchangeably with “microscopic anatomy.”

Horizontal plane. Transverse plane. A plane passing through body at right angles to the sagittal and frontal planes.

Hyaline cartilage. Type of cartilage found on articulating surfaces of bones. Forms a template for endochondral bone formation.

Hyoid arch. Second pharyngeal arch giving rise to the muscles of facial expression, in addition to some other structures.

Hypoglossal nerve. Twelfth cranial nerve.

Hypophysis. Pituitary gland.

Inferior. Tailward or caudal.

Inferior cervical ganglion. Inferior-most ganglion of the cervical sympathetic trunk. Located at the level of the seventh cervical vertebra.

Infrahyoid muscles. Strap muscles. Several muscles attached to the inferior aspect of the hyoid bone.

Infratemporal fossa. A region inferior to the zygomatic arch and deep to the mandible.

Insertion. Site on the bone or in skin where the muscle inserts.

Internal. Closer to the center of the body.

Intermaxillary segment. Merged medial nasal prominences that gives rise to the bulb and columella of the nose, medial portion of the upper lip, anterior palate with the four incisors, and a portion of the median nasal septum.

Intramembranous bone formation. Type of bone development within mesenchyme and without a cartilaginous model.

Intrinsic muscles of the eye. Smooth muscles located within the eyeball, responsible for accommodation and pupil size.

Intrinsic muscles of the tongue. Four muscles wholly within the tongue, responsible for altering its shape.

Investing fascia. Superficial layer of the deep cervical fascia.

Involuntary muscle. Smooth or nonstriated muscle and striated cardiac muscle. Contraction occurs without conscious control.

Iris. Colored, anteriorly placed portion of the intermediate tunic of the eye.

Isthmus faucium. Oropharyngeal isthmus.
Jugulodigastric lymph node. A large lymph node of the deep cervical chain located between the posterior belly of the digastric muscle and the internal jugular vein.

Jugulo-omohyoid lymph node. A large node of the deep cervical chain located near the intermediate tendon of the omohyoid muscle.

Kiesseelbach area. Anteroinferior region of the nasal septum, a common site of nosebleed.

Labial commissure. Lateral connection of the upper and lower lip.

Labial frenula. Folds of tissue attaching the lips to the gingiva.

Labial glands. Minor salivary glands located in the mucosa of the labial vestibule.

Lacrimal puncta. Orifice of the lacrimal canaliculus located on each eyelid, in the vicinity of the medial commissure.

Lacuna lateralis. Meninx-lined depressions on either side of the superior sagittal sinus. These house the arachnoid granulations.

Lambdoidal suture. A suture of the skull separating the occipital bone from the parietal bones.

Lamina. A flat membranous or osseous plate.

Langer lines. Cleavage lines in skin used in surgery.

Laryngeal pharynx. Most inferior region of the pharynx surrounding the larynx.

Lateral. Away from the midline of the body.

Lingual frenulum. Tissue fold attaching the ventral surface of the tongue to the floor of the oral cavity.

Lingual tonsils. Tonsillar tissue located on the base of the tongue.

Lymphatic ring of Waldeyer. Clumps of lymphatic tissue surrounding the oropharynx.

Lymph nodes. Filtering bodies located along the lymphatic vessels. Lymphocytes are also propagated here.

MacroGLOSSIA. Large tongue.

Macroscopic anatomy. Study of the human body with the unaided eye.

Mandibular arch. First pharyngeal arch to form, which gives rise to the maxilla and mandible among other structures.

Mandibular fossa. Glenoid fossa. A concavity in the temporal bone that is the area of articulation with the mandible.

Mandibular torus. Bony exostosis on the lingual aspect of the mandible, protruding into the floor of the oral cavity proper.

Masticator compartment. A fascia-enclosed space on the lateral aspect of the face, containing the muscles of mastication.

Maxillary process. Superior-most developing segment of the mandibular arch in pharyngeal arch formation.

Meatus. A passageway or tunnel in bone.

Meatules. Tunnels deep to the turbinate bones of the nasal cavity.

Meckel cartilage. A cartilage developed in the mandibular arch that later nearly disappears.

Medial. Toward the midline of the body.

Median lingual sulcus. A shallow groove on the dorsum of the tongue.

Median plane. Plane passing through body from anterior to posterior through the midline. Midsagittal plane.

Median rhomboid glossitis. An area devoid of papillae on the dorsum of the tongue.

Medulla. Medulla oblongata. The caudal-most portion of the brainstem. It contains the fourth ventricle.


Meniscus. Articular disc. Disc intervening between the mandibular condyle and the temporal bone.

Mental symphysis. Mandibular symphysis. Area of fusion of the right and left halves of the mandible.


Mesial. Term used to describe relative positions of teeth nearest the midline, anteriorly.

Metencephalon. Part of the brainstem between the mesencephalon and myelencephalon surrounding the cerebral aqueduct.

Metopic suture. An inconstant suture, which may persist, between the developing halves of the frontal bone.

MicroGLOSSIA. Small tongue.

Microscopic anatomy. Specialized study of cells, tissues, and organs of the body using a microscope.

Middle cervical ganglion. A small, inconstant cervical sympathetic ganglion located at the level of the sixth cervical vertebra.

Midsagittal plane. Median plane passing through the body from anterior to posterior through the midline.

Minor salivary glands. Small salivary glands located in the oral, palatal, and lingual mucosae.
Motor end plate. An axon terminal that participates in the formation of a myoneural junction.

Mucogingival junction. A sharp, scalloped line separating the gingival mucosa from alveolar mucosa.

Muscle fascicle. A bundle of muscle fibers surrounded by perimysium.

Muscles of facial expression. Muscle mass developed in the second branchial arch. These muscles arise in hypodermis or on bone and insert into the dermis of the face, scalp, and neck.

Muscles of mastication. Four muscles responsible for masticatory motions: the masseter, temporalis, external pterygoid, and internal pterygoid.

Muscular triangle. One of the subdivisions of the anterior triangle of the neck, bounded by the sternocleidomastoid and superior belly of the omohyoid muscles and the midline of the neck.

Nasal septum. Vertical midline structure of the nasal cavity, composed of the perpendicular plate of the ethmoid and vomer bones along with cartilage.

Nasopharyngeal tonsil. Tonsillar tissue located behind the lip of the auditory tube on the posterior pharyngeal wall.

Nasopharynx. Most superior region of the pharynx, ending inferiorly at the soft palate.

Neuroanatomy. The specialized study of the structure and function of the nervous system.

Neuron. Specialized cell of the nervous system able to perceive stimuli and conduct them along its processes.

Parasympathetic nervous system. Division of the autonomic nervous system originating in the brain and sacral spinal cord. This system returns the body to homeostatic state.

Parotid fascia. Cranial continuation of the investing fascia that encloses the parotid gland.

Parotid papilla. Opening of the parotid duct (Stenson duct) in the buccal vestibule opposite the second maxillary molar.

Passavant bar. A ridge of tissue on the posterior wall of the pharynx, representing the contact zone between pharynx and palate when the pharynx is sealed off.

Peripheral nervous system. The portion of the nervous system located outside the skull and vertebral canal, and including the 12 pairs of cranial nerves and the 31 pairs of spinal nerves.

Pharyngeal arches. Branchial arches. Bulging bars of mesoderm observed in the head/neck of the developing embryo. Each gives rise to certain structures.

Pharyngeal clefts. Branchial grooves. Grooves on the surface of the developing head/neck region of an embryo between the pharyngeal arches.


Pia mater. Inner-most delicate layer of the meninges covering the brain and spinal cord.

Posterior. Back of the body.

Posterior triangle. Triangular area of the neck, bounded by the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles and the middle one third of the clavicle.
Postganglionic. Visceral motor neurons whose cell bodies are located in one of the autonomic ganglia.

Preganglionic. Visceral motor neurons of the autonomic system that have not yet synapsed in one of the autonomic ganglia.

Pretracheal fascia. Deep layer of the deep cervical fascia surrounding the viscera of the neck.

Pretrachect fascia. Deep layer of the deep cervical fascia enveloping the vertebrae and the deep cervical muscles of the neck.

Principal lymph node of the tongue. A large lymph node of the deep cervical chain, responsible for draining the tip of the tongue and the region of the lingual frenulum.

Protrusion. A motion that juts away from its normal resting place, such as the motion possible with the mandible.

Proximal. Closer to the origin.

Pterygopalatine fossa. Small, pyramidal space enclosed by the maxilla, sphenoid, and palatine bones.

Pupil. Circular orifice in the middle of the iris through which light enters the eye.

Rathke pouch. A diverticulum of oral ectoderm in the roof of the developing oral cavity, destined to give rise to a portion of the pituitary gland.

Reflex arc. The simplest form of functional neurologic pathway, bypassing many connecting neurons.

Regional anatomy. Study approach in which individual anatomic regions of the body are considered as units.

Reichert cartilage. A cartilage developed in the second pharyngeal arch that later becomes obscured.

Retraction. A motion that causes a structure to be drawn back, such as the motion possible with the mandible.

Right lymphatic duct. Major vessel of the lymphatic system delivering lymph to the right subclavian vein.

Rods. Light-sensitive cells of the retina concerned with vision in dim light.

Rostral. Cephalad. Toward the cephalic (head) end of the organism.

Rotation. To move about an axis.

Rotatory motion. One of the motions possible at the temporomandibular joint, involving the mandibular condyle and articular disc.

Sacral outflow. Parasym pathetic outflow to the viscera of the pelvic region from the sacral spinal cord.

Sagittal suture. A suture of the skull, located in the midline, that separates the parietal bones.

Sclera. White of the eye.

Sesamoid bones. Bones developed in tendons, providing extra leverage or reducing friction at the joint.

Sialography. Radiologic examination of salivary glands and their ducts subsequent to introduction of a radio-opaque dye.

Sinusitis. Inflammation of the mucosa of the paranasal sinuses.

Special somatic afferent. Sensation traveling to the brain from the special senses of vision and hearing.

Special visceral afferent. Sensation traveling to the brain via cranial nerves from the special visceral senses of taste and smell.

Special visceral efferent. Motor innervation from the brain via cranial nerves to the muscles of branchiomeric origin.

Sphenomandibularis muscle. A newly discovered muscle of the deep face, originally believed to be a portion of the deep temporalis muscle. Recent careful dissections have demonstrated it to be a separate entity with its own vascular and nerve supply. It is believed to assist in mastication.

Stellate ganglion. Fused inferior cervical and first thoracic sympathetic ganglia.

Stenson duct. Parotid duct.


Subarachnoid space. Space between the arachnoid and pia mater, containing the cerebrospinal fluid.

Subclavian triangle. One of the subdivisions of the posterior triangle, bounded by the inferior belly of the omohyoid muscle, the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and the middle one third of the clavicle.

Subcutaneous connective tissue. Hypodermis. Loose, connective tissue deep to the dermis. Superficial fascia.

Subdural space. Potential space between the dura mater and the arachnoid layers of the meninges.

Sublingual caruncula. Opening of the submandibular duct at the base of the lingual frenulum.

Submandibular triangle. One of the subdivisions of the anterior triangle of the neck, bounded by both bellies of the digastic muscle and the inferior border of the mandible.

Submental triangle. The only unpaired subdivision of the neck. It is bounded by the anterior bellies of the digastic muscles and the hyoid bone.

Suboccipital triangle. A triangular area in the back of the neck, circumscribed by three muscles: rectus capitis posterior major, obliquus capitis superior, and inferior.
Sulcus. 1. A depression on the bone housing a structure. 2. A depression or groove located between gyri on the surface of the cerebral hemispheres.

Sulcus terminalis. A posteriorly directed, V-shaped groove separating the anterior two thirds and posterior one third of the tongue.

Superficial. Relative position near the surface of the body from any respect.

Superficial cervical lymph nodes. Chain of lymph nodes aligned along the external jugular vein.

Superficial fascia. Subcutaneous connective tissue deep to the dermis.

Superior. Toward the head, or cranial.

Superior cervical ganglion. The superior-most ganglion of the cervical sympathetic trunk, located at the level of the second and third cervical vertebrae.

Superior laryngeal aperture. The superior inlet of the larynx.

Suture. A type of fibrous joint found in bones of the skull.

Sympathetic nervous system. Division of the autonomic nervous system originating in the thoracic and first few lumbar spinal cord segments. The system prepares for “fight or flight.”

Sympathetic trunk. The sympathetic chain ganglia and their connections.

Sympysis. A cartilaginous bony joint between two continuous bones.

Synapse. A place where a neuron cell communicates with another cell.

Synchondrosis. A temporary cartilaginous joint that will be ossified later.

Syndesmosis. Bony joint with fibrous connective tissue union permitting little movement.

Synovial fluid. Fluid produced within the synovial sheath to bathe the muscle tendon joint and bursa, thus reducing friction.

Synovial joint. A bony joint surrounded by synovial cavities.

Synovial sheath. A saclike covering over a muscle tendon or joint, producing synovial fluid to bathe the tendon and joint, thus reducing friction.

Systemic anatomy. Study approach in which each system of the body is considered separately.

Temporal fossa. A depression on the lateral aspect of the skull, containing the temporalis muscle and its fascia, vessels, and nerves.

Tentorium cerebelli. Meningeal reflection of the dura mater, intervening between the cerebellum and the occipital lobe of the cerebrum.

Terminal ganglia. Parasympathetic ganglia usually located very near the viscera or glands to be innervated.

Thalamus. Largest portion of the diencephalon. Functions to relay sensory impulses to the cerebral cortex.

Thoracic duct. Major vessel of the lymphatic system delivering lymph to the left subclavian vein.

Thoracolumbar outflow. Region of spinal cord from which sympathetic system originates.

Thyroglossal duct. Remnants of the embryologic origins and migratory path of the tissue destined to be the thyroid.

Tracheotomy. A surgical procedure whereby an incision is made in the anterior aspect of the trachea to provide an airway passage to relieve dyspnea.

Translatory motion. One of the motions possible at the temporomandibular joint, involving the temporal bone and the articular disc (a sliding motion).

Transverse plane. Horizontal plane at right angles to sagittal and frontal planes.

Trigeminal nerve. Fifth cranial nerve.

Trochlear nerve. Fourth cranial nerve.

Turbinate bones. Conchae. Three mucosa-covered, scroll-like bones on the lateral nasal wall jutting into the nasal fossa.

Tympanic plexus. Plexus of nerves derived from cranial nerve IX and the sympathetic plexus. It serves the mucous membranes of the middle ear.

Tympanum. Middle ear cavity; also eardrum.

Vagus nerve. Tenth cranial nerve.


Venous pterygoid plexus. A venous plexus receiving tributaries from many areas of the head. It is located between the temporalis and the pterygoid muscles.

Venous sinus. Large, venous channel not possessing the normal histologic complement of veins.

Ventral. Equal to anterior but usually reserved for quadrupeds.

Ventral horn. Gray matter of the spinal cord, containing motor neurons.

Ventral root. Motor axons exiting the ventral root of the spinal cord.

Vermilion zone. Red area of the lips.

Vestibule. Cleft or space between lips and cheeks and the teeth and gingiva.

Vestibulocochlear nerve. Eighth cranial nerve.
Vidian nerve. Nerve of the pterygoid (vidian) canal. It is composed of the greater petrosal nerve (of cranial nerve VII) accompanied by the deep petrosal nerve (of the carotid plexus) as they pass through the pterygoid canal.

Vocal cord. A fold of mucous membrane on the lateral wall of the larynx, responsible for the formation of sound.

Voluntary muscle. Striated or skeletal muscle. Contraction occurs by conscious control.

Wharton duct. Duct of the submandibular gland.

White matter. Region of the central nervous system consisting mainly of fiber tracts.

White rami communicantes. Myelinated fibers (preganglionic) connecting spinal nerves with a sympathetic ganglion.

Wormian bones. Additional bones that may be found in suture lines of the skull.

Zygomatic arch. Malar arch. The arch formed by the temporal process of the zygoma and the zygomatic process of the temporal bone.
Figure Credits

Chapter 2
2-1 Cohen BJ. Memmler's The Human Body in Health and Disease. 10th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:9, Fig. 1.8.

Chapter 3
3-3 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:27, Fig. 1.16.
3-4 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:985, Fig. 7-43E.
3-6 McConnell TH. The Nature of Disease. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007:272, Fig.12-1.
3-7 Cohen BJ. Memmler's The Human Body in Health and Disease. 10th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:318, Fig. 15.11.
3-8 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant's Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:736, Fig. 8.6A.
3-9 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:522, Fig. 4-23.
3-12 Gartner LP, Hiatt JL. Color Textbook of Histology. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2007:207, Fig. 9-23.
3-13 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:63,65, Figs. 1.41A and 1.43B.

Chapter 4
4-15 Courtesy of Dr. R. Jaynes, Ohio State University, College of Dentistry, Department of Radiology.
4-16 Redrawn and colorized with permission from the American Dental Association.
4-17 Courtesy of Dr. Jon Park, DDS, Department of Oral Diagnosis, Dental School, University of Maryland, Baltimore.
4-20 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:997, Fig. 7.49.

Chapter 5
5-1 Redrawn and colorized after Sadler, TW. Langman's Medical Embryology. 10th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:272, Fig. 16.21B.
5-10, A–F Sadler TW. Langman's Medical Embryology. 10th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:276, Fig. 16.28A–F.
5-11 Courtesy Dr. SD Josell, Department of Orthodontics, Dental School, University of Maryland.
5-12 Courtesy Dr. SD Josell, Department of Orthodontics, Dental School, University of Maryland.

Chapter 6
6-13 Courtesy of Dr. C. Ferrel, Department of Orthodontics, Dental School, University of Maryland.
Chapter 7

7-2 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:731, Fig. 8.3II.

7-3 Moore KL, Agur AMR. *Essential Clinical Anatomy*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007:585, Fig. 8.2C.

7-4 Moore KL, Agur AMR. *Essential Clinical Anatomy*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007:585, Fig. 8.2A.

7-5 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:316, Fig. 4.35.

7-7 Moore KL, Agur AMR. *Essential Clinical Anatomy*. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007:585, Fig. 8.2A,B.

7-10 Redrawn and colorized after Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:732, Fig. 8.3III.


Chapter 8

8-4 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:652, Fig. 7-43B.


Chapter 9

9-1 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:612, Fig. 7.15A.

9-2 Moore KL, Dalley AF. *Clinically Oriented Anatomy*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:1131, Fig. 9.1.

Chapter 10

10-4 McConnell TH. *The Nature of Disease*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007:680, Fig. 25.2.

10-5 McConnell TH. *The Nature of Disease*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007:681, Fig. 25.3.

Chapter 11

11-2 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:652, Fig. 7-43B.

Chapter 12

12-6 Redrawn and colorized from Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:659, Fig. 7.47.

12-7 Redrawn and colorized from Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:658, Fig. 7.47.

12-9 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:660, Fig. 7.48.

12-10 Moore KL, Dalley AF. *Clinically Oriented Anatomy*. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:911, Fig. 7.10B.

Chapter 13


Chapter 14

14-1 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:660, Fig. 7.48.

14-2 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:688, Fig. 7.70A.

14-5 Asset provided by Anatomical Chart Company. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

14-7 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. *Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy*. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:687, Fig. 7.69A.

Chapter 15

Figure Credits


15-4 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:1004, Table 7-16 A.B.

15-5 Redrawn and colorized after Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:670, Fig. 7.55A.


15-7 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:1005, Fig. 7.56.


Chapter 16


16-5 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:775, Fig. 8.32C.


16-8 Asset provided by Anatomical Chart Company. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

16-9 Modified and colorized after Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:1097, Fig. 8.33.

Chapter 17

17-6 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:612, Fig. 7.15A.

17-7 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:929, Table 7.3C.

17-8 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:322, Fig. 4.40.

17-10 Gartner LP, Hiatt JL. Color Textbook of Histology. 3rd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2007:207, Fig. 9-23.

Chapter 18


Chapter 21


21-3 Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:1005, Fig. 7.56.

21-6 Redrawn and colorized from Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:659, Fig. 7.47.

21-7 Redrawn and colorized from Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:658, Fig. 7.47.


21-9 Modified and colorized after Moore KL, Dalley AF. Clinically Oriented Anatomy. 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2006:911, Fig. 7.108.

Chapter 22

22-1 Moore KL, Agur AMR. Essential Clinical Anatomy. 3rd ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007:585, Fig. 8.2C.

22-2 Asset provided by Anatomical Chart Company. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins.

22-3 Agur AMR, Dalley AF. Grant’s Atlas of Anatomy. 11th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005:731, Fig. 8.31I.
Suggested Readings

Gross Anatomy Textbooks

Developmental Anatomy Textbooks

Neuroanatomy Textbooks
Young PA, Young PH, Tolbert DI. Basic Clinical Neuroscience. 2nd ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.

Head and Neck Anatomy Textbooks

Atlases

377
Abdominal nerve, transverse, 275
Abducens nerve, 285
assessment technique for, 293
function of, 280
injury to, 299
number of, 279
Abducent nerve, 156, 160, 174
Abduction, 13
Accessory bones, 15
Accessory lymph node, 329, 331
Accessory nerve, 309
anatomy of, 309
assessment technique for, 294
dysfunction of, 294
function of, 281
injury to, 309
modality of, 308
number of, 279
roots of, 105
Acetylcholine, 27
Acoustic meatus, branches to, 298
Acoustic nerve, 176
Adam's apple, 106
Adduction, 13
Adenoids, 252
Afferent function
somatic, 25
visceral, 25
Agonists, 14
Air conduction, 294
Ala, 32
Alar fascia, 109, 358
Alcmaeon, 1
Alveolar artery
anterior superior, 345
inferior, 342
posterior superior, 345
Alveolar nerve
anesthesia with, 313
anatomy of, 287, 296
block of, 316
block, 313
characteristics of, 290–291
descent of, 297
inferior
anatomy of, 288
block of, 322, 322
needle placement in, 315–317, 319–322, 324, 325
middle superior
anatomy of, 287, 296
block of, 315, 315
posterior superior
anatomy of, 287, 295
block of, 317, 317–318
terminals of, 298
Anatomic position, 3
human figure in, 5
in space, 4
Anatomic variation, 6
Anatomy
divisions of, 4
caracteristics of, 291
for maxillary molar, 203
of teeth, 313
Angular artery, 148, 339, 340
Angular vein, 339, 350
Ankyloglossia, 39, 60
Anosmia, 282, 293
Aryepiglotticus muscle, 259
Arytenoid cartilage, 257–258
Arytenoid muscle, 259
Aspiration, 311, 314
Atrioventricular valve, 19
Attachment, types of, 13
Auditory tube, ostium of, 251
Auricular artery
depth, 342
origin of, 341
posterior, 130, 148, 185
Auricular branch, 301, 307, 341
Auricular nerve
great, 108, 109
posterior, 301
Auricular veins, posterior, 107, 351
Auricularis
anterior, 140–141
posterior, 140–141
superior, 140–141
Auricolotemporal nerve, 182, 288
branches of
anterior, 298
articular, 298
external acoustic, 298
parotid gland, 298
characteristics of, 291
origin of, 298
Autonomic nervous system
components of, 7
divisions of, 26
schematic representation of, 28
Axial skeleton, 15
Axis, modification of, 66, 81
Axon, 23
Axon hillock, 23

Arch of aorta, 148
Archicerebellum, 269
Arterial anastomoses, 274
Arterial occlusion, 274
Arterial rupture, 274
Arterioles, 20
Arthrodial (sliding) movement, 213
Articular disk, 16, 210–211
Aryepiglotticus fold, 252
Aryepiglotticus muscle, 259
Arytenoid cartilage, 257–258
Arytenoid muscle, 259
Atrioventricular valve, 19
Attachment, types of, 13
Auditory tube, ostium of, 251
Auricular artery
depth, 342
origin of, 341
posterior, 130, 148, 185
Auricular branch, 301, 307, 341
Auricular nerve
great, 108, 109
posterior, 301
Auricular veins, posterior, 107, 351
Auricularis
anterior, 140–141
posterior, 140–141
superior, 140–141
Auricolotemporal nerve, 182, 288
branches of
anterior, 298
articular, 298
external acoustic, 298
parotid gland, 298
characteristics of, 291
origin of, 298
Autonomic nervous system
components of, 7
divisions of, 26
schematic representation of, 28
Axial skeleton, 15
Axis, modification of, 66, 81
Axon, 23
Axon hillock, 23

Index

Page numbers in italics denote figures; those followed by a “t” denote tables.
Brain
Bone conduction, 294
Bone classification, 15
Blood-brain barrier, 264–265
Blood supply
Blood platelets, 19
Blood, in cardiovascular system, 19
Block resection, 333
Blindness, 169, 293
Blind spot, 169
Bleeding, in scalp, 142
Bipennate, 13
Bifid tongue, 60
Bifid nose, 223
Bell palsy, 151, 302
Basophils, 19
Basilar artery, 273
Basal ganglia, 265
Bar of Passavant, 49, 253
Balance, nerves for, 281
Back, muscles of, 112
Brevis spinae muscle, 112
Branchia, 52
Buccal artery, 345
Buccal gingiva, 323
Buccal lymph nodes, 328
Buccal nerve, 268
block, 313, 323
function of, 297
long, 323
needle placement in, 324
origin of, 297
Buccal soft tissue, 325
Buccinator, 297, 346
action of, 141
location and origin of, 140
Buccopharyngeal fascia, 253, 358
Buccopharyngeal membrane, 53
Bursae, 9, 13
Calvaria, 74
Cancellous bone, 18
Cancer, tongue, 235
Cancellous bone, 18
Cancer, tongue, 235
Canine eminence, 33
Canine, 41
Cardiac branch
inferior, 306
superior, 306, 307
Cardiac muscle, location of, 11
Cardiovascular system
components of, 7
function of, 19
organisms of, 19
systemic capillary schematic in, 20
Caroticotympanic branch, 347
Carotid artery
anatomy of, 184–185
branches of, 337
cavernous portion of, 347
cerebral portion of, 347
cervical portion of, 347
common, 128, 148, 335, 336
distribution of, 22
external, 128, 148, 336, 336
internal, 128, 148, 156, 268, 273, 336
ascent of, 345
portions of, 347
petrous portion of, 347
Carotid body, 335
as chemoreceptor, 21
nerve to, 304, 307
Carotid plexus, 174
Carotid sheath, 109, 114, 359
Carotid sinus, 335
blood pressure changes in, 20
nerve, 304, 305
Carotid sinus syndrome, 128, 335
Carotid triangle, 118
Cartilage, 19
Cartilaginous joints, 16, 17
Cataract, 170, 283
Cauda equina, 275, 277
Cavernous branch, 347
Cavernous sinus, 156, 158
Cell body, 22
Cell column, intermediolateral, 264, 277
Cells
muscle, 12
organization of, 8
signaling, 52–53
specialization of, 8
target, 52–53
Cementoblasts, 47
Central nervous system
composition of, 26
coverings of, 26
vulnerability of, 264
Cerebellar artery
anteroinferior, 273
inferior, 268
posteroinferior, 273
superior, 268, 273, 274
Cerebellar cortex, 269
Cerebellar falk, 273
Cerebellar peduncle
inferior, 272
middle, 271
superior, 271
Cerebellar tentorium, 273
Cerebellar vein
inferior, 276
superior, 276
Cerebellum, 266, 268
arbor vitae of, 267
composition of, 269
Cerebral aqueduct, 267, 269, 273
Cerebral arterial circle, 274, 274
Cerebral artery
anterior, 268, 273, 274
middle, 274
posterior, 268, 273, 274
Cerebral falk, 273
Cerebral hemispheres, 265, 269
Cerebral peduncle, 270, 271
Cerebral veins
great, 273, 276
superior, 273
Cerebrospinal fluid
circulation of, 263
development of, 272
in ventricles, 272–273
Cerebrospinal rhinorrhea, 226
Cerumen, 303
Cervical artery
deep, 126
transverse, 108, 349
Cervical cysts, 59
Cervical fascia, 110, 356
deep, 357–359
spaces of, 360
superficial, 356–357
Index

Cervical ganglion, 135–136
Cervical lymph nodes, 330–331
  anterior, 328
  block resection of, 333
  deep, 329
  inferior deep, 329
  superficial, 329
  superior deep, 329
  transverse, 329
Cervical nerve, transverse, 109
Cervical plexus, 108, 122, 123
  branches of, 122r
Cervical sympathetic trunk, 105,
  135–136
Cervical triangles, boundaries of, 118r
Cervical vertebrae, 81–82,
  102–103
Cervical vein, transverse, 108
Cervical veins, 153
  superior deep, 329
  superficial, 329
  inferior deep, 329
  deep, 329
  anterior, 328
  posterior, 328
  superior, 328
  transverse, 328
Cervical sympathetic trunk, 105,
  135–136
Colliculus
  brachium of, 270–271
  facial, 271
  inferior, 267, 270
  superficial, 272
  commissural lip pit, 32
  Communicating artery
    anterior, 268, 274
    posterior, 268–274
  Compact bone, 18
Cleft palate, 50
Cleft lip, 50
Clavicle, fractured, 126
Clavicle, fractured, 126
Cleft lip, 50, 64
  clinical considerations with, 65
  incidence of, 33
Cleft palate, 50, 64
  clinical considerations with, 65
  incidence of, 40
Col, 34
Collateral ganglia, 27
  Colliculus
    brachium of, 270–271
    facial, 271
    inferior, 267, 270
    superficial, 272
    commissural lip pit, 32
    Communicating artery
      anterior, 268, 274
      posterior, 268–274
    Compact bone, 18
    Cleft palate, 50
    Cleft lip, 50
    Clavicle, fractured, 126
    Col, 34
    Collateral ganglia, 27
    Deafness, nerve, 177, 294r
    Deep fascia, 11, 105, 109
    Deglutition, stages of, 262
    Deltoid, 108
    Dendrites, 23
    Dental arches, 41, 42
    Dental branch, 342
    Dental carious lesions, 298
    Dental plexus, 287
    Denticulate ligaments, 264, 275, 276
    Dentin, 41
    Dentures, 246
    Depression, 13
    Depressor anguli oris
      action of, 141r
      location and origin of, 140r
    Depressor labii inferioris
      action of, 141r
      location and origin of, 140r
    Depressor septi
      action of, 141r
      location and origin of, 140r
    Dermal papillae, 9
    Dermal ridges, 9
    Dermis
      composition of, 9
      structure of, 10
    Descending artery, 341
    Developmental anatomy, 4
    Diaphragm, nerves in, 124
    Diaphragma sella, 156, 156
    Diaphysis, 18
    Diencéphalon, composition of,
      269–270
    Digastric muscle, 230–231
      composition of, 186
      nerve to, 268, 302
    Dilator papillae muscles, 170,
      172r
    Diploic veins, 159
    Dissection, early use of, 1
    Dizziness, 294
    Dorsal horn, 25,
      276
    Dorsal primary ramus,
      276
    Crepis, 214
    Cretinism, 132
    Cribiform plate of the ethmoid, 75,
      282
    Criocartilage, 106, 257
    Cricothyroid artery, 337
    Cricothyroid ligament, 258
    Cricothyroid membrane, 258
    Cricothyroid muscle, 258
    Cricothyromyotomy, 261
    Crista galli, 75, 273
    Cuneiform cartilage, 258
    Cuneus, 267, 269
    Cupid’s bow, 32
    Cutaneous nerve, lateral, 276
    Cutaneous sensation, nerves for, 280r
    Cysts, clinical considerations with, 59
D
  Danger space, 359
  Danger zone
    of face, 150–151, 361
    of scalp, 142
  Danger zone
    of face, 150–151, 361
    of scalp, 142
  Danger zone
    of face, 150–151, 361
    of scalp, 142
  Danger zone
    of face, 150–151, 361
    of scalp, 142

Ear, 176
  development of, 174
  external, 175
  functions, 161
  inner, 176–178
  middle, 175–176
  muscles of, 140t, 143–144
Ear wax, 303
Eardrum, 175
Edinger-Westphal nucleus, 280
Efferent function
  somatic, 25
  visceral, 25
Elastic cartilage, 19
Elastic cone, 258
Elevation, 13
Embryo
  face development in, 54
  pharyngeal arch formation in, 53
Emissary veins, 153, 159
Enamel, 41
Enamel knot, 43, 46
Enamel organ, 43
Endochondral bone formation, 7, 16, 18
Endomysium, 12
Endosteum, 18
Enteric ganglia, 27
Enteric nervous system, components of, 7
Eosinophils, 19
Ependyma, 265
Epicranius muscle, 138–139
Epidermal ridges, 9
Epidermis
  composition of, 9
  structure of, 10
Epidermis
  composition of, 9
  structure of, 10
Epidual fat, 264
Epigastric artery, 349
Epiglottis cartilage, 257
Epiglottic vallecula, 252, 257
Epiglottis, 252
Epimyosum, 12
Epiphysis, 18
Epistaxis, 221, 346
Epithalamus, 269
Erythrocytes, 19
Esophagus
  anatomy of, 254
  defects of, 255
  muscularis externa of, 254
  muscularis propia of, 254
  submucosal collagen of, 254
  submucosal vessels of, 254
  submucosal nerve plexus of, 254
  wall thickness of, 254
Ethmoid bone, 222
Ethmoidal bulla, 222
Ethmoidal foramen
  anterior, 164r
  posterior, 164t
Ethmoidal nerves, 173
  anterior, 266
  characteristics of, 289t
  posterior, 286
Extension, 13
Extracellular fluid, 328
Eye
  anatomy of, 164, 167
  crossing of, 293t
  intrinsic muscles of, 161
  movement of, 280t
  muscles of, 140t, 170, 171, 172t
  reflexive elements of, 162
  rotation of, 293t
Eye charts, 293t
Eyelid
  anatomy of, 163
  skin of, 289t
Facial artery, 130, 336, 339
  anterior, 347
  posterior, 347
  branches of, 148
  compression of, 149, 340
  in submandibular triangle, 241–242
  transverse, 148, 185, 339, 341
Facial branch, 345
Facial canal, 299
Facial expression
  muscles of, 9, 137, 139, 294t
  nerves for, 280t
Facial lymph nodes, 330t
  deep, 320
  superficial, 328
Facial nerve, 146, 300
  assessment technique for, 293t
  branches of, 147t, 300
  dysfunction of, 293t
  function of, 280t
  general sensory component of, 299
  modality of, 299
  number of, 279
  parasympathetic component of, 299
  parotid gland and, 180
  parotid region of, 147, 185–186
  special sensory component of, 299
  special visceral motor component of, 299
  visceral sensory component of, 299
Facial vein, 339
  anatomy of, 350
  drainage with, 149–150
  thrombophlebitis of, 150, 350
Falx cerebelli, 156
Falx cerebri, 154
Fascia. See specific fascia
Fascial infection, 111, 356
Fauces, 35
Fenestra cochleae, 175
Fenestra vestibuli, 175
Fibrous cartilage, 19
Fibrous joints, 16, 17
Fight or flight, 26
Filiform papilla, 37
Filum, 276
Fissure
  calcarine, 267, 269
  coronal, 266
  longitudinal, 265
  orbital
    inferior, 164t
    superior, 164t
  palpebral, 165
  posterior median, 272
  ventral median, 277
Fistulas, clinical considerations with, 59
Fixators, 14
Flexion, 13
Foliate papilla, 37
Foramen cecum, 50
Foramen magnum, 274
Foramen of Magendie, 272
Foramen ovale, 296
Foramina, 15
Foramina of Luschka, 272
Fordyce granules, 34

external, 275
innermost, 275
thoracic, 275
Interdental papilla, 34
Interneuron, 277
Interspinales muscle, 112–113
Interspinous ligament, 112–113
Interventricular foramen, 267, 269, 273
Intramembranous bone formation, 7, 16
Invertebral foramina, 264
Investing fascia, 109, 357–358
Iris, 167
Isthmus of fauces, 346
J
Jaw
clenching of, 293
depressor of, 188
elevators of, 188
opening, 213
Joints. See also Temporomandibular joint
formation of, 15
types of, 16, 17
Jugular arch, 107, 111
Jugular notch, 106
Jugular trunk, 329
Jugular vein, 107–108
anterior, 108
external, 107, 108, 352
internal, 131, 354
superior bulb of, 157
vein, 131
as venous manometer, 353
Jugulodigastric lymph node, 242, 327, 331
Jugulo-omohyoid lymph nodes, 329, 332
Jugulo-omohyoid lymph nodes, 329, 332
K
Keratohyalin, 9
Kiesselefack area, 221, 346
Kinesthetic sense, nerves for, 280
Knee joint, 17
L
Labial artery
inferior, 148, 339, 340
superior, 148, 339, 340
Labial branch, 345
Labial frenula, 34
Labial tubercle, 32
Labial vein
inferior, 339
superior, 339
Labiomental groove, 32
Labyrinth, 177
Labyrinthine artery, 273
Lacerations, facial, 151, 361
Lacral apparatus, anatomy of, 165
Lacral artery, 347
Lacral gland, 165, 289
Lacral nerve, 173, 286
anatomy of, 288
characteristics of, 289
terminals of, 286
Lacral sac, 165
Lacteals, 21
Lacunae, 16
Lacunae lateralis, 264
Lamina terminalis, 267
Langer lines, 107
Laryngeal aperture, 256
Laryngeal artery, superior, 336
Laryngeal cartilages, 256–258
Laryngeal nerve, 134
external, 134, 306
inferior, 308
internal, 134, 306
recurrent, 306, 308
superior, 307
Laryngeal pharynx, 252
Laryngeal prominence, 106
Larynx, 106
cavity of, 256
composition of, 255–256
function of, 255
lesion on, 308
ligaments of, 258
lymph nodes of, 260
membranes of, 258
motor innervation to, 260–261
muscles of
arytenoid, 259
cricothyroid, 258
intrinsic, 259
lateral cricoarytenoid, 258
posterior cricoarytenoid, 258
thyroarytenoid, 259
vocalis, 259
musculature of, 255
nerves of, 260, 261
posterior view of, 250, 257
sensory innervation of, 260–261
vascular supply to, 260
vessels of, 260
Latin, 1
Lens, 169
Leukocytes, 19
Levator anguli oris
action of, 141
location and origin of, 140
Levator labii superioris
action of, 141
location and origin of, 140
Levator labii supercilii
action of, 141
location and origin of, 140
location and origin of, 140
Levator palpebrae superioris
action of, 141
location and origin of, 140
Lethal dose, 19
Ligamentum nuchae, 109
Lingual artery, 130, 336
depth, 339
dorsal, 338
origin of, 338
in submandibular triangle, 241
Lingual branch, 305
Lingual cancer, 235
Lingual gingiva, 297, 328
Lingual lymph nodes, 328
Lingual nerve
block, 322
characteristics of, 291
descent of, 297
function of, 297
terminals of, 288
Lingula, 269
Lip
anatomy of, 32
cleft, 50, 64
clinical considerations with, 65
incidence of, 33
defects in, 33
depressors of, 144
elevators of, 144–145
innervation of, 291
Longissimus cervicis muscle, 112–113
Loose areolar tissue, 9
Lumbar cistern, 275, 276–277
Lumbar spinal nerve, first, 275
Lymph
contents of, 327
filtration of, 328
Lymph nodes, 21. See also specific nodes
disease states in, 333
examination of, 333
location of, 327
Lymphatic drainage
in deep tissue, 332–333
in superficial tissue, 331–332
Lymphatic duct, right, 126
Lymphatic ring of Waldeyer, 49
Lymphatic system, composition of, 21
Lymphocytes, 19
Lymph nodes, 21
Macroglossia, 39, 60
Macroscopic anatomy, 4
Macula, 165, 169
Maxillary artery, 313
Maxillary arch, anesthesia in, 313
Mastoid process, 291
Mastoid air cells, 291
Masseteric nerve, 191
Masseteric fascia, 191
Masseteric artery, 200, 345
Masseter muscle, 186, 192
Marrow, 14
Manometer, 353
Mandibular sling, 195
Mandibular teeth, 318
Mandibular trunk, 296
Manometer, 353
Marrow, 14
Massa intermedia, 267, 289
Masseter muscle, 186, 192–193, 193–195, 195
Masseteric artery, 200, 345
Masseteric fascia, 191
Masseteric nerve, 288
anatomy of, 297
characteristics of, 292
Mastication
muscles of, 188, 191, 192–193, 191–192
flaccid paralysis of, 298
infection of, 193
nerves for, 280
process of, 206–207
Masticator space
contents of, 362
frontal section of, 362
infection of, 363
Mastoid air cells, 291
Mastoid artery, 341
Mastoid lymph nodes, 328, 330
Mastoid process, 176
Maxillary arch, anesthesia in, 313
Maxillary artery, 148, 336
anatomy of, 342
branches of, 149, 185, 188, 203
distribution from, 201–202, 218
mandibular portion of, 200, 342
origin of, 341
pterygoid portion of, 200, 202, 342, 345
in pterygopalatine fossa, 217
pterygopalatine portion of, 202, 342, 345
Maxillary lymph nodes, 328
Maxillary nerve
assessment technique for, 293
branches of, 295–296
dysfunction of, 293
modality of, 292, 292
in pterygopalatine fossa, 217–220
Maxillary teeth, 317
Maxillary vein, 202, 351
Meatuses, 15, 222, 298
Mecckel cave, 156
Medulla, continuation of, 263
Medulla oblongata, 272
Medullary cone, 275
Membranous labyrinth, 177
Ménière’s disease, 177, 303
Meningeal arteries, 338
accessory, 345
branches of, 341
middle, 345
Meningeal branch, 307, 338
Meningeal nerves, 159–160
middle, 295
recurrent, 296
Meninges
arachnoid in, 264
dura mater in, 264
layers of, 263
pia mater in, 264
Meniscus, 16
Mental artery, 339, 342, 345
Mental foramen, 288
Mental nerve
block, 313r, 323, 325
characteristics of, 291
needle placement in, 325
terminals of, 298
Mental nerves, 288
Mentalis
action of, 141
location and origin of, 140
Mesencephalic nucleus, 280
Mesencephalon, composition of, 270–271
Metarterioles, 20
Metacephalon, composition of, 271
Metopiceule, 15
Microglossia, 39, 60
Micrognathia, 60
Microscope, invention of, 2
Microscopic anatomy, 4
Modiolus, 177
Molar, 41
anesthesia for, 203, 314
extraction of, 310
maxillary sinus and, 225
origin of, 46
retro, 225
Monocytes, 19
Motor end plate, 14, 25
Motor neuron
components of, 24
in ventral horn, 277
Motor nucleus, 280
Motor root, 298, 300, 301
Mouth
development of, 62
floor of, 39, 238
muscles of, 140
muscles surrounding, 144
Mucolabial folds, 32
Mucoperiosteum, 40
Mucosa, lymph from, 332
Mucous, 11
Mumps, 182
Muscle. See also specific muscle
attachment of, 13
cells of, 11
contraction of, 7
fiber, 11
form of, 13
types of, 11–12
Muscle fascicle, 12
Muscular branch, 341, 348
Muscular process, 258
Muscular triangle, 118
Musculophrenic artery, 349
Musculus uvulae, 247r, 248
Myelencephalon
composition of, 272
disease of, 272
Myelin sheath, 23
Mylohyoid artery, 342
Mylohyoid muscle, 232
Mylohyoid nerve, 288
characteristics of, 292
descent of, 297–298
Myofibrils, 11
Myopia, 168, 283

N
Nails, composition of, 11
Nasal artery
dorsal, 347
lateral, 148, 339, 340
Nasal branches, 173, 345, 347
characteristics of, 290
external, 292
internal, 292
posterior lateral, 345
posterior superior, 287, 295
posterosuperior, 295
Neck
Nasal cavity
anatomy of, 68–69
door of, 223
lateral wall of, 221–223
lymph of, 332
medial wall of, 221
roof of, 223
Nasal concha, 222
Nasal pharynx, 249, 251
Nasal pit, 61
Nasal placodes, 61
Nasal septum
arterial and nerve supply of, 223
deviated, 222
Nasal skeleton, 220, 220–221
Nasal vein, lateral, 339
Nasal
action of, 141t
location and origin of, 140t
Nasociliary nerve, 173, 286
Nasalis
Nasal
muscles of, 112–113
lymph nodes of, 328–329, 330
lymph drainage in, 332–333
cells in, 52–53
functional components of, 24–25
modality of, 282–283
injury to, 284
modality of, 282
number of, 279
Odontogenesis, 41
apposition in, 46
bell stage of, 43
bud stage of, 43
cap stage of, 43
cell rests of Malassez in, 47
cementoblasts in, 47
permanent molar origin in, 46
root formation in, 47
Odor, distinction among, 293
olfactory bulb, 268, 269, 281, 282
olfactory epithelial cells, 280
olfactory nerve, 282
assessment technique for, 293
function of, 280
injury to, 284
modality of, 282
number of, 279
olfactory tract, 160, 268, 269, 281, 282
Olive
frontal, 265
parietal, 265
Ophthalnic artery, 174
branches of, 347–348
origin of, 347

O
Obex, 272
Oblique line, 256
Oblique muscle
inferior, 170
superior, 170
Obliquus capitis posterior muscle, 112–113
Obliquus capitis superior muscle, 112–113
Occipital artery, 108, 130, 148, 185, 336
branches of, 341
origin of, 340
Occipital branch, 301, 341
Occipital lobe, 266, 269
Occipital lymph nodes, 328, 330
Occipital nerve, lesser, 109
Occipital sinus, 157
Occipital triangle, 119
Occipital vein, 351
Occipitalis, 139
action of, 141t
location and origin of, 140t
Occipitofrontalis muscle, 138
Ocular movement, nerves for, 280
Oculomotor nerve, 156, 160, 173, 285
assessment technique for, 293
function of, 280
injury to, 284
modality of, 282
number of, 279
Odontogenesis, 41
apposition in, 46
bell stage of, 43
bud stage of, 43
cap stage of, 43
cell rests of Malassez in, 47
cementoblasts in, 47
permanent molar origin in, 46
root formation in, 47
Odor, distinction among, 293
Olfactory bulb, 268, 269, 281, 282
Olfactory epithelial cells, 280
Olfactory nerve, 282
assessment technique for, 293
function of, 280
injury to, 284
modality of, 282
number of, 279
Olfactory tract, 160, 268, 269, 281, 282
Olive, 272
Omooclavicular lymph nodes, 327
Omohyoid muscle, 120, 127
inferior belly of, 108
Opiocapit
frontal, 265
parietal, 265
Parietal muscle, 174
branches of, 347–348
origin of, 347

Index
385

Nasal cavity
anatomy of, 68–69
door of, 223
lateral wall of, 221–223
lymph of, 332
medial wall of, 221
roof of, 223
Nasal concha, 222
Nasal pharynx, 249, 251
Nasal pit, 61
Nasal placodes, 61
Nasal septum
arterial and nerve supply of, 223
deviated, 222
Nasal skeleton, 220, 220–221
Nasal vein, lateral, 339
Nasal
action of, 141t
location and origin of, 140t
Nasal cavity
triangles of, 114
superficial structures of, 107
suboccipital region of, 115, 115
superficial structures of, 107
triangles of, 114, 117
anterior, 126
tributaries of, 124–126
carotid, 118
cervical, 118
muscles of, 120–121, 120–121
muscular, 118
tributaries of, 122–124
occipital, 117
posterior, 118–119, 119
subclavian, 117
submandibular, 118
submental, 118
suboccipital, 116
veins of, 126
venous vessels of, 353
vessels of, 126
veins of, 350, 352, 354
venous drainage of, 107–108
vessels of, 130, 130
visceral compartment of, 360
Nervous system
functional components of, 24–25
modality of, 22
structure of, 22–24
Nervus intermedius, 291
Nervus petrosus, 204
Nerve rootlets, posterior, 275
Nervus
composition of, 22–23
motor, 24
Neurovascular bundles, 14
Neurophil, 19
Nasal bodies, 22
Nodes of Ranvier, 24
Needle placement in, 312
Olfactory nerve, 160, 173
Olfactory epithelial cells, 280
Olfactory bulb, 268, 269, 281, 282
Olfactory nerve, 282
assessment technique for, 293
function of, 280
injury to, 284
modality of, 282
number of, 279
Odontogenesis, 41
apposition in, 46
bell stage of, 43
bud stage of, 43
cap stage of, 43
cell rests of Malassez in, 47
cementoblasts in, 47
permanent molar origin in, 46
root formation in, 47
Odor, distinction among, 293
Olfactory bulb, 268, 269, 281, 282
Olfactory epithelial cells, 280
Olfactory nerve, 282
assessment technique for, 293
function of, 280
injury to, 284
modality of, 282
number of, 279
Olfactory tract, 160, 268, 269, 281, 282
Olive, 272
Omooclavicular lymph nodes, 327
Omohydoid muscle, 120, 127
inferior belly of, 108
Opiocapit
frontal, 265
parietal, 265
Parietal muscle, 174
branches of, 347–348
origin of, 347

O
Obex, 272
Oblique line, 256
Oblique muscle
inferior, 170
superior, 170
Obliquus capitis posterior muscle, 112–113
Obliquus capitis superior muscle, 112–113
Occipital artery, 108, 130, 148, 185, 336
branches of, 341
origin of, 340
Occipital branch, 301, 341
Occipital lobe, 266, 269
Occipital lymph nodes, 328, 330
Occipital nerve, lesser, 109
Occipital sinus, 157
Occipital triangle, 119
Occipital vein, 351
Occipitalis, 139
action of, 141t
location and origin of, 140t
Occipitofrontalis muscle, 138
Ocular movement, nerves for, 280
Oculomotor nerve, 156, 160, 173, 285
assessment technique for, 293
function of, 280
injury to, 284
modality of, 282
number of, 279
Odontogenesis, 41
apposition in, 46
bell stage of, 43
bud stage of, 43
cap stage of, 43
cell rests of Malassez in, 47
cementoblasts in, 47
permanent molar origin in, 46
root formation in, 47
Odor, distinction among, 293
index
385
Index

Ophthalmic nerve
assessment technique for, 293t
characteristics of, 289t
dysfunction of, 293t
frontal branch of, 288
lacral branch of, 288
modality of, 286
nasociliary, 292
Ophthalmic vein
inferior, 352
superior, 352
Ophthalmoscope, 293t
Optic chiasma, 1, 267, 268, 270, 281, 283
Optic foramen, 164t
Optic nerves, 160, 173
assessment technique for, 293t
discovery of, 1
dysfunction of, 293t
fiber crossing in, 283
function of, 280t
modality of, 281
number of, 279
role of, 1
Optic tract, 270, 283
Ora serrata, 168
Oral cavity
anatomy of, 32
proper, 34–35
Oral pharynx, 251–252
Orb
anatomy of, 165–169
muscles of, 162
Orbicularis oculi, 163
action of, 141t
anatomy of, 144
location and origin of, 140t
Orbicularis oris
anatomy of, 144
location and origin of, 140t
Orbit
anterior anatomy of, 163–165
bones of, 163t–164t
bony, 162–163
composition of, 68
contents of, 162
muscles of, 144
nerves of, 173–174
scans of, 101
structures in, 168
vascular supply to, 174
Orbital branch, 295, 345
Orbital nerve, characteristics of, 289t
Organ, 8
Organ system, 8
Oropharyngeal isthmus, 32, 35
anterior pillar of, 244
medial view of, 251
posterior pillar of, 245
Oropharynx
clinical considerations of, 49
medial view of, 246
Ossification center, primary, 18
Osteoblasts, 16, 18
Osteocytes, 16
Osteoid, 16
Otic ganglion, 291t, 304
Otitis media, 174, 303
Otoscrosis, 174, 303
P
Pain, shoulder, 116
Palate, 243
anatomy of, 38, 40
arteries of, 346
cleft, 40, 50, 64
clinical considerations with, 65
discussion of, 40
development of, 62, 62–63
elevation of, 294t
hard
composition of, 244
glands of, 346
ossaceous prominence on, 245
inferior view of, 93
medial view of, 251
nerves of, 346
posterior view of, 250
sensory nerve supply to, 248
soft
composition of, 244–245
dentures with, 246
muscles of, 245–248, 247t, 346
structures of, 245
vascular supply to, 248
Palatine aponeurosis, 346
Palatine artery, 248
ascending, 130, 339–340
branches of, 338
greater, 345, 346
lesser, 345
Palatine foramen
greater, 346
lesser, 346
Palatine glands, 40, 346
Palatine nerve
anesthesia with, 313t
block, 318, 320
characteristics of, 290t
greater, 287, 295, 346
lesser, 287, 295
needle placement in, 320
Palatine tonsil, 248–249, 346
Palatine torus, 40
Palatine velum, 38
Palatoglossal arch, 34, 244, 346
Palatoglossus, 247t, 248
Palatopharyngeal arch, 245, 346
Palatopharyngeal sphincter, 253
Palatopharyngeus muscle, 245, 247t, 248
Paleocerebellum, 269
Palpebral branch
characteristics of, 290t, 345
lateral, 347
Palsy, 284
Panniculus adiposus, 9
Papilla
circumvallate, 37
filiform, 37
fOLLATE, 37
interdental, 34
parotid, 33
retrocanine, 39
retromolar, 34
Paralysis
of mastication muscle, 298
of trapezius muscle, 116
Paranasal sinuses
ethmoidal, 225–226
frontal, 224–225
function of, 216, 224
inflammation of, 227
maxillary, 224
medial view of, 225
molars and, 225
nerve supply to, 228, 227t, 228
openings of, 224t
sphenoidal, 226
vascular supply to, 226, 227t
Parasympathetic nervous system
components of, 8
function of, 26–27
schematic representation of, 29
Parathyroid
anatomy of, 133
removal of, 132
Parietal branch, 341
Parietal lobe, 265, 266
Parietal pleura, 275
Parotid bed
arteries of, 342
facial nerve in, 185–186
lymph nodes in, 184
structures of, 181, 183
arteries of, 187
ligaments of, 187
muscles in, 186
nerves of, 187
superficial anatomy of, 180–181
Parotid duct, 179
calculus accumulation in, 182
diagnosis of, 182
sialography of, 182
Parotid fascia, 111, 358
Index

Parotid gland
branches to, 298
descriptions of, 179
capsulation of, 183
infections of, 183
relationships of, 182–183
vascular supply to, 183–184
Parotid lymph nodes, superficial, 328, 330
Parotid papilla, 33
Parotid plexus, 186, 302
Parotideomasseteric fascia, 191
Passavant bar, 49, 253
Patterning, 52
Pectoralis major, 108
Pedicle, 275
Pennate, 13
Pericranium, 138
Perimysium, 11
Periosteal bud, 18
Periosteum, 18
Peripharyngeal spaces, 363–364
 Peripheral nervous system, 25
Petrosal nerve
depth, 287
fibers of, 300
origin of, 299
 lesser, 304
Petrosal sinus, 159
Petrosquamous sinus, 157
Pharyngeal arch
derivatives of, 58r, 58
 development of, 53
 formation of, 53
Pharyngeal artery, 130, 185, 248, 337
Pharyngeal arch, 287, 295, 305, 306, 345
 characteristics of, 290t
 number of, 337
 role of, 308
Pharyngeal constrictor, 346
 inferior, 247t, 253
 middle, 247t, 253
 superior, 247t, 253
Pharyngeal grooves
anatomy of, 58
development of, 55
Pharyngeal isthmus, 251
Pharyngeal plexus, 243, 306
 anatomy of, 305
 components of, 244
 nerve contributions to, 304
Pharyngeal pouches
defects of, 59
derivatives of, 58–59, 61t
development of, 55
Pharyngeal raphe, 253
Pharyngeal recess, 251
Pharyngeal space, lateral, 364
Pharyngeal tonsil, 251–252
Pharyngeal wall, layers of, 252–253
Pharyngobasilar fascia, 252–253
Pharynx, 243
 anatomy of, 47
derivatives of, 61t
floor of, 59–61
foreign material in, 252
junctions of, 249
laryngeal, 252
lesion on, 308
muscles of, 46, 250, 253–254
nasal, 249, 251
oral, 251–252
posterior view of, 250
regions of, 49
sensory nerve supply of, 254
vascular supply of, 254
Philtrum, 32
Phrenic nerve,
distribution of, 124
as motor nerve, 105
Pia mater, 26, 264
Pillar of the fauces, 34
Pineal body, 267
Pituitary gland, 53,
 development of, 61
floor of, 59–61
foreign material in, 252
junctions of, 249
laryngeal, 252
lesion on, 308
muscles of, 46, 250, 253–254
nasal, 249, 251
oral, 251–252
posterior view of, 250
regions of, 49
sensory nerve supply of, 254
vascular supply of, 254
Pons,
267, 268, 271
Pons, 267, 268, 271
Pontine arteries, 268, 274
Pontine arteries, 268, 274
Pons, 267, 268, 271
Pontine arteries, 268, 274
Pons, 267, 268, 271
Pontine arteries, 268, 274
Postauricular lymph nodes, 328
Postganglionic fibers, 297
Preauricular lymph nodes, 328, 330
Preauricular pits, 57
Preganglionic fibers, 297
Preoccipital notch, 265, 266
Presbyopia, 283
Pretracheal fascia, 114, 358
Pretracheal space, 360
Prevertebral fascia, 109, 111,
 358–359
Prevertebral layer, 108
Prime movers, 13
Procerus
 action of, 141t
 location and origin of, 140t
Psoas major, 275
Pterygoid artery, 345
Pterygoid canal, 287
artery of, 345, 347
nerve of, 299
Pterygoid fascia, 191
Pterygoid ligament, 192
Pterygoid muscle
 lateral, 196, 199
 medial, 195
 nerve to, 288
Pterygoid nerve
 anatomy of, 287
 lateral, 292t, 297
 medial, 292t, 296
Pterygoid plexus, 193, 202, 351
Pterygoid venous plexus, 189
Pterygomandibular raphe, 35, 346
Pterygopalatine ganglion, 217, 287
 associated nerves, 219
 function of, 220
Pterygopalatine nerve
 anatomy of, 295
 characteristics of, 289t
 infraorbital branch of, 296
 nasal branches of, 295
 orbital branch of, 295
 pharyngeal branch of, 295
Pulvis, 293t
Pulmonary arteries, 19
Pulmonary circuit, 19
Pulmonary veins, 19
Pulp, lymph drainage in, 332
Pulse rates, 340
Pulvinar, 270
Puncta, 165
Pupil, 167
 contraction of, 280t
dilation of, 293t
 reflex of, 284, 293t
Pupil ptosis, 284
Pupillae muscle, 170
Putamen, 270
Pyramid, 270, 272
Pyramidal decussations, 270, 272
Pythagoras, 1
Index

389

Spines, 15
Spiral ganglion, 281t, 303
Spiral organ of Corti, 177
Splenius capitis muscle, 112r–113r
Splenius cervicis muscle, 112r–113r
Stapedius, 175, 300, 300
Stapes, 175, 176t
Stellate ganglion, 136
Stenson duct, 33. See also Parotid duct
Sternocleidomastoid artery, 336, 340
Sternocleidomastoid muscle, 106, 108, 114, 115, 309
Sternohyoid muscle, 127t
Sternohyoid muscle, 127t
Stirrup, 175, 176t
Stomatognathic system, 51
Stomodeum, 53
Strabismus, lateral, 293t
Straight sinus, 157, 273
Stratum basale, 9
Stratum corneum, 9
Stratum germinativum, 9
Stria medullaris, 269
Striated muscle, 11
Stroke, 275, 294t
Styloglossus muscle, 186, 235, 310
Stylohyoid ligament, 187
Stylohyoid muscle, 186, 231–232, 302
Styloid process, 176
Styloglossus muscle, 11, 358
Styloglossus muscle, 341
Stylomastoid foramen, 300
Stylopharyngeus muscle, 187, 247t, 253–254, 304, 305
Subarachnoid space, 264
Subclavian artery, 124, 336
branches of, 348
clinical considerations with, 125
first part of, 349
origin of, 348–349
origins of, 105
second part of, 349–350
third part of, 350
Subclavian vein, 107, 126, 354
Subclavius muscle, 126
Subcortical nuclei, 265
Subcutaneous connective tissue, composition of, 9
Subdural space, 264
Sublingual artery, 241, 338
Sublingual caruncula, 238
Sublingual duct, 238
Sublingual glands, 233
Sublingual space, 363
Sublingual sulcus, 34
Submandibular duct, 238
Submandibular ganglion, 288, 301
Submandibular lymph nodes, 329, 330t
Submandibular region, 229
boundaries of, 230
contents of, 230
glands of, 233
muscles of
digastric, 230–231
geniohyoid, 232
mylohyoid, 232
stylohyoid, 231–232
vascular supply, 241–242
Submandibular space, 363
Submandibular triangle, 118
Submental artery, 130, 340
Submental lymph nodes, 328, 330t
Submental triangle, 118
Subthalamus, 270
Subtrapezial plexus, branch to, 309
Suci, 265
Sulcus
anterior lateral, 272
central, 265, 266
hypothalamic, 267
lateral, 265
olfactory, 269
parieto-occipital, 265, 266, 267
postcentral, 265, 266
precentral, 265, 266
Supraclavicular nerves, 108, 109
Suprahyoid artery, 338
Suprahyoid muscles, group functions of, 229, 233
Suprahyoid region, 229, 232
Supraorbital artery, 339, 347
Supraorbital foramen, 164t
Supraorbital nerve, 173, 286, 289t
Suprarenal medulla, 30
Suprascapular artery, 349
Suprascapular vein, 108
Suprasternal space, 111, 358
Supratrochlear artery, 329, 347
Supratrochlear nerve, 173, 286, 289t
Sutures, 16, 17
Swallowing
nerves for, 281t
stages of, 262
testing of, 294t
Sweat glands, 11
Sympathetic chain ganglia, 27, 276
Sympathetic nerves, 174
Sympathetic nervous system
components of, 8
function of, 26
schematic representation of, 28
Sympathetic trunk, 275
Symphyses, 16
Synapse, 25
Synchronoses, 16
Syndesmoses, 16, 17
Synergists, 13
Synovial fluid, 13
Synovial joints, 16, 17
Synovial sheath, 13
Syringe, 311
Systemic anatomy, 4
Systemic circuit, 19
T
Tarsal glands, 165
Taste
nerves for, 280r–281t
test of, 293t–294t
Tear
from ammonia, 293r
gland, 165
Tectum, 270
Teeth
anesthesia of, 313r
arrangement of, 41
deciduous, 41, 44
development of, 46
lymph in, 332
mandibular, 318
maxillary, 203, 317
permanent, 41, 45
Tegmentum, 271
Temporal arteries
depth, 345
maxillary, 131
middle, 341
superficial, 131, 148–149, 185, 336, 339, 341
Temporal bone
anatomy of, 210
articular eminence of, 209
Temporal fascia, 191
Temporal lobe, 266, 269
Temporal nerve
depth, 288, 292t
superficial, 298
Temporal region, skin of, 289r
Temporal vein, superficial, 150, 339, 350–351
Temporalis muscle, 192r–193r, 193, 195
Temporofacial nerve, 302
Temporomandibular disorder, 199, 208, 214
Temporomandibular joint, 18, 208
anatomy of, 209, 209–210
articular disc, 210–211
ligament, 211–212
mandible, 209–210
temporal bone, 210
arthritis, 214
articular coverings of, 208
dislocation of, 214
innervation of, 211
movement of, 213
index

muscles acting on, 215r
vascularization of, 211
Temporoparietalis, 139
action of, 141r
location and origin of, 140r
Tendon, attachment with, 13
tensor tympani, 175, 296
tensor veli palatini, 247, 247f, 296
tentorium cerebelli, 154
terminal filum, 275
terminal ganglia, 27
terminale, 276
thalamus, 269
thoracic artery, 125, 336, 349
thoracic duct, 21, 126
thoracic nerve
long, 108
in spinal cord, 275
thoracolumbar outflow, 26
thyroarytenoid muscle, 259
thyrocervical trunk, 125, 336, 349
thyroglossal duct, 132
thyrohyoid membrane, 258
thyrohyoid muscle, 127r
thyroid artery
inferior, 133, 336, 337, 349
superior, 129–130, 133, 336, 336
thyroid cartilage, 128r, 256
thyroid, defects of, 59
thyroid gland
anatomy of, 131–133
involvements in, 132
lobes of, 132
lymph in, 332
thyroid notch, 106, 256
thyroidea ima artery, 133
thyroidae, 132
tyroidectomy, 132
tic douloureux, 298
tissue, cell classification of, 8
tongue
abnormalities of, 39
anatomy of, 36–38
blood supply of, 237, 338
cancer of, 235
defects of, 60
dorsum of, 36
formation of, 59–61
lymph drainage in, 332–333
lymph nodes from, 242
movement of, 281r
muscles of, 229, 231r, 234
branches to, 310
genioglossus, 233, 235
group actions of, 235–236
hyoglossus, 235
innervation of, 235
stylloglossus, 235
vascularization of, 235
nerves to, 288
principle node of, 242
protrusion and retraction of, 294r
surface of, 236
touch reception on, 294r
tonsillar artery, 130, 340
tonsillar branch, 304, 305
tonsillar circle, 249
tonsils, 243. See also Palatine tonsil
torticollis, 116
torus tubarium, 251
trachea, anatomy of, 261–262
tracheotomy, 261
traction, 13
transverse sinus, 157
trapezius muscle, 106, 108, 112–113r, 116
treacher collins syndrome, 63
triangles of the anterior neck, 105
trigeminal cave, covering of, 156
trigeminal ganglion, 280r, 286, 287
trigeminal nerve, 160, 173
assessment technique for, 293r
dysfunction of, 293r
function of, 280r
mandibular division of, 146, 188, 204–206, 288
maxillary division of, 146, 156, 206, 219, 287
modality of, 285–286
motor root of, 298
number of, 279
ophthalmic division of, 145–146, 156, 286
salivary gland innervation by, 239
sensory components of, 289r–292r
trigeminal neuralgia, 151, 298
trichlear fovea, 170
trochlear nerve, 156, 160, 173, 285
assessment technique for, 293r
dysfunction of, 293r
function of, 280r
injury to, 285
modality of, 285
number of, 279
trunk anesthesia, 312, 316, 318
tuber cinereum, 268, 270, 270
Tuberculum cinereum, 272
Tuberculum cuneatus, 272
Tuberculum gracilis, 272
Tuberosities, 15
Tunics
in eye composition in, 165–166
fibrous, 166
internal, 168
retinal, 160–169
vascular, 166–167
Tuning fork, 294r
tympanic artery
inferior, 338
posterior, 341
tympanic nerve, anatomy of, 304–305
tympanic plexus, 176, 304
tympanum, 175
U
uvula, 38, 346
V
vagus nerve, 306
anatomy of, 133
assessment technique for, 294r
cardiac branches of, 134
dysfunction of, 294r
function of, 281r
lesion of, 308
modality of, 305–306
number of, 279
venae cavae, 19
venous drainage, 133
venous sinus, 351
ventral horn, 25, 276, 277
ventral primary ramus, 276
ventral root, 25, 276
ventricle, 19
cerebrospinal fluid in, 272–273
fourth, 267, 272–273
lateral, 269, 272
lining of, 272
third, 267, 272–273
vermilion border, 32
vermilion zone, 32
vermis, 268, 289
vertebrae, cervical, 81–82,
102–103
vertebral artery, 125, 148, 268, 273, 336, 349
vertebral vein, 354
vesalius, andreas, 2
vestibular apparatus, 162
vestibular ganglion, 303
vestibular nerve, 178, 303
vestibule, 177
anatomy of, 32–34
clinical considerations of, 35
vestibulocochlear nerve, 177–178, 301
assessment technique for, 294r
dysfunction of, 294r
function of, 281t
   number of, 279
Vidian nerve, 299
Visceral afferent fibers, 277
Visceral postganglionic efferent fibers, 277
Visceral preganglionic efferent fibers, 277
Visceral reflex, somatic reflex vs., 277
Visceral sensation, nerves for, 280t–281t
Vision
   binocular, 1
   double, 285, 293t, 299
   nerves for, 280t
Vitreous body, 169
Vocal folds, movements of, 259–260
Vocal ligaments, 258
Vocal process, 258
Vocalis muscle, 259
Vomiting, 294t
W
   Waldeyer ring, 249
   Walking, 294t
   Wharton duct, 238
   Whistle, 294t
   White matter, 265
   Wisdom tooth, 41
   Wolff's Law, 19
   Wormian bones, 15
Z
   Zygomatic arch, function of, 71
   Zygomatic nerve, 287
      anatomy of, 295
      characteristics of, 289t
   Zygomaticofacial nerve, 287
      anatomy of, 295
      characteristics of, 289t
   Zygomatico-orbital artery, 341
   Zygomatico-orbital foramen, 164t
   Zygomaticotemporal nerve, 287
      anatomy of, 295
      characteristics of, 289t
   Zygomaticus
      major, 140t–141t
      minor, 140t–141t